

DocuWide 6057/3037

User Guide



Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, Active Directory, Excel, Internet Explorer, and Microsoft Edge are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe, Acrobat, PostScript 3, PostScript, the PostScript logo, and Reader are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Mac, Mac OS, and OS X are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Google, the Google logo, and Google Chrome are trademarks or registered trademarks of Google Inc.

Mozilla, Firefox and the Firefox logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Mozilla Foundation in the United States and other countries.

HP, HP-GL, HP-GL/2, and HP RTL are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Corporation.

MontaVista Linux is a registered trademark of MontaVista Software, Inc.

Heisei Mincho™ W3 and Heisei Kaku Gothic™ W5 were developed by a group of developers formed by the Japanese Standards Association. Some of the typefaces includes extended fonts that were designed by Fuji Xerox. No reproduction without written permission.

RSA and BSAFE are either registered trademarks or trademarks of EMC Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

All product/brand names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective holders.

Microsoft product screen shot(s) reprinted with permission from Microsoft Corporation.

For information on license, refer to About License included on the supplied media (Software/Product Manual).

In this manual, safety instructions are preceded by the symbol . Always read and follow the instructions before performing the required procedures.

If a malfunction occurs with the machine's hard disk or other storage media, any received or stored data including registered configurations may be lost. Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any direct or indirect damages arising from or caused by such data loss.

Fuji Xerox is not responsible for any breakdown of machines due to infection of computer virus or computer hacking.

Important

1. This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied or modified in whole or part, without the written consent of the publisher.
2. Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
3. We welcome any comments on ambiguities, errors, omissions, or missing pages.
4. Never attempt any procedure on the machine that is not specifically described in this manual. Unauthorized operation can cause faults or accidents. Fuji Xerox is not liable for any problems resulting from unauthorized operation of the equipment.

An export of this product is strictly controlled in accordance with Laws concerning Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade of Japan and/or the export control regulations of the United States.

Xerox, Xerox and Design, Fuji Xerox and Design, as well as CentreWare are registered trademarks or trademarks of Xerox Corporation in Japan and/or other countries.

Apeos, ArcEPS, DocuCentre, DocuPrint, DocuWide, and DocuWorks are registered trademarks or trademarks of Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

DocuWide 6057/3037

User Guide

Preface

Thank you for selecting the DocuWide 6057/3037. This guide describes operating instructions and precautions for using the DocuWide 6057/3037. To get the most out of the DocuWide 6057/3037 and to use it effectively, be sure to read this User Guide before use.

This guide is intended for first-time users of the machine, and describes how to use the Copy/Print/Scan features, how to clear paper jams, the daily maintenance procedures, how to set various setting items, and various precautions.

This guide assumes that you have a basic understanding and operating knowledge of your personal computer and network environment. For the basic information and operating instructions of your personal computer and network environment, refer to the documentation provided for your personal computer, operating system, and network system.

After reading this guide, be sure to keep this guide so you can refer to it handy for quick reference whenever you have trouble with the machine's operation or some failure occurs while using the machine.

Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

Fuji Xerox shares the global concern about environmental conservation and has integrated that concern in its business activities from research and development to disposal. We have implemented a number of programs to lessen the burden on the environment. For example, we have totally eliminated ozonedepleting chlorofluorocarbons from our manufacturing facilities.

We are committed to leadership in the conservation of resources by reusing and recycling post-consumer waste material such as paper, cartridges, and parts from our customer's copiers and printers. Along with our efforts to make environmental values a part of the Fuji Xerox culture, DocuWide 6057/3037 adopts recycled components that satisfy our strict quality standards.

Table of Contents	
Before Using the Machine	1
Copy (DocuWide 6057)	2
Copy (DocuWide 3037)	3
Scan (DocuWide 6057)	4
Scan (DocuWide 3037)	5
Scan and Copy Service (DocuWide 6057)	6
Stored Programming	7
Computer Operations	8
Configuration	9
System Settings	10
Problem Solving	11
System Settings	12
Appendix	13

DocuWide 6057/3037 Models

Following models are available with the DocuWide 6057/3037.

- MF model: Multifunctional model with Copy, Printer, and Scan functions.
- EP model: Printer model.

Unless otherwise stated, this guide uses the DocuWide 6057 MF 4 Roll type as an example to describe functions.

DocuWide 6057

Type	Description	DocuWide 6057 MF	DocuWide 6057 EP
2 Roll type	This is a double-roll paper feed type.	Yes	Yes
4 Roll type	This is a quadruple-roll paper feed type.	Yes	Yes

Yes: Supported No: Not supported

DocuWide 3037

Type	Description	DocuWide 3037 MF	DocuWide 3037 EP
2 Roll type	This is a double-roll paper feed type.	Yes	No

Yes: Supported No: Not supported

Types of Manuals

The DocuWide 6057/3037 comes with the following manuals.

All the manuals are provided in the PDF format.

To view PDF files, Adobe® Reader® is necessary. If your computer is not installed with the software, install Adobe Reader first.

Machine manual

Manual name	Description	Type
Safety Notes	Describes safety precautions when using the machine as well as limitations that should be kept in mind when working with the machine. Please read this guide carefully before use.	Printed booklet
User Guide <This guide>	Describes the functions of the machine, the daily maintenance, how to copy / scan / print or how to clear paper jam, various setting items, cautions / restrictions, and other information you should know. This guide is stored in the provided media (Software/Product Manual).	PDF

Optional product manuals

Optional product manuals provide information on how to use the optional product or how to install the software applications.

Using This Guide

This guide gives you information on how to use the Copy/Print/Scan and other features of the machine.

Organization of This Guide

This guide consists of the following chapters:

- Chapter 1 Before Using the Machine

This chapter identifies the machine components, and describes the basic operations of the machine, such as how to turn the power on and off, how to operate the control panel, and how to configure Power Saver.

- Chapter 2 Copy (DocuWide 6057)

This chapter describes the basic operations and functions of the Copy feature.

- Chapter 3 Copy (DocuWide 3037)

This chapter describes the basic operations and functions of the Copy feature.

- Chapter 4 Scan (DocuWide 6057)

This chapter describes the basic operations and functions of the Scan feature.

- Chapter 5 Scan (DocuWide 3037)

This chapter describes the basic operations and functions of the Scan feature.

- Chapter 6 Scan and Copy Service (DocuWide 6057)

This chapter describes the basic procedure of the Scan and Copy service.

- Chapter 7 Stored Programming

This chapter describes the Stored Programming feature that enables you to store customized settings.

- Chapter 8 Computer Operations

This chapter covers computer operations, such as how to use CentreWare Internet Services, how to print, how to import scanned data, and how to use the Direct Scan feature.

- Chapter 9 Configuration

This chapter describes how to create folders, register IP addresses, and set up save destinations, as well as change those settings.

- Chapter 10 Authentication

This chapter describes the authentication features available for the machine.

● Chapter 11 Problem Solving

This chapter describes solutions to various problems you may have with the machine.

● Chapter 12 System Settings

This chapter describes how to configure the system defaults with the System Settings feature.

● Chapter 13 Appendix

This chapter describes the machine specifications, optional components, and notes and restrictions.

Conventions

This guide uses the following marks depending on the described contents.



Important

Provides important information that you should know and check before using or operating the machine.



Note

Provides information that may be useful when you are using or operating the machine.



Refer

Provides cross-references to the content.

The following symbols are used in this guide.

" "

- A cross-reference included in this guide.
- Indicates the names of features, input values, input examples, and the messages displayed on the touch screen.

[]

- Indicates the names of the screens, menus, buttons, and tabs displayed on the touch screen.
- Indicates the names of the menus, windows, dialog boxes, buttons, tabs, files, and folders displayed on your computer screen.

< >

- Indicates the buttons and indicators on the control panel.
- Indicates the keys on your computer keyboard.

>

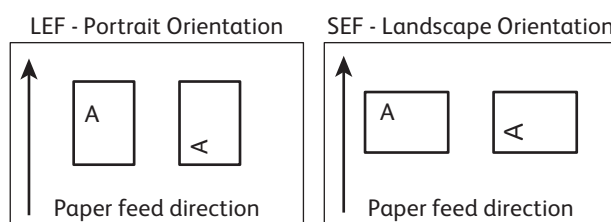
- Indicates the order of selecting the menu items.
Example: Select [Start] > [All Programs].

The orientation of original or paper is described in this guide as follows:

Portrait

- Loading the original or paper in portrait orientation when viewed from the front of the machine.

- Landscape
- Loading the original or paper in landscape orientation when viewed from the front of the machine.



- The screen shots and machine illustrations in this guide are of the machine with various optional components installed. Some of the items and features on the screen shots or illustrations may not be displayed or available on your machine depending on its configuration.
- The information on various drivers and utility software in this guide may not apply to your drivers and utility software depending on their version upgrade.
- In this guide, "personal computer" and "work station" are collectively called "computer".
- Microsoft® Windows® Operating System is referred to as "Windows".
- Product names are referred to as follows:
 - ApeosWare Device Management is abbreviated as "Device Management".
 - ApeosWare Authentication Management is abbreviated as "Authentication Management".
- The description of operations in this guide are mainly based on Windows® 10. If using an operating system other than Windows® 10, the operating procedures and the screen appearance may be different in your environment.

Table of Contents

Preface	3
DocuWide 6057/3037 Models	4
Types of Manuals	5
Using This Guide	6
Table of Contents	9

Chapter 1 Before Using the Machine.....21

1.1	Machine Components.....	22
1.2	Power Source	25
1.2.1	Switching the Power On	25
1.2.2	Switching the Power Off	25
1.3	Power Saver Mode	27
1.3.1	Entering the Power Saver Mode.....	27
1.3.2	Exiting the Power Saver Mode.....	27
1.4	Control Panel	28
1.4.1	The Control Panel of MF Models	28
1.4.2	The Control Panel of EP Models.....	31
1.5	Menu Screen	33
1.5.1	The Menu Screen of MF Models	33
1.5.2	The Menu Screen of EP Models.....	37
1.6	Text Entry	38
1.7	Loading/Replacing Paper.....	39
1.7.1	Replacing/Cutting Roll Paper	39
1.7.2	Loading Cut Sheet Paper (Bypass).....	41
1.7.3	Switching Between Trays.....	42
1.7.4	Checking the Status of Paper.....	42
1.8	Billing Information	44
1.9	Replacing Consumables	45
1.9.1	Replacing the Toner Cartridge	46
1.9.2	Replacing the Waste Toner Container	48
1.10	Calibrating the Scan Sensor Gap (DocuWide 3037)	52
1.10.1	Printing the calibration chart	52
1.10.2	Performing Auto Adjustment.....	53
1.10.3	Performing Optional Adjustment	53
1.10.4	Initializing Adjustment Values	55
1.10.5	Error Code	56

1.11	Setting the Fusing Unit.....	57
1.11.1	Setting the Temperature of the Fusing Unit	57
1.11.2	Idling the Fusing Unit	58
1.12	Cleaning the Machine.....	59
1.12.1	Cleaning the Machine (DocuWide 6057)	59
1.12.2	Cleaning the Machine (DocuWide 3037)	61
1.13	Machine Status.....	63
1.13.1	Machine Status Overview	63
1.13.2	Machine / Information	64
1.13.3	Supplies	66
1.14	Job Status.....	67
1.14.1	Checking Job Status.....	67
1.14.2	Checking Current/Pending Jobs	67
1.14.3	Checking Completed Jobs	68
1.15	Logging in as Authorized User	69
1.15.1	Logging In/Out through Control Panel Authentication with User ID.....	69
1.15.2	Logging in/out using smart card.....	71
1.16	About Originals	72
1.16.1	Usable Originals (DocuWide 6057)	72
1.16.2	Usable Originals (DocuWide 3037)	72
1.16.3	Precautions When Handling Originals.....	72
1.17	Media Types.....	73
1.17.1	Media Type.....	73
1.17.2	Unusable Media	74
1.17.3	Handling and Storing Media.....	75
1.18	Paper Heater	76

Chapter 2 Copy (DocuWide 6057).....77

2.1	Copying Procedure	78
2.1.1	Step 1 Selecting Functions.....	78
2.1.2	Step 2 Entering a Quantity	79
2.1.3	Step 3 Starting the Copy Job	80
2.2	Canceling the Copy Job.....	82
2.2.1	Canceling Feeding the Original.....	82
2.2.2	Canceling Copy Jobs.....	82
2.3	Copying in the Specified Paper Size (Auto Mode).....	84
2.4	Making Adjustments to Color on the Original	85
2.4.1	Adjusting Individual Color Density (Adjust Color Density).....	85
2.4.2	Eliminating the Specified Color on the Original (Disabling Color).....	86
2.5	Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width	87

2.6	Loading Paper Manually (Bypass Copying)	89
2.7	Copying Long Originals	91
2.8	Copying Multiple Originals (Collation)	92
2.9	Imprinting Stamps on Copies	94
2.10	Running Sample Copies.....	96
2.11	Copying from Memory.....	98
2.12	Running an Interrupt Copy	100
2.13	[Copy (Auto Mode)] Screen	101
2.13.1	Original Orientation (Specifying the Original Feeding Orientation)	101
2.13.2	Mapping Table between Original Sizes and Paper Sizes (Matrix).....	102
2.13.3	Paper Orientation (Specifying the Target Paper Orientation)	102
2.14	[Copy (Manual Mode)] Screen	104
2.14.1	Reduce/Enlarge (Making Enlarged/Reduced Copies).....	104
2.14.2	Paper Supply (Selecting the Paper Supply Source)	106
2.14.3	Paper Cut Mode (Selecting How to Cut Delivered Paper)	107
2.14.4	Original Type (Selecting the Original Type).....	108
2.14.5	Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width).....	108
2.14.6	Lighten / Darken (Adjusting Copy Density).....	108
2.15	Copy - [Image Quality] Screen	109
2.15.1	Original Type (Selecting the Original Type).....	109
2.15.2	Image Options (Adjusting the density, sharpness, and contrast of images)	110
2.15.3	Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output) ...	111
2.15.4	Threshold Sort (Classifying Halftones on the Original)	112
2.15.5	Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors)	113
2.16	Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen.....	114
2.16.1	Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)	114
2.16.2	Image Shift (Shifting the Image Position of the Original)	115
2.16.3	Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning)	116
2.16.4	Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original).....	117
2.16.5	Invert Image (Making Copies with Inverted Images)	118
2.16.6	Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed).....	118
2.16.7	Image Rotation (Setting the Orientation to Apply When Image is Rotated)	119
2.17	Copy - [Output Format] Screen	120
2.17.1	Watermark (Printing text in the Background When Copying)	120
2.17.2	Output Destination (Specifying the Output Destination for Paper)	122
2.17.3	Copy Output (Specifying Finishing Options)	122
2.17.4	Lead & Tail Margins (Adding Margins to Top/Bottom Edges of Original)	124
2.17.5	Stamp (Applying Stamp and Date on Copies).....	124
2.17.6	Multi-job (Outputting Sorted Jobs by Applying Stored Multi-Job Program)	126
2.17.7	Sample Copy (Determining the Optimal Settings Before Running the Whole Copy Job)	128

Chapter 3	Copy (DocuWide 3037)	131
3.1	Copying Procedure	132
3.1.1	Step 1 Selecting Functions	132
3.1.2	Step 2 Entering a Quantity	133
3.1.3	Step 3 Starting the Copy Job	134
3.2	Canceling the Copy Job	135
3.2.1	Canceling Feeding the Original	135
3.2.2	Canceling Copy Jobs	135
3.3	Copying in the Specified Paper Size (Auto Mode)	137
3.4	Making Adjustments to Color on the Original	138
3.4.1	Adjusting Individual Color Density (Adjust Color Density)	138
3.4.2	Eliminating the Specified Color on the Original (Disabling Color)	139
3.5	Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width	140
3.6	Loading Paper Manually (Bypass Copying)	142
3.7	Copying Long Originals	144
3.8	Copying Multiple Originals (Collation)	145
3.9	Imprinting Stamps on Copies	147
3.10	Running Sample Copies	149
3.11	Copying from Memory	151
3.12	Running an Interrupt Copy	153
3.13	[Copy (Auto Mode)] Screen	154
3.13.1	Original Orientation (Specifying the Document Feeding Orientation)	154
3.13.2	Mapping Table between Original Sizes and Paper Sizes (Matrix)	155
3.13.3	Paper Orientation (Specifying the Target Paper Orientation)	155
3.14	[Copy (Manual Mode)] Screen	157
3.14.1	Reduce/Enlarge (Making Enlarged/Reduced Copies)	157
3.14.2	Paper Supply (Selecting the Paper Supply Source)	159
3.14.3	Paper Cut Mode (Selecting How to Cut Delivered Paper)	160
3.14.4	Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)	161
3.14.5	Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)	161
3.14.6	Lighten / Darken (Adjusting Copy Density)	161
3.15	Copy - [Image Quality] Screen	162
3.15.1	Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)	162
3.15.2	Image Options (Adjusting the density, sharpness, and contrast of images)	163
3.15.3	Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output)	164
3.15.4	Threshold Sort (Classifying Halftones on the Original)	165
3.15.5	Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors)	166

3.16	Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen.....	167
3.16.1	Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width).....	167
3.16.2	Image Shift (Shifting the Image Position of the Original).....	168
3.16.3	Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning).....	169
3.16.4	Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original).....	170
3.16.5	Invert Image (Making Copies with Inverted Images).....	171
3.16.6	Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed).....	171
3.16.7	Image Rotation (Setting the Orientation to Apply When Image is Rotated).....	172
3.17	Copy - [Output Format] Screen.....	173
3.17.1	Watermark (Printing text in the Background When Copying).....	173
3.17.2	Output Destination (Specifying the Output Destination for Paper).....	175
3.17.3	Copy Output (Specifying Finishing Options).....	176
3.17.4	Lead & Tail Margins (Adding Margins to Top/Bottom Edges of Original).....	176
3.17.5	Stamp (Applying Stamp and Date on Copies).....	177
3.17.6	Sample Copy (Determining the Optimal Settings Before Running the Whole Copy Job).....	179

Chapter 4 Scan (DocuWide 6057) 181

4.1	Scanning Procedure.....	182
4.1.1	Step 1 Selecting the Feature.....	182
4.1.2	Step 2 Starting the Scan Job.....	185
4.1.3	Step 3 Importing Scanned Data.....	186
4.2	Stopping the Scan Job.....	187
4.2.1	Canceling Feeding the Original.....	187
4.2.2	Canceling Scan Jobs.....	187
4.3	Color Scanning.....	189
4.4	Scanning the Specified Color on the Original in Red (Red and Black Scan).....	190
4.5	Displaying the Preview.....	191
4.6	Encrypting Scanned Data.....	192
4.7	Scanning Multiple Originals as One File.....	193
4.8	Running an Interrupt Scan.....	195
4.9	[Store to Folder] Screen.....	196
4.9.1	Viewing/Deleting Documents in a Folder.....	197
4.9.2	Color Scanning (Selecting the Color Mode for Scanning).....	198
4.9.3	Resolution (Specifying the Scanning Resolution).....	199
4.9.4	Preview (Select preview display).....	199
4.9.5	Original Type (Selecting the Original Type).....	200
4.9.6	File Format (Selecting a File Format for Output Data).....	202
4.10	[Scan to PC] Screen.....	207
4.11	[Multi Send Scan] Screen.....	209

4.12	Scan - [Advanced Settings] Screen	211
4.12.1	Lighten / Darken	211
4.12.2	Sharpness / Contrast	212
4.12.3	Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output) ..	212
4.12.4	Threshold Halftones (Classifying Halftones on the Original)	213
4.12.5	Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors)	213
4.13	Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen	215
4.13.1	Reduce / Enlarge (Specifying the Scanning Magnification)	215
4.13.2	Original Size (Specifying the Area Size to be Scanned)	216
4.13.3	Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original)	218
4.13.4	Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning)	219
4.13.5	Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)	219
4.14	Scan - [Filing Options] Screen	220
4.14.1	Quality / File Size (Specifying Image Compression Ratio Used When Scanning Originals)	220

Chapter 5 Scan (DocuWide 3037) 221

5.1	Scanning Procedure	222
5.1.1	Step 1 Selecting the Feature	222
5.1.2	Step 2 Starting the Scan Job	225
5.1.3	Step 3 Importing Scanned Data	226
5.2	Stopping the Scan Job	227
5.2.1	Canceling Feeding the Original	227
5.2.2	Canceling Scan Jobs	227
5.3	Color Scanning	229
5.4	Displaying the Preview	230
5.5	Encrypting Scanned Data	231
5.6	Scanning Multiple Originals as One File	232
5.7	Running an Interrupt Scan	234
5.8	[Store to Folder] Screen	235
5.8.1	Viewing/Deleting Documents in a Folder	236
5.8.2	Color Scanning (Selecting the Color Mode for Scanning)	237
5.8.3	Resolution (Specifying the Scanning Resolution)	238
5.8.4	Preview (Select preview display)	238
5.8.5	Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)	239
5.8.6	File Format (Selecting a File Format for Output Data)	241
5.9	[Scan to PC] Screen	246
5.10	[Multi Send Scan] Screen	248

5.11	Scan - [Advanced Settings] Screen	250
5.11.1	Image Options	250
5.11.2	Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output) ...	251
5.11.3	Threshold Halftones (Classifying Halftones on the Original)	252
5.11.4	Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors)	252
5.12	Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen	254
5.12.1	Reduce / Enlarge (Specifying the Scanning Magnification)	254
5.12.2	Original Size (Specifying the Area Size to be Scanned)	255
5.12.3	Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original)	257
5.12.4	Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning)	258
5.12.5	Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)	258
5.13	Scan - [Filing Options] Screen	259
5.13.1	Quality / File Size (Specifying Image Compression Ratio Used When Scanning Originals)	259

Chapter 6 Scan and Copy Service (DocuWide 6057) 261

6.1	Scan and Copy Procedure	262
-----	-------------------------------	-----

Chapter 7 Stored Programming 265

7.1	Stored Programming Overview	266
7.2	Registering/Deleting/Changing a Stored Program	267
7.2.1	Registering a Stored Program	267
7.2.2	Deleting a Stored Program	269
7.2.3	Registering/Changing the Name for a Stored Program	269
7.3	Calling up a Stored Program	271

Chapter 8 Computer Operations..... 273

8.1	Features Overview	274
8.2	CentreWare Internet Services.....	275
8.2.1	What is CentreWare Internet Services?	275
8.2.2	Setting Up for Using CentreWare Internet Services.....	275
8.2.3	Starting CentreWare Internet Services.....	277
8.2.4	CentreWare Internet Services Screen Components.....	277
8.3	Printing.....	280
8.3.1	Main Print Features.....	280
8.3.2	Printable Data Format.....	281
8.3.3	Preparation for Printing.....	281
8.3.4	Printing Using the Print Driver	282
8.3.5	Canceling Print Jobs.....	283

8.4	Confidential Print.....	284
8.4.1	Secure Print.....	285
8.4.2	Private Charge Print	288
8.5	Importing Scanned Data.....	293
8.5.1	Import from a TWAIN-compliant Application.....	293
8.5.2	Importing from Stored File Manager 3	296
8.5.3	Importing Using CentreWare Internet Services.....	299
8.6	Direct Scan (DocuWide 6057)	301

Chapter 9 Configuration 303

9.1	Setup	304
9.1.1	Program Sort (DocuWide 6057)	305
9.1.2	Create Folder	306
9.1.3	Server (PC Save Address)	308
9.1.4	Printer (Multi Send Address).....	310
9.1.5	Multi Send Address (Group Address)	312
9.1.6	Paper Tray Series / Paper Type.....	314
9.2	Setting the IP Address	315
9.3	Scanner Environment Settings	316
9.3.1	Setting Up the Store to Folder Feature.....	316
9.3.2	Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature	316
9.4	Setting up the Secondary Ethernet	320

Chapter 10 Authentication 321

10.1	Overview of the Authentication Features.....	322
10.2	Authentication Features	323
10.2.1	Authentication for Each User Types	323
10.2.2	Types of Authentication	323
10.3	Services Controlled by Authentication	325
10.4	Folder Authentication	326
10.4.1	Overview	326
10.4.2	When Authentication is Disabled.....	326
10.4.3	When Authentication is Enabled	328
10.5	Enabling Local Authentication	329
10.5.1	Set the Authentication Method to "Local Authentication"	329
10.5.2	Setting Access Restriction.....	331
10.5.3	Registering a User	331
10.5.4	Batch Registering Users	332

10.6	Enabling Remote Authentication	339
10.6.1	Set the Authentication Method to "Login to Remote Accounts"	339
10.6.2	Setting Access Restriction	340
10.6.3	Saving Remote Authentication Information on the Machine	341
10.6.4	Configuring the Authentication Server	342

Chapter 11 Problem Solving 349

11.1	Troubleshooting	350
11.2	Machine Problems	351
11.3	Paper Jam Problems	352
11.4	Image Quality Problems	354
11.5	Problems during Copying	361
11.6	Problems during Scanning	363
11.6.1	Unable to Scan with the Machine	363
11.6.2	Unable to Import Scanned Data to the Computer	364
11.6.3	Unable to Send Scanned Data over the Network (SMB/LPR)	365
11.7	Problems during Printing	366
11.8	Problems with CentreWare Internet Services	367
11.9	Error Messages	368
11.10	When Paper Jams	372
11.10.1	Paper Jams at the Roll Paper Tray	373
11.10.2	Paper Jams in the Bypass (Manual) Feed Table	375
11.10.3	Paper Jams in the Upper Unit	375
11.11	When the Original Jams	377
11.11.1	When the Original Jams (DocuWide 6057)	377
11.11.2	When the Original Jams (DocuWide 3037)	378
11.12	Finding More	380
11.12.1	To Increase Duration Before Auto Clear	380
11.12.2	To Increase the Duration Before the Machine Enters Power Saver Mode (Changing Power Saver Timers)	382
11.12.3	To Customize the Default Screen	382
11.12.4	To Go to the Target Screen with a Single Button Press (Assigning the <Custom> Buttons)	383
11.12.5	To Display the Manual Mode Screen by Default	384
11.12.6	To Change the Default Output File Format of Scanned Data	385
11.12.7	To Change the Gray Density of Stamps	385
11.12.8	To Disable Automatic Paper Switching	386
11.12.9	To Save Power Consumption When the Machine is Not in Use	387

Chapter 12 System Settings..... 389

12.1	System Settings Procedure	390
12.1.1	Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode.....	390
12.1.2	Step 2 Selecting the Desired Item	391
12.1.3	Step 3 Configuring a Feature.....	392
12.1.4	Step 4 Exiting System Administration Mode.....	393
12.2	Tools Menu List.....	394
12.3	Common Service Settings.....	398
12.3.1	Machine Clock / Timers	398
12.3.2	Audio Tones	399
12.3.3	Screen / Button Settings	401
12.3.4	Paper Tray Settings.....	402
12.3.5	Color Scan Settings	404
12.3.6	Maintenance.....	405
12.3.7	Watermark.....	406
12.3.8	Other Settings	407
12.3.9	Detailed Settings.....	410
12.4	Copy Service Settings.....	414
12.4.1	Copy Tab - Features Allocation	414
12.4.2	Preset Buttons	415
12.4.3	Copy Defaults.....	415
12.4.4	Auto Tray Switching.....	417
12.4.5	Variable Length Settings	418
12.4.6	Auto Mode Paper Type.....	419
12.4.7	Auto Mode Rotate Direction	420
12.4.8	Stamp Date Format	421
12.4.9	Stamp Location Auto Settings.....	421
12.4.10	Watermark Location Auto Settings.....	423
12.4.11	Detailed Settings.....	423
12.5	Connectivity & Network Setup	425
12.5.1	Port Settings.....	425
12.5.2	Protocol Settings	427
12.5.3	Remote Authentication / Directory Service.....	429
12.5.4	SSL / TLS Settings.....	431
12.5.5	Detailed Settings.....	432
12.6	Scan Service Settings.....	433
12.6.1	Preset Buttons	433
12.6.2	Scan Defaults	434
12.6.3	Other Settings	435
12.6.4	Detailed Settings.....	436
12.7	Scan and Copy Service Settings (DocuWide 6057)	437
12.7.1	Scan and Copy Service Defaults	437
12.8	Stored File Settings	438
12.8.1	Stored File Settings	438

12.9	Print Service Settings.....	441
12.9.1	Job Recovery	441
12.9.2	Other Settings	442
12.9.3	Detailed Settings.....	444
12.10	Authentication / Security Settings.....	445
12.10.1	System Administrator Settings.....	445
12.10.2	Stamp Data Admin Settings	446
12.10.3	Authentication	447
12.10.4	Job Status Default.....	454
12.10.5	Overwrite Hard Disk	456
Chapter 13	Appendix	459
13.1	Specifications	460
13.2	Optional Components.....	468
13.2.1	Optional Components (DocuWide 6057)	468
13.2.2	Optional Components (DocuWide 3037)	468
13.2.3	Other Related Software Applications	469
13.3	Notes and Restrictions.....	470
13.3.1	Notes and Restrictions on the Use of the Machine	470
13.3.2	Notes and Restrictions on the Copy Feature	470
13.3.3	Notes and Restrictions on the Scan Feature.....	471
13.3.4	Notes and Restriction on the Scan and Copy Function (DocuWide 6057)	474
13.3.5	Notes and Restrictions on the Print Feature.....	477
13.3.6	Notes and Restrictions for IPv6 Connection.....	478
13.3.7	Other Notes and Restrictions	479
Index.....		481

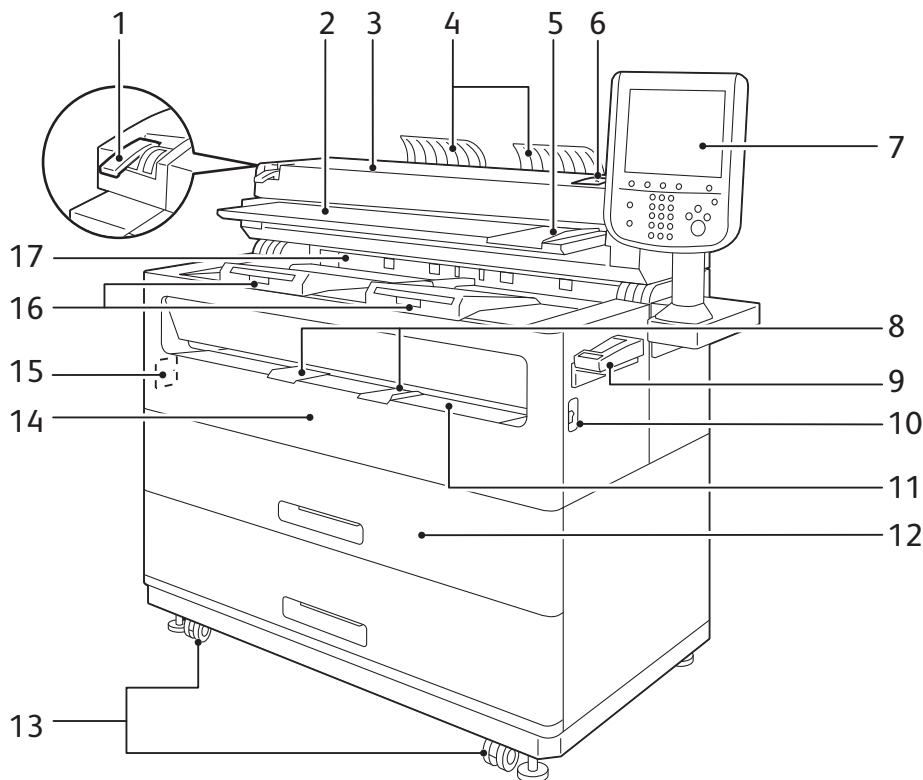
Chapter 1 Before Using the Machine

This chapter identifies the machine components, and describes the basic operations of the machine, such as how to turn the power on and off, how to operate the control panel, and how to configure Power Saver.

1.1	Machine Components	22
1.2	Power Source	25
1.3	Power Saver Mode.....	27
1.4	Control Panel.....	28
1.5	Menu Screen.....	33
1.6	Text Entry.....	38
1.7	Loading/Replacing Paper	39
1.8	Billing Information	44
1.9	Replacing Consumables.....	45
1.10	Calibrating the Scan Sensor Gap (DocuWide 3037).....	52
1.11	Setting the Fusing Unit.....	57
1.12	Cleaning the Machine	59
1.13	Machine Status	63
1.14	Job Status.....	67
1.15	Logging in as Authorized User	69
1.16	About Originals	72
1.17	Media Types	73
1.18	Paper Heater	76

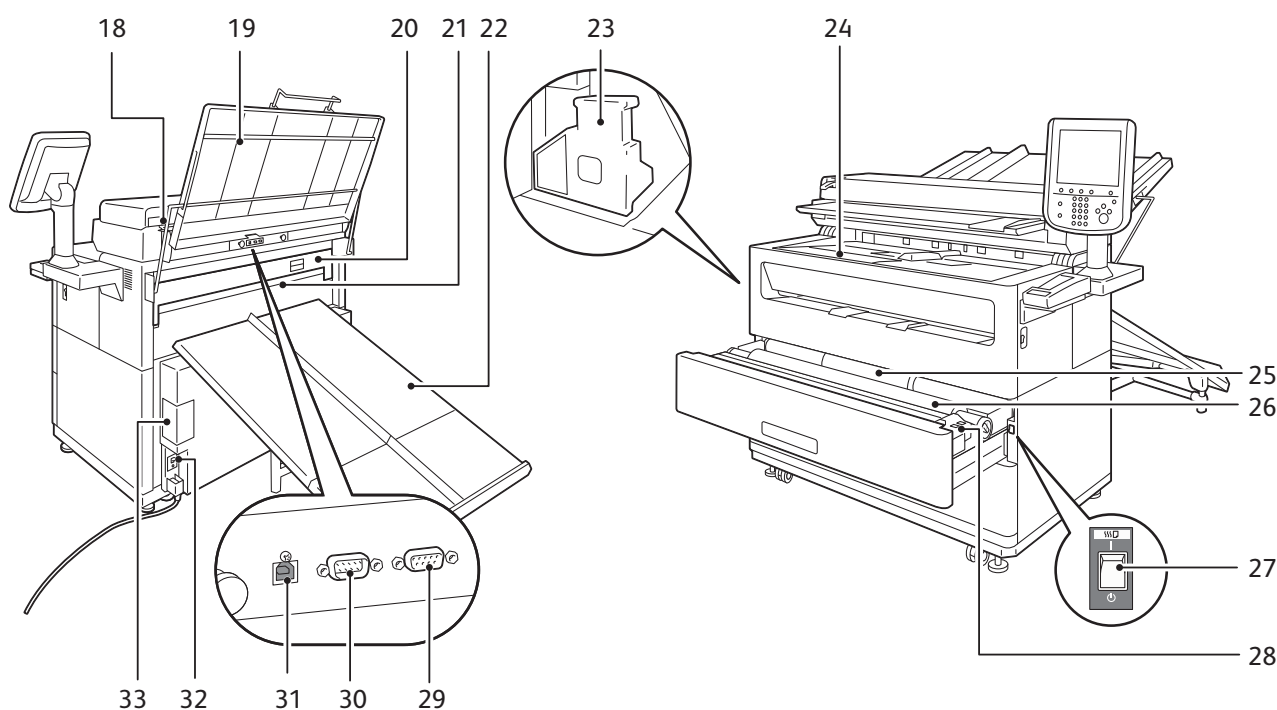
1.1 Machine Components

This section describes the machine components and their functions.



No.	Component	Function
1	Original thickness adjustment lever	Adjust the original cover in 7 levels according to the thickness of the original.  Note • Only the DocuWide 6057 has the original thickness adjustment lever.
2	Original table	Load originals here.
3	Original cover	You can remove this cover when cleaning the reflector on the back original cover or the glass surface of the scanning glass or removing the jammed paper.
4	U-turn output guide	Returns the original to the front instead of to the rear.  Note • Remove this guide before you install the optional Document Catch Tray (Rear).
5	Original guide	Align the right edge of the original with this guide.
6	Original counter	This is a resettable original counter. (Optional for the DocuWide 6057).
7	Control panel	Allows you to operate the machine by directly touching the buttons and tabs displayed on the touch screen. An operator can adjust the tilt angle for better visibility, by swiveling left or right 45 degrees, up 35 degrees, or down 10 degrees.  Refer • For more information, refer to "1.4 Control Panel" (p.28).
8	Bypass (Manual) feed tray guide	Align the both edges of paper to this guide when loading media into the manual feed table. (Optional)

No.	Component	Function
9	IC Card Reader	Authenticates the user by scanning the user's smart card. (Optional)
10	Power switch	Used to switch the power to the machine on/off.
11	Bypass (Manual) feed table	Load media here when making copies or prints manually.
12	Roll paper tray	Load roll paper.
13	Caster	Used when moving the machine. Be sure to lock these casters after you have moved the machine to its installation location.
14	Upper unit	Open this to replace waste toner containers or to clear a paper jam.
15	Upper unit releasing lever	Lift this lever to open the upper unit.
16	Paper Catch Tray (Front)	This is a tray that holds paper ejected to the front of the main unit. (Optional)
17	Front outlet	Those copied or printed are discharged here with the printed side facing down.



No.	Component	Function
18	Original output port	The original document is ejected from this port.
19	Document Catch Tray (Rear)	Accommodates originals ejected to the back of the main unit in a flat state. (Optional)
20	Rear cover	Open this cover when handling paper jams.
21	Rear outlet	Those copied or printed will be ejected here with the printed side facing up.  Note For the DocuWide 3037, the optional Rear Output KIT for DW3037 is necessary.
22	Paper Catch Tray (Rear)	A tray that accommodates paper ejected to the rear of the main unit. (Optional)
23	Toner collection bottle	A bottle for collecting used toner.

No.	Component	Function
24	Toner cover	Open this cover when replacing the toner cartridge.
25	Roll 2	Load roll media here.
26	Roll 1	Load roll media here.
27	Media heater switch	Switches the power to the media heater on/off. The media heater is in the roll paper tray.  Refer • For details, refer to "1.18 Paper Heater" (p.76).
28	Cutter button	Press this button to trim the lead edge of roll media.
29	Interface connector*	Connects the optional Scan Counter KIT (original number counter) for the DocuWide 6057.
30	Maintenance connector*	This is for our customer engineer use only. Do not connect anything.
31	USB connector*	Connects the computer.
32	Power breaker	This is the power circuit breaker for the machine.
33	Interface cover	LAN connectors and a connector for maintenance are provided. Do not connect anything to the connector for maintenance since it is for our customer engineer use only.  Note • There are two LAN connectors on top and bottom. Use the upper LAN connector. • The lower LAN connector is for secondary Ethernet. For details on the secondary Ethernet function, refer to "9.4 Setting up the Secondary Ethernet" (p.320).

* Connectors are provided only on the DocuWide 6057.

1.2 Power Source

1.2.1 Switching the Power On

The following describes how to switch the power on.

The machine warms up and becomes ready to copy or print within about 180 seconds after being powered on.

The Power Saver feature allows you to reduce the power consumption of the machine, saving electricity.



Important

- Once after turning on the power switch, do not turn off the power until the screen is displayed. Doing so might erase the data being processed.



Note

- The machine has a power consumption of 0.8 W or less even when the power switch is turned off. To avoid consuming (or save) this standby power, turn the power breaker OFF. For information on how to do this, refer to "1.3 Power Saver Mode" (p.27).



Refer

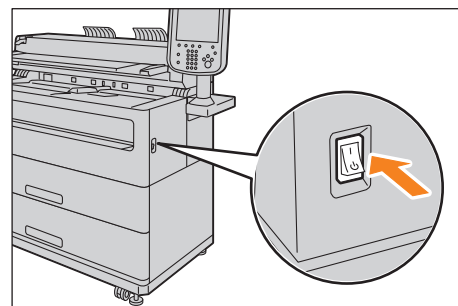
- For information on the Power Saver feature, refer to "1.3 Power Saver Mode" (p.27).

1. Press the power switch to the [I] position to switch the power on.



Note

- The "Please wait..." message indicates that the machine is warming up. The machine cannot be used while it is warming up.



1.2.2 Switching the Power Off

The following describes how to switch the power off.

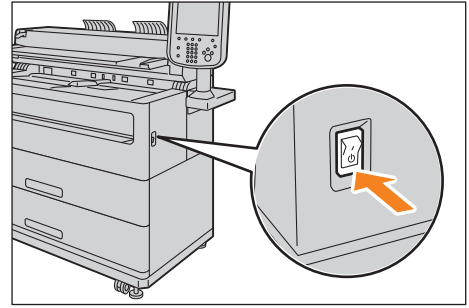
Switch the power off at the end of a day or if the machine is not used for a long time.



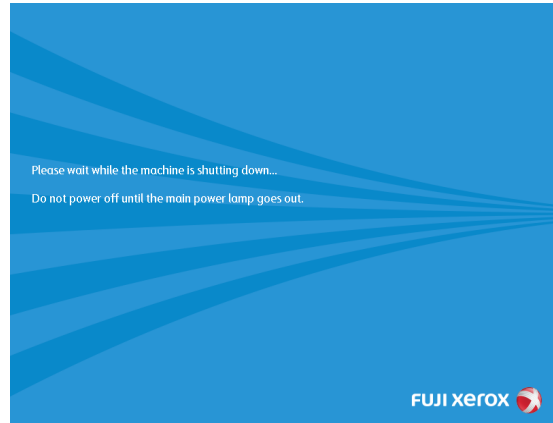
Important

- Do not switch the power off in the following conditions. Otherwise, the data being processed may be erased.
 - Data is being received (The <Data> indicator on the control panel is blinking)
 - Printing is being processed
 - Copying is being performed
 - Scanning is being performed
- After paper is completely output, wait for five seconds or more before switching the power off.
- When switching the power off and then on, make sure that the <Main Power> indicator on the control panel is turned off before you switch the power back on.
- Do not switch the power breaker off while the power switch is on. Doing so may cause damage to or failure of the hard disk or memory.

1. Press the power switch to the [⏻] position.



The power switches off after a message appears on the touch screen.



1.3 Power Saver Mode

The machine is equipped with an Power Saver feature that reduces the power consumption of the machine if no copy or print data is received for a certain duration.

The Power Saver feature has two modes: Low Power mode and Sleep mode.

If the machine is left unused for a preset period of time, the machine enters the Low Power mode.

The machine then enters the Sleep mode if a further preset time elapses.

Low Power Mode

In this mode, the power to the control panel and print engine is lowered to save power.

Sleep Mode

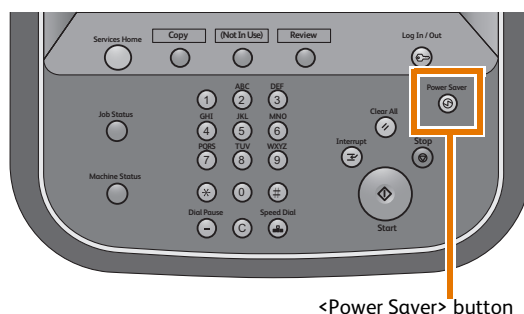
In this mode, the power is lowered even more than in the Low Power mode.

1.3.1 Entering the Power Saver Mode

When the machine enters the Power Saver mode, the touch screen goes out, and the <Power Saver> button on the control panel lights up.

The machine enters the Power Saver mode when:

- The <Power Saver> button on the control panel is pressed
- The machine was idle or did not run or receive any jobs until the predefined time period to trigger Power Saver mode has elapsed



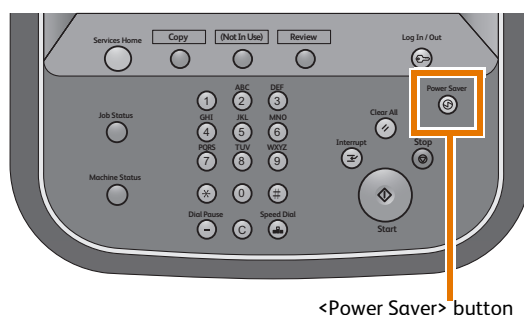
Note

- The machine may not immediately enter the Power Saver mode when you press the <Power Saver> button depending on the state of the machine. In this case, wait for a while and then press the <Power Saver> button.
- In [From Last Operation to Sleep Mode] under [Power Saver Timers], specify a longer time period than [From Last Operation to Low Power Mode]. For information on how to set the duration for [Power Saver Timers], refer to "Power Saver Timers"(p.399).

1.3.2 Exiting the Power Saver Mode

The machine exits the Power Saver mode when:

- The <Power Saver> button on the control panel is pressed
- The machine receives a print job

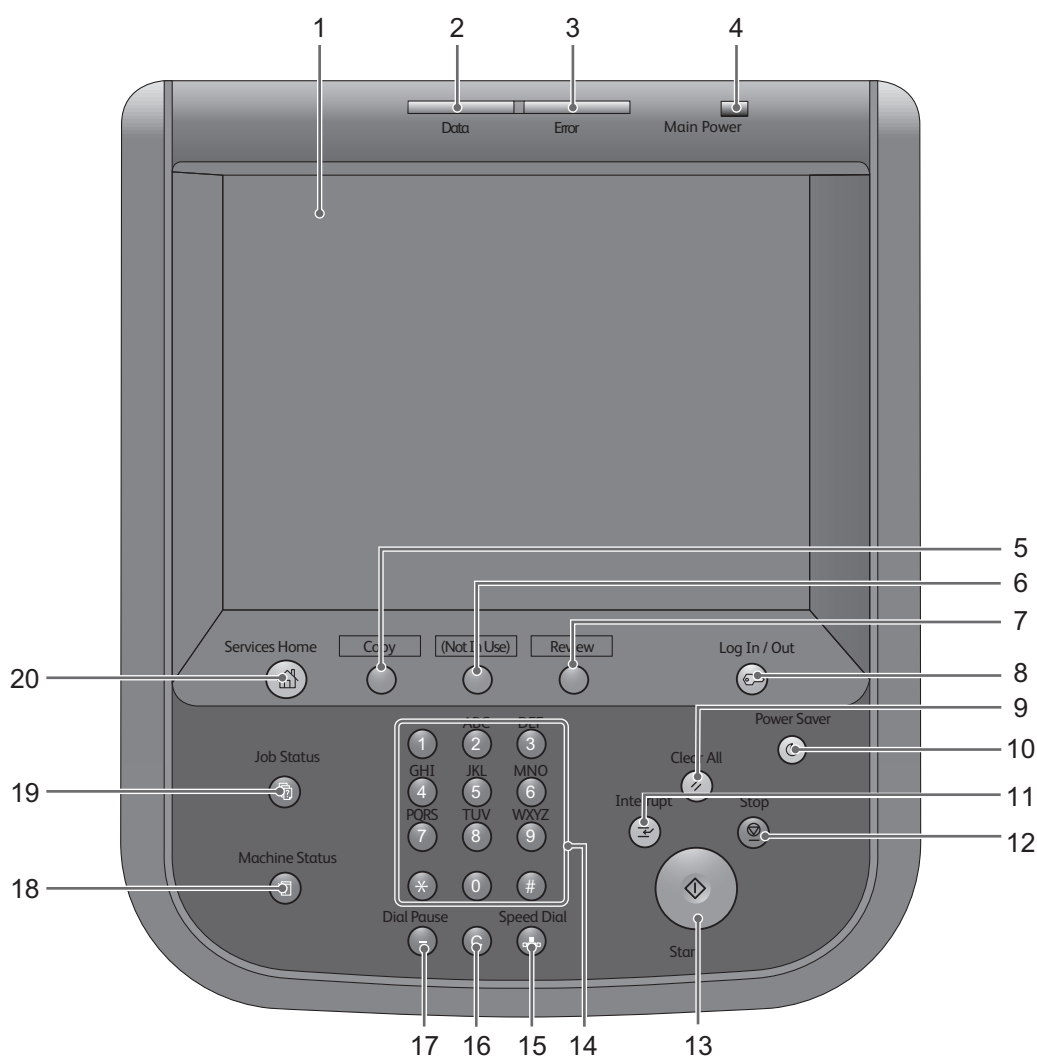


1.4 Control Panel

The following describes the names and functions of components on the control panel.

- The Control Panel of MF Modelsp.28
- The Control Panel of EP Models.....p.31

1.4.1 The Control Panel of MF Models



No.	Component	Function
1	Touch screen	Displays messages and buttons required for the operation of various features. You can access the machine features by directly touching the touch screen.
2	<Data> indicator	Blinks when the machine is sending or receiving data to or from a client. This indicator lights up when data is stored in the machine's memory,

No.	Component	Function
3	<Error> indicator	Blinks if a system error occurs. This indicator lights up when a problem other than a system error occurs with the machine, including paper jams and running out of paper.  Note • If the <Error> indicator blinks, consult the error message displayed on the touch screen for actions to be taken.  Refer • For information on corrective actions to be taken when a paper jam or running out of paper occurs, refer to "Chapter 11 Problem Solving" (p.349).
4	<Main Power> indicator	Lights up when the main power is switched on.
5	<Custom Button 1> (Copy)*	"Copy" is assigned to this button by the factory default. Press this button to display the [Copy] screen.  Refer • For information on how to change the feature assigned to the button, refer to "Custom Buttons 1 to 3"(p.401).
6	<Custom Button 2> (Not In Use)*	Press this button to call up its associated feature. No feature is assigned to this button by the factory default.  Refer • For information on how to assign a feature to the button, refer to "Custom Buttons 1 to 3"(p.401).
7	<Custom Button 3> (Review)*	Although "Review" is shown as the label for the button, no feature is assigned to the button by the factory default. Assign a feature to the button and attach the label for it as necessary.  Refer • For information on how to assign a feature to the button, refer to "Custom Buttons 1 to 3"(p.401).
8	<Log In/Out> button	Lights up when the user is authenticated in the System Administration mode or the Authentication mode. Press this button to display the User ID entry screen for entering the System Administration mode or the Authentication mode. When you have already logged in as an authorized user, press this button to exit from the mode.  Refer • For information on how to log in as authorized user, refer to "1.15 Logging in as Authorized User" (p.69).
9	<Clear All> button	Press to restore all the settings on the screen that is currently displayed to their default.
10	<Power Saver> button	If the machine has been idle for a certain period of time, it enters the Power Saver mode to reduce power consumption. While the machine is in the Power Saver mode, this button is lit. To exit or to enter the Power Saver mode, press the <Power Saver> button.
11	<Interrupt> button	Press this button to suspend a continuous copy or print job in progress to have the machine process another job. During the Interrupt mode, the <Interrupt> button lights up. Pressing the <Interrupt> button again exits the Interrupt mode and resumes the suspended job.
12	<Stop> button	Press this button to urgently stop feeding the original for the current copy or scan job.
13	<Start> button	Press this button to start scanning the original, to store a job program into memory, and to copy from memory.

No.	Component	Function
14	Numeric keypad	Use the numeric buttons on the keypad to enter the number of copies, the value to be set, and other numerical values.
15	<Speed Dial> button	This button does not function.
16	<C (Clear)> button	Press this button to cancel a numerical value you have entered with the numeric keypad.
17	<Dial Pause> button	This button does not function.
18	<Machine Status> button	Press this button to check the machine status and meters, or to check the status of consumables.
19	<Job Status> button	Press this button to check the status of the current job, or to check the completed jobs.
20	<Services Home> button	Press this button to display the menu screen.

- * If you have changed the feature assigned to the button, you can use the spare label set for feature names that came with the machine to label an appropriate one to facilitate identifying the button feature. If you have changed the feature and the corresponding feature name is not found in the spare labels set, please use a blank label where you can write the feature name by hand with an oil-based pen.
- Please note that the spare labels set may include labels corresponding to the features that are not supported or are optional for the machine.

Screens and Buttons Displayed

You can customize the features displayed on the touch screen at power on and the functionality assigned to a button, as described below.

● Customizing the Initial Screen

You can customize the screen displayed when the power is turned on, when the machine exits the Power Saver mode, or when the Auto Clear feature is turned on.



- For information on how to do this, refer to "11.12.3 To Customize the Default Screen" (p.382).

● Setting the Screen Displayed after Auto Clear

You can select [Last Selection Screen] or [Screen Default] for the screen to be displayed after Auto Clear.



- For information on how to do this, refer to "Screen After Auto Clear"(p.401).

● Assigning Features to the Custom Buttons

You can assign features to the Custom buttons on the control panel: Custom 1 to Custom 3.

By assigning frequently-used features to the Custom buttons, you can switch to the features without returning to the menu screen.



- By default, "Copy" is assigned to <Custom Button 1>, and no feature is assigned to both the <Custom Button 2> and <Custom Button 2> buttons.

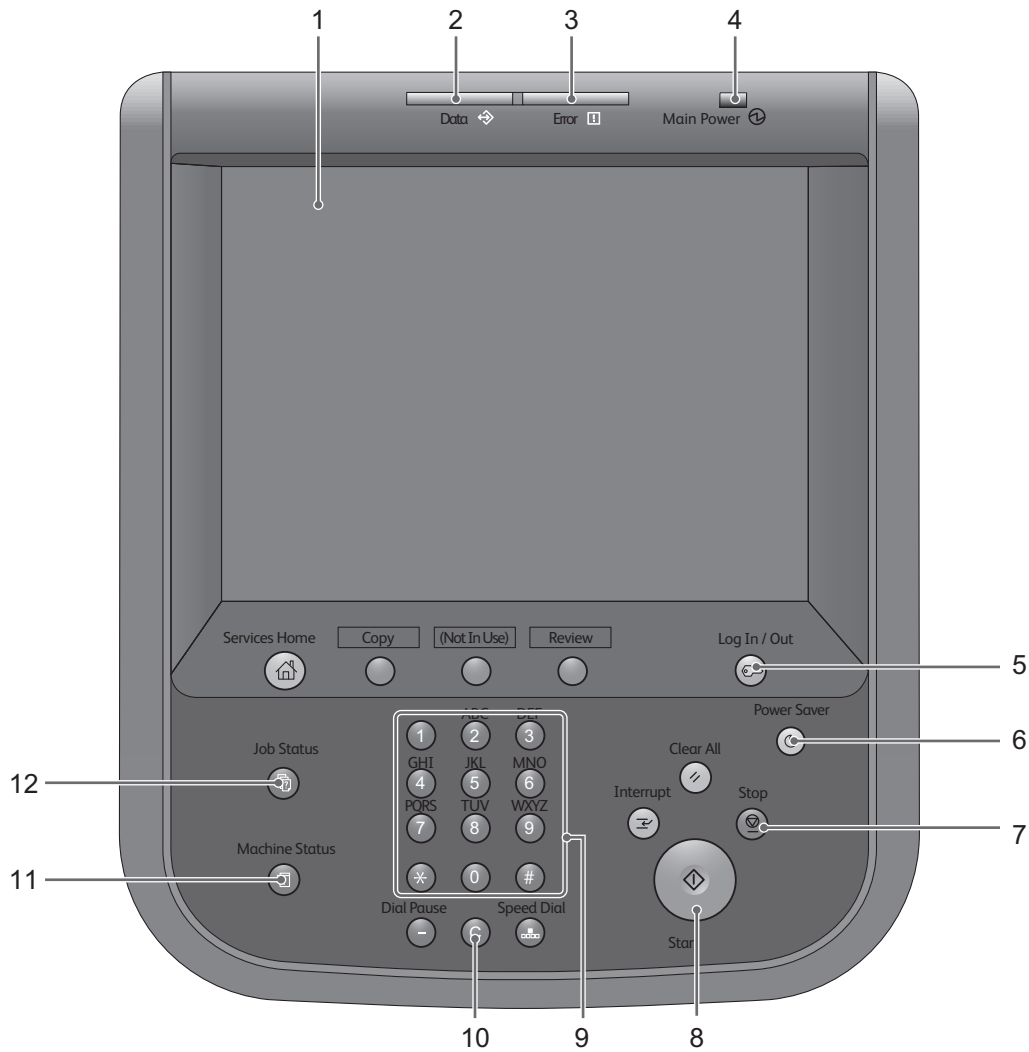


- For information on how to do this, refer to "Custom Buttons 1 to 3"(p.401).

1.4.2 The Control Panel of EP Models

1

Before Using the Machine



No.	Component	Function
1	Touch screen	Displays messages and buttons required for the operation of various features. You can access the machine features by directly touching the touch screen.
2	<Data> indicator	Blinks when the machine is sending or receiving data to or from a client. This indicator lights up when data is stored in the machine's memory.
3	<Error> indicator	Blinks if a system error occurs. This indicator lights up when a problem other than a system error occurs with the machine, including paper jams and running out of paper.  Note - If the <Error> indicator blinks, consult the error message displayed on the touch screen for actions to be taken.  Refer - For information on corrective actions to be taken when a paper jam or running out of paper occurs, refer to "Chapter 11 Problem Solving" (p.349).
4	<Main Power> indicator	Lights up when the main power is switched on.

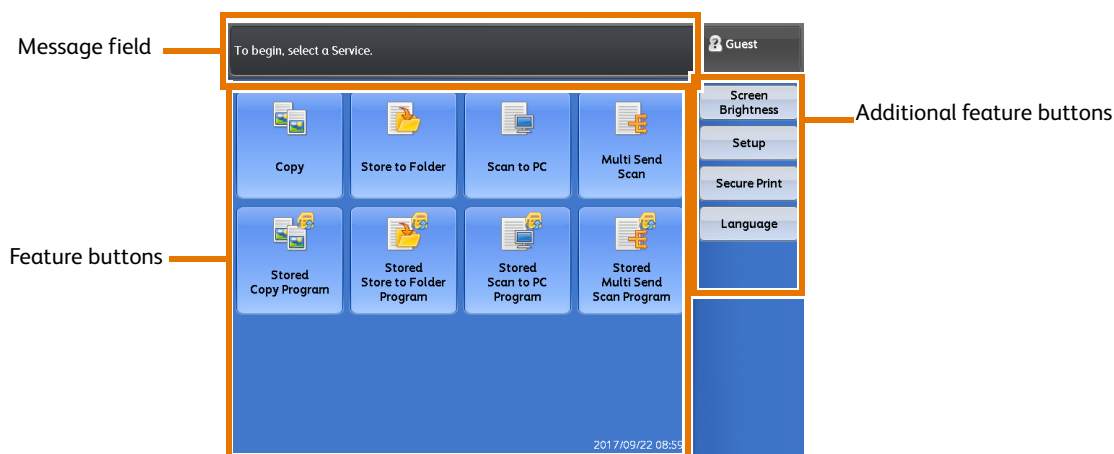
No.	Component	Function
5	<Log In/Out> button	Lights up when the user is authenticated in the System Administration mode or the Authentication mode. Press this button to display the User ID entry screen for entering the System Administration mode or the Authentication mode. When you have already logged in as an authorized user, press this button to exit from the mode.  Refer • For information on how to log in as authorized user, refer to "1.15 Logging in as Authorized User" (p.69).
6	<Power Saver> button	If the machine has been idle for a certain period of time, it enters the Power Saver mode to reduce power consumption. While the machine is in the Power Saver mode, this button is lit. To exit or to enter the Power Saver mode, press the <Power Saver> button.
7	<Stop> button	Press this button to stop printing.
8	<Start> button	Press this button to print the list of registered stamps.
9	Numeric keypad	Use the numeric buttons on the keypad to enter numerical values.
10	<C (Clear)> button	Press this button to cancel a numerical value you have entered with the numeric keypad.
11	<Dial Pause> button	This button does not function.
12	<Machine Status> button	Press this button to check the machine status and meters, or to check the status of consumables.

1.5 Menu Screen

- The Menu Screen of MF Modelsp.33
- The Menu Screen of EP Modelsp.37

1.5.1 The Menu Screen of MF Models

Pressing the <Services Home> button on the control panel to display the menu screen,



Note

- For information on how to confirm the media status, see "1.7.4 Checking the Status of Paper" (p.42).
- For information on how to confirm the toner remaining, see "1.13.3 Supplies" (p.66).

Message field

Displays a message.

Feature buttons

Allows you to configure the features.



Note

- The  mark at the upper left of the function button indicates that your access to the function is restricted. In such a case, log in to the machine and you can access the function. However, if you are a user under restriction to that function, you cannot use the function even after you have logged in.



Refer

- For details about the access restrictions to functions, refer to "Access Control Service Access"(p.448).
- For details about the user authentication, refer to "1.15 Logging in as Authorized User" (p.69).
- For details about the user restriction, refer to "Create User Account"(p.449).

● Copy

Allows you to configure the Copy feature.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Chapter 2 Copy (DocuWide 6057)" (p.77).

● Store to Folder

Allows you to save the scanned data in a folder of the machine.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Store to Folder"(p.182) and "Store to Folder"(p.222).

● Scan to PC

Allows you to send the scanned data to a computer on the network (server).



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Scan to PC"(p.183) and "Scan to PC"(p.223).

● Multi Send Scan

Allows you to send the scanned data to a pre-registered destination group consisting of specific computers (servers) and printers.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Multi Send Scan"(p.183) and "Multi Send Scan"(p.223).

● Scan and Copy Service

Allows you to connect a computer installed with DW-Scan VI Service (optional) to the machine using a USB cable, and simultaneously saves scanned data when they are copied.



Important

- [Scan and Copy] is not displayed by the factory default. To display it, set with [System Settings]. For information on how to set, refer to "Services Home"(p.401).
- [Scan and Copy] cannot be used in the following cases.
 - In [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Authentication/Security Settings] > [Login Type], [Local Accounts] or [Remote Accounts] is specified for [Login Type].
 - IC card reader is connected to the machine.



Note

- This function is available only on the DocuWide 6057.



Refer

- For details, refer to "Chapter 6 Scan and Copy Service (DocuWide 6057)" (p.261).

● Stored Copy Program

Allows you to call up a pre-registered stored program for Copy job.

Stored Program is a feature that allows you to store settings that you expect to use frequently and call them up with a single button operation.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Chapter 7 Stored Programming" (p.265).

● Stored Store to Folder Program

Allows you to call the registered Stored Store to Folder programs.

This program is a function that calls the frequently used settings from a button memorizing them.



Refer

- For details, refer to "Chapter 7 Stored Programming" (p.265).

● Stored Scan to PC Program

Allows you to call the registered Stored Scan to PC programs.

This program is a function that calls the frequently used settings from a button memorizing them.



Refer

- For details, refer to "Chapter 7 Stored Programming" (p.265).

● Stored Multi Send Scan Program

Allows you to call the registered Stored Multi Send Scan programs.

This program is a function that calls the frequently used settings from a button memorizing them.



Refer

- For details, refer to "Chapter 7 Stored Programming" (p.265).

● Stored Scan and Copy Program

Allows you to call the registered Stored Scan and Copy programs.

This program is a function that calls the frequently used settings from a button memorizing them.



Important

- [Stored Scan and Copy Program] is not displayed by the factory default. To display it, set with [System Settings]. For information on how to set, refer to "Services Home"(p.401).
- [Stored Scan and Copy Program] cannot be used in the following cases.
 - In [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Authentication/Security Settings] > [Login Type...], [Local Accounts] or [Remote Accounts] is specified for [Login Type].
 - IC card reader is connected to the machine.



Note

- This function is available only on the DocuWide 6057.



Refer

- For details, refer to "Chapter 7 Stored Programming" (p.265).

Additional Feature Buttons

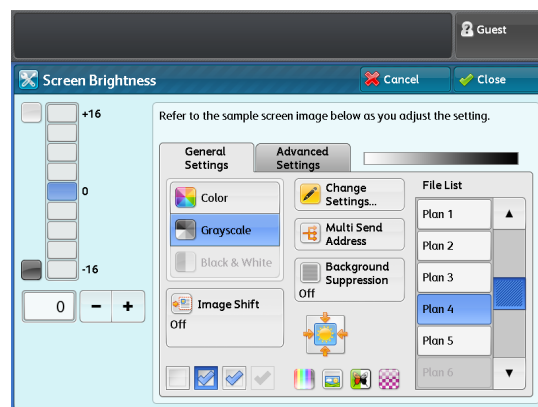
Allows you to set the additional features related to jobs.

● Screen Brightness

Allows you to adjust the brightness of the touch screen.

1. Press [Screen Brightness] on the menu screen.

2. Press [+] or [-] to adjust the screen brightness.
3. Press [Close].



● Setup

Allows you to register or change stored programs, folders, and destination addresses.



- For more information, refer to "Chapter 9 Configuration" (p.303).

● Secure Print/Private Charge Print

Allows you to print and delete documents stored via features such as Secure Print and Private Charge Print.

Secure Print/Private Charge Print is a feature that allows you to submit a job to be temporarily stored on the machine, and to print it at your convenience using the print command from the machine's control panel.



Note

- [Secure Print] and [Private Charge Print] are mutually exclusive. For more information, refer to "Private Charge Print Settings"(p.453).



Refer

- For more information, refer to "8.4 Confidential Print" (p.284).

● Language

Allows you to select the display language from among [English], [Simplified Chinese], and [Japanese].

The language set here is effective until you turn off/on the machine.



Important

- When you select English as the display language and entries such as Address Name contain characters other than ASCII, they may not be displayed appropriately.



Note

- The initial default language, which is displayed on the touch screen when the power is switched on, can be selected in [Default Language] under [System Settings]. For information on how to do this, refer to "Default Language"(p.402).

● Scan Sensor Gap Calibration

Allows you to calibrate the gap between scanning sensors with the calibration chart.



Important

- [Scan Sensor Gap Calibration Button] is not displayed by the factory default. To display it, set with [System Settings]. For information on how to set, refer to "Services Home - Additional Features"(p.402).



Note

- This function is available only on the DocuWide 3037.
- For details, refer to "1.10 Calibrating the Scan Sensor Gap (DocuWide 3037)" (p.52).

● Fusing Unit Settings

Specify the fusing unit temperature applied during manual feed and the idle operation of the fusing unit.

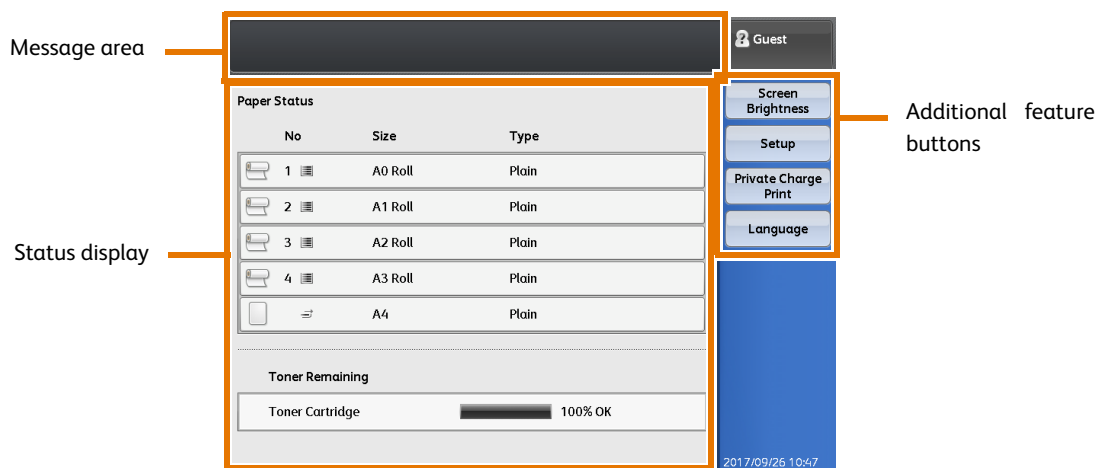


- [Fusing Unit Settings] is not displayed by the factory default. To display it, set with [System Settings]. For information on how to set, refer to "Services Home - Additional Features"(p.402).



- For details, refer to "1.11 Setting the Fusing Unit" (p.57).

1.5.2 The Menu Screen of EP Models



Message field

Displays a message.

Status display

Displays the status of media or remaining amount of toner.

Press the paper tray and then you can change paper series, type, or weight.



- When [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Common Service] > [Paper Tray Settings] > [Paper Tray Attributes on Setup Screen] is set to [Prohibited], Paper series, paper type, thickness cannot be changed on the screen.
- You can check the status of paper and remaining toner level from CentreWare Internet Services. For details, refer to CentreWare Internet Services Help.

Additional Feature Buttons

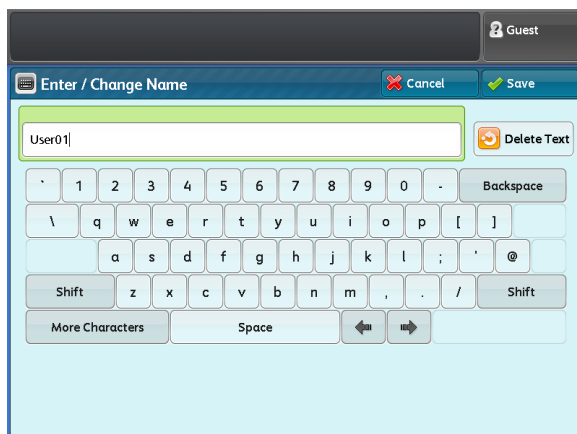
Allows you to adjust the brightness of the touch screen.

For more information, refer to "Additional Feature Buttons"(p.35) for MF models.

- Screen Brightness
- Setup
- Secure Print/Private Charge Print
- Language
- Scan Sensor Gap Calibration (DocuWide 3037 only)
- Fusing Unit Settings

1.6 Text Entry

During operations, you may encounter a screen requesting text to be entered. This section describes how to enter text on the touch screen.



Numerals, alphabet, and symbol characters are allowed.

Item	Description
Entering alphabets and numerals	Press [Standard Characters]. To enter upper-case alphabets, press [Shift]. To toggle to the previous mode, press [Shift] again.
Entering symbols	Press [More Characters].
Entering a space	Press [Space].
Deleting characters	Press [Backspace]. This deletes one character at one time.

1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper

1.7.1 Replacing/Cutting Roll Paper

Load roll paper in roll paper trays.

Once the paper has been loaded, cut the leading edge of the paper.

CAUTION

Roll paper is heavy. When lifting roll paper, make sure to hold it with both hands, and bend your knees enough so as not to hurt your back. It is recommended that two individuals work together to perform the procedure. Dropping or toppling roll paper may cause injury. Be sure to handle roll paper with extra care.



Important

- When loading roll paper, be careful not to pinch your fingers.
- When removing the piece of tape holding the edge of the roll paper from unraveling, make sure to completely remove the adhesive. If the adhesive gets inside the machine, print quality may decrease.
- When loading paper of different type, size, or weight, change the paper settings after you finish loading the paper. For information on how to do this, refer to "9.1.6 Paper Tray Series / Paper Type" (p.314).

Have a new roll paper ready, and replace the old roll paper using the following procedure.

1. Pull out the roll paper tray.



Important

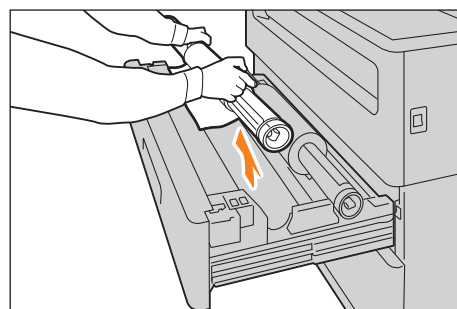
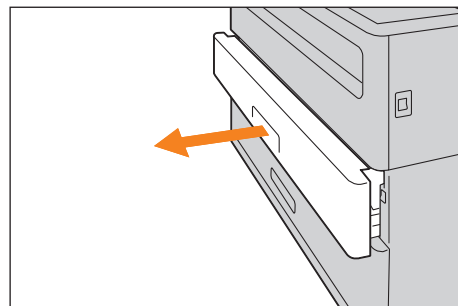
- When the optional Front Print Catch Tray is installed and it is being pulled out, you need to push it back before you can pull out roll media tray.



Note

- When you want to just cut the leading edge of the roll paper without replacing with new roll paper, go to Step 7.

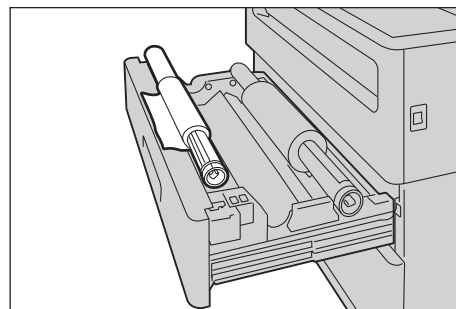
2. Remove the shaft of the roll paper.





Note

- You can put roll paper on the near side of the tray.



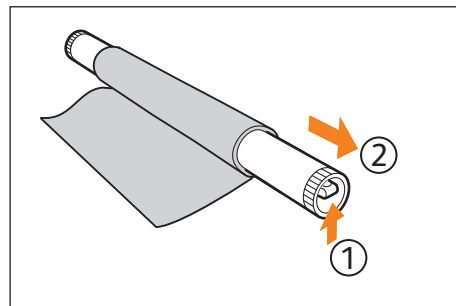
1

- While pulling up the lock release lever at the end of the shaft (①), pull out the shaft from the core of the roll paper (②).



Note

- Pulling up the lock release lever unlocks the roll paper, enabling you to pull out the shaft.

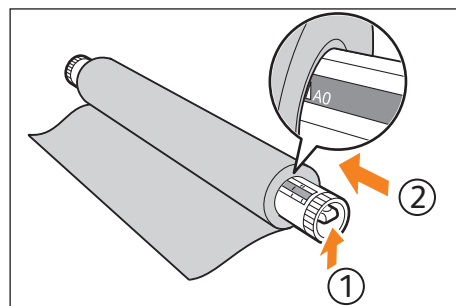


- While pulling up the lock release lever at the end of the shaft (①), attach new roll paper onto the shaft according to the paper size guide on the shaft (②).

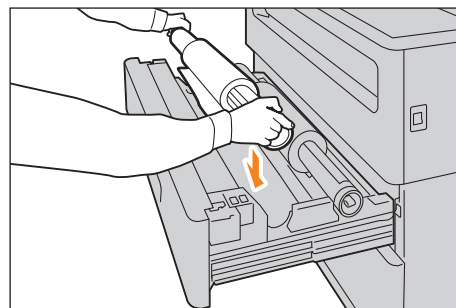


Important

- When the optional Front Print Catch Tray is installed and it is being pulled out, you need to push it back before you can pull out roll media tray.



- Make sure that the roll paper's winding direction is correct, and place the shaft onto the shaft guide.



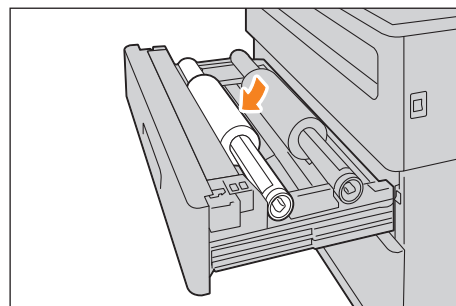
- Rotate the roll paper until the leading edge of the paper touches the roller.

The roll paper is automatically conveyed and stops.



Important

- When the roll paper does not feed smoothly because its leading edge is damaged, cut the leading edge using a cutter knife or a similar tool before loading the paper.



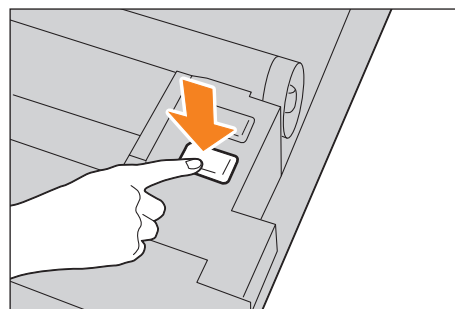
7. Press the cutter button.

The leading edge of the paper is cut.

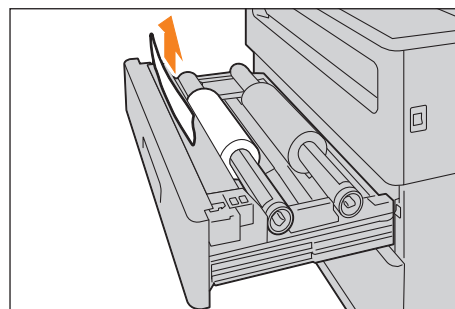


Note

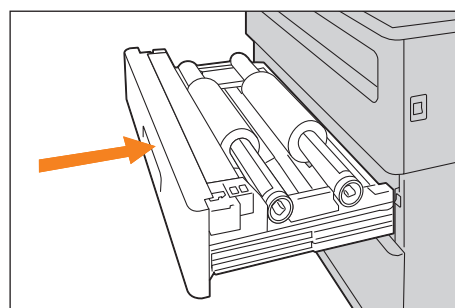
- If you press the cutter button once, 150 mm of the paper is cut. If you hold down the cutter button, the paper comes out until you release the button, and it is cut at the position where you release the button.



8. Remove the trimmed piece of paper.



9. Gently push the roll paper tray back into the machine all the way until it stops.



1.7.2 Loading Cut Sheet Paper (Bypass)

When using cut sheets for copy or print, load the cut sheet via the bypass (manual) feed table.



Important

- When changing the media type, size, or weight, make sure that you change the media settings before proceeding operations. For information on how to do this, refer to "9.1.6 Paper Tray Series / Paper Type" (p.314).



Note

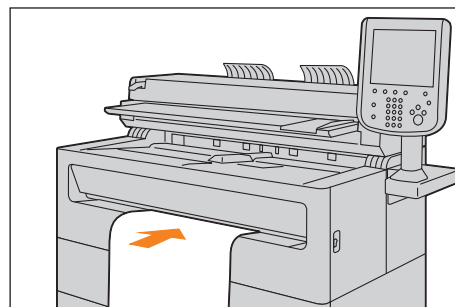
- Paper of up to 2,000 mm in length can be loaded.

1. Align both edges of paper with the scale of the bypass feed table. The paper is automatically conveyed and stops.



Important

- Load paper one sheet at one time.
- If paper is curled, hold the curled corners with both hands when inserting the paper.
- Do not release your hands from the paper until it is conveyed. If you release your hands when you hear a sound, the paper may get jammed.



1.7.3 Switching Between Trays

When the paper tray has run out paper, you can manually switch to another tray to continue printing.

-  **Note**
- Depending on the [Substitute Tray] setting, this screen may not appear and prints may be made with paper larger than or close to the size of the document. For details, refer to CentreWare Internet Services Help.

1. Press [Paper Supply].
2. Select the paper tray you want to use, and press [Close].
Printing is resumed.

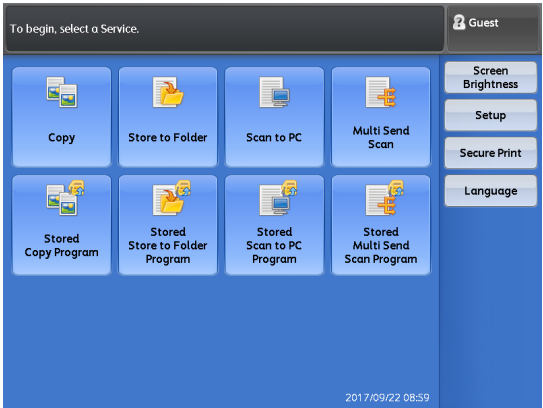


1.7.4 Checking the Status of Paper

This following describes how to check the paper status.

-  **Note**
- You can also check the status of paper using CentreWare Internet Services. For details, refer to CentreWare Internet Services Help.

1. Press [Copy] on the menu screen.



2. Check the paper size, type, and remaining amount.



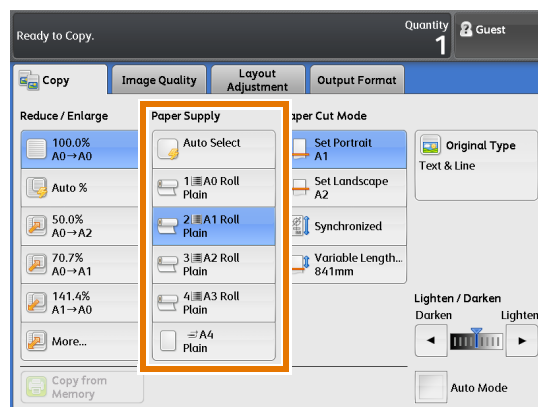
Note

- The icon displayed in the paper tray selection item shows the remaining amount of paper.

: Indicates that 20 to 100 % of paper remains.

: Indicates that 20 % or less of paper remains, close to nil.

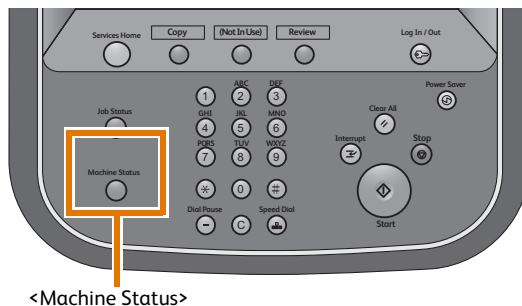
: Indicates that paper runs out, or is not loaded.



1.8 Billing Information

On the [Billing Information] screen, you can check the number of printed pages measured by individual meters.

1. Press the <Machine Status> button on the control panel.



2. Press the [Billing Information] tab.
3. Check each meter on the displayed screen.

Serial Number

Displays the serial number of the machine.

Meter 1

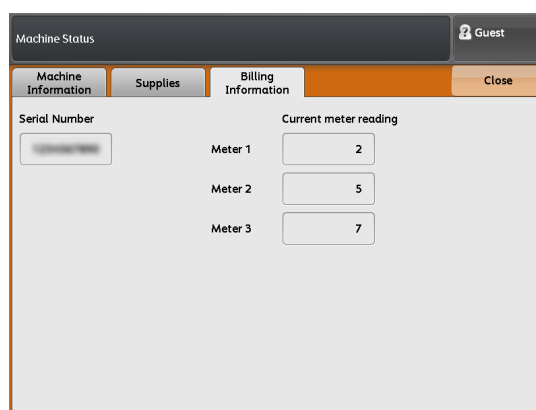
Displays the sum total of the surface area printed by the machine so far. (Unit: m²)

Meter 2

Displays the sum total of the length printed by the machine so far. (Unit: m or 0.1 m)

Meter 3

Displays the total number of pages stamped.



Note

- Stamps will be counted according to the number of the pages imprinted with stamps regardless of their color, size, and number.
Even if multiple stamps are imprinted in one page, that page is counted as one.
- When the Stamp feature is not installed, 0 is always displayed.

1.9 Replacing Consumables

We recommend you to use the following consumables as they are manufactured to meet the specifications of the machine.

Type of Consumables	Product Code	Quantity/Box
Toner cartridge	CT202875	1 unit/box
Waste toner container	CWAA0920	1 unit/box



- The use of consumables not recommended by Fuji Xerox may degrade image quality and performance. Use only consumables recommended by Fuji Xerox.



- We recommend that you always keep spare consumables available.
- The way you order the waste toner container varies depending on your contract.

Handling consumables

- Always store consumables in their boxes in a horizontal position, and always follow the instructions on the packaging.
- Do not unpack consumables before use. Avoid storing consumables in the following locations:
 - In high temperature and humid locations
 - Near heat-generating devices
 - Areas exposed to direct sunlight
 - Dusty areas
- When using consumables, carefully read precautions for use that are instructed on their bodies or packages.
- When calling your local Fuji Xerox representative to order consumables, have the product codes ready.
- Used toner cartridge and waste toner bottle require special processing during disposal. Return the used toner cartridge and waste toner bottle to your local Fuji Xerox representative.

WARNING

- Never use a vacuum cleaner for spilled toner and residual toner in this product, toner cartridge or toner bottle. It may catch fire by electric sparks inside a vacuum cleaner and cause explosion. Use a broom or a wet cloth to wipe off the spills. If you spill a large volume of toner, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
- Never throw a toner cartridge into an open flame. Remaining toner in the cartridge may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion. If you have a used toner cartridge no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.
- Never throw a waste toner bottle into an open flame. Toner may catch fire and cause burn injuries or explosion. If you have a used waste toner bottle no longer needed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative for its disposal.

CAUTION

- Keep toner cartridges and waste toner bottles out of the reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows toner, spit it out, rinse mouth with water, drink water and consult a physician immediately.
- When replacing toner cartridges and waste toner bottles be careful not to spill the toner. In case of any toner spills, avoid contact with clothes, skin, eyes and mouth as well as inhalation.
- Take emergency measures according to the following:
 - If toner spills onto your skin or clothing, wash it off with soap and water.
 - If you get toner particles in your eyes, wash it out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes until irritation is gone. Consult a physician if necessary.
 - If you inhale toner particles, move to a fresh air location and rinse your mouth with water.
 - If you swallow toner, spit it out, rinse your mouth with water, drink plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

Collecting Used Consumables

We collect used consumables and recycle them to protect the environment and to utilize the resources effectively. Used consumables need proper treatment. Make sure to return them to our local Fuji Xerox representative.

1.9.1 Replacing the Toner Cartridge

When the toner becomes low, one of the following messages appears on the touch screen. Take appropriate actions according to the message.

- The Toner Cartridge needs to be replaced soon.

The Toner Cartridge needs to be replaced soon.



Note

- The number of pages that the machine can copy or print after this message is displayed is approximately 2,000 pages.
- The remaining page yield for copy/print jobs is applicable when A4 size original with image density of 6 % are used. The value is only an estimate and varies depending on the conditions such as the content printed, paper size, paper type, and the machine operating environment.



● Replace the Toner Cartridge.

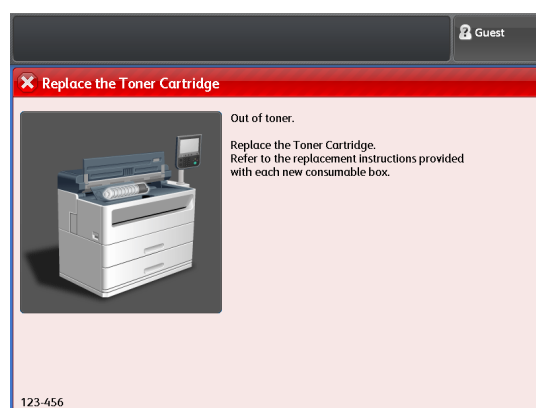
Replace the toner cartridge.

The machine can no longer copy, scan or print if this message is displayed.



Note

- When the toner is low, the machine might stop during printing and displays the message. In this case, the machine resumes copying or printing after the toner cartridge is replaced.



Have a new toner cartridge ready, and load toner using the following procedure.



Important

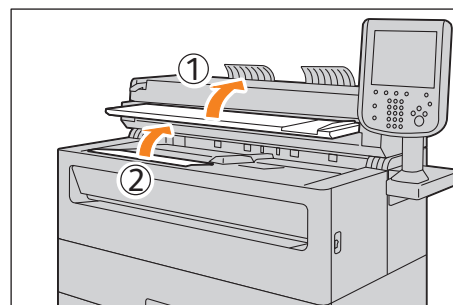
- When loading toner or replacing the waste toner container, the toner may spill and soil the floor. We recommend you to lay paper or anything similar on the floor beforehand.

1. Make sure that the machine is not operating, and lift the original table (①). And then open the toner cover (②).



Important

- When the optional Front Print Catch Tray is installed, you need to remove the Front Print Catch Tray before you can open the toner cover.

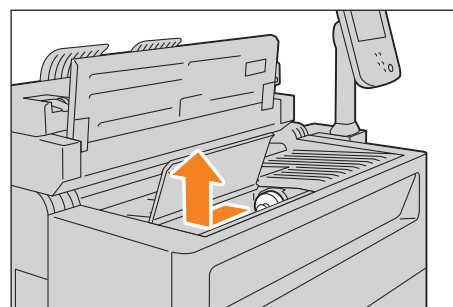


2. Take out the toner cartridge.



Important

- Fuji Xerox will collect the used toner cartridge. Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.



3. Take out the new toner cartridge from the box, and shake it well to make the toner even.



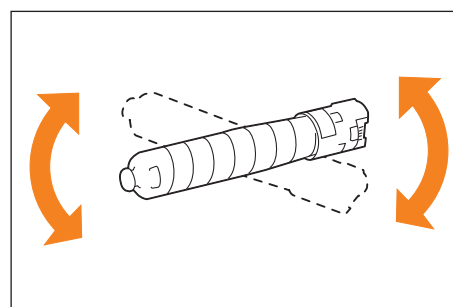
Important

- Do not touch the shutter part of the toner cartridge.

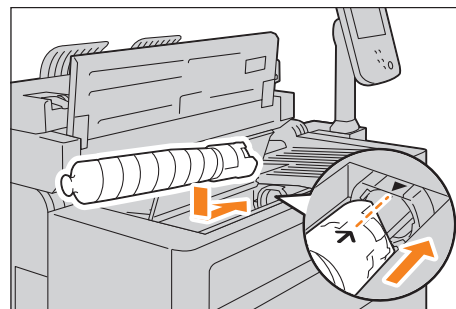


Note

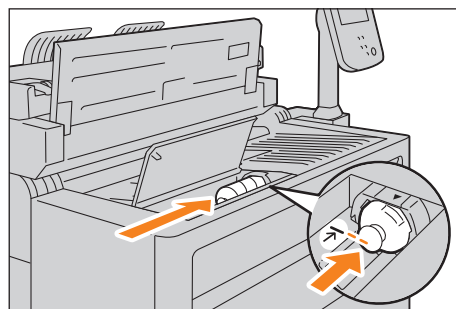
- Shake the toner cartridge approximately 10 times.



4. Align the toner cartridge outlet with the toner replenishing port.



5. Lower the left side of the toner cartridge and press it until it fits in the supply port.

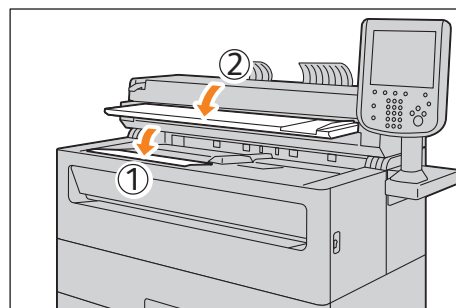


6. Close the toner cover (①) and return the original table to its original position (②).



Note

- Check the toner cartridge status in "1.13.3 Supplies" (p.66).



1.9.2 Replacing the Waste Toner Container

When the waste toner container is full of toner, one of the following messages appears on the touch screen. Take appropriate actions according to the message.

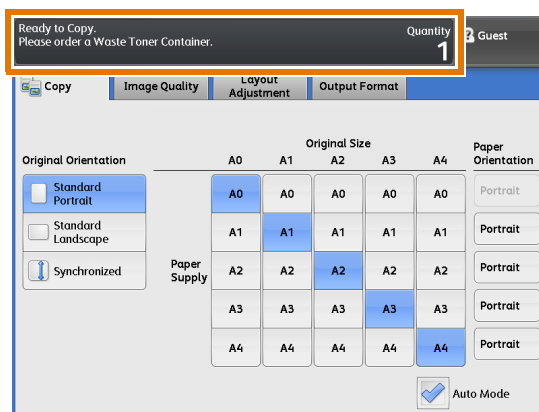
- Please order a Waste Toner Container.

Please order a waste toner container.



Note

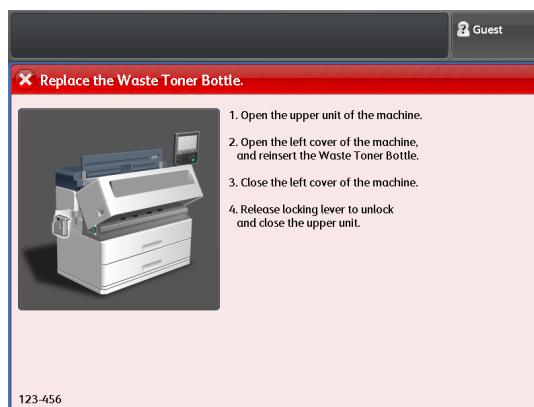
- The number of pages that the machine can copy or print after this message is displayed is approximately 3,000 pages.
- The remaining page yield for copy/print jobs is applicable when A4 size paper with image density of 6 % are used. The value is only an estimate and varies depending on the conditions such as the content printed, paper size, paper type, and the machine operating environment.



● Replace the Waste Toner Bottle.

Replace the waste toner container.

The machine can no longer copy, scan or print if this message is displayed.



Have a new waste toner container ready, and replace the old waste toner container using the following procedure.



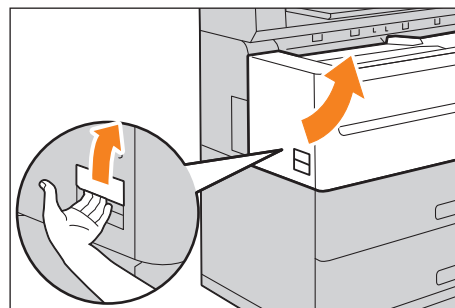
- When loading toner or replacing the waste toner container, the toner may spill and soil the floor. We recommend you to lay paper or anything similar on the floor beforehand.

1. Make sure that the machine is not operating. While pulling the upper unit release lever, open the upper unit.

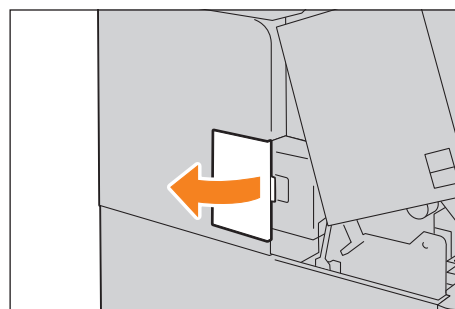


Note

- Holding the lever by the left of center (rear side) makes it easy to raise the upper unit.



2. Open the cover on the left of the machine.

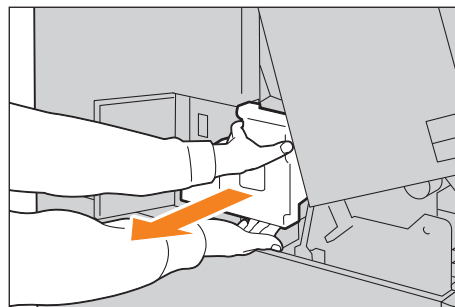


3. Pull the waste toner container towards you and gently remove it.



Important

- Hold the waste toner container with both hands when pulling it out towards you to avoid dropping.



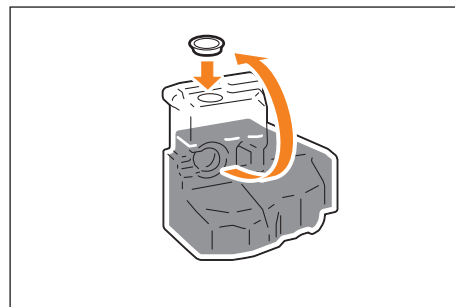
4. Place the waste toner container on the floor covered by protection such as a sheet of paper.

Remove the cap from the recess of the waste toner container and attach it to the hole of the waste toner container.

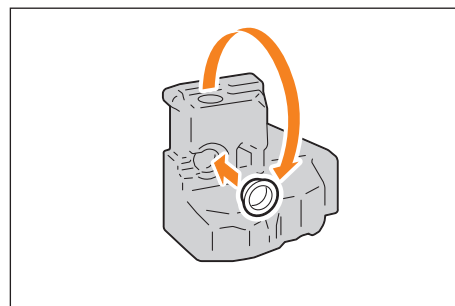


Important

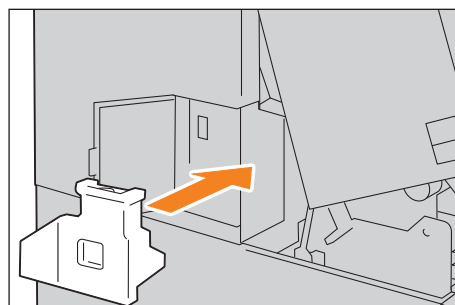
- Put the used waste toner container in the provided bag, and return it to your Fuji Xerox representative.



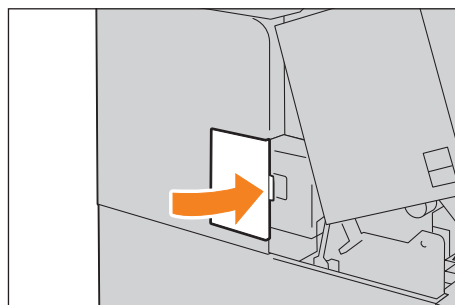
5. Remove the cap from the new waste toner container, and attach it to the recess of the waste toner container.



6. Attach the new waste toner container.



7. Close the cover on the left of the machine.

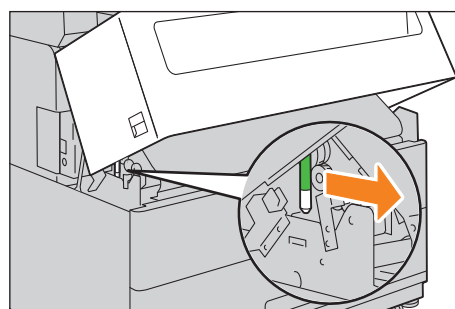


8. Pull the green stopper on the left inside the printer towards you.



Important

- Watch your fingers when closing the cover.



9. Place your hands on both ends of the upper unit, and close it.



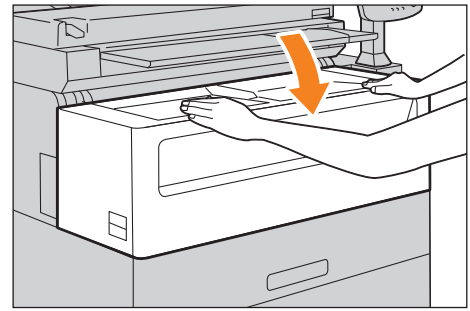
Important

- When the waste toner container is not installed correctly, the message will not disappear and the machine will not operate even if you close the upper unit.



Note

- Confirm the status of waste toner container in "1.13.3 Supplies" (p.66).



1.10 Calibrating the Scan Sensor Gap (DocuWide 3037)

Environmental variations such as temperature and humidity may affect the positioning of each scanning sensors, and this can result in gaps at joints between adjacent sensors.

In such a case, you can calibrate the gaps using functions under [Scan Sensor Gap Calibration].

 **Note** • This function is available only on the DocuWide 3037.

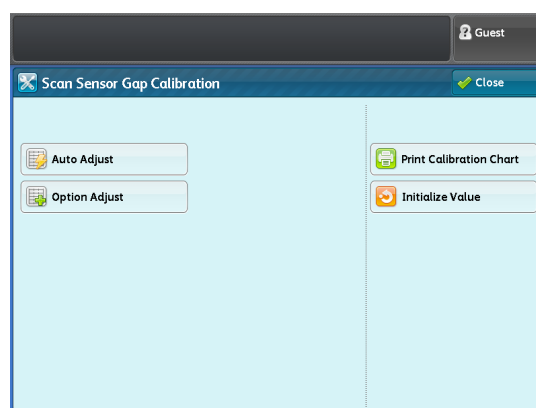
1.10.1 Printing the calibration chart

Use these steps to print the calibration chart.

1. Press [Print Calibration Chart] on the [Scan Sensor Gap Calibration] screen.

 **Note** • [Scan Sensor Gap Calibration Button] is not displayed by the factory default. To display it, set with [System Settings].
For information on how to set, refer to "Services Home - Additional Features"(p.402).

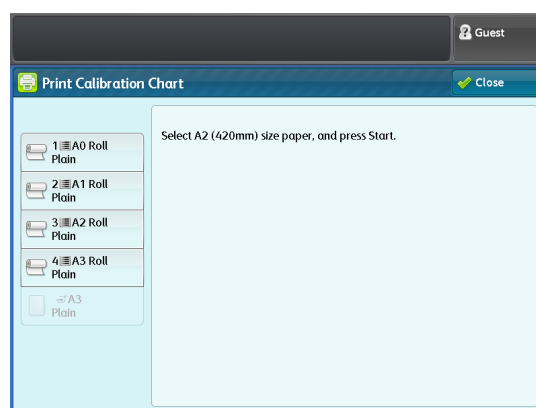
2. Press [Print Calibration Chart].



3. The screen shows you the sizes of paper loaded in trays. Select A2 (420 mm) paper, and press the <Start> button on the control panel.

 **Note** • Paper larger than A2 can also be used to print the calibration chart. However there will be margin on the printed chart.

The calibration chart is printed out.



1.10.2 Performing Auto Adjustment

Use these steps to automatically adjust the gaps by using the calibration chart.

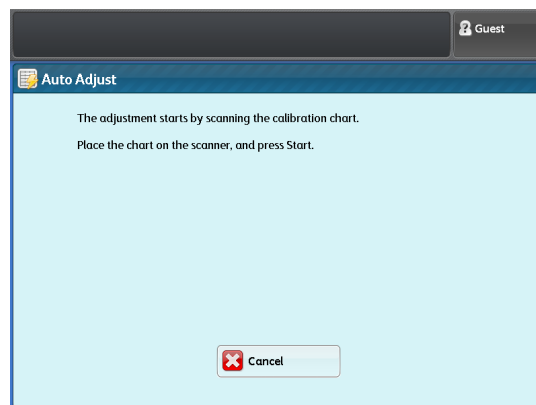
1. Press [Auto Adjust] on the [Scan Sensor Gap Calibration] screen.
2. Load the calibration chart face down on the original table, and press the <Start> button on the control panel.

The gaps between the scanning sensors are automatically calibrated.



Note

- After auto calibration has completed, check the calibration result by using your original.
- If auto calibration has failed with an error, take corrective actions according to the error code, and perform auto calibration again. For more information on error codes, refer to "1.10.5 Error Code" (p.56).



1.10.3 Performing Optional Adjustment

If you are not satisfied with the result of Auto Adjust, you can perform the calibration manually. Up to three adjustment values derived from the calibration can be registered to the machine.

Step 1: Registering adjustment values

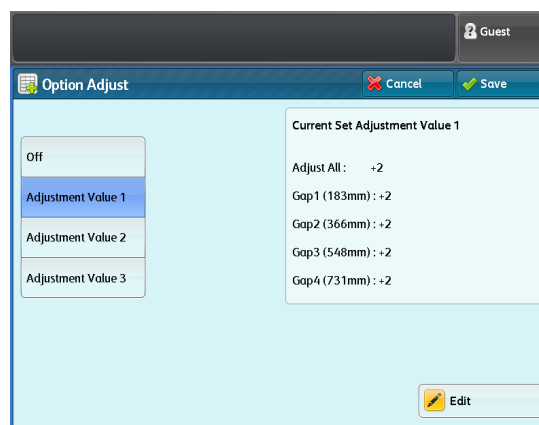
1. Press [Option Adjust] on the [Scan Sensor Gap Calibration] screen.
2. Select [Adjustment Value1], [Adjustment Value2], or [Adjustment Value3].



Note

- If you choose not to register these adjustment values, select [Off].

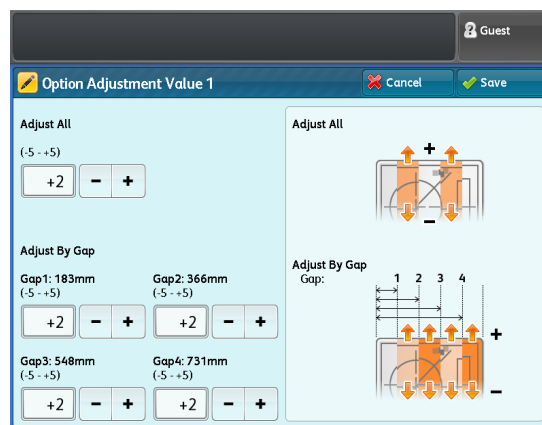
3. Press [Edit].



4. Press [+] or [-] to set the adjustment value in the range of -5 to +5 steps.

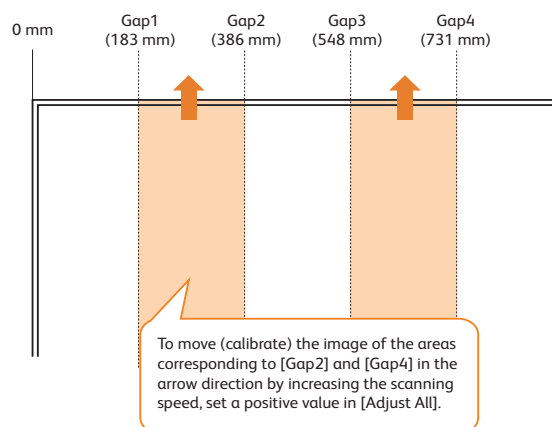


- Each gap is adjusted by the amount equivalent to the sum of Auto Adjust, Adjust All, and Adjust By Gap.



Adjust All

Use this option to adjust the scanning speed (original feed speed of the motor) to calibrate all the gaps.



Step 2 Performing Optional Adjustment

1. Select a registered adjustment value.



Note

- If you choose not to use the registered adjustment values, select [Off], return to "Step 1: Registering adjustment values"(p.53), and set an adjustment value.

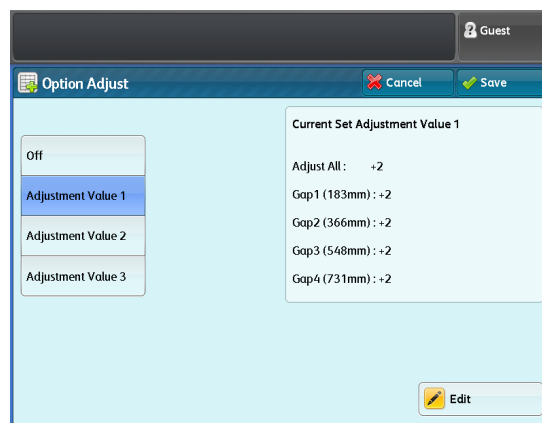
2. Press [Save].

Calibration of gaps is performed using the adjustment values you have set.



Note

- After Option Adjust has completed, check the calibration result by using your original.
- If Option Adjust has failed with an error, take corrective actions according to the error code, and perform Option Adjust again. For more information on error codes, refer to "1.10.5 Error Code" (p.56).



1.10.4 Initializing Adjustment Values

Use these steps to restore all of the adjustment values to their factory defaults.



Important

- The adjustment values for Auto Adjust are also reset to the factory defaults.

1. Press [Initialize Value] on the [Scan Sensor Gap Calibration] screen.

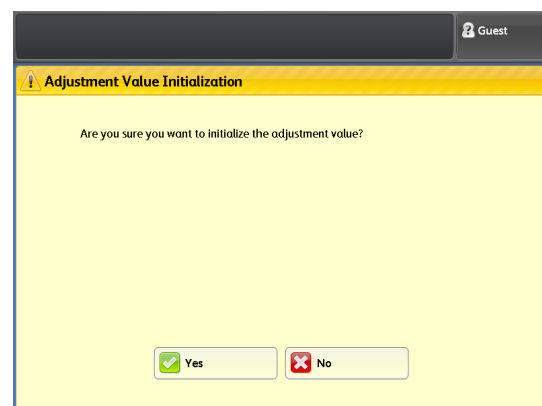
2. Select [Yes].

The adjustment values are reset to the factory defaults.



Note

- If you choose not to reset the adjustment values to the factory defaults, select [No].



1.10.5 Error Code

An error code is displayed if calibration has failed with an error.
Refer to the error codes in the following table to resolve problems.

Error Code	Cause	Remedy
062-702	- The <Stop> button was pressed while the calibration chart was still being scanned. - A paper jam occurred.	Load the calibration chart again.
062-714	- The calibration chart is loaded wrong side up. - The calibration chart is loaded in an incorrect orientation. - The calibration chart is torn.	Check that the calibration chart is free of dirt and is not torn, and load it face down on the original table.
062-713 062-725	- The position of the original guide is being shifted to the right. - The right edge of the calibration chart is not aligned with the original guide. - The calibration chart was fed skewed. - The calibration chart was not printed in its entirety or is torn.	- Check whether the original guide is at the correct position. - Check that the calibration chart is free of dirt and is not torn, and load it face down on the original table.
062-735	The calibration chart is not being fed at the constant speed.	Make sure that you do not apply external force on or pull the calibration chart while it is being scanned.
Others*	Auto Adjust failed.	- Check the remedies above again, and load the calibration chart. - If the trouble persists even after performing the suggested actions, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

* Any other codes between 062-701 and 062-754

1.11 Setting the Fusing Unit

Specify the fusing unit temperature applied during manual feed and the idle operation of the fusing unit.

1.11.1 Setting the Temperature of the Fusing Unit

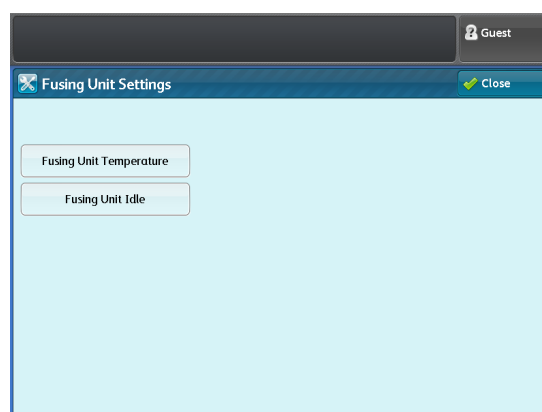
1. From the menu screen, press [Fusing Unit].



Note

- [Fusing Unit Settings] is not displayed by the factory default. To display it, set with the system settings function. For information on how to set, refer to "Services Home - Additional Features"(p.402)

2. Press [Fusing Unit Temperature].

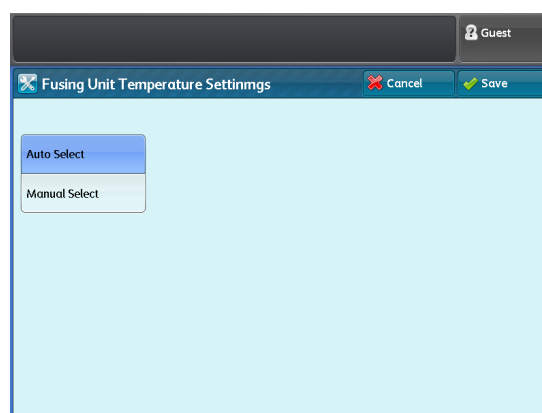


3. Select [Auto Select] or [Manual Select].



Note

- For feeding methods other than manual feed, this setting is not applied and the temperature is automatically controlled, even when [Manual Select] is selected.



4. When [Manual Select] is selected, select the temperature of the fusing unit in 8 levels between [High] and [Low].

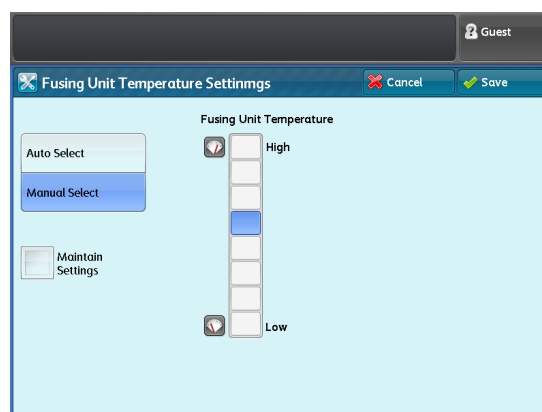
5. If you want to keep the temperature setting even after the power switch is turned off and then on, select the [Maintain Settings] check box.



Note

- When this check box is not selected, once the power switch is turned off and then on, the machine operates with [Auto Select] enabled.

6. Press [Start].



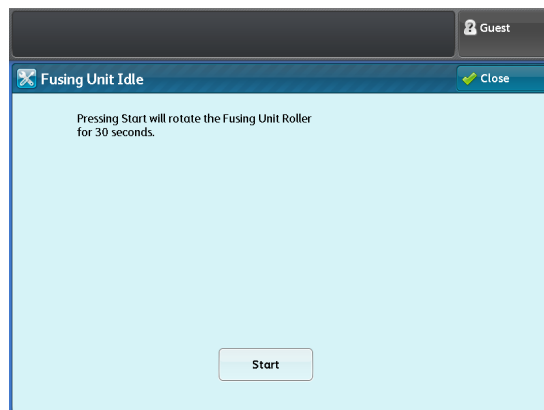
1.11.2 Idling the Fusing Unit

When copying or printing on thick paper/tracing paper, in order to make toner fixing more stable, idle the fusing unit before performing a copy/print operation.

1. On the [Fusing Unit Settings] screen, press [Fusing Unit Idle].

2. Press [Start].

The fusing unit roller will rotate for 30 seconds.



1.12 Cleaning the Machine

This section describes how to clean the machine.

If the reflector on the back of the original cover or the surface of the scanning glass is dirty, it may result in black lines or streaks on the entire copies.

WARNING

When cleaning this product, use the designated cleaning materials exclusive to it. Other cleaning materials may result in poor performance of the product. Never use aerosol cleaners, or it may catch fire and cause explosion.

CAUTION

When cleaning this product, always switch off the power, and unplug the product. Access to a live machine interior may cause electric shock.



Important

- Do not use benzene, paint thinner, or other volatile liquids or spray insect repellent on the machine as doing so may discolor, deform, or crack covers.
- If it is difficult to remove dirt, try gently wiping with a firmly wrung soft cloth moistened with a small amount of neutral detergent. Then, wipe with a dried cloth.
- Do not use cleaning agents other than water or neutral detergent.
- Cleaning the machine with an excessive amount of water may cause the machine to malfunction or damage originals during copying.

- Cleaning the Machine (DocuWide 6057)p.59
- Cleaning the Machine (DocuWide 3037)p.61

1.12.1 Cleaning the Machine (DocuWide 6057)

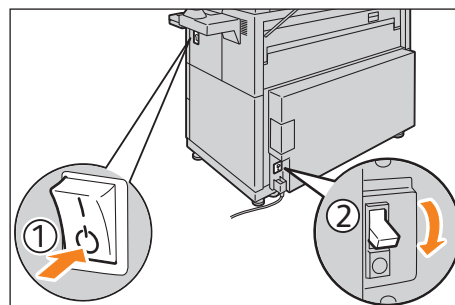
1. Turn off the power switch (①).
2. Confirm that the main power lamp is turned off, then turn off the power circuit breaker (②).



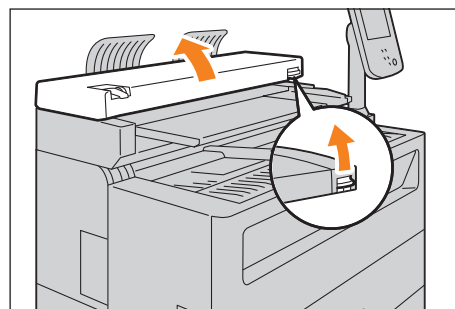
Important

- Turn off the power switch and the power breaker when cleaning to avoid the risk of electric shock.

3. Disconnect the power plug from the outlet.



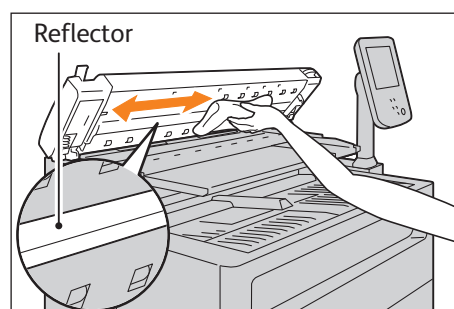
4. Raise the lever at the right end of the original cover, and lift the original cover.



5. Wipe the white reflection plate on the back of the original cover with a chemical cloth.



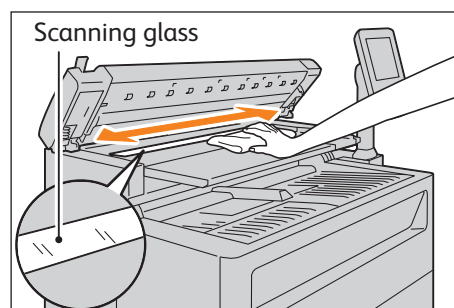
If streaks appear on the prints, wipe the reflection plate.



6. Wipe the surface of the scanning glass with a chemical cloth.



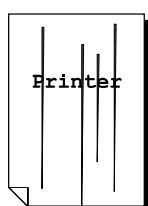
If spots appear on the prints, wipe the surface of the scanning glass.



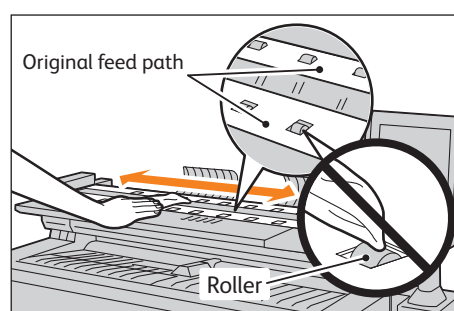
Important

- Do not use excessive force on the glass, it may result in malfunctions or physical damage.

7. Wipe the original feed path with a chemical cloth.



If streaks appear on the prints, or the original does not feed, wipe the original feed path.



Important

- Do not wipe the roller. If wiped, the oil on the chemical cloth smears the roller, which can cause slip of the original when it is fed.

8. Put the original cover back to the original position.
9. Insert the power plug into the outlet.

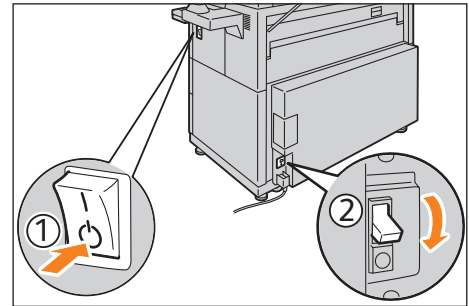
1.12.2 Cleaning the Machine (DocuWide 3037)

1. Turn off the power switch (①).
2. Confirm that the main power lamp is turned off, then turn off the power circuit breaker (②).



- Turn off the power switch and the power breaker when cleaning to avoid the risk of electric shock.

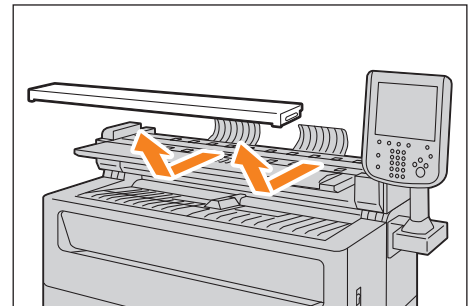
3. Disconnect the power plug from the outlet.



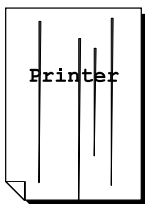
4. Raise the right end lever of the original cover, and lift the original cover.



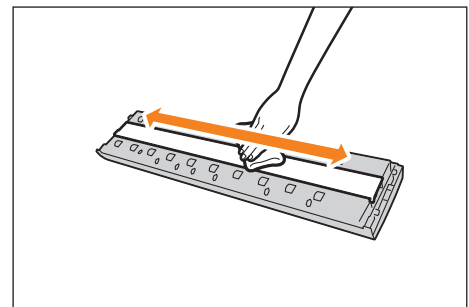
- Place the removed original cover on a flat surface such as table.



5. Wipe the white reflection plate on the back of the original cover with a chemical cloth.



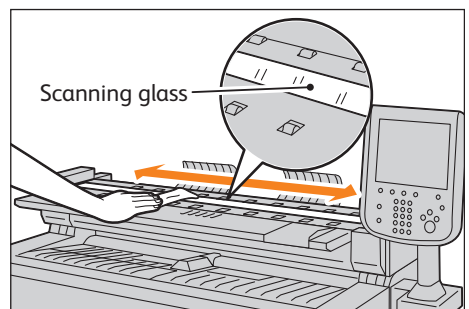
If streaks appear on the prints, wipe the reflection plate.



6. Wipe the surface of the scanning glass with a chemical cloth.

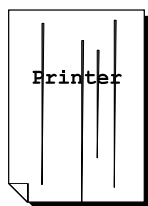


If spots appear on the prints, wipe the surface of the scanning glass.

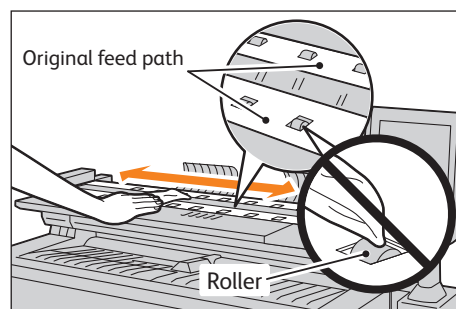


- Do not use excessive force on the glass, it may result in malfunctions or physical damage.

7. Wipe the original feed path with a chemical cloth.



If streaks appear on the prints, original does not feed, wipe the document feed path.



Important

- Do not wipe the roller. If wiped, the oil on the chemical cloth smears the roller, which can cause slip of the document when it is fed.

8. Put the original cover back to the original position.

9. Insert the power plug into the outlet.

1.13 Machine Status

This section describes the features for checking the machine status.

Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Machine Status Overviewp.63
- Machine / Informationp.64
- Supplies.....p.66

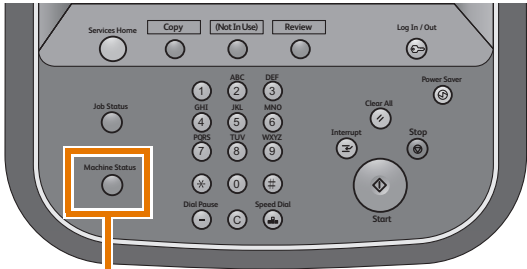
1.13.1 Machine Status Overview

You can check the status of the machine or the number of printed pages on the screen. You can also print the list of registered stamps.

1. Press the <Machine Status> button.
The [Machine Status] screen allows you to confirm the following.

Confirming the Machine Status/ Outputting the Report

You can check the configuration of the machine. You can also change the Print Mode or print the list of registered stamps.



<Machine Status> button

-  **Refer** • For details, refer to "1.13.2 Machine / Information" (p.64).

Confirming Consumables

You can check the status of consumables.

-  **Refer** • See I For details, refer to "1.13.3 Supplies" (p.66)

Confirming the Meter

Displays the count of meters 1 to 3.

-  **Refer** • See I For details, refer to "1.8 Billing Information" (p.44).

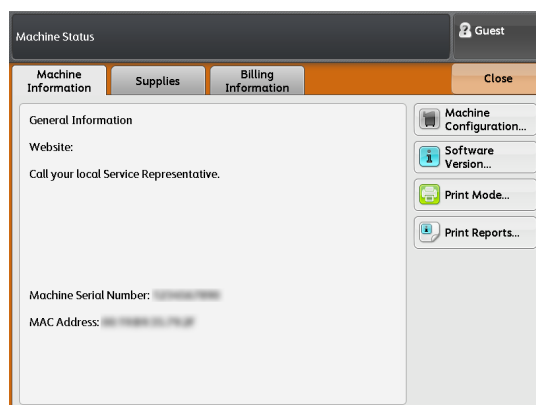
1.13.2 Machine / Information

On the [Machine Information] screen, you can check the configuration of the machine, switch between print modes, and print reports and list.

Details of each function and references are as follows.

- Machine Information.....p.64
- Print Modep.65
- Print Reportsp.65

1. Press the <Machine Status> button on the control panel.
2. This screen allows you to view information on the machine.



Machine Information

You can check the machine serial number, machine configuration, and software version on the [Machine Information] screen.

1. Check the general information on the machine.

Website:

Tells you whom to contact when making inquiries about maintenance and operation.

Machine Serial Number

Indicates the serial number of the machine.

MAC Address

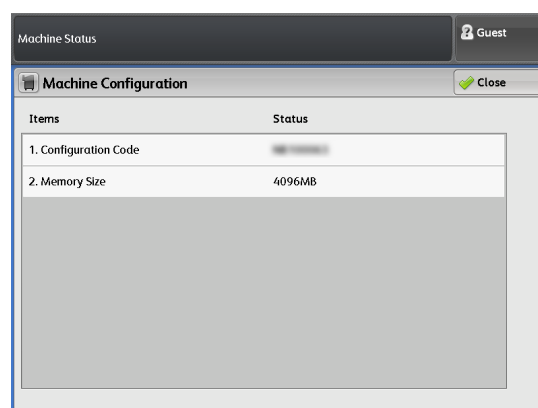
Indicates the MAC address of the machine.

Machine Configuration

Press [Machine Configuration] to display the [Machine Configuration] screen.

You can check the following information:

- Configuration Code
- Memory Size

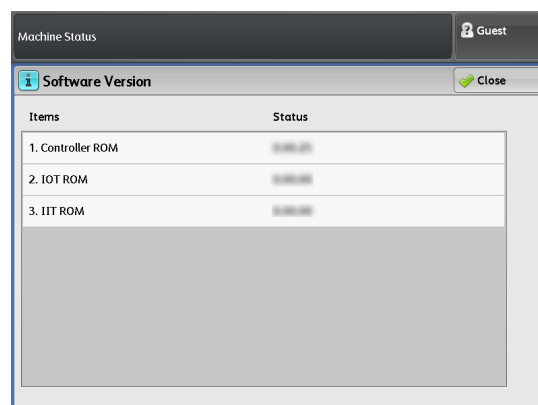


Software Version

Press [Software Version] to display the [Software Version] screen.

You can check the following information:

- Controller ROM
- IOT ROM
- IIT ROM



Print Mode

The following describes how to switch the print mode between online and offline.

1. On the [Machine Information] screen, press [Print Mode].
2. Select the print mode.

Off-line

The machine stops receiving data from computers. Any data that the machine has already received will be printed, and the subsequent data will not be received.

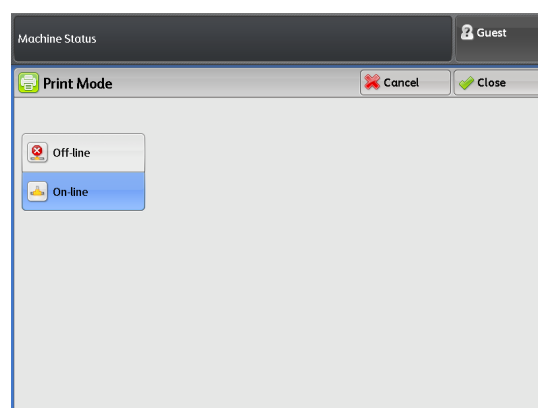


Note

- The machine does not revert to on-line automatically as far as [Off-line] is selected. Any print jobs cannot be run during off-line (although copy can be done), so do not forget to reset the mode to [On-line].

On-line

The machine receives data from computers.



Print Reports

- Printing the list of stamps

This section explains how to print a list of registered stamps.

1. On the [Machine Information] screen, press [Print Reports].

2. Press [Stamp List].

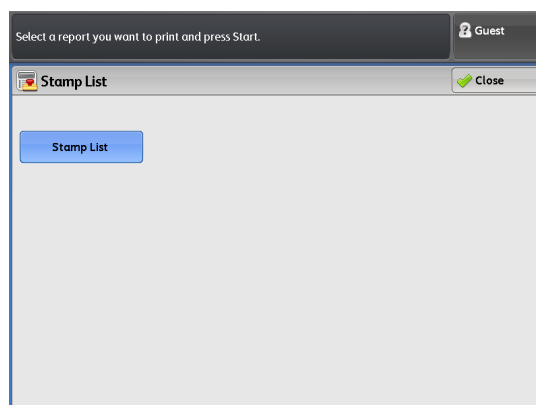


3. Press [Stamp List].
4. Press the <Start> button on the control panel.
A list of stamps will be printed.



Note

- You can set which roll to feed paper or which paper cutting method to be applied when printing a stamp list. Refer to "12.3.9 Detailed Settings" (p.410).



1.13.3 Supplies

The [Supplies] screen allows you to check the status of consumables. The status of consumables is shown as "OK", "Replace Now", etc.

This following describes how to check the status of consumable.



Note

- You can check the status of consumables from CentreWare Internet Services. For details, refer to CentreWare Internet Services Help.



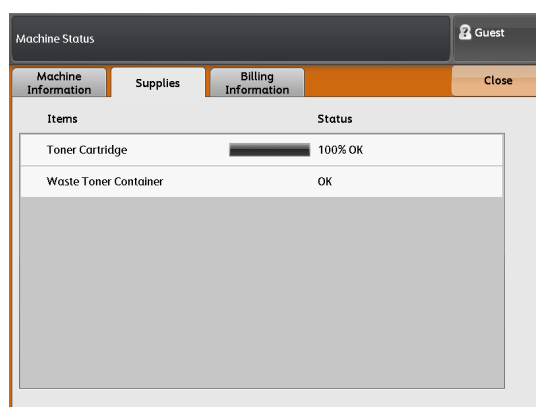
Refer

- For information on how to replace consumables, refer to "1.9 Replacing Consumables" (p.45).

1. Press the <Machine Status> button.
2. Press the [Supplies] tab to check the status of consumables.

You can check the following information on the [Supplies] screen:

- Toner Cartridge
- Waste Toner Container



1.14 Job Status

1.14.1 Checking Job Status

You can check current, pending, and completed jobs on the [Job Status] screen.

1. Press the <Job Status> button on the control panel.
The [Job Status] screen allows you to perform the following actions:

Checking current/pending jobs

A list of current and pending jobs can be displayed.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "1.14.2 Checking Current/Pending Jobs" (p.67).

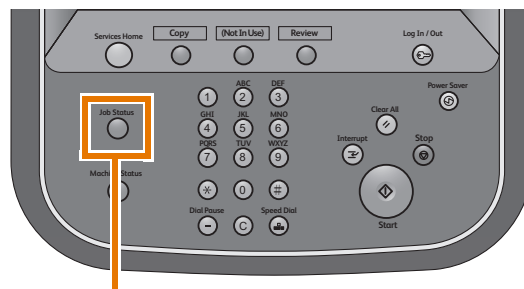
Checking completed jobs

The status of completed jobs can be displayed.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "1.14.3 Checking Completed Jobs" (p.68).



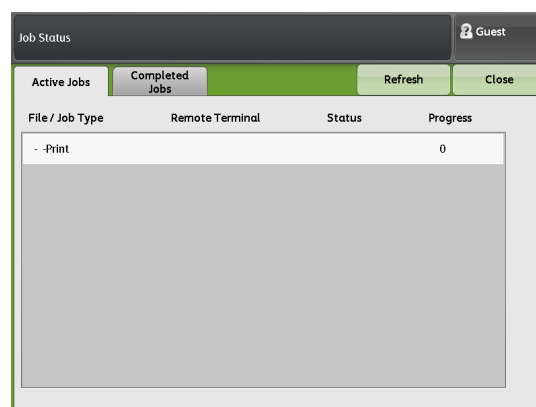
<Job Status> button

1.14.2 Checking Current/Pending Jobs

This following describes how to check current and pending jobs.

1. Press the <Job Status> button.
2. Check current and pending jobs on the displayed screen.

my Job	Status	Progress
Copy	Copying	The number of copies already output/Total number of copies specified
Copy	Print Wait	0/The number of copies ready to print
Print Job	—	The number of spools ready to print



Important

- When ArcEPS is used for printing, [Occupied mode] is displayed in [Remote Terminal] on the [Active Jobs] tab of the job confirmation screen.
In the meantime, print instructions other than the one from ArcEPS will be received, but will not be executed until the occupied mode is canceled.



Note

- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- Press [Refresh] to refresh the display.
- Print jobs are displayed at the end of the list.

3. Press [Close] after the confirmation.

1.14.3 Checking Completed Jobs

This following describes how to check completed jobs.

You can check whether a job has been completed successfully. Selecting a job allows you to see its details.

1. Press the <Job Status> button.
2. Press the [Completed Jobs] tab to check the status of completed jobs.



Note

- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- Press [Refresh] to refresh the display.

3. Select a job to see the details.

4. Press [Close] after the confirmation.

Job Status				Guest	
Active Jobs		Completed Jobs		Refresh	
File / Job Type	Remote Terminal	Status	Pages		
- Copy	100.0%	Completed	1		
- Copy		Deleted			
- Copy	100.0%	Completed	2		
- Copy	100.0%	Completed	1		
00017-Store to Folder	Folder 001	Completed	1		
- Print	Atuya.Baba	Completed	20		
00015-Multi Send Scan	aaa-86-fe-a4-f	Completed	100%		
00014-Multi Send Scan	aaa-85-fd-a3-e	Completed	100%		

Job Status

Guest

Copy

Close

Original Size : 420x0mm

Reduce / Enlarge : 100.0%

Output Color : Black & White

Status : Completed

Time Completed : 2017/09/11 11:34

Number of Sheets : 1

Tray : Roll 1

Paper Size : 594x841mm

1.15 Logging in as Authorized User

There are two ways to log in as an authorized user. One is to use the control panel of the machine (Control Panel Authentication). The other is to touch your smart card on the IC Card Reader (Smart Card Authentication).

When logging into the machine via Control Panel Authentication, User ID must be entered. A password is also required when [Password Entry from Control Panel] is set to [On] in [Authentication] under [Authentication/Security Settings].



Important

- When the Auto Clear feature is enabled in [Auto Clear] under [System Settings] > [Common Service Settings] > [Machine Clock / Timers], authentication is automatically canceled when the preset time elapses. For information on how to do this, refer to "Auto Clear"(p.399).
- When Auto Clear is disabled, any user can access the machine features if the previous authorized user failed to log out from the machine. After you are done using the machine, make sure to log out of the authenticated mode.
- While Direct Scan is in progress, the authentication operation is not available. For details on Direct Scan, refer to "8.6 Direct Scan (DocuWide 6057)" (p.301)



Note

- If some of the features are restricted based on the authentication settings, the process currently being performed still continues even when the user has logged out of the authenticated mode. After all the Copy/Scan/Print jobs have been completed, the screen returns to the menu screen.
- An optional component is necessary to use an IC card reader. For more information, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
- An IC Card Reader is a device to be used in conjunction with the machine to perform user authentication by reading the presented Smart Card, restricting users from operating some of the Copy, Scan, and Print features on the control panel. For information on how to manage or use the IC Card Reader, refer to the manual provided with the device.



Refer

- For details on how to make settings for [Password Entry from Control Panel], refer to "Password Entry from Control Panel"(p.452).
- For details on how to register users on the touch screen, refer to "10.5.3 Registering a User" (p.331).

1.15.1 Logging In/Out through Control Panel Authentication with User ID

User ID Authentication

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.

2. Enter your User ID and the password (if required), by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and select [Enter].



Important

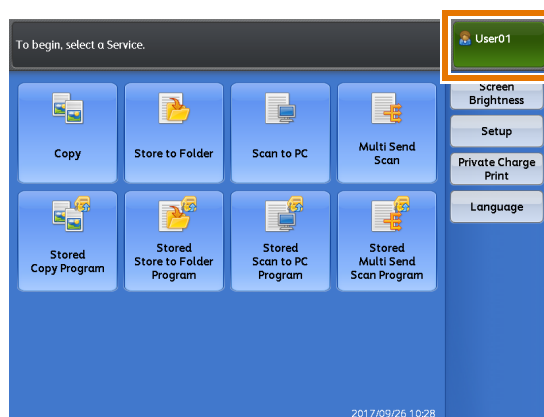
- Interrupt mode does not function in conjunction with Authentication mode. You must log out of the authenticated mode before you can exit the Interrupt mode.



Note

- The [Login] screen may appear when you select a service on which a usage restriction has been applied. In this case, enter your User ID and password to continue.

Once authentication is successful, your User ID is displayed at the upper right on the menu screen, and the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel lights up.



Selecting the target domains (realm names)

When Remote Authentication is enabled and Authentication Management is being used on the authentication server, you can select the target domains (realm names) by following the steps below.



Note

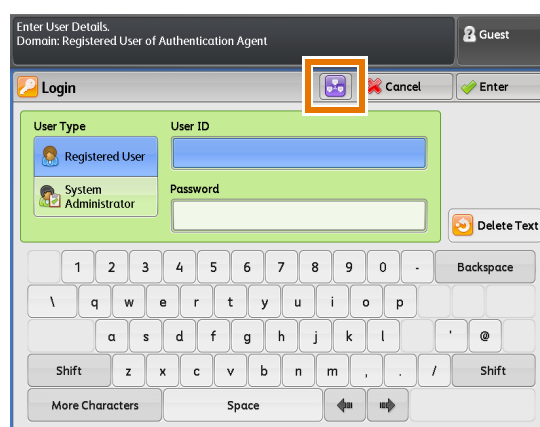
- "Realm" is an area to which authentication is applied.

(1) Press [].



Note

- When Remote Authentication is enabled, [] appears.



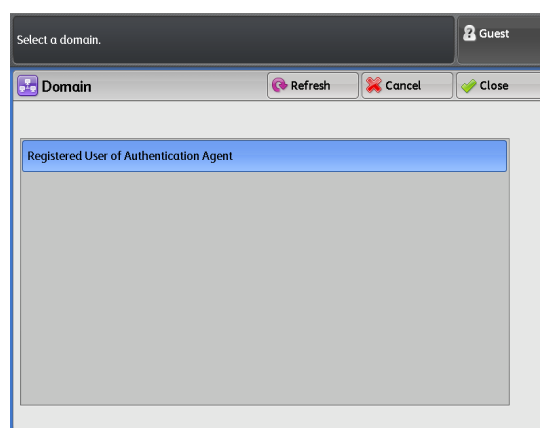
(2) Select the target domains.



Note

- Press [Refresh] to refresh the display.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.

(3) Press [Close].



Logging out of the authenticated mode

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.

You will be logged out.



Note

- When you are logged out of the authenticated mode, the <Log In/Out> button goes out.

1.15.2 Logging in/out using smart card

Smart Card Authentication

1. Touch your smart card to the IC Card Reader.

You will be logged in.



Important

- Touch your smart card to the reader until it is recognized.
- The password may be required depending on the machine's settings. If you have entered a wrong password, press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel to cancel the authentication state, and then touch your smart card to the IC Card Reader again.

Logging out of the authenticated mode

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the IC Card Reader.

You will be logged out.

1.16 About Originals

1.16.1 Usable Originals (DocuWide 6057)

Originals that meet the following conditions can be used.

Original Size	Paper Weight
Original width 176 - 914.4 mm (Maximum allowable width: 945 mm)	When ejecting frontward 0.05 - 0.2 mm
Original length 210 - 15,000 mm (Maximum length)	When ejecting rearward 0.05 - 12.7 mm *

* Although the machine is capable of feeding flat and hard originals (styrene board, cardboard) with thickness between 0.2 mm and 12.7 mm, the original must be supported by hand. The accurate original scanning is not guaranteed.

1.16.2 Usable Originals (DocuWide 3037)

Originals that can meet the following conditions can be used.

Original Size	Paper Weight
Original width 182 - 914.4 mm (Maximum allowable width: 945 mm)	When ejecting frontward 0.05 - 0.2 mm
Original length 210 - 15,000 mm (Maximum length)	When ejecting rearward 0.05 - 1.0 mm *

* Although the machine is capable of feeding flat and hard originals (styrene board, cardboard) with thickness between 0.2 mm and 1.0 mm, the original must be supported by hand. The accurate original scanning is not guaranteed.

1.16.3 Precautions When Handling Originals

Observe the following precautions when handling originals.

- The scanning area may become soiled if originals contaminated by glue or adhesive tape, or originals on which correction fluid has been used are placed in the scanner. Be very careful when using stick-type glue or glue spray. Soiling of the scanning area can cause black lines on copies.
- Do not use originals that have been folded, wrinkled, perforated or had holes punched in them. It may result in paper jams and tearing.
- When rolled originals are to be used, ensure that the diameter of the rolled original is 40 mm or larger. Rolled originals with a diameter of less than 40 mm must be flattened out at the lead edge.
- When scanning thick originals, hold them with your hands while scanning them.

1.17 Media Types

This section describes the types of media that can be used with the machine.

Use of unrecommended media may result in paper jams, lower print quality, malfunctions, or damage to the machine. To achieve optimum performance of the machine, we recommend that you use only media recommended by Fuji Xerox.

If you wish to use media other than that recommended by Fuji Xerox, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

WARNING

Do not use conductive paper such as origami paper, carbonic paper or conductively-coated paper. When paper jam occurs, it may cause short-circuit and eventually a fire accident.



- The printed image may fade due to moisture such as water, rain or vapor. For more information, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

1.17.1 Media Type

When using generally used paper (known as printable paper) for copies or printing, ensure that it complies with the following specifications. However, it is encouraged that you use the recommended media to achieve clear copy and print results.

Media Source	Media Type/Weight	Recommended Media		
		Name	G.S.M.	Size
Roll paper	Plain paper 64 - 110 g/m ²	Performance	75 g/m ²	A0 - A3
		Premium Tracing 90	90g/m ²	A0 - A3
	Tracing 90 - 112 g/m ²	Gateway 73	73g/m ²	A1 - A3
		Premium Translucent 100	100um	
Manual feed	Plain paper 64 - 110 g/m ²	Premium	75 g/m ²	A3 / A4
		Premium Tracing 90	90 g/m ²	A0 - A3
	Tracing 90 - 112 g/m ²	Premium Translucent 75	75um	A1 - A4
		Premium Translucent 100	100um	
	Film 75 - 100 μm			



- Printing on paper that differs from the paper type and size selected in the print driver, or printing from a tray that does not support the loaded paper may result in a paper jam. To ensure correct printing, select the correct paper size, paper type, and paper tray.

1.17.2 Unusable Media

Using media/tracing/film not recommended by Fuji Xerox may cause a paper jam or machine malfunction. Use media/tracing/film recommended by Fuji Xerox.

- Transparencies
- Coated paper of 126 g/m² or less
- NK special simplex art paper (127/157/209 g/m²)
- Art flux (cross)
- High class Japanese paper for color copy
- Color cloth transfer paper
- Super tracing paper 55/60
- High class tracing paper
- Paper only for an ink jet printer
- Labels
- Kent paper
- Carbon paper
- Xerographic photo paper
- Paper which has been previously printed with ink that will change in quality at 155 °C
- Paper with staples, clips, ribbons, or tape
- Paper with non-smooth face such as rough printing paper or fibered paper
- Paper pasted up with glue, adhesive paper
- Damp or wet paper
- When you use acid paper, the print result may blur.
If this happens, change the paper to acidfree paper.
- Electric spectaculars film
- Digital coated paper (glossy type)
- Peel-off film (transparent/white/strong&white)
- Bookbinding paper (210 g/m²)
- Cloth transfer paper
- Aqua-transfer paper
- Star tracing paper
- OK top-coat paper (128g/m²)
- Heat-sensitive paper
- Black origami paper
- Chemical Japanese paper
- Paper with piping
- Paper which is tightly stuck together due to static electricity
- Specially-coated paper
- Paper which was printed once by an other printer or copy machine
- Wrinkled, creased, or torn paper
- Paper that is too thick or thin
- Treated colored paper

1.17.3 Handling and Storing Media

handling media

Do not use media that has been folded, creased, or heavily curled. It may result in paper jams.

Storing Media

The optimum environment for storing media is a place where the humidity is 40 to 45 %. Keep the followings in mind when storing media:

- Moisture is not good for media. For storage, keep the media in the document wrapping and store it in a comparatively dry place. Tracing paper especially should be put into a plastic or moisture-proof bag.
- When the machine is not used for extended intervals, remove the media and store it accordingly.

1.18 Paper Heater

When humidity is high in the environment such as rainy season, use the paper heater.

The paper heater is in the roll paper tray



Note

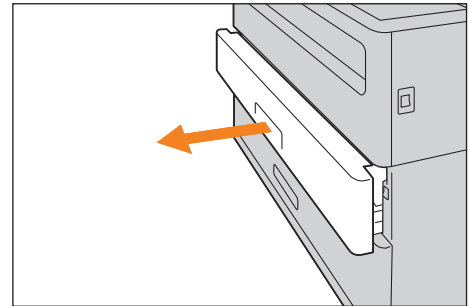
- The effect of the paper heater varies depending on the type and weight of the paper and the use condition of the printer.
- Paper heater can be used by turning on the power circuit breaker.

1. Pull out the roll paper tray.

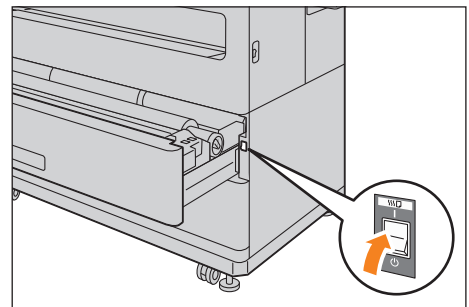


Important

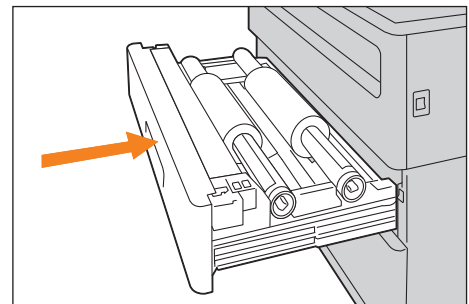
- When the optional Front Print Catch Tray is installed and it is being pulled out, you need to push it back before you can pull out roll media tray.



2. Press the paper heater switch to the [I] position.



3. Gently push the roll paper tray back into the machine all the way until it stops.



Chapter 2 Copy (DocuWide 6057)

This chapter describes the basic operations and functions of the Copy feature.

2.1	Copying Procedure.....	78
2.2	Canceling the Copy Job	82
2.3	Copying in the Specified Paper Size (Auto Mode)	84
2.4	Making Adjustments to Color on the Original.....	85
2.5	Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width	87
2.6	Loading Paper Manually (Bypass Copying)	89
2.7	Copying Long Originals.....	91
2.8	Copying Multiple Originals (Collation)	92
2.9	Imprinting Stamps on Copies.....	94
2.10	Running Sample Copies.....	96
2.11	Copying from Memory	98
2.12	Running an Interrupt Copy	100
2.13	[Copy (Auto Mode)] Screen.....	101
2.14	[Copy (Manual Mode)] Screen.....	104
2.15	Copy - [Image Quality] Screen.....	109
2.16	Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen.....	114
2.17	Copy - [Output Format] Screen.....	120

2.1 Copying Procedure

This section describes the basic copy procedure. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

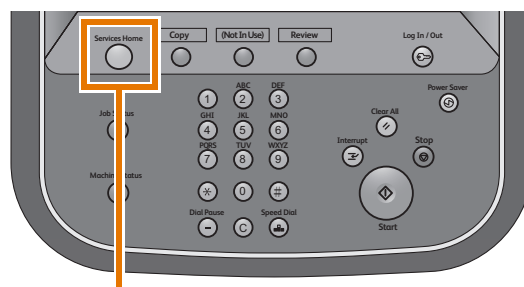
- Step 1 Selecting Functions.....p.78
- Step 2 Entering a Quantityp.79
- Step 3 Starting the Copy Jobp.80

2

2.1.1 Step 1 Selecting Functions

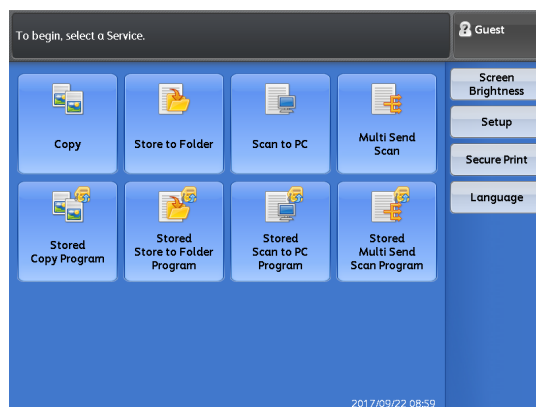
Select functions to set on the [Copy] screen.

1. Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel.
The menu screen is displayed



<Services Home> button

2. Press [Copy] on the menu screen.



3. To copy in the auto mode, select the [Auto Mode] check box. To copy manually, deselect the check box.



Refer

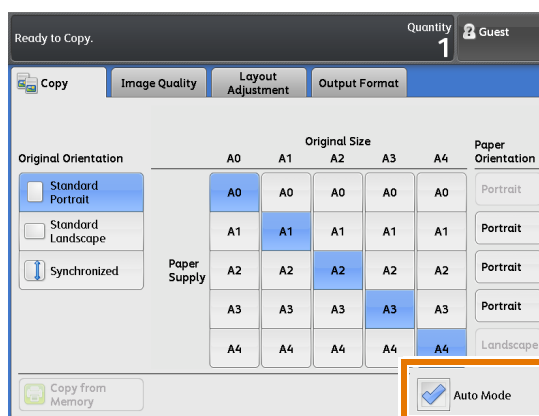
- "2.13 [Copy (Auto Mode)] Screen" (p.101)
- "2.14 [Copy (Manual Mode)] Screen" (p.104)

4. Select functions to set on each tab as necessary.
For details on each tab, refer to these subsections.



Refer

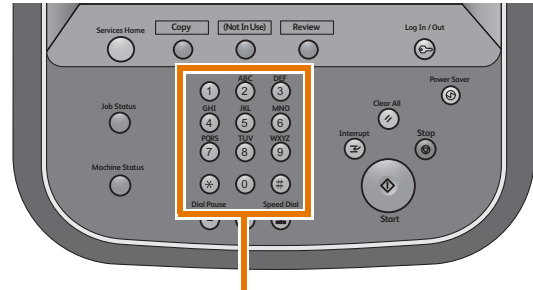
- "2.15 Copy - [Image Quality] Screen" (p.109)
- "2.16 Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.114)
- "2.17 Copy - [Output Format] Screen" (p.120)



2.1.2 Step 2 Entering a Quantity

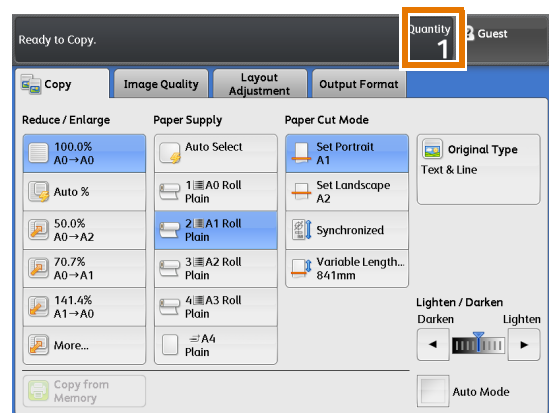
The following describes how to enter the number of copies to be made. You can specify up to 99 for the number of copies.

1. Enter the number of copies, by using the numeric keypad on the control panel.

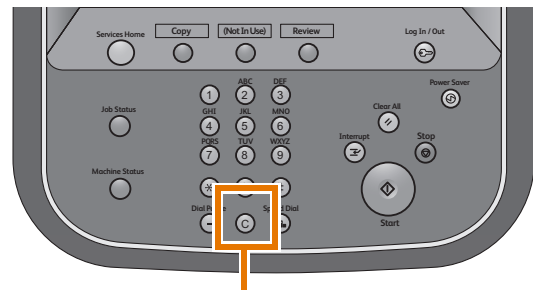


Numeric keypad

The entered number of copies is displayed on the upper right of the touch screen.



2. If you have entered an incorrect value, press the <C (Clear)> button and then enter the correct value.



<C (Clear)> button

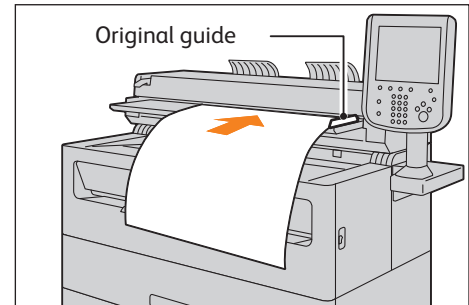
2.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job

The following describes how to load the original and start copying.

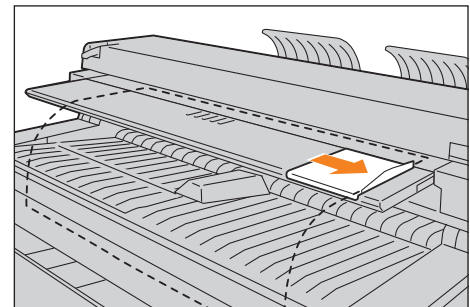


- If you hold down or pull the original while it is being scanned, the original may get jammed.
- When loading a hole-punched original, insert the edge with the holes last. If you insert the edge with the holes first, the original may get jammed.

1. Align the original against the original guide with the side to be copied face down, and insert it all the way until it stops.



- By moving the original guide to the right, you can also adjust the scanning position on the original.
- For information about scanning thick originals, refer to "When Scanning Thick Originals"(p.81).



The original is automatically conveyed and stops momentarily.

Then the machine automatically starts scanning the original.



- Do not release your hands from the original until it is conveyed. If the original is long, it might fall off the machine.



- When the scan start mode is set to [Manual Start] under System Settings, press the <Start> button on the control panel.
For information on how to set Manual Start, refer to "Scan Start Mode"(p.407).
- When a problem occurs, an error message is displayed on the touch screen. Resolve the problem according to the message.



2. Remove the original that is output.

When Scanning Thick Originals

With this machine, the originals of the originals of up to 12.7 mm thickness can be scanned. Use the original thickness adjustment lever on the original cover when scanning thick originals.

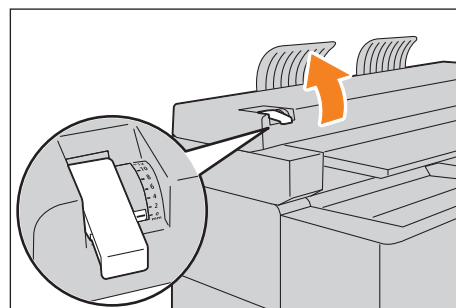
The guide position of the lever and the corresponding paper weight of the original are as follows.

Lever Position	Thickness of the Original
1st point (scale 0 mm)	0 - 1 mm
2nd point (scale 2 mm)	2 mm $\pm$ 1 mm
3rd point (scale 4 mm)	4 mm $\pm$ 1 mm
4th point (scale 6 mm)	6 mm $\pm$ 1 mm
5th point (scale 8 mm)	8 mm $\pm$ 1 mm
6th point (scale 10 mm)	10 mm $\pm$ 1 mm
7th point (scale 12 mm)	12 mm $\pm$ 1 mm



- Remove the U-turn output guide when scanning thick originals.

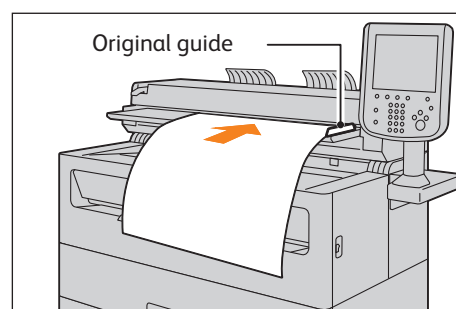
1. Measure the thickness of the original to be scanned.
2. Move the original thickness adjustment lever to fit with the thickness of the original to be scanned.



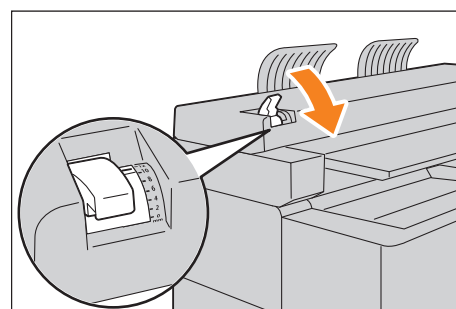
3. With the copied side facedown, insert the original along the guide until it stops.

The original automatically feeds and stops shortly. And then, it is scanned automatically.

4. Remove the ejected original.



5. When the original is scanned, return the lever to its original position (1st point: scale 0 mm).



2.2 Canceling the Copy Job

This section describes how to stop feeding document or cancel copying. Refer to the following subsections for more information.

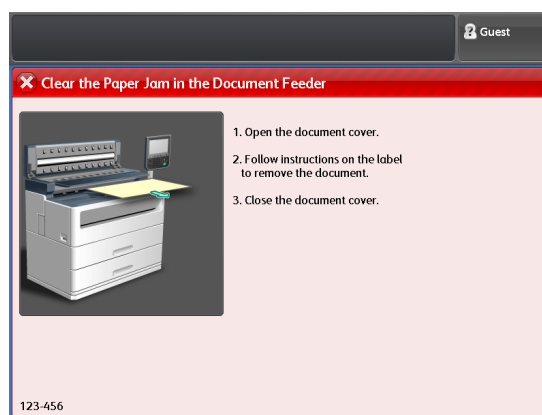
- Canceling Feeding the Original.....p.82
- Canceling Copy Jobs.....p.82

2

2.2.1 Canceling Feeding the Original

Stop the original to be fed when it is bent or about being torn.

1. Press the <Stop> button on the control panel when the original is fed.
Feeding of the original stops.
2. Remove the jammed original according to the message displayed on the touch panel display, and reset the original.

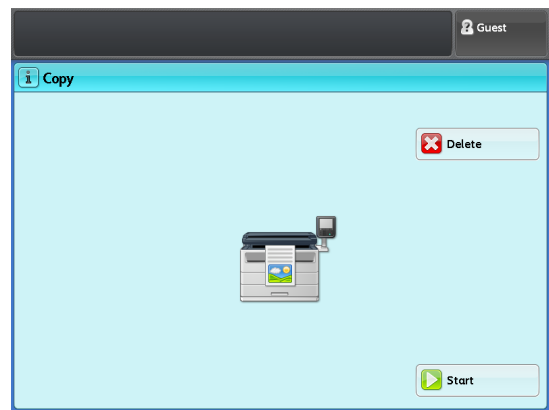


2.2.2 Canceling Copy Jobs

1. Press [Delete] on the touch panel display.



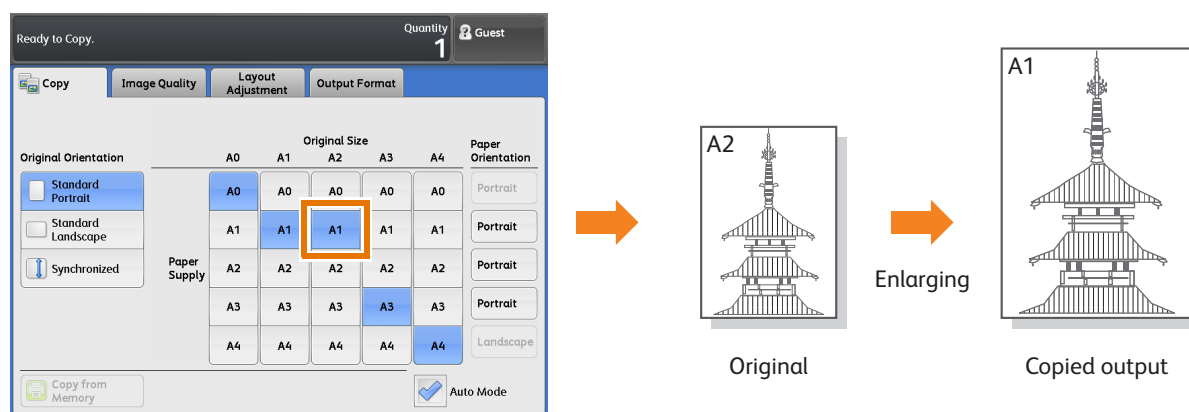
2. Press [Delete].



2.3 Copying in the Specified Paper Size (Auto Mode)

Auto Mode is a feature that allows you to pre-configure an output paper size for each original size using a matrix. The feature automatically reduces/enlarges images based on this configuration when copying.

The following describes an example of how to insert an A2 standard-size original in the portrait orientation, and to make its enlarged copies (141.4%) on A1 paper (A1 roll paper in the portrait orientation) (The value surrounded with a square is the set value).

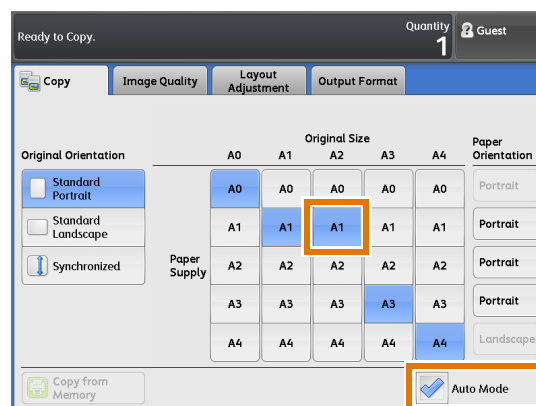


1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the [Auto Mode] check box.
3. On the matrix, select [A2] for [Original Size] and [A1] for [Paper Supply].



Note

- If the orientation of your original does not match that of the paper loaded, for example, when [Original Orientation] is set to [Standard Portrait] though [Paper Orientation] is set to [Landscape], the image will be printed on the paper with the image orientation rotated according to the settings specified in [Auto Mode Rotate Direction] under [System Settings]. For information on how to set the function, refer to "12.4.7 Auto Mode Rotate Direction" (p.420).



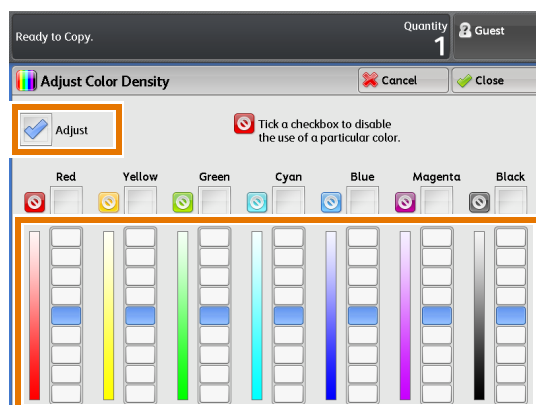
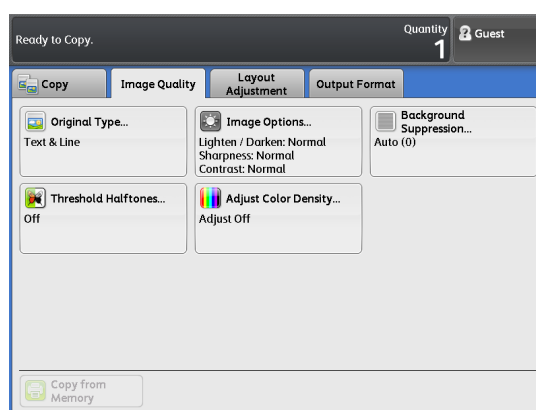
4. Set other features as necessary.
5. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
6. Load the original.

2.4 Making Adjustments to Color on the Original

2.4.1 Adjusting Individual Color Density (Adjust Color Density)

When copying a color original, this feature allows you to change the copy-density level for each of the color components.

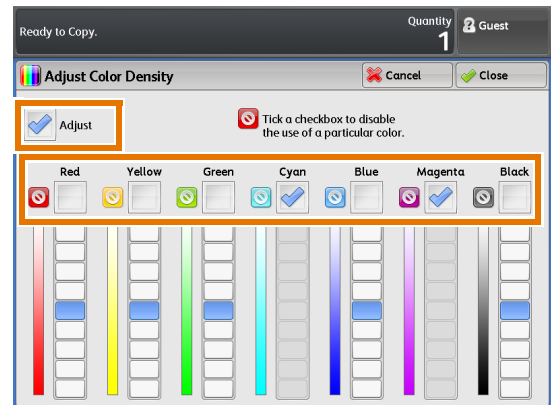
1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Press the [Image Quality] tab.
3. Press [Adjust Color Density].
4. Select the [Adjust] check box.
5. Select density level for each color components.
6. Set other features as necessary.
7. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
8. Load the original.



2.4.2 Eliminating the Specified Color on the Original (Disabling Color)

When copying a color original, this feature allows you to make a copy leaving out those parts that correspond to a specified color.

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Press the [Image Quality] tab.
3. Press [Adjust Color Density].
4. Select the [Adjust] check box.
5. Select the check box for a color to eliminate the color from being copied.
6. Set other features as necessary.
7. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
8. Load the original.



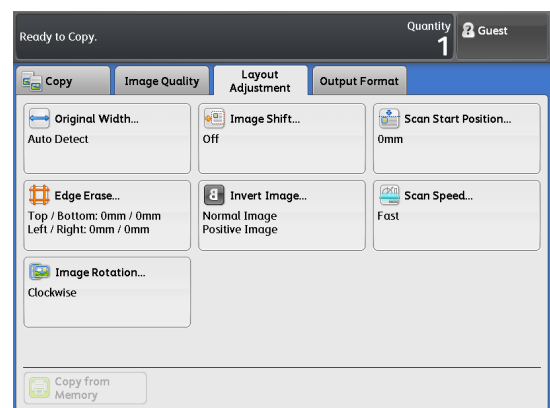
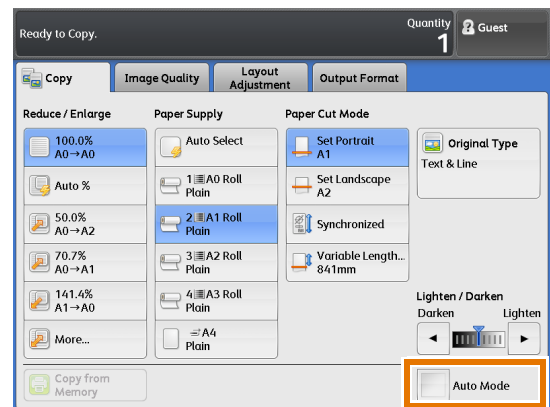
2.5 Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width

Selecting [Maximum Width] allows you to scan and copy originals in maximum width (914.4 mm). This function is useful when you scan non-standard size originals and you do not want to worry about the scan width.

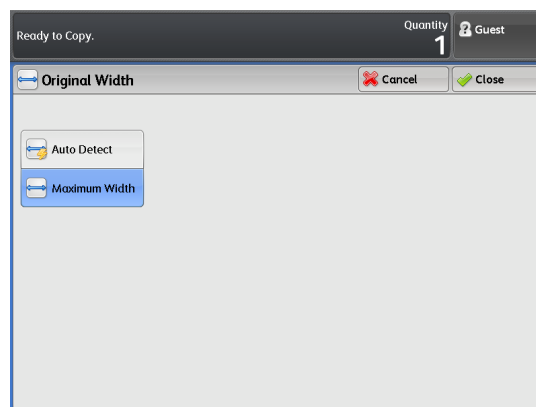


- This function works when the manual mode is selected. It does not function in the auto mode.
- When scanning originals in maximum width, the following functions may not work.
 - Image Shift
 - Edge Erase
 - Mirror Image
 - Negative Image

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Make sure that the [Auto Mode] check box is deselected.
3. Press the [Layout Adjustment] tab.
4. Press [Original Width].



5. Press [Maximum Width].
6. Set other features as necessary.
7. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
8. Load the original.



2.6 Loading Paper Manually (Bypass Copying)

Non-standard size paper and paper of sizes you do not use very often can be copied from the bypass (manual) feed table.



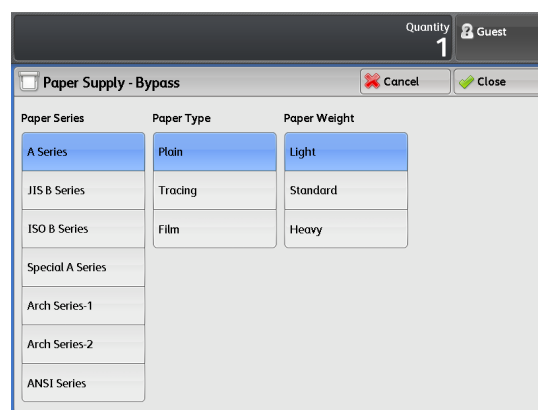
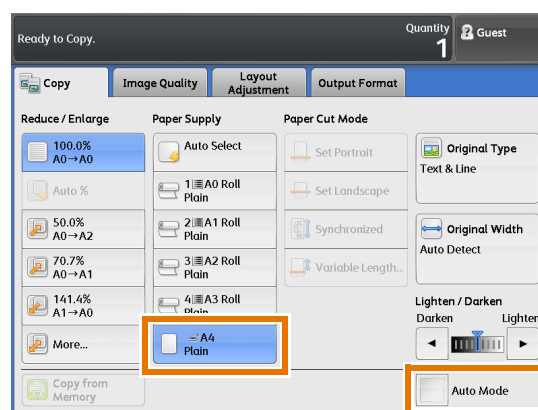
- If you load paper of a size that is different from the one you specified, part of the image may be lost, or the image may be copied with unwanted margins.



Note

- The following functions cannot be used in conjunction with bypass copying.
 - Image Shift. (Auto Center, Corner Shift)
 - Image Rotation
 - Copy Output (Collated)
 - Lead & Tail Margins
 - Sample Copy

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Make sure that the [Auto Mode] check box is deselected.
3. Press [].
4. Select [Paper Series], [Paper Type], [Paper Weight], and press [Close].
5. Set other functions as necessary.
6. Load the original.
The original is scanned.

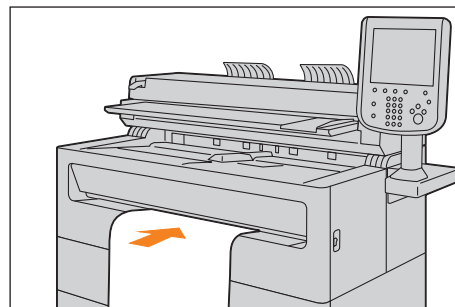


7. Insert the paper by aligning both ends of the original with the scale of the manual feed table.



Important

- Load paper one sheet at one time.
- If paper is curled, hold the curled corners with both hands when inserting the paper.
- Do not release your hands from the paper until it is conveyed. If you release your hands when you hear a sound, the paper may get jammed.



2.7 Copying Long Originals

The following describes an example of how to copy an A1 width 3,000 mm length original onto A1 roll paper in the same width and length.

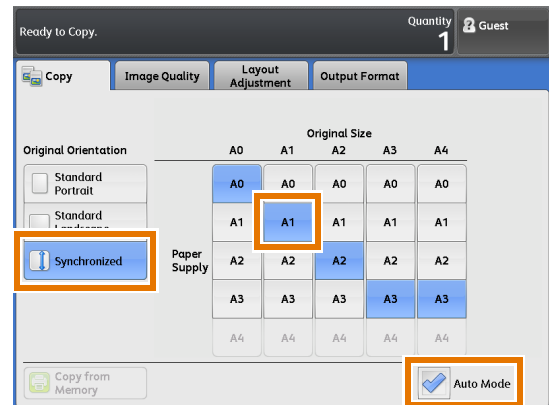
1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the [Auto Mode] check box.
3. Press [Synchronized].
4. On the matrix, make sure that [A1] is selected for both [Original Size] and [Paper Supply].
5. Set other features as necessary.



Note

- Scanning long size originals at a low speed helps preventing skewing. For information on how to set the function, refer to "2.16.6 Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)" (p.118).

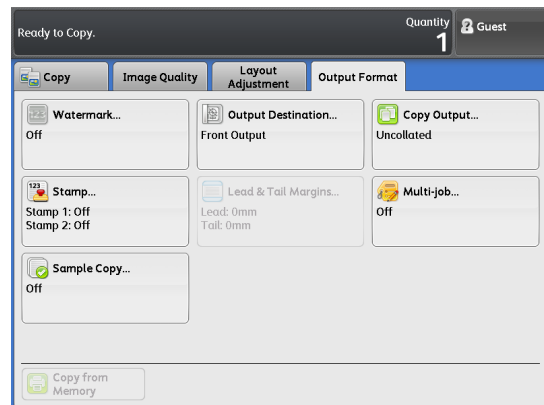
6. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
7. Load the original.



2.8 Copying Multiple Originals (Collation)

Multiple originals can be collated into sets when their copies are output.

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Press the [Output Format] tab.
3. Press [Copy Output].



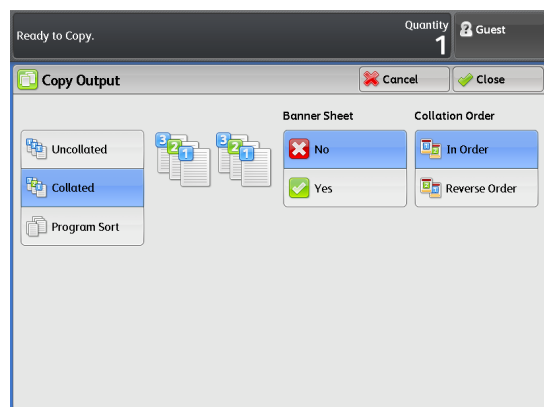
4. Press [Collated].
5. Select options for [Banner Sheet] and [Collation Order], and press [Close].

Banner Sheet

Select [Yes] to insert a banner sheet. The banner sheet will have the copy quantity and time printed on it.

Collation Order

Select [In Order] to output copies in the order in which the originals were scanned or [Reverse Order] to output from the last original that was scanned.



 **Refer** • For more information, refer to "2.17.3 Copy Output (Specifying Finishing Options)" (p.122).

6. Set other functions as necessary.
7. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
8. Load the first original.
The scanning starts.

Delete

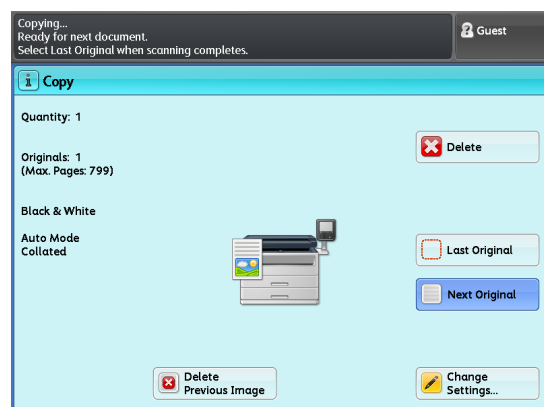
Press to cancel the copy job.

Last Original

Press this button after all originals have been scanned.

Next Original

This button is selected by default.



Delete Previous Image

Press this button to delete images of the previously scanned originals.

Change Settings

Press this button to change the magnification ratio or the settings such as image quality for the next original.

- 9.** Load the next original.
Repeat this step if you have more originals.
- 10.** When all originals have been scanned, press [Last Original].

2.9 Imprinting Stamps on Copies

Stamps and date not written in the original can be imprinted on your copies.

Up to two stamps can be imprinted. To use stamp, use the stamp tool to create and send stamp data to the machine in advance.



Note

- To use the Stamp function, the optional DW 6057 Stamp KIT is necessary.
- When you set originals, pay attention to their orientation. Depending on the orientation of the original, stamps may not be imprinted as intended.
- The stamp list can be checked with CentreWare Internet Services. For information on how to do this, refer to CentreWare Internet Services.
- Help.
- You can print the list of registered stamps. For information on how to print the list, refer to "1.13.2 Machine / Information" (p.64).

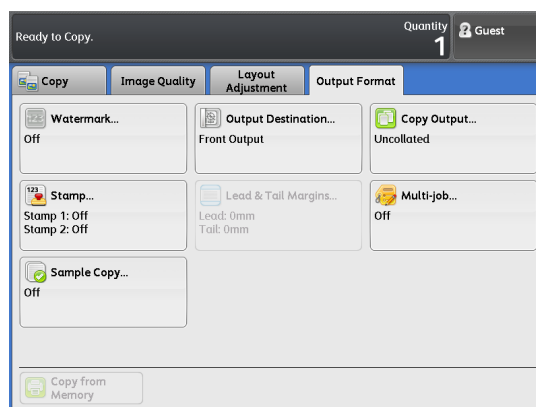
1. Create stamps with the stamp tool and send them to the machine.



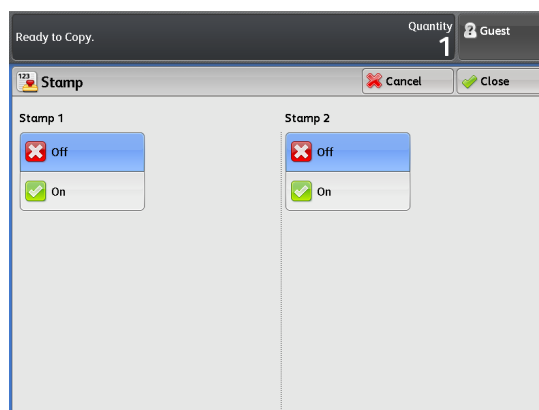
Refer

- For details on how to create and send stamps to the machine, refer to "Stamp Tool User Guide".

2. Press [Copy] on the menu screen.
3. Press the [Output Format] tab.
4. Press [Stamp].



5. Press [On] for [Stamp 1] or [Stamp 2].
6. Press [Number].



7. Select the stamp number, and press [Close].

8. Set other optional items as required.



Refer

- "2.17.7 Sample Copy (Determining the Optimal Settings Before Running the Whole Copy Job)" (p.128)



9. Set other functions as necessary.

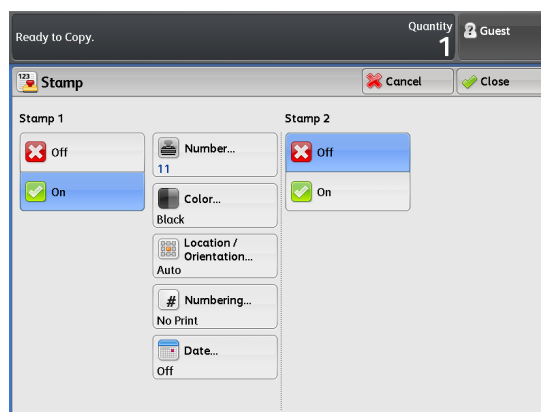
10. Repeat steps 5 to 9 for pressing two stamps.

11. Set the original.



Refer

- "2.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.80)



2.10 Running Sample Copies

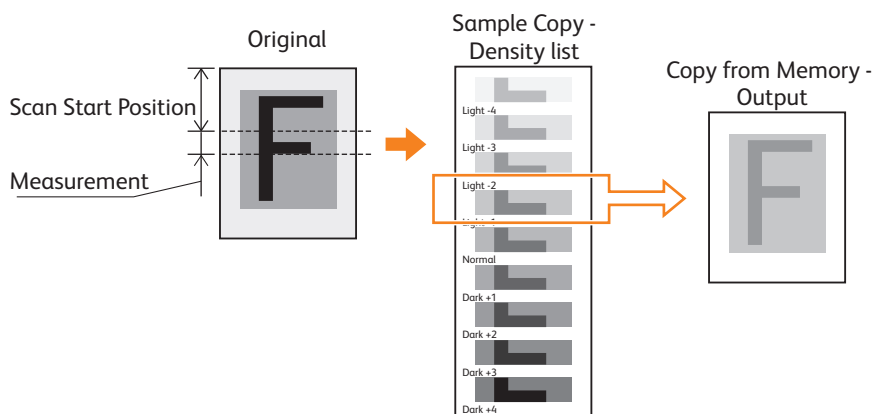
This section describes how to run a sample copy of an area of an original with several settings applied, in order to determine the optimal settings. Any portion on the original can be specified as the sample area. This sample area can be printed with a variety of settings such as the enlarge/reduce ratio, density level, and original type, applied. The sample copy can show a list of effects of nine levels of density, seven types of image quality, or seven levels of auto background suppression.

2

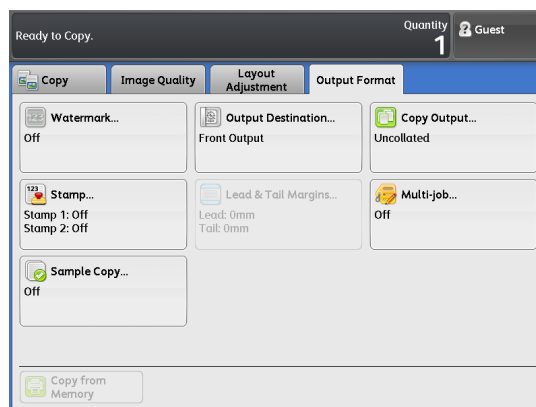


- The Sample Copy function cannot be used when:
 - [Copy Output] is set to [Collated] or [Program Sort], and [Change Settings] is applied to the next original
 - A multi-job is set
 - Copy is running in the auto mode
 - You are feeding paper manually (bypass copying)
 - Copy from memory is running
 - Interrupt copy is running
- When [Original Type] is set to [Printed Original] or [Photograph], the Background Suppression List cannot be output.

The following describes an example of how to run a sample copy for reviewing a listing of available densities, and then print the entire image with the optimal density.



1. Press [Copy] on the menu screen.
2. Press the [Output Format] tab.
3. Press [Sample Copy].



4. Press [Lighten / Darken List].
5. Set [Scan Start Position] and [Measurement] as necessary, and press [close].



Refer

- "2.17.7 Sample Copy (Determining the Optimal Settings Before Running the Whole Copy Job)" (p.128)

6. Set other features as necessary.

7. Load the original.

The sample copy with the specified settings applied is output.



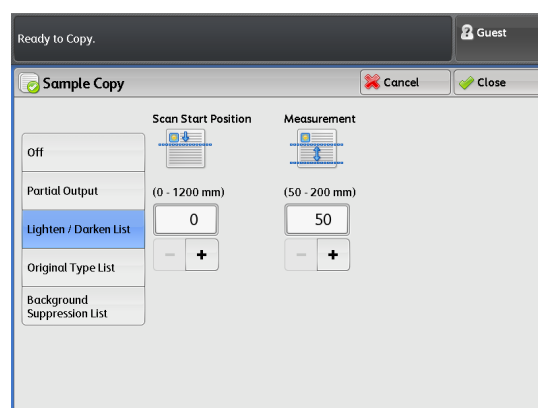
Note

- To run another sample copy, repeat Steps 2. to 7.
- Settings are not kept between sample copies. To run another sample copy, press [Sample Copy] again.

8. When the optimal copy is output, change the setting for [Lighten / Darken] appropriately.

9. Press [Copy from Memory] and then press [Start].

The entire image with the specified settings applied is output.



2.11 Copying from Memory

The Copy from Memory function allows you make additional copies of the last copied original without reloading. When you have selected [Collated] for the last copy job, the same collated set of the document will be additionally output.

The Copy from Memory function is disabled if:

- You press the <Clear All> button or the machine enters the Auto Reset state.
- You turn the power off or when the machine enters the Power Saver mode.
- You load the next original.
- You return the screen to the menu screen.
- You run an Interrupt copy.
- You log out of the authenticated mode.

The Copy from Memory function cannot be used when:

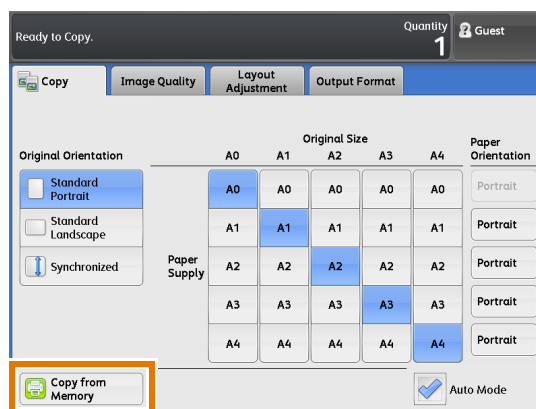
- Image data for the last original has been lost due to a problem such as a paper jam.
- Sort (Program Sort) is set
- Multi-job Copy is executed



Important

- The following functions cannot be used in conjunction with the Copy from Memory function.
 - The custom buttons on the control panel (Calling the associated feature)
 - Interrupt Copy
 - Sample Copy
 - Original Scanning Speed
 - Copy Output
 - Multi-job
 - Watermark
- With the [Adjust] check box selected for Adjust Color, the Adjust Color function can be executed while Copy from Memory is in progress.

1. After running a copy job, press [Copy from Memory].

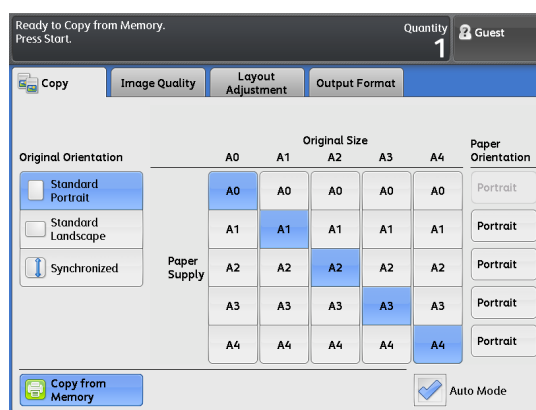


2. Set the functions as necessary.

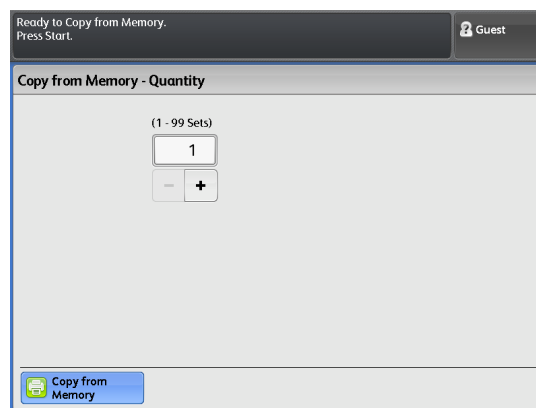


Note

- To restore the settings for the last copy job, press the <Clear All> button.



- When you have selected [Collated] for the last copy job, only the number of copies can be changed.



3. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.

4. Press the <Start> button.

The image data from memory is output.

5. After you finish copying from memory, press [Copy from Memory] again.

The Copy from Memory mode is exited.

2.12 Running an Interrupt Copy

This section describes how to interrupt an ongoing continual copy or print job to run an urgent copy job. The settings for the ongoing job are kept and will be restored immediately after you exit the Interrupt Copy mode.



Note

- The following operations cannot be used during the Interrupt Copy mode.
 - Interrupting another copy job
 - Sample Copy
 - Copy from Memory
 - Copy Output
 - Multi-job
- Interrupt Copy cannot be executed when; A sample copy or scan job is running.

1. Press the <Interrupt> button on the control panel.
The <Interrupt> button lights up, indicating the Interrupt mode is enabled.



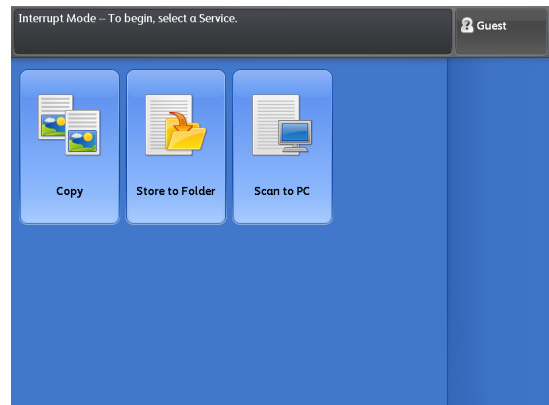
Note

- When you press the <Interrupt> button while a job is being performed, the <Interrupt> button blinks, indicating the Interrupt mode will be enabled after the current job is completed (reserve mode). Once the current job is completed, the <Interrupt> button lights up, indicating the Interrupt mode is enabled.

2. During a print job, the menu screen appears. Press [Copy].
3. Set other features as necessary.
4. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
5. Load the original.
6. After you finish the interrupt copying, press the <Interrupt> button.

The <Interrupt> button goes out, indicating the Interrupt mode has exited.

The suspended print or copy job resumes.

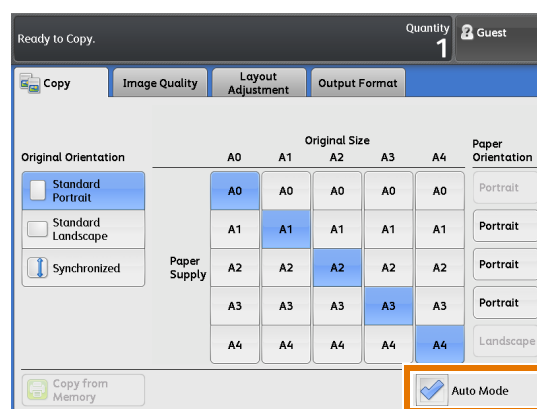


2.13 [Copy (Auto Mode)] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Copy (Auto Mode)] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Original Orientation (Specifying the Original Feeding Orientation) p.101
- Mapping Table between Original Sizes and Paper Sizes (Matrix) p.102
- Paper Orientation (Specifying the Target Paper Orientation) p.102

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the [Auto Mode] check box.
3. Select the desired function on the [Copy (Auto Mode)] screen.



2.13.1 Original Orientation (Specifying the Original Feeding Orientation)

The following describes how to tell the machine the orientation in which the original is placed.

For each of the original orientations (Standard Portrait, Standard Landscape, and Synchronized), the mapping table between original sizes and paper sizes (Matrix) can be predefined.

1. Select the original orientation.

Standard Portrait

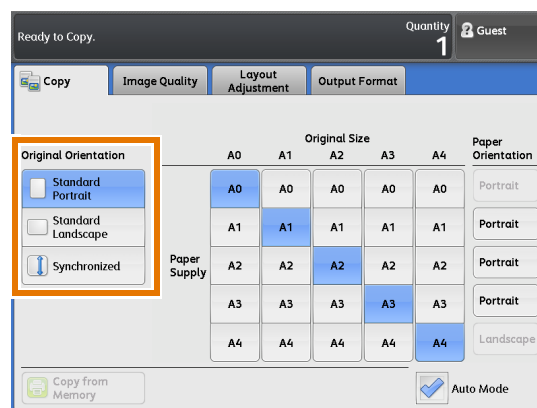
Select this when loading standard size originals in the portrait orientation.

Standard Landscape

Select this when loading standard size originals in the landscape orientation.

Synchronized

Select this when loading non-standard size originals.



Note

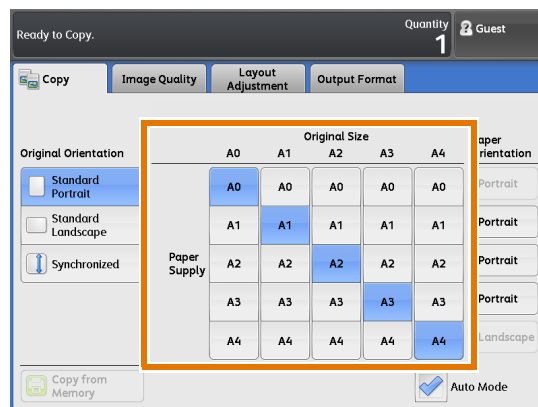
- Image rotation is not applied.

2.13.2 Mapping Table between Original Sizes and Paper Sizes (Matrix)

This following describes how to select the target paper size corresponding to the original size.

In Auto Mode, the machine automatically selects the appropriate magnification ratio and the paper tray according to the scanned original, based on the predefined mapping table between original sizes and paper sizes (Matrix).

1. Select the target paper size corresponding to the original size from the matrix.



2.13.3 Paper Orientation (Specifying the Target Paper Orientation)

This following describes how to select the target paper orientation.

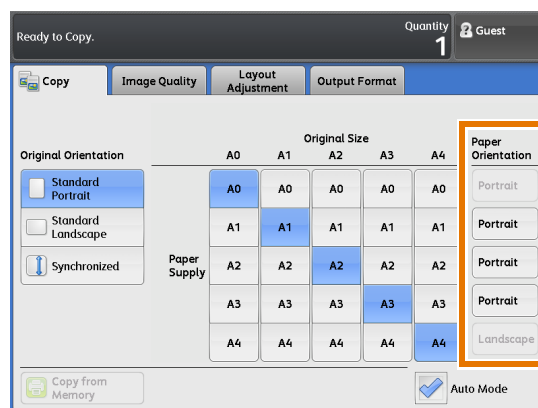
With the machine, you can predefine the target paper orientation for individual paper sizes.

1. Press [Paper Orientation] that corresponds to the desired paper size.



Note

- [Orientation] for A0 size paper is fixed to [Portrait].



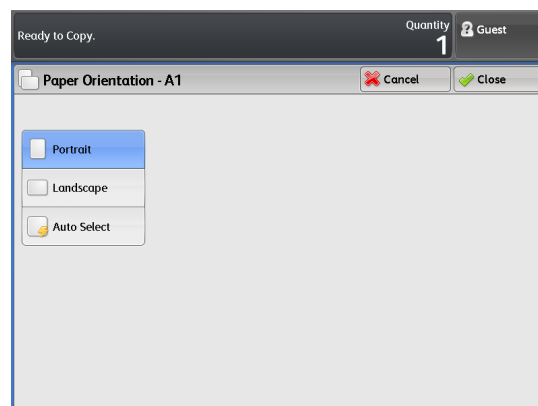
2. Select the paper orientation from [Portrait], [Landscape], and [Auto Select].

Portrait

Select this to deliver standard size paper in the portrait orientation.

Landscape

Select this to deliver standard size paper in the landscape orientation.



Auto Select

Select this to prioritize delivering paper in the same orientation as the original.

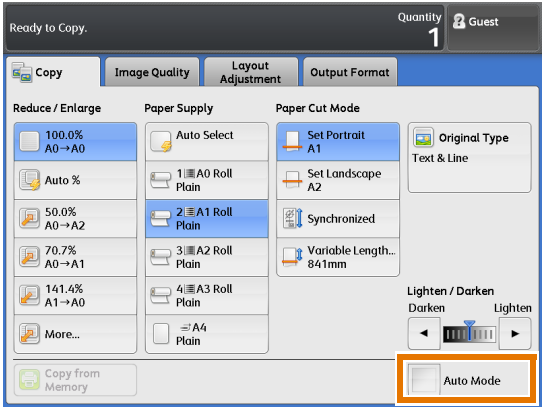
2.14 [Copy (Manual Mode)] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Reduce/Enlarge (Making Enlarged/Reduced Copies)p.104
- Paper Supply (Selecting the Paper Supply Source)p.106
- Paper Cut Mode (Selecting How to Cut Delivered Paper)p.107
- Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)p.108
- Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)p.108
- Lighten / Darken (Adjusting Copy Density)p.108

 **Note** • The functions shown to the right on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen can be changed. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.4.1 Copy Tab - Features Allocation" (p.414).
By factory default, [Original Type] and [Original Width] are displayed.

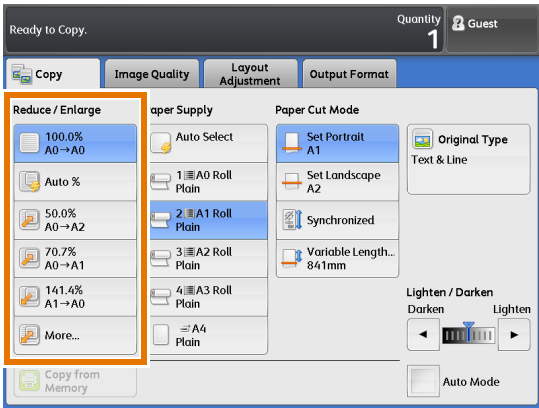
1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Make sure that the [Auto Mode] check box is deselected.
3. Select the desired function on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen.



2.14.1 Reduce/Enlarge (Making Enlarged/Reduced Copies)

The following describes how to select a magnification ratio to make enlarged or reduced output.

1. Select the magnification ratio.
100.0 %
Makes copies at the same size as the original.
Auto %
Automatically determines the magnification to fit to paper, based on the original and paper sizes for copying.
 **Note** • [Auto %] for [Reduce / Enlarge] and [Auto Select] for [Paper Supply] are mutually exclusive.
Ratios (3rd - 5th buttons)
Allows you to select from preset ratios.





- The magnification ratios shown on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen can be changed. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.4.2 Preset Buttons" (p.415).

More...

Select [More] to display the [Reduce / Enlarge] screen, where you can make settings for [Proportional %], [Independent X - Y %], and [Calculator %].



- For information on how to make settings on the [Reduce / Enlarge] screen, refer to "When [Proportional %] is Selected"(p.105), "When [Independent X - Y %] is Selected"(p.105), and "When [Calculator %] is Selected"(p.106).

When [Proportional %] is Selected

Use the following procedure to select a ratio from the preset standard magnifications, or to manually enter a ratio.

1. Select from preset ratios or enter a value in [Variable %].

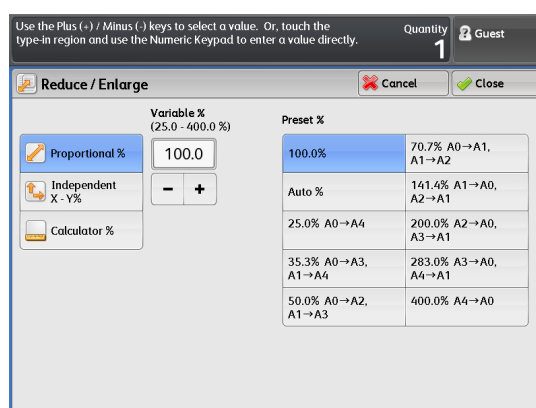
Variable %

Allows you to set a ratio in the range of 25.0 to 400.0 % in 0.1 % increments. Enter the value by using the numeric keypad or by pressing [+] and [-]. Set to 100.0 % to scan at the same size as the original.

Preset %

Allows you to select a magnification from the following options.

- 100.0 %
Makes copies at the same size as the original.
- Proportional %
Allows you to select from preset ratios.



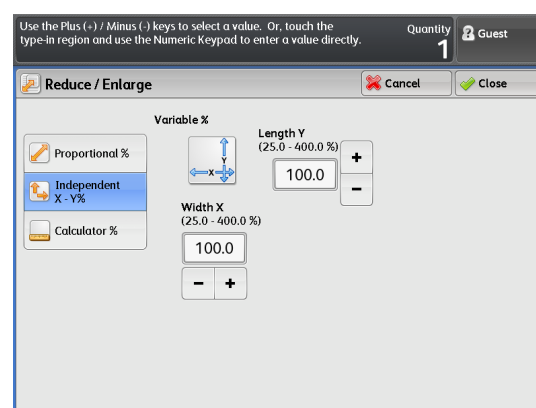
When [Independent X - Y %] is Selected

Use this procedure to specify different ratios for the width and the length to alter the proportion.

1. Enter a value in each fields.

Width X, Length Y

Set a ratio for the width and the length, in the range of 25.0 to 400.0 % in 0.1 % increments. Enter the value by using the numeric keypad or by pressing [+] and [-].

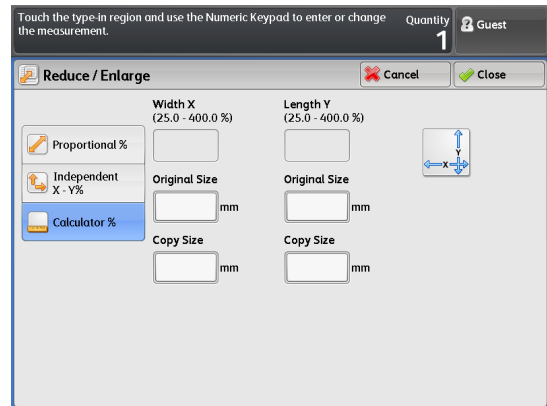


When [Calculator %] is Selected

You can specify individual sizes for the width and the length.

When you specify the sizes of the original and the desired output, the machine calculates the magnification for each of the width and the length. This calculation result, however, is within a range from 25.0 to 400.0 %.

1. Press [Original Size] under [Width X], and using the numeric keypad, enter the value for the width of the original.
2. Press [Copy Size] under [Width X], and using the numeric keypad, enter the value for the width of the desired output.
3. In the same way, enter the length in [Original Size] and [Copy Size] under [Length - Y %].



Width X, Length Y

The magnification derived from the values specified in [Original Size] and [Copy Size] is displayed.

Original Size

Specify the width and the length of the originals in the range of 1 to 9999 in 1 mm increments.

Copy Size

Specify the width and the length of the desired output in the range of 1 to 9999 in 1 mm increments.

2.14.2 Paper Supply (Selecting the Paper Supply Source)

Follow the procedure below to select the paper tray to be used.

1. Check the size and type of paper loaded in each tray, and select the tray you want to use.

Auto Select

Use this option to automatically select the appropriate tray, based on the original size and the specified magnification.



- [Auto %] for [Reduce / Enlarge] and [Auto Select] for [Paper Supply] are mutually exclusive.

Paper Tray (2nd to 5th trays)

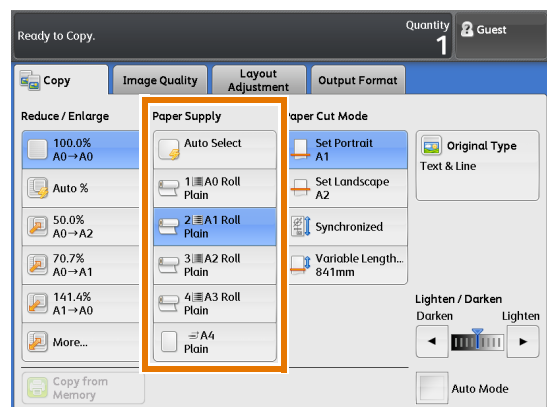
Select from the preset paper tray.

Bypass

Use this option when loading non-standard size paper and paper of sizes you do not use very often on the bypass (manual) feed table.



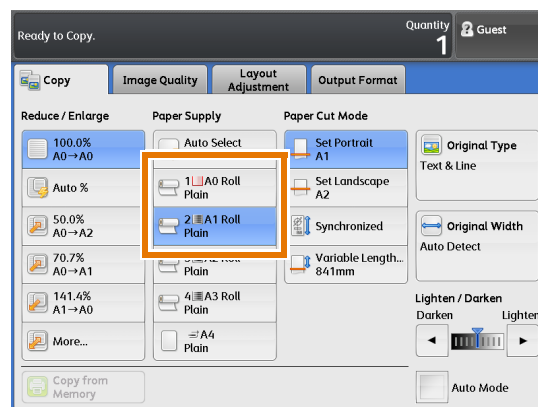
- For information on how to load paper via bypass, refer to "2.6 Loading Paper Manually (Bypass Copying)" (p.89).



Checking the remaining amount of paper

The icon displayed on each tray option indicates the remaining level of paper loaded on the tray.

- : Indicates that 20 to 100% of paper remains.
- : Indicates that 20% or less of paper remains, close to nil.
- : Indicates that paper runs out, or is not loaded.



2.14.3 Paper Cut Mode (Selecting How to Cut Delivered Paper)

Follow the procedure below to select the way in which delivered roll paper is cut.



Note

- When cutting paper is selected for [Paper Supply], Paper Cut Mode options cannot be selected.
- If you select a paper cut method that does not match the orientation of the original, part of the copied image may be lost. For example, when you load an A1 standard-size original in the landscape orientation, and make copies on A1 roll paper by selecting [Standard Size Landscape] in [Paper Cut Method], an unwanted margin occurs on the lower part of the copies, and deletion occurs along the left and right sides of the image.

1. Select how to cut delivered roll paper.

Set Portrait

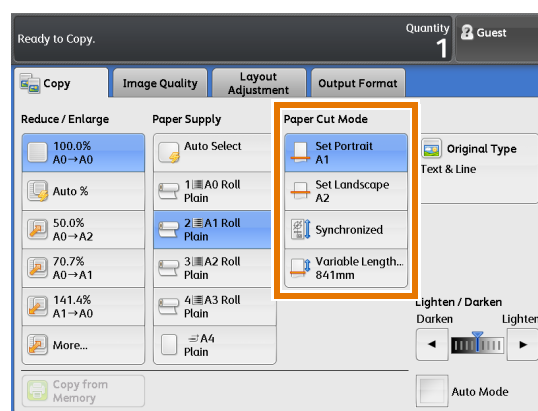
Cuts roll paper to a standard portrait size.

Set Landscape

Cuts roll paper to a standard landscape size.

Synchronized

Cuts roll paper according to the length of the original.



Variable Length

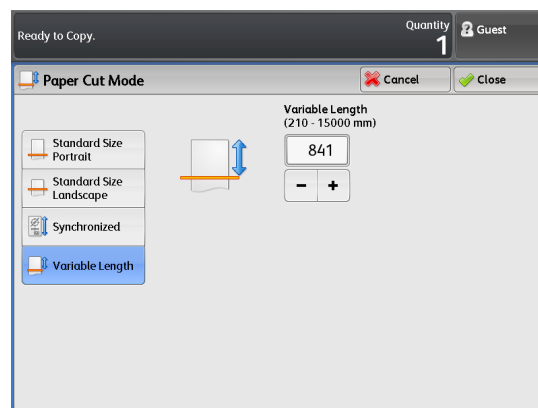
Cuts roll paper to the specified length.

The cutting length can be changed in the range of 210 to 15,000 mm when paper type is set to Plain, or in the range of 210 to 2,500 mm when set to Vellum (tracing paper) or Film. If the specified length is smaller than the actual length which is derived from the original length and the magnification, the excess part will be cut. If the specified length is larger than the actual length, a margin occurs along the trail edge of the copied image.



Note

- The default value for [Variable Length] can be set using the System Settings function for individual paper sizes. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.4.5 Variable Length Settings" (p.418).



2.14.4 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)

This function is equivalent to that displayed for [Original Type] on the [Image Quality] screen.



- For more information, refer to "2.15.1 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)" (p.109).

2.14.5 Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)

This function is equivalent to that displayed for [Original Width] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.



- For more information, refer to "2.16.1 Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)" (p.114).

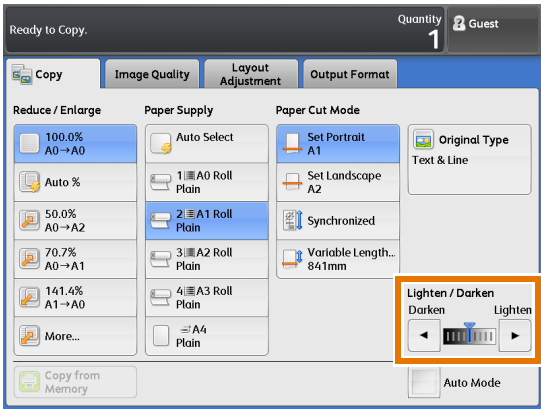
2.14.6 Lighten / Darken (Adjusting Copy Density)

Copy density can be adjusted among nine levels. Move [▼] leftward to increase the density and rightward to decrease the density.



- This function can also be set using [Lighten / Darken] on the [Advanced Settings] screen.

1. Adjust copy density using [◀] and [▶].

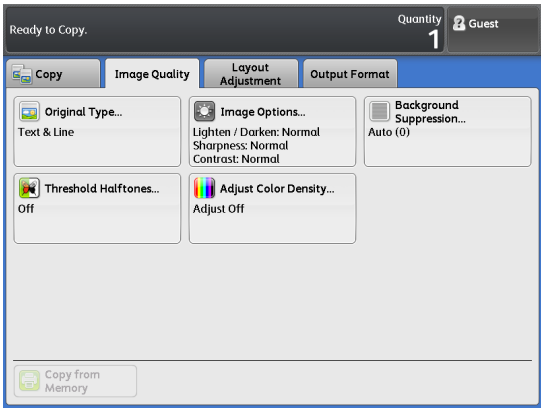


2.15 Copy - [Image Quality] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Image Quality] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)p.109
- Image Options (Adjusting the density, sharpness, and contrast of images)p.110
- Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output).....p.111
- Threshold Sort (Classifying Halftones on the Original)p.112
- Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors)..... p.113

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the desired function on the [Image Quality] screen.



2.15.1 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)

The following describes how to select the type of originals, such as photo and text, to make copies with optimum image quality. In general, [Text & Line] is the most indicated option for better image quality for originals that consist mainly of text and line, such as drawings. It is recommended to select the most suitable from among the various options whenever you want more professional image quality.



- When [Background Suppression] is set to [On (Auto)], [Printed Original] and [Photograph] cannot be selected.

1. Press [Original Type].

2. Select the original type.

Text & Line

Select this to reproduce crisp text on the copied output.

With this mode, graphs and illustrations are also reproduced clearly.

Photo & Text

Select this when copying an original that contains both text and photos.

Printed Original

Select this when copying an original whose photo elements are printed materials such as pamphlets.

Photograph

Select this when copying a photo.

Blueprint

Select this when copying a blueprint original whose base color is rather dark.

Transparent

Select this when copying a translucent original. This helps to suppress fringing around text.

Uneven-Toned Background

Select this when copying an original having a non-uniform background typically due to paste-ups.

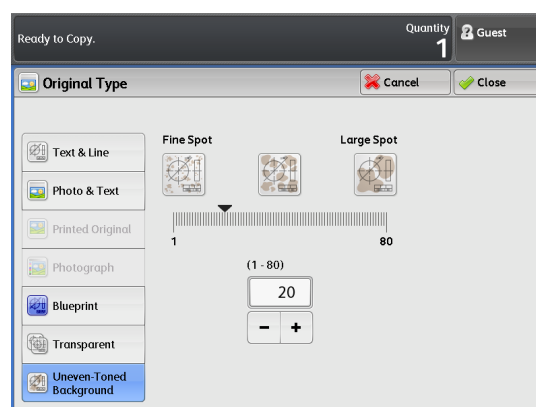
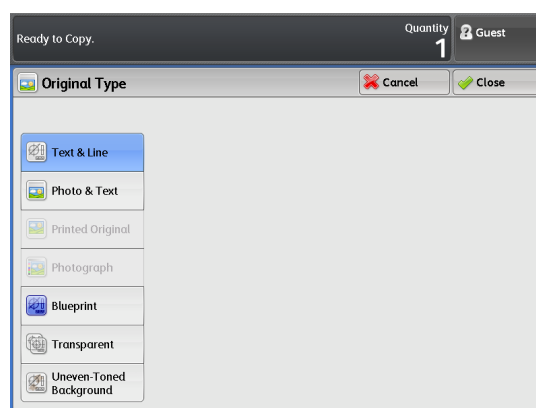
Selecting this displays the [Original Type] screen, where you can adjust the unevenness level in 80 levels.



- The Uneven-Toned Background option is for use with the text and line drawings. Do not use this option for photo originals such as posters.
- Since the effect of this option varies depending on the selected unevenness level, check the copied output to see the result.



- The default value for the unevenness level can be set using the System Settings function. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.4.11 Detailed Settings" (p.423).



2.15.2 Image Options (Adjusting the density, sharpness, and contrast of images)

The following describes how to adjust the copy density (lighten/darken), sharpness, and contrast of images when copying.

1. Press [Image Options].

2. Make adjustments for the desired items.

Lighten / Darken

Select from nine copy density levels between [Lighten] and [Darken].

To increase the density level on the copied output, select a level closer to [Darken]. To decrease the density level, select a level closer to [Lighten].



Note

- This function can also be set using [Lighten / Darken] on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen.

Sharpness

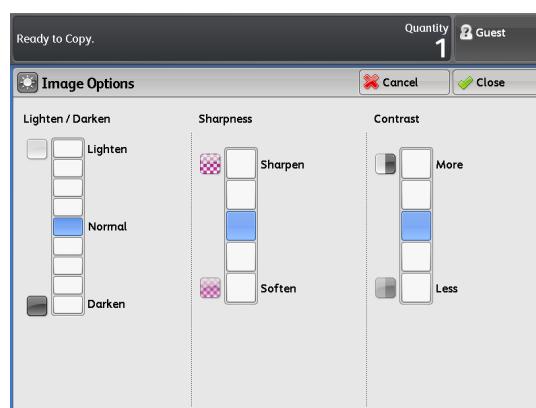
Select from five sharpness levels between [Sharpen] and [Soften].

To enhance edges on the copied output, select a level closer to [Sharpen]. To soften edges, select a level closer to [Soften].

Contrast

Select from five contrast levels between [More] and [Less].

To increase the difference between light and dark areas, or to make the darker areas darker and the lighter areas lighter, select a level closer to [More]. To decrease the difference between light and dark areas, select a level closer to [Less].



2.15.3 Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output)

The following describes how to prevent the background colors of originals such as blue prints from appearing on the copied output.



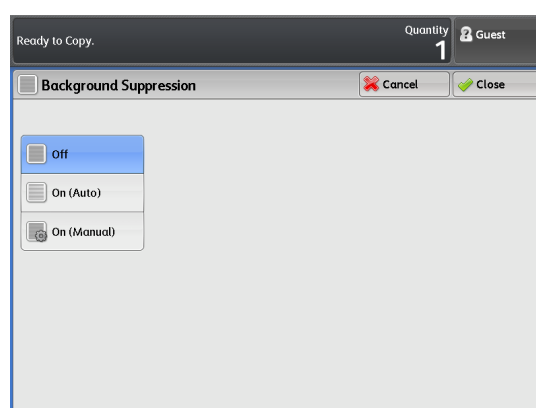
Note

- When [Original Type] is set to [Printed Original] or [Photograph], [On (Auto)] cannot be selected.

1. Press [Background Suppression].
2. Select from [Off], [On (Auto)], and [On (Manual)].

Off

Select this to copy the original as is, without applying any adjustments to the background colors.



On (Auto)

Select this to allow the machine to automatically suppress the background colors.

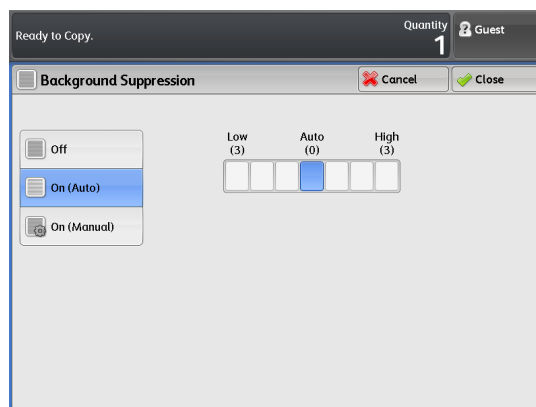
There are seven levels available between [Low] and [High].

To increase the effect of background suppression (lighten the background color on the copied output), select a level closer to [High]. To decrease effects (reproduce the background color as is), select a level closer to [Low].



Note

- If you select [On (Auto)] and part of the image is lost or unwanted background colors remain on the copied output, consider to selecting [On (Manual)] to make adjustments manually or to make adjustments under [Lighten / Darken].



On (Manual)

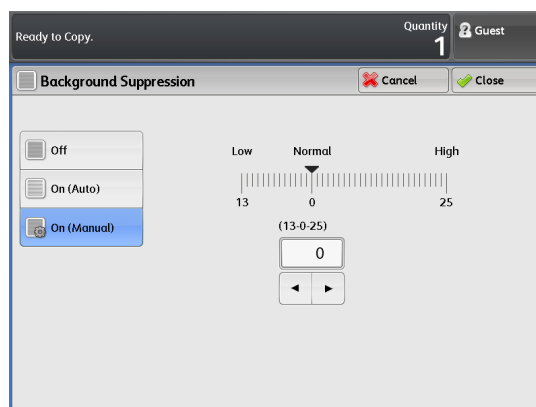
Select this to apply the specified level of suppression to the entire area of the original.

There are 39 levels available between [Low] and [High].



Note

- For the following document types, select [Off], or select [On (Manual)] to make adjustments manually.
 - Photographs/Posters/Color originals
 - Originals with intricate texture
 - Originals with parts where image coverage is high compared to the density of the background colors.



2.15.4 Threshold Sort (Classifying Halftones on the Original)

Use these steps to select whether to reproduce halftones on the original by using pseudo-halftoning or by classifying halftones via binarization.

In general, halftones on originals are reproduced by using pseudo-halftoning method. You can select [On] under [Threshold Sort] to choose classifying halftones via binarization.

1. Press [Threshold Sort].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

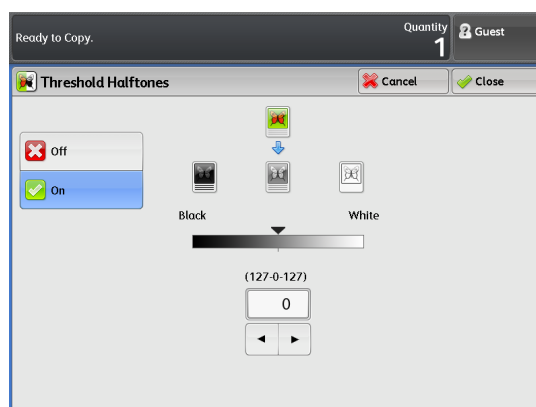
Off

Halftones on originals are reproduced on copied output with pseudo-halftoning.

On

Halftones are reproduced on copied output by classifying halftones via binarization.

You can set the threshold for classifying halftones to black or white.



2.15.5 Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors)

The following describes how to adjust density level of a color in order to enhance or suppress the color.

1. Press [Adjust Color Density].
2. Adjust the density level of individual colors.

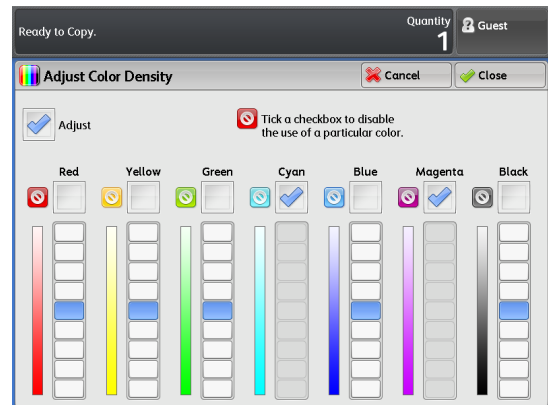
Adjust

Select this check box to adjust the density level of individual colors.

There are nine levels of density available for each of the following colors: red, yellow, green, cyan, blue, magenta, and black.

(Disabling color)

Select the check box for a color to be eliminated from the copied output.

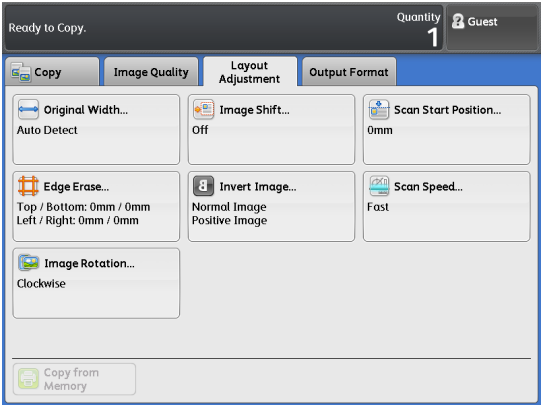


2.16 Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Layout Adjustment] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)p.114
- Image Shift (Shifting the Image Position of the Original).....p.115
- Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning)p.116
- Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original)p.117
- Invert Image (Making Copies with Inverted Images).....p.118
- Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)p.118
- Image Rotation (Setting the Orientation to Apply When Image is Rotated).....p.119

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the desired function on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.



2.16.1 Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)

The following describes how to scan originals in maximum width (914.4 mm).

-  **Important**
- This function works when the manual mode is selected. It does not function in the auto mode.
 - When scanning originals in maximum width, the following functions may not work.
 - Image Shift
 - Edge Erase
 - Mirror Image
 - Negative Image

1. Press [Original Width].

2. Select the desired option.

Auto Detect

Automatically detects the original size.

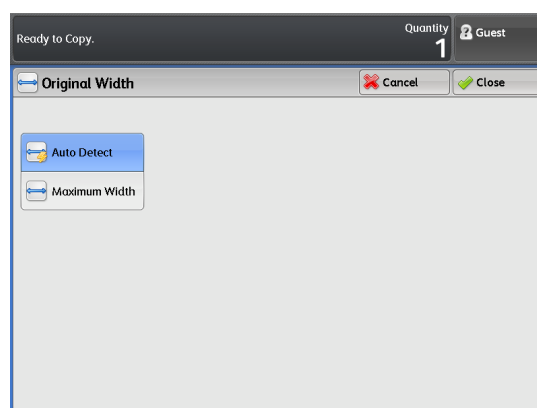


Note

- The size series detected for [Auto Detect] is set with the System Settings function. For the setting method, refer to "Original Size System (DocuWide 6057)"(p.408).

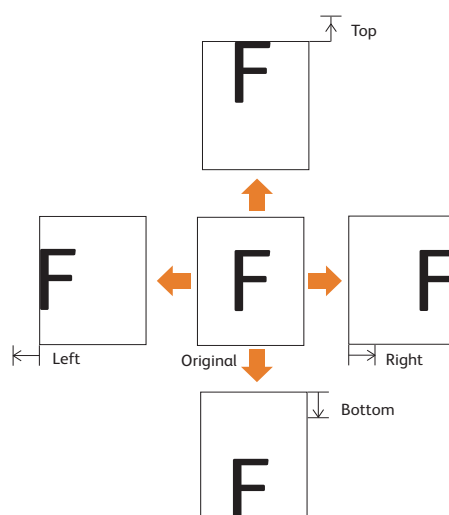
Maximum Width

Select this to scan originals in maximum width (914.4 mm).



2.16.2 Image Shift (Shifting the Image Position of the Original)

The following describes how to shift the image position of the original so that the images are copied on the left, right, top, bottom, or center of the paper. It is also possible to add a margin to the left, right, top, and bottom edges on the copied output.



Note

- The image shift amount is set in accordance with the media. Even when using [Reduce/ Enlarge], copies are made with the margin shift amount that is set with [Image Shift].
- A part of the image may not be printed because it runs off the printable area after image shift is applied, depending on the settings for [Paper Cut Mode].
- When [Lead & Tail Margins] has already been set, [Image Shift] cannot be set.

1. Press [Image Shift].

2. Set the desired items.

Off

Copies the image without any shift.

Auto Center

Copies the image with its center aligned to that of the paper.

Corner Shift

Shifts the image so that it is aligned with the edge or corner of the paper. The shift direction can be selected from eight options.

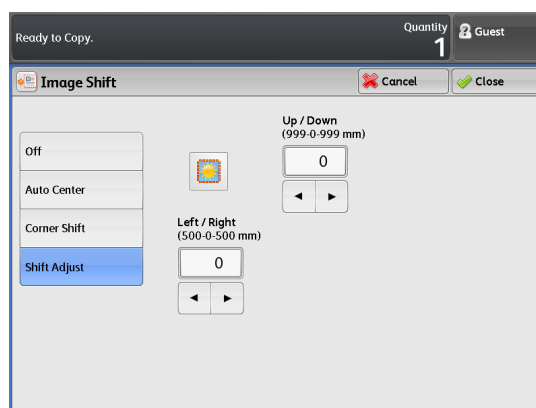
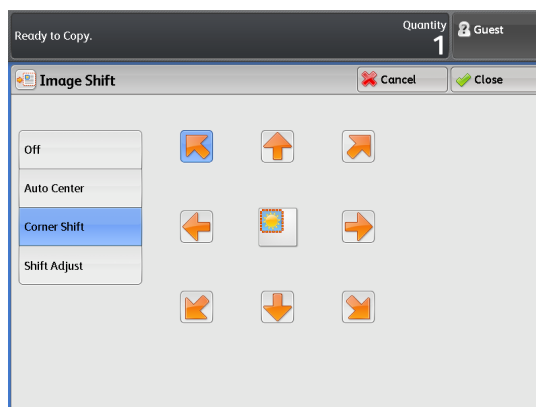
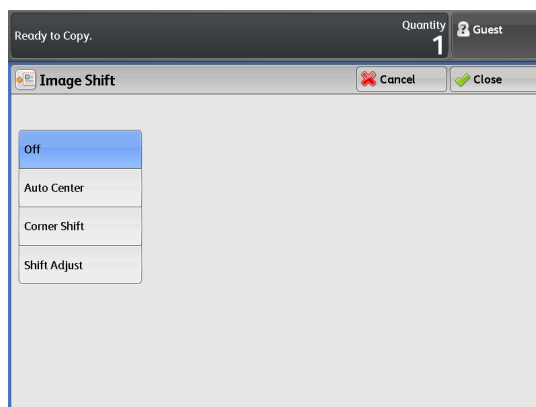
Shift Adjust

The shift distance can be set. The image can be shifted in the range of 0 to 999 mm in the up/down direction and 0 to 500 mm in the left/right direction in 1 mm increments.



Note

- Set the value by using the numeric keypad, or by pressing [◀] or [▶].



2.16.3 Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning)

The following describes how to set the position where the machine starts scanning originals.

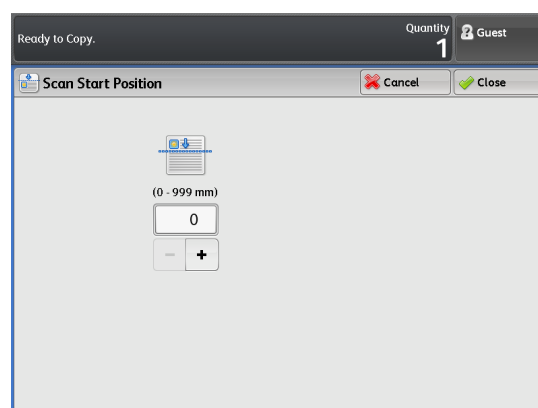


Note

- When [Reduce/Enlarge] is set, this position is also shifted according to the ratio.

1. Press [Scan Start Position].

- Set the start position from the leading edge of the original, in the range of up to 999 mm, in 1 mm increments.



2.16.4 Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original)

When you copy an original with borders, the edges of the original may be printed as black shadows. This setting can erase such shadows when copying.



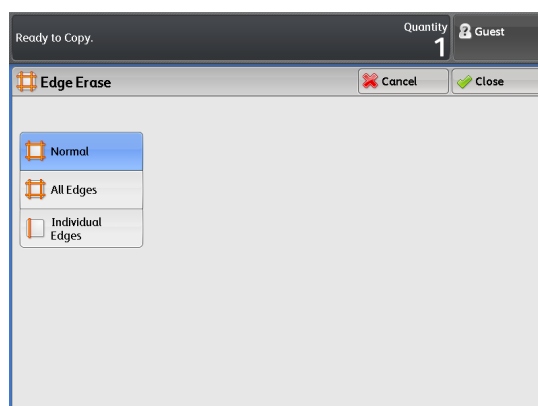
Note

- When [Reduce/ Enlarge] is set, the edge erase amount is also increased/decreased according to the ratio.
- Setting the edge erase amount to [0mm] will not result in borderless printing. For information on the actual printable area, refer to "Image loss"⁵(p.461).

- Press [Edge Erase].
- Select the desired option.

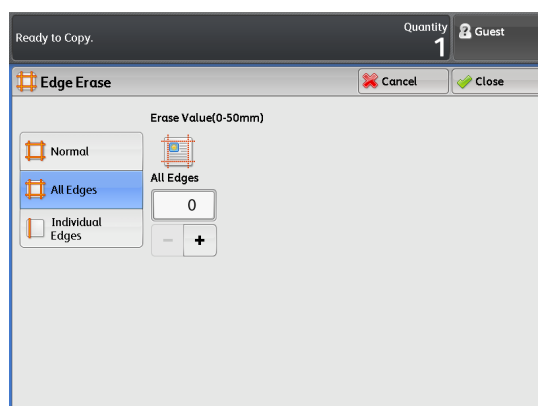
Normal

Select this to set the edge erase amount to 0 mm for the left, right, top, and bottom edges.



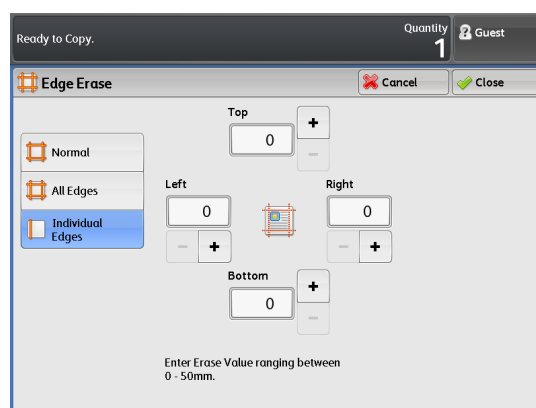
All Edges

Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges of the original. The edge erase amount can be specified in the range of 0 to 50 mm, in 1 mm increments.



Individual Edges

Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges of the original. Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges individually. The edge erase amount can be specified in the range of 0 to 50 mm, in 1 mm increments.



2.16.5 Invert Image (Making Copies with Inverted Images)

The following describes how to flip the image of the original or to create negative images by inverting the density (brightness) in the image of the original on the copied output.



Note

- When both [Negative Image] and [Edge Erase] are set, a white frame will be reproduced on the copied output.
- If the original size is smaller than the paper size, margins will occur on the copied output.

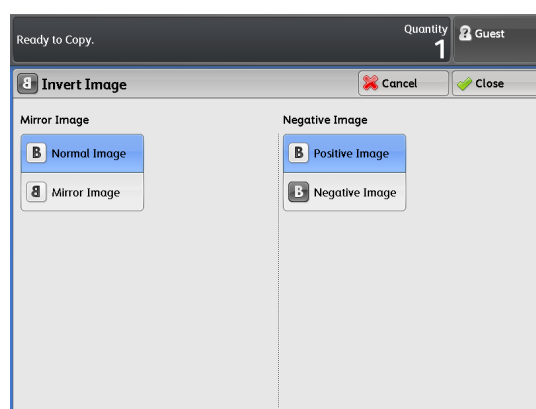
1. Press [Invert Image].
2. Select the desired option.

Mirror Image

Flip the left and right of the images of the original.

Negative Image

Inverts the density (brightness) in the image of the original.



2.16.6 Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)

The following describes how to set slower scanning speed for additional reliability.

1. Press [Scan Speed].

2. Select the desired scan speed.

Fast

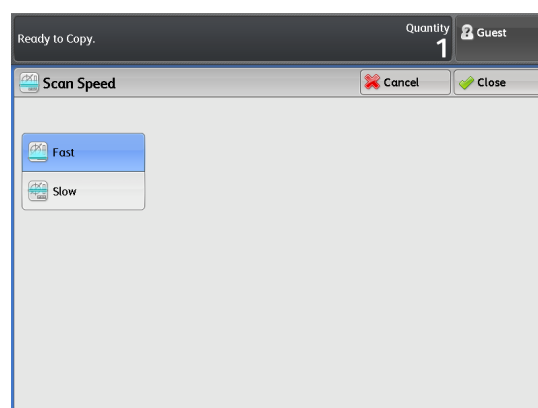
Select this to scan at the normal speed (101.6 mm/sec).

Medium

The scanning speed becomes 1/2 of "First".

Super Slow

The scanning speed becomes 1/6 of "Fast".



2.16.7 Image Rotation (Setting the Orientation to Apply When Image is Rotated)

The following describes how to set the orientation that will be applied to images whenever they are rotated automatically.



Note

- This function works when [Paper Supply] is set to [Auto].

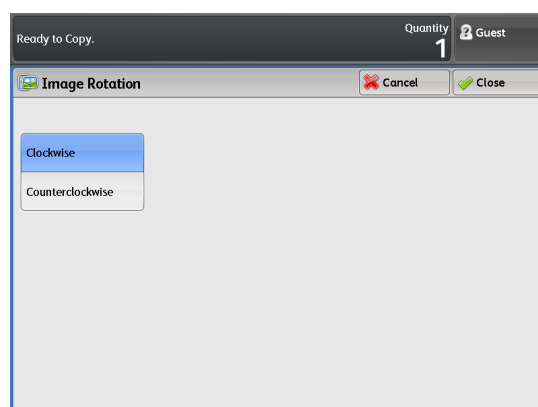
1. Press [Image Rotation].
2. Select the orientation that will be applied to images when they are rotated.

Clockwise

Select this to rotate images clockwise.

Counterclockwise

Select this to rotate images counterclockwise.

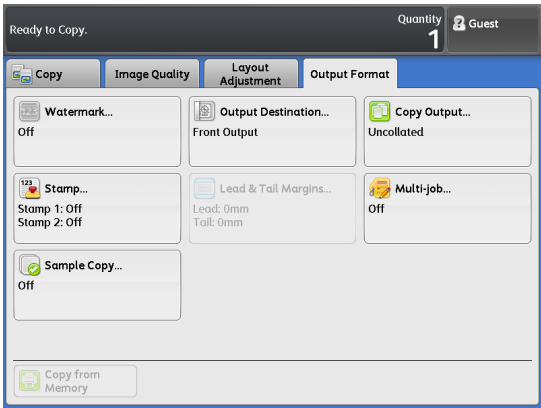


2.17 Copy - [Output Format] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Output Format] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

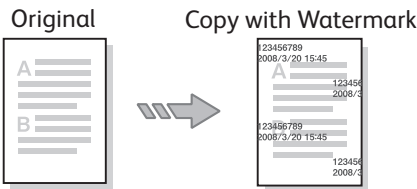
- Watermark (Printing text in the Background When Copying).....p.120
- Output Destination (Specifying the Output Destination for Paper).....p.122
- Copy Output (Specifying Finishing Options)p.122
- Lead & Tail Margins (Adding Margins to Top/Bottom Edges of Original)p.124
- Sample Copy (Determining the Optimal Settings Before Running the Whole Copy Job)p.128

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the desired function on the [Output Format] screen.



2.17.1 Watermark (Printing text in the Background When Copying)

You can print text on the background of the whole copies.
For example, if you set the start number "1" for [Control Number], "1" is printed on all pages of the first copy set, and "2" is printed on all pages of the second copy set.
The serial number on copies can be associated with each person distributed a certain copy, which prevents copying of confidential documents distributed in cases such as at a conference.



1. Press [Watermark].

2. Select any item.

Orientation

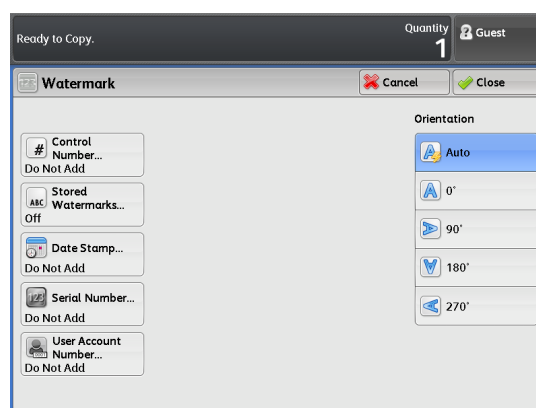
Set the clockwise rotation angle for the orientation of watermark text.

Selecting [Auto] adopts the orientation of the text that is set for each paper size using the [Tools] screen.



Refer

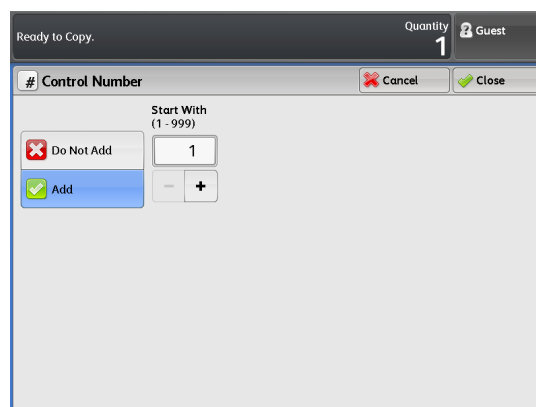
- For details about the setting method, refer to "12.4.10 Watermark Location Auto Settings" (p.423).



Control Number

Set whether to print the control number.

When selecting [Add], set the start number by a number between 1 and 999.

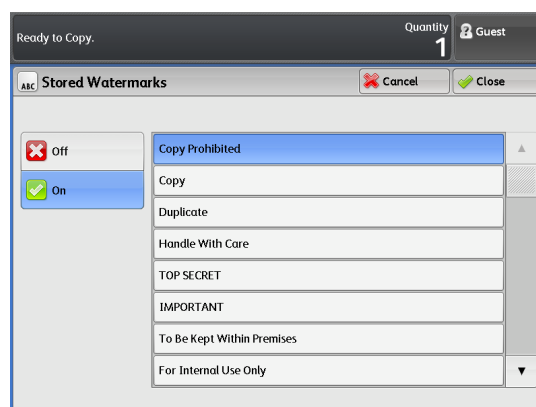


Stored Watermarks

Set whether to print text.

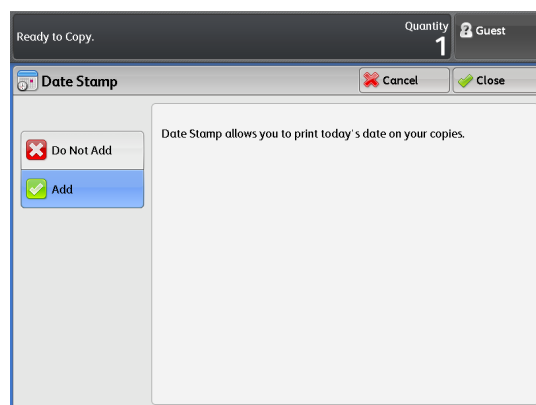
When [Add] is selected, you can select the character to use for Watermark. You can specify from 9 preset character strings.

The text that can be specified are "Copy Prohibited", "Copy", "Duplicate", "Handle With Care", "TOP SECRET", "IMPORTANT", "To Be Kept Within Premises", "For Internal Use Only", or "CONFIDENTIAL".



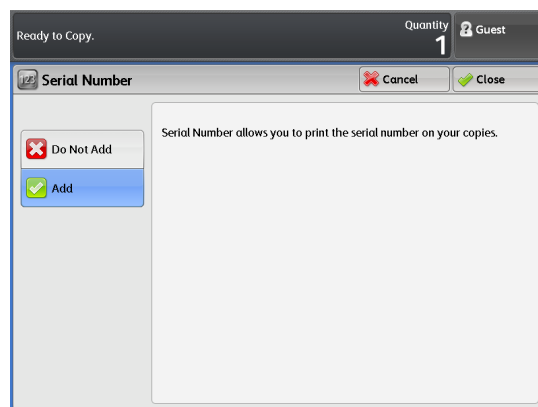
Date Stamp

Set whether to print date of copy.



Serial Number

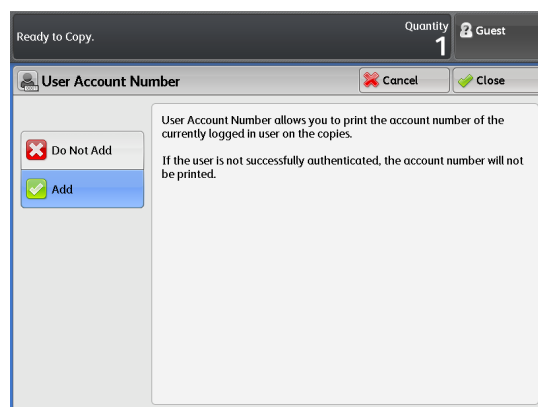
Set whether to print the serial number of the machine.



User Account Number

Set whether to print the user account number.

The user account number can be set when using the authentication function.



2.17.2 Output Destination (Specifying the Output Destination for Paper)

Set the output destination for paper.

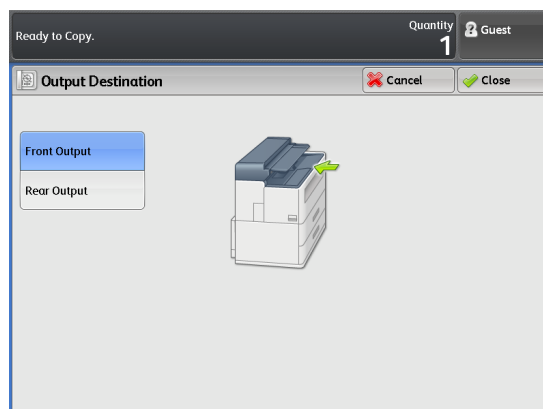
1. Press [Output Destination].
2. Select an option.

Front Output

Paper is ejected from the front output port.

Rear Output

Paper is ejected from the rear output port.



2.17.3 Copy Output (Specifying Finishing Options)

The following describes how to select finishing options.

1. Press [Copy Output].

2. Select the desired option.

Uncollated

Select this to allow the machine to output the specified number of copies and sorts sheets by page.

Collated

Select this to allow the machine to output sheets sorted into sets that are arranged in page order.

Program Sort

Based on the pre-registered distribution pattern, jobs are ejected in page order for each virtual distribution destination (bin).

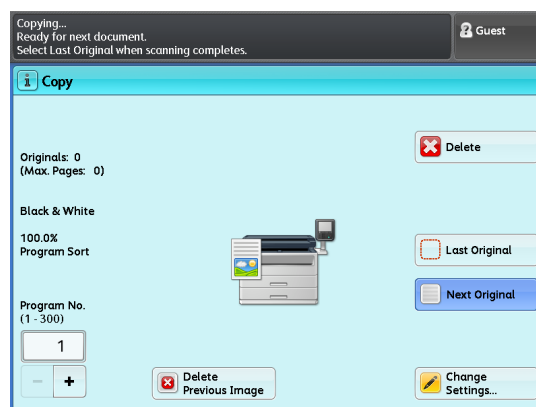
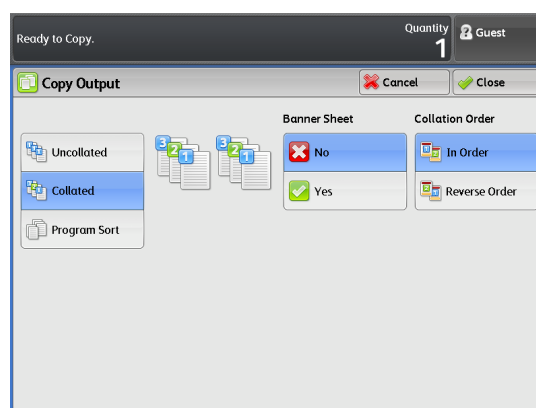
When you copy, specify this distribution pattern number each time you set the original.

You can register up to 40 virtual distribution distributions (bin numbers) and up to 300 patterns. The maximum of 800 pages of originals can be sorted and printed.



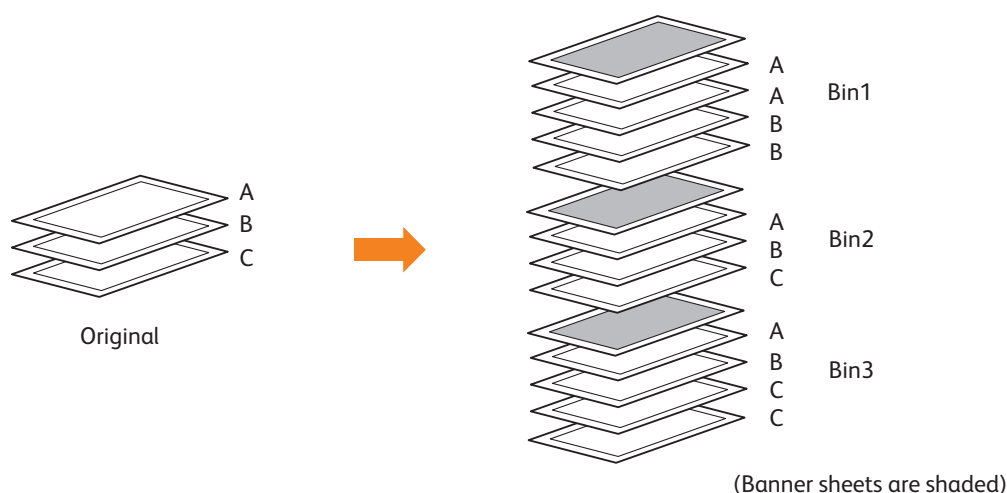
Refer

- For details about registering distribution patterns, refer to "9.1.1 Program Sort (DocuWide 6057)" (p.305).



For example, if you apply Program Sort 001, 002, 003 as shown in the table below to the original ABC, copies are ejected as follows.

Program Sort Number	Virtual Distributions (bin number)		
	Bin 1	Bin 2	Bin 3
001	2	1	1
002	2	1	1
003	0	1	2



Banner Sheet

When [Collated] or [Program Sort] is selected, you can select this option to insert a banner sheet. The banner sheet will have the copy quantity and time printed on it.



Note

- You can specify the tray from which to feed paper for banner sheets and the length of banner sheets. Refer to "12.4.11 Detailed Settings" (p.423).

Collation Order

When [Collated] or [Program Sort] is selected, select whether to output copies in the order in which originals were scanned (In Order), or to output from the last document that was scanned (Reverse Order).

2.17.4 Lead & Tail Margins (Adding Margins to Top/Bottom Edges of Original)

The following describes how to add page margins to the top and bottom edges of the original.



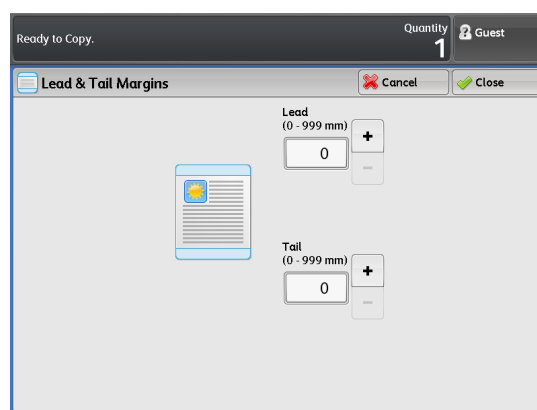
Note

- This function works when [Paper Cut Mode] is set to [Synchronized].

1. Press [Lead & Tail Margins].
2. Set the desired items.

Lead/Tail

Set the leading and trailing edges in the range of 0 to 999 mm, in 1 mm increments.



2.17.5 Stamp (Applying Stamp and Date on Copies)

You can apply stamp and date on your copies.



Note

- To use the Stamp function, the optional DW 6057 Stamp KIT is necessary.
- The size of stamp and text remain the same regardless of the reduce / enlarge setting for copy jobs.

1. Press [Stamp].

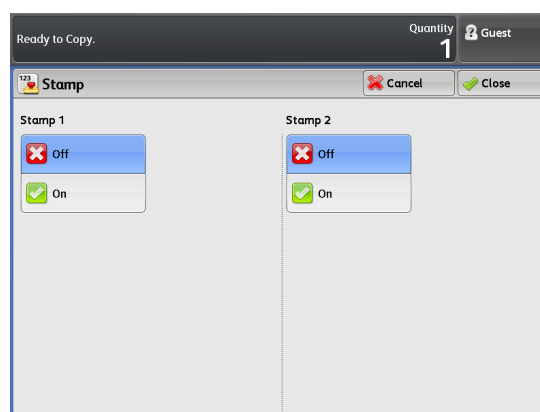
2. Select items as necessary.

Off

Stamp is not applied.

On

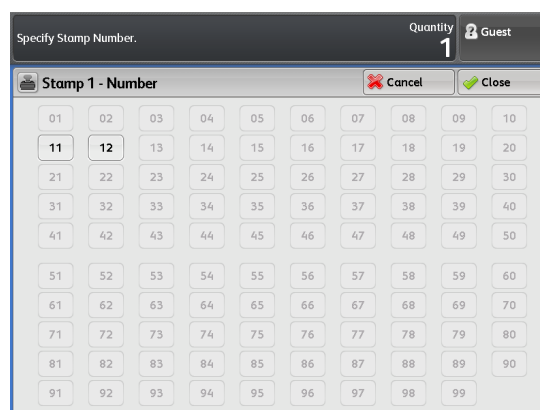
Stamp is applied.



Number

Displays the [Stamp 1 - Number] / [Stamp 2 - Number] screen.

Select the stamp number.



Color

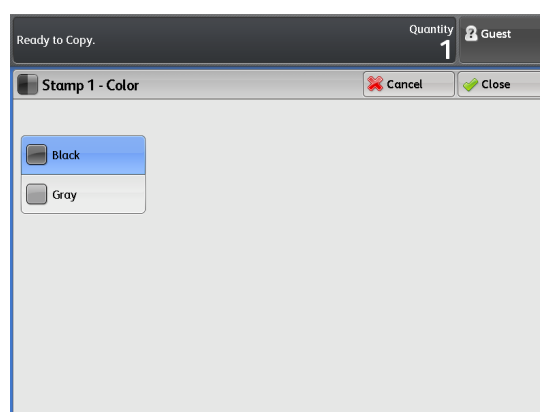
Displays the [Stamp 1 - Color] / [Stamp 2 - Color] screen.

Select black or gray.



Note

- You can set the gray density. For details, refer to "12.3.9 Detailed Settings" (p.410).



Location / Orientation

Displays the [Stamp 1 - Location/Orientation] / [Stamp 2 - Location/Orientation] screen.

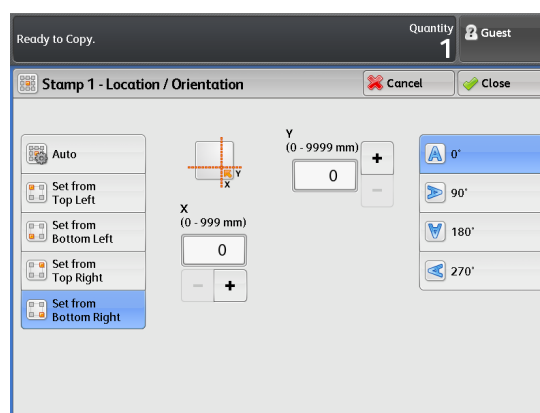
Selecting [Auto] adopts the stamp location and orientation settings specified with the System Settings function.



Refer

- For details about the setting method, refer to "12.4.9 Stamp Location Auto Settings" (p.421).

Selecting [Set from Top Left], [Set from Bottom Left], [Set from Top Right] or [Set from Bottom Right] allows you to select the orientation (0°, 90°, 180°, 270°) and specify the location (Y: 0 - 9,999 mm, X: 0 ~ 999 mm).



Numbering

[Stamp 1 - Numbering] / [Stamp 2 - Numbering] screen is displayed.

Selecting [Fixed Text] prints the same alphanumeric characters (any 12-digit characters) on all Copy jobs.

Selecting [Sequential Number] prints fixed text and serial number (the first 8 digits are fixed text, the last 4 digits are auto serial number). This setting is enabled only when Sort is selected.

Date

Displays the [Stamp1-Date]/[Stamp2-Date] screen.

You can copy it by adding a Date.

Selecting [System] applies the date based on the calendar of the machine.

Selecting [Variable Date] applies the date based on the date format specified for the stamp with the System Settings function.



Note

- Numbering and Date are printed with 14 points fixed in Gothic style.



Refer

- For details on setting the Date format of Stamp, refer to "12.4.9 Stamp Location Auto Settings" (p.421).

2.17.6 Multi-job (Outputting Sorted Jobs by Applying Stored Multi-Job Program)

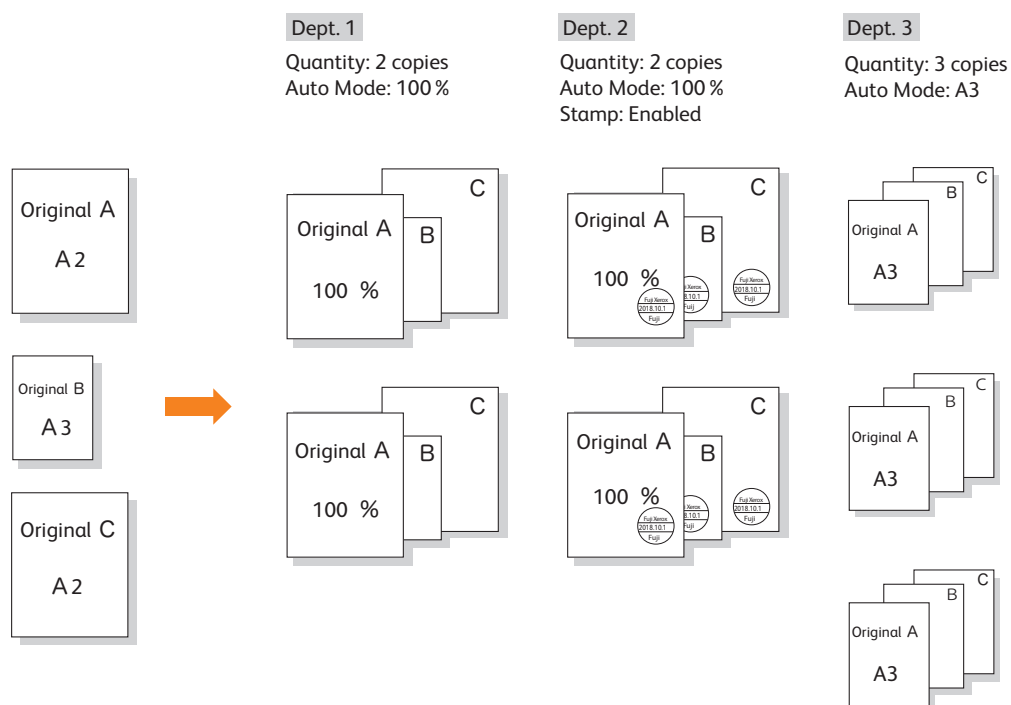
When copying multiple copies, you can output sorted jobs by applying a sorting job memory for each virtual distribution destination (bin).

Stored Multi-Job Program allows you to set [Quantity], [Reduce / Enlarge], [Paper Supply], [Stamp], and [Output Destination].

Up to 20 virtual distributions (bin numbers) can be registered.

The maximum number, that is number of originals x number of multi-jobs, is 800 (pages).

You can insert a banner sheet in multi-jobs. Copy number and time are printed on the banner sheet.



Note

- This function is available only on the DocuWide 6057.
- Banner sheet size can be set with the System Settings function. For the setting method, refer to "12.4.11 Detailed Settings" (p.423).



Refer

- For details about job memory, refer to "Chapter 7 Stored Programming" (p.265).

1. Press [Multi-job].
2. Select an option.

Multi-job

Displays the pre-registered multi-job programs.

Banner Sheet

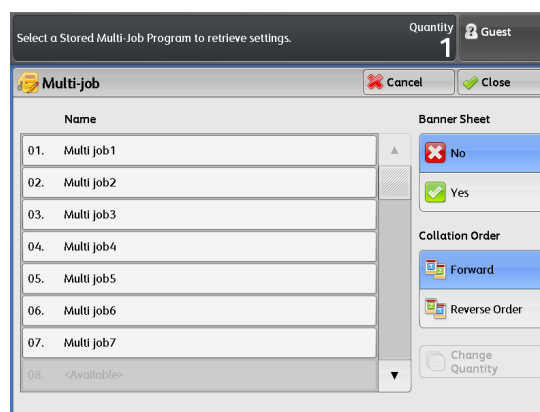
Prints copy number and date on banner sheets.

- [No]
Does not insert a banner sheet.
- [Yes]
Inserts a banner sheet.

Collation Order

Select the ejecting order of copy jobs.

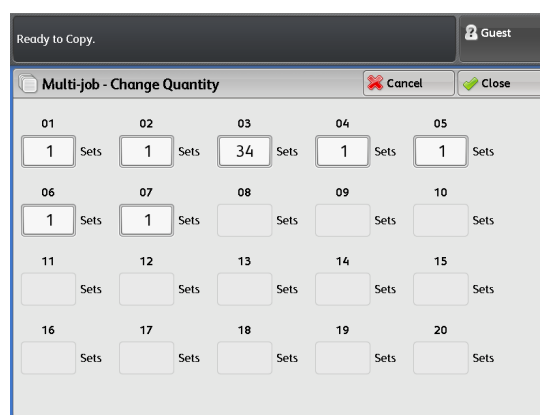
- [Forward]
Ejects scanned originals in the order they are scanned.
- [Reverse Order]
Ejects scanned originals starting from the last.



Change Quantity

Displays the [Multi-job - Change number of copies] screen.

Allows you to set or change the number of copies for each registered multi-job number.



2.17.7 Sample Copy (Determining the Optimal Settings Before Running the Whole Copy Job)

This following describes how to run a sample copy of an area of an original with several settings applied, in order to determine the optimal settings. Any portion on the original can be specified as the sample area. This sample area can be printed with a variety of settings such as the enlarge/reduce ratio, density level, and original type, applied. The sample copy can show a list of effects of nine levels of density, seven types of image quality, or seven levels of auto background suppression.



Important

- The Sample Copy function cannot be used when:
 - [Copy Output] is set to [Collated] or [Program Sort], and [Change Settings] is applied to the next original
 - A multi-job is set
 - Copy is running in the auto mode
 - You are loading paper manually (bypass copying)
 - Copy from memory is running
 - Interrupt copy is running
- When [Original Type] is set to [Printed Original] or [Photograph], the Background Suppression List cannot be output.

1. Press [Sample Copy].
2. Set the desired items.

Off

Select this to not run a sample copy.

Partial Output

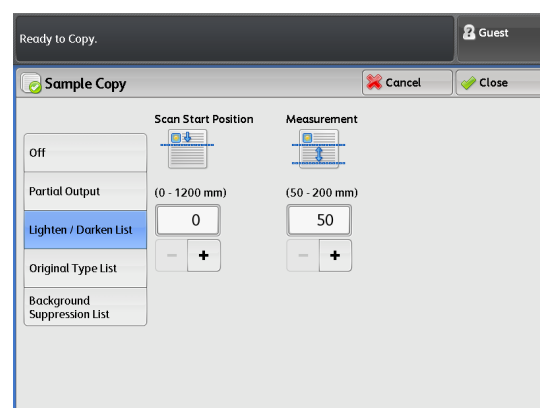
Select this to run a sample copy with a variety of settings such as magnification and original type applied on it.

Lighten / Darken List

Select this to output a listing of effects of nine levels of density.

Original Type List

Select this to output a listing of effects of seven original types.



Background Suppression List

Select this to output a listing of effects of seven levels of auto background suppression.

Scan Start Position

Set the position where the machine starts scanning originals in the range of 0 to 1,200 mm.

Measurement

Set the area to be scanned in the range of 50 to 200 mm.



- The default values for [Scan Start Position] and [Measurement] can be set using the System Settings function. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.4.11 Detailed Settings" (p.423).

Chapter 3 Copy (DocuWide 3037)

This chapter describes the basic operations and functions of the Copy feature.

3.1	Copying Procedure.....	132
3.2	Canceling the Copy Job	135
3.3	Copying in the Specified Paper Size (Auto Mode)	137
3.4	Making Adjustments to Color on the Original.....	138
3.5	Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width	140
3.6	Loading Paper Manually (Bypass Copying)	142
3.7	Copying Long Originals.....	144
3.8	Copying Multiple Originals (Collation)	145
3.9	Imprinting Stamps on Copies.....	147
3.10	Running Sample Copies.....	149
3.11	Copying from Memory	151
3.12	Running an Interrupt Copy	153
3.13	[Copy (Auto Mode)] Screen.....	154
3.14	[Copy (Manual Mode)] Screen.....	157
3.15	Copy - [Image Quality] Screen.....	162
3.16	Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen.....	167
3.17	Copy - [Output Format] Screen.....	173

3.1 Copying Procedure

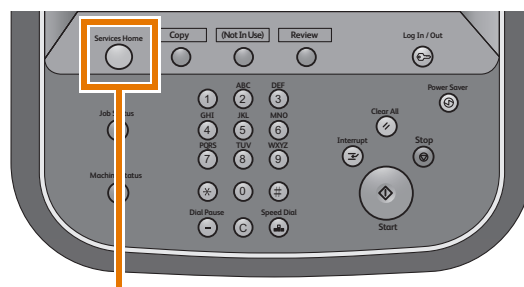
This section describes the basic copy procedure. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Step 1 Selecting Functions.....p.132
- Step 2 Entering a Quantityp.133
- Step 3 Starting the Copy Jobp.134

3.1.1 Step 1 Selecting Functions

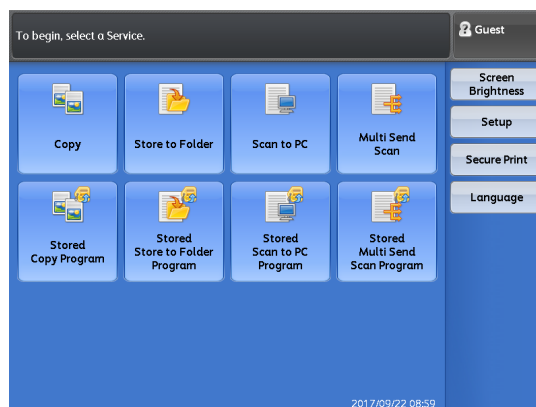
Select functions to set on the [Copy] screen.

1. Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel.
The menu screen is displayed



<Services Home> button

2. Press [Copy] on the menu screen.



3. To copy in the auto mode, select the [Auto Mode] check box. To copy manually, deselect the check box.



Refer

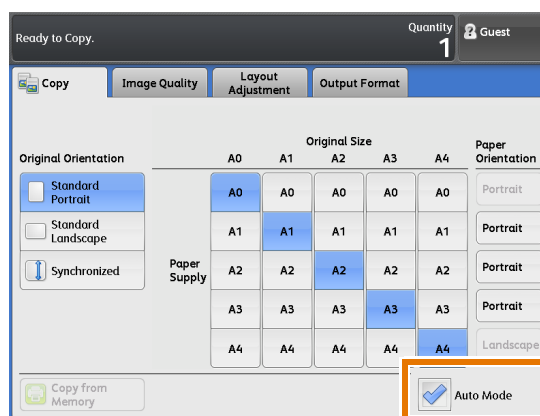
- "3.13 [Copy (Auto Mode)] Screen" (p.154)
- "3.14 [Copy (Manual Mode)] Screen" (p.157)

4. Select functions to set on each tab as necessary.
For details on each tab, refer to these subsections.



Refer

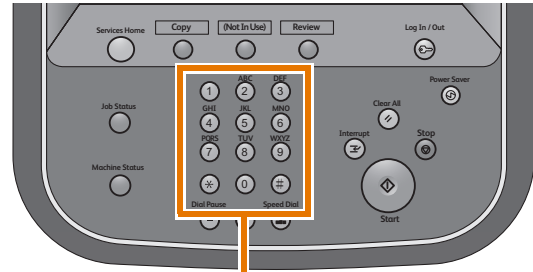
- "3.15 Copy - [Image Quality] Screen" (p.162)
- "3.16 Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.167)
- "3.17 Copy - [Output Format] Screen" (p.173)



3.1.2 Step 2 Entering a Quantity

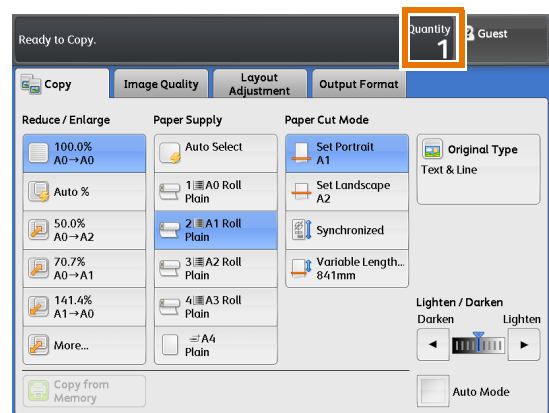
The following describes how to enter the number of copies to be made. You can specify up to 99 for the number of copies.

1. Enter the number of copies, by using the numeric keypad on the control panel.

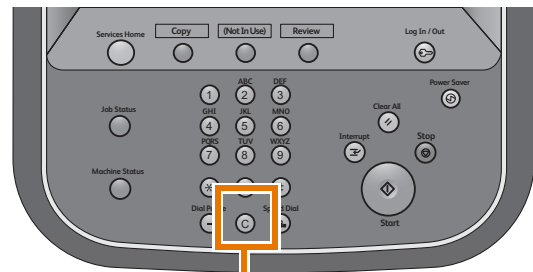


Numeric keypad

The entered number of copies is displayed on the upper right of the touch screen.



2. If you have entered an incorrect value, press the <C (Clear)> button and then enter the correct value.



<C (Clear)> button

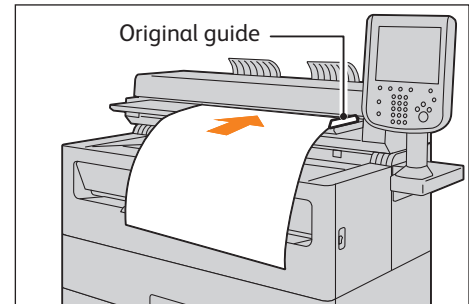
3.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job

The following describes how to load the original and start copying.

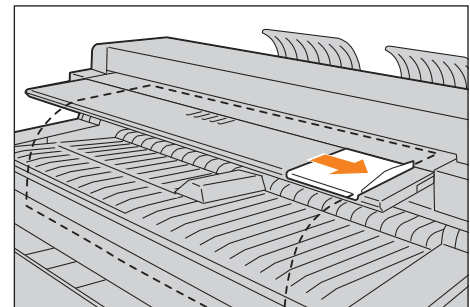


- If you hold down or pull the original while it is being scanned, the original may get jammed.
- When loading a hole-punched original, insert the edge with the holes last. If you insert the edge with the holes first, the original may get jammed.

1. Align the original against the original guide with the side to be copied face down, and insert it all the way until it stops.



- By moving the original guide to the right, you can also adjust the scanning position on the original.



The original is automatically conveyed and stops momentarily.

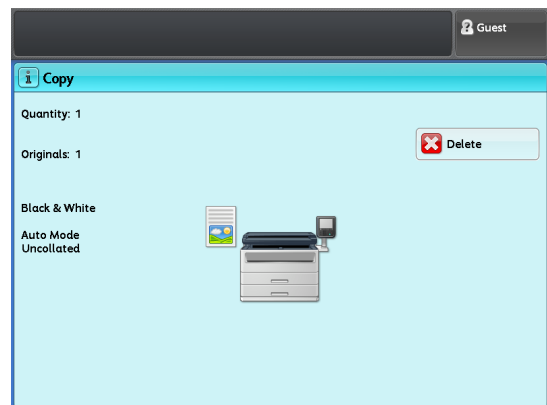
Then the machine automatically starts scanning the original.



- Do not release your hands from the original until it is conveyed. If the original is long, it might fall off the machine.



- When the scan start mode is set to [Manual Start] under System Settings, press the <Start> button on the control panel.
For information on how to set Manual Start, refer to "Scan Start Mode"(p.407).
- When a problem occurs, an error message is displayed on the touch screen. Resolve the problem according to the message.



2. Remove the original that is output.

3.2 Canceling the Copy Job

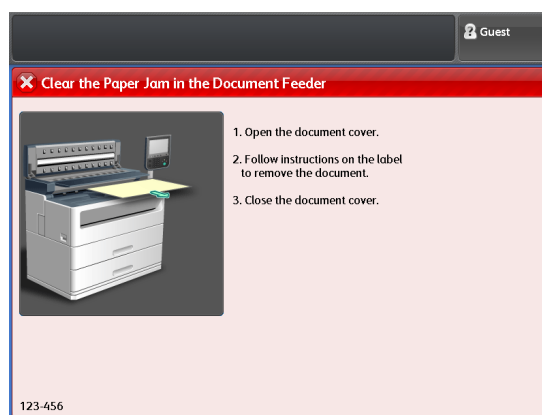
This section describes how to stop feeding document or cancel copying. Refer to the following subsections for more information.

- Canceling Feeding the Original.....p.135
- Canceling Copy Jobs.....p.135

3.2.1 Canceling Feeding the Original

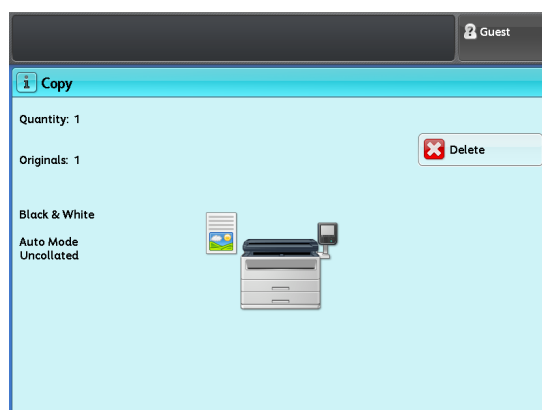
Stop the original to be fed when it is bent or about being torn.

1. Press the <Stop> button on the control panel when the original is fed.
Feeding of the original stops.
2. Remove the jammed original according to the message displayed on the touch panel display, and reset the original.

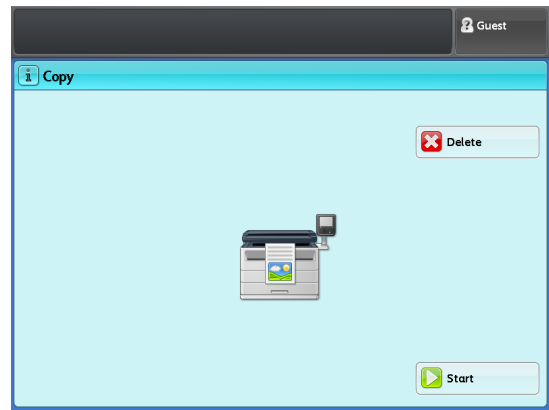


3.2.2 Canceling Copy Jobs

1. Press [Delete] on the touch panel display.



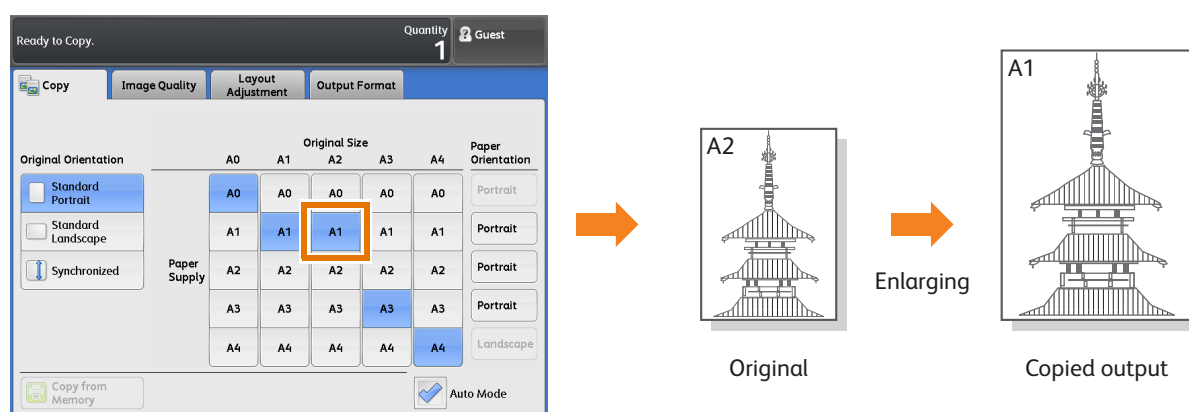
2. Press [Delete].



3.3 Copying in the Specified Paper Size (Auto Mode)

Auto Mode is a feature that allows you to pre-configure an output paper size for each original size using a matrix. The feature automatically reduces/enlarges images based on this configuration when copying.

The following describes an example of how to insert an A2 standard-size original in the portrait orientation, and to make its enlarged copies (141.4%) on A1 paper (A1 roll paper in the portrait orientation) (The value surrounded with a square is the set value).

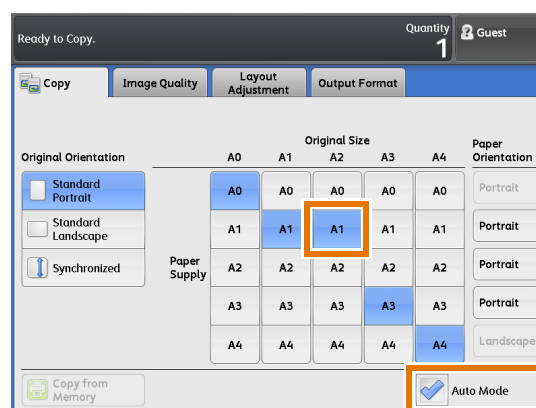


1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the [Auto Mode] check box.
3. On the matrix, select [A2] for [Original Size] and [A1] for [Paper Supply].



Note

- If the orientation of your original does not match that of the paper loaded, for example, when [Original Orientation] is set to [Standard Portrait] though [Paper Orientation] is set to [Landscape], the image will be printed on the paper with the image orientation rotated according to the settings specified in [Auto Mode Rotate Direction] under [System Settings]. For information on how to set the function, refer to "12.4.7 Auto Mode Rotate Direction" (p.420).



4. Set other features as necessary.
5. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
6. Load the original.

3.4 Making Adjustments to Color on the Original



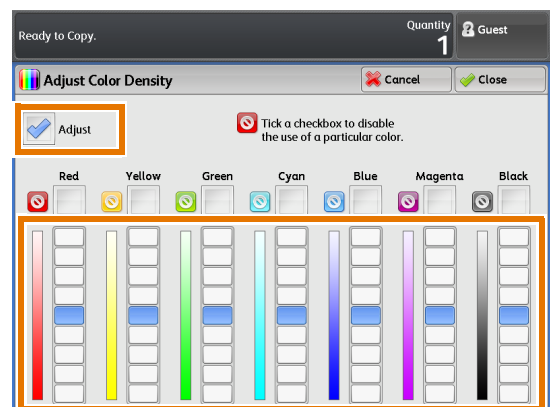
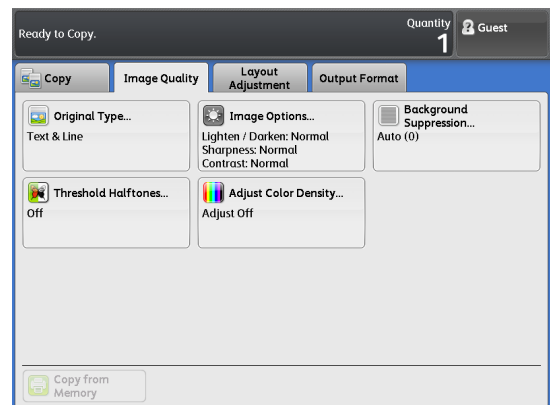
Note

- To use this feature, the optional Color Scan Memory KIT is necessary.

3.4.1 Adjusting Individual Color Density (Adjust Color Density)

When copying a color original, this feature allows you to change the copy-density level for each of the color components.

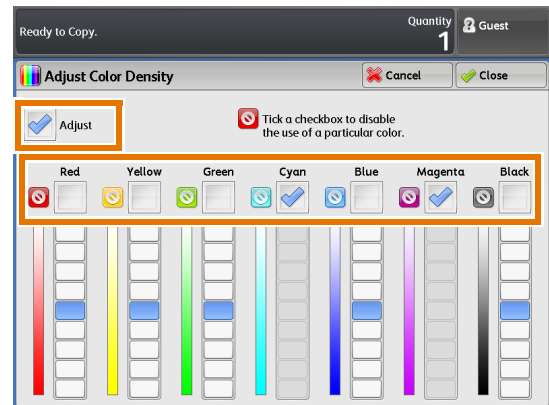
1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Press the [Image Quality] tab.
3. Press [Adjust Color Density].
4. Select the [Adjust] check box.
5. Select density level for each color components.
6. Set other features as necessary.
7. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
8. Load the original.



3.4.2 Eliminating the Specified Color on the Original (Disabling Color)

When copying a color original, this feature allows you to make a copy leaving out those parts that correspond to a specified color.

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Press the [Image Quality] tab.
3. Press [Adjust Color Density].
4. Select the [Adjust] check box.
5. Select the check box for a color to eliminate the color from being copied.
6. Set other features as necessary.
7. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
8. Load the original.



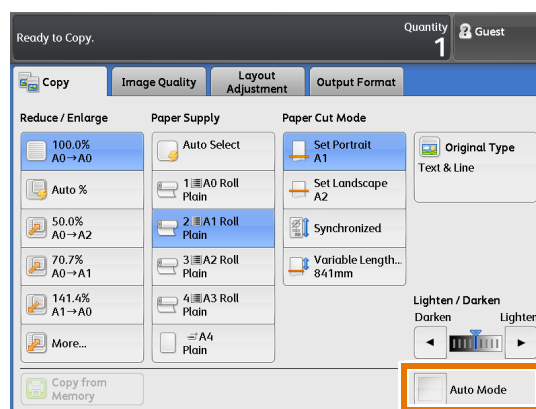
3.5 Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width

Selecting [Maximum Width] allows you to scan and copy originals in maximum width (914.4 mm). This function is useful when you scan non-standard size originals and you do not want to worry about the scan width.

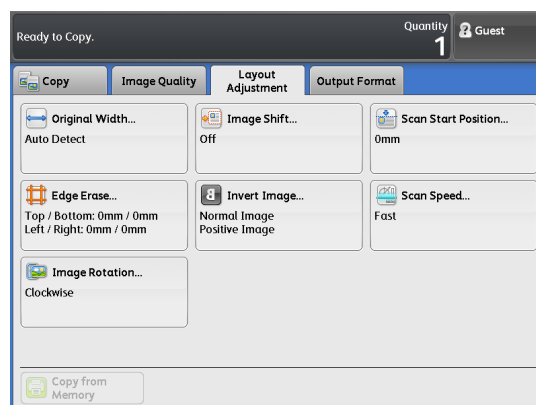


- This function works when the manual mode is selected. It does not function in the auto mode.
- When scanning originals in maximum width, the following functions may not work.
 - Image Shift
 - Edge Erase
 - Mirror Image
 - Negative Image

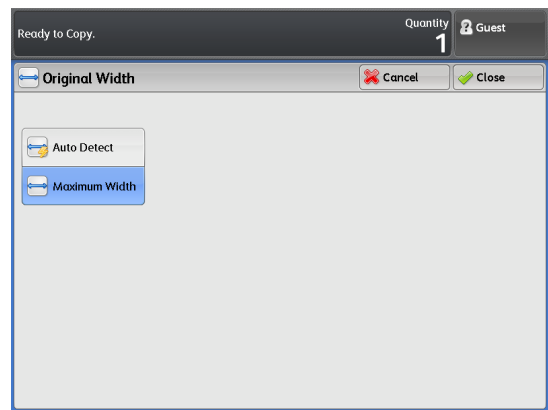
1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Make sure that the [Auto Mode] check box is deselected.



3. Press the [Layout Adjustment] tab.
4. Press [Original Width].



5. Press [Maximum Width].
6. Set other features as necessary.
7. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
8. Load the original.



3.6 Loading Paper Manually (Bypass Copying)

Non-standard size paper and paper of sizes you do not use very often can be copied from the bypass (manual) feed table.



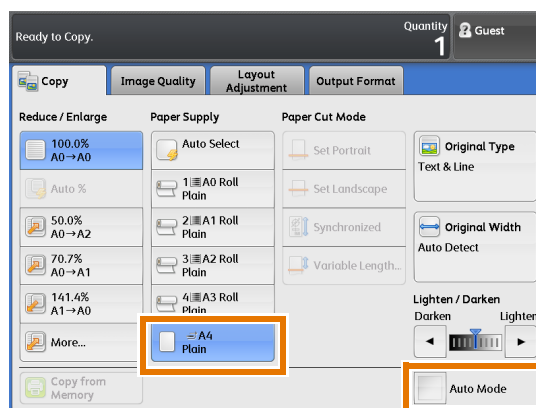
- If you load paper of a size that is different from the one you specified, part of the image may be lost, or the image may be copied with unwanted margins.



- The following functions cannot be used in conjunction with bypass copying.

- Image Shift. (Auto Center, Corner Shift)
- Image Rotation
- Copy Output (Collated)
- Lead & Tail Margins
- Sample Copy

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Make sure that the [Auto Mode] check box is deselected.
3. Press [].
4. Select [Paper Series], [Paper Type], [Paper Weight], and press [Close].
5. Set other functions as necessary.
6. Load the original.
The original is scanned.

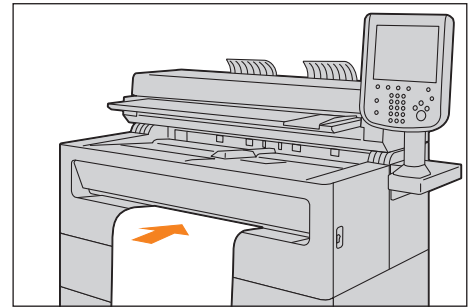


7. Insert the paper by aligning both ends of the original with the scale of the manual feed table.



Important

- Load paper one sheet at one time.
- If paper is curled, hold the curled corners with both hands when inserting the paper.
- Do not release your hands from the paper until it is conveyed. If you release your hands when you hear a sound, the paper may get jammed.



3.7 Copying Long Originals

The following describes an example of how to copy an A1 width 3,000 mm length original onto A1 roll paper in the same width and length.

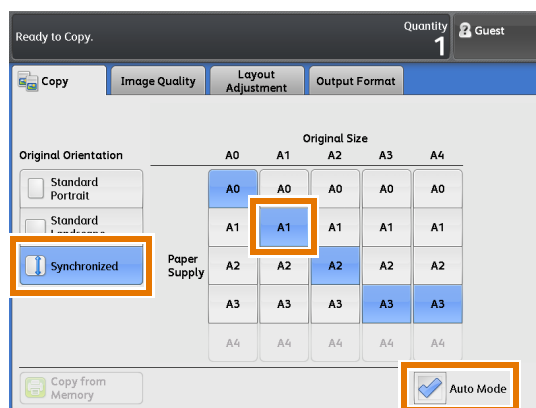
1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the [Auto Mode] check box.
3. Press [Synchronized].
4. On the matrix, make sure that [A1] is selected for both [Original Size] and [Paper Supply].
5. Set other features as necessary.



Note

- Scanning long size originals at a low speed helps preventing skewing. For information on how to set the function, refer to "3.16.6 Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)" (p.171).

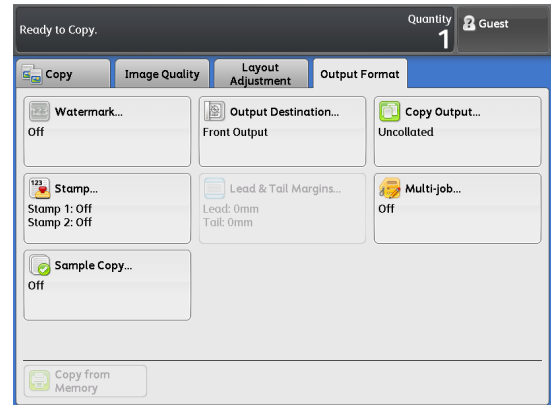
6. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
7. Load the original.



3.8 Copying Multiple Originals (Collation)

Multiple originals can be collated into sets when their copies are output.

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Press the [Output Format] tab.
3. Press [Copy Output].



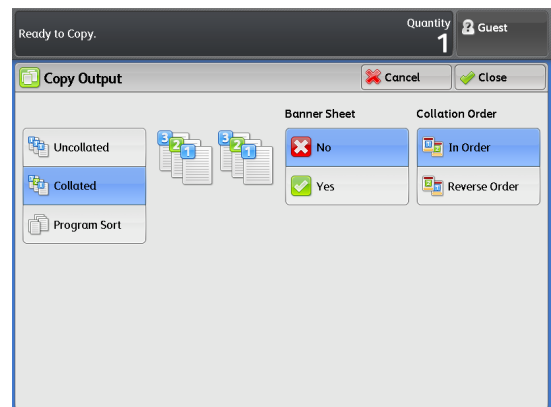
4. Press [Collated].
5. Select options for [Banner Sheet] and [Collation Order], and press [Close].

Banner Sheet

Select [Yes] to insert a banner sheet. The banner sheet will have the copy quantity and time printed on it.

Collation Order

Select [In Order] to output copies in the order in which the originals were scanned or [Reverse Order] to output from the last original that was scanned.



 **Refer** • For more information, refer to "3.17.3 Copy Output (Specifying Finishing Options)" (p.176).

6. Set other functions as necessary.
7. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
8. Load the first original.
The scanning starts.

Delete

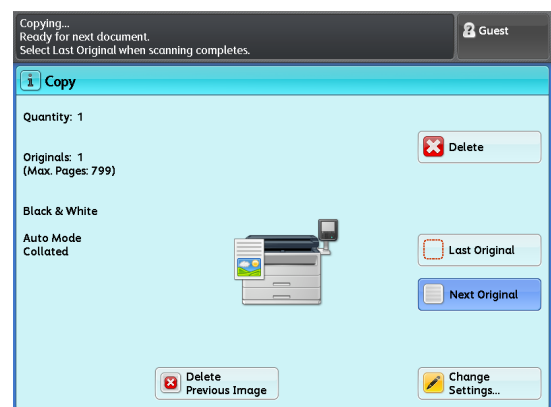
Press to cancel the copy job.

Last Original

Press this button after all originals have been scanned.

Next Original

This button is selected by default.



Delete Previous Image

Press this button to delete images of the previously scanned originals.

Change Settings

Press this button to change the magnification ratio or the settings such as image quality for the next original.

9. Load the next original.
Repeat this step if you have more originals.
10. When all originals have been scanned, press [Last Original].

3.9 Imprinting Stamps on Copies

Stamps and date not written in the original can be imprinted on your copies.

Up to two stamps can be imprinted. To use stamp, use the stamp tool to create and send stamp data to the machine in advance.



Note

- To use the Stamp function, the optional DW 3037 Stamp KIT is necessary.
- When you set originals, pay attention to their orientation. Depending on the orientation of the original, stamps may not be imprinted as intended.
- The stamp list can be checked with CentreWare Internet Services. For information on how to do this, refer to CentreWare Internet Services.
- You can print the list of registered stamps. For information on how to print the list, refer to "1.13.2 Machine / Information" (p.64).

1. Create stamps with the stamp tool and send them to the machine.



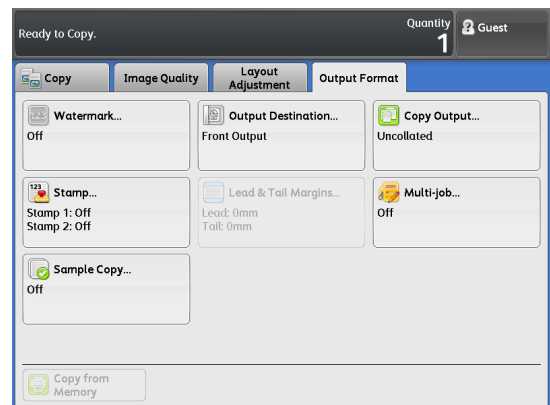
Refer

- For details on how to create and send stamps to the machine, refer to "Stamp Tool User Guide".

2. Press [Copy] on the menu screen.

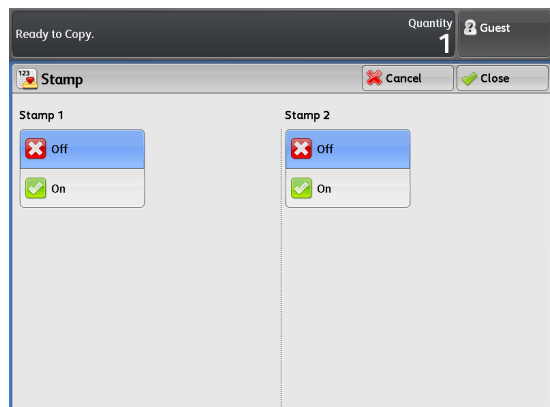
3. Press the [Output Format] tab.

4. Press [Stamp].



5. Press [On] for [Stamp 1] or [Stamp 2].

6. Press [Number].



7. Select the stamp number, and press [Close].

8. Set other optional items as required.



Refer

- "3.17.6 Sample Copy (Determining the Optimal Settings Before Running the Whole Copy Job)" (p.179)



9. Set other functions as necessary.

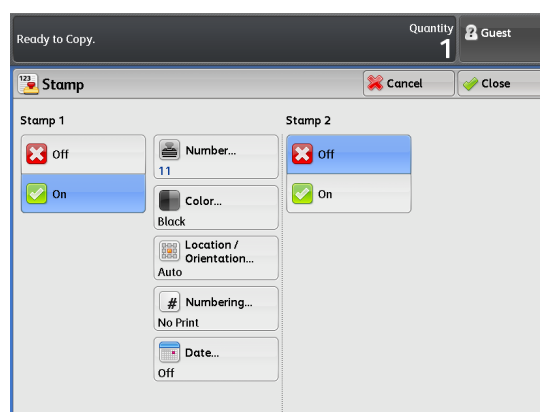
10. Repeat steps 5 to 9 for pressing two stamps.

11. Set the original.



Refer

- "3.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.134)



3.10 Running Sample Copies

This section describes how to run a sample copy of an area of an original with several settings applied, in order to determine the optimal settings. Any portion on the original can be specified as the sample area. This sample area can be printed with a variety of settings such as the enlarge/reduce ratio, density level, and original type, applied. The sample copy can show a list of effects of nine levels of density, seven types of image quality, or seven levels of auto background suppression.



- The Sample Copy function cannot be used when:

- [Copy Output] is set to [Collated], and [Change Settings] is applied to the next original
- Copy is running in the auto mode
- You are feeding paper manually (bypass copying)
- Copy from memory is running
- Interrupt copy is running

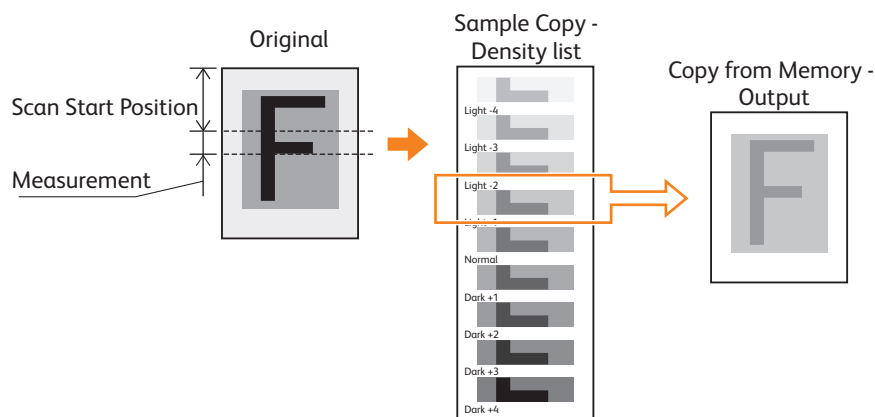
- When [Original Type] is set to [Printed Original] or [Photograph], the Background Suppression List cannot be output.



Note

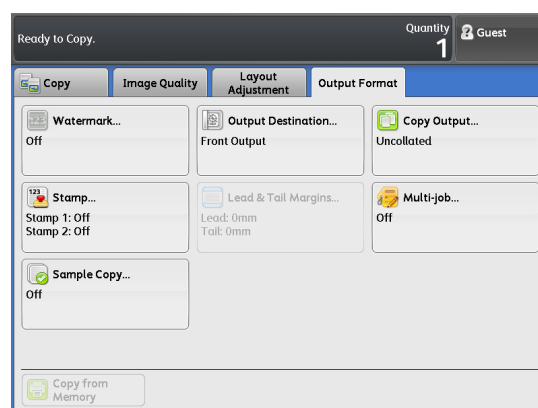
- To use this feature, the optional Color Scan Memory KIT is necessary.

The following describes an example of how to run a sample copy for reviewing a listing of available densities, and then print the entire image with the optimal density.



1. Press [Copy] on the menu screen.

2. Press the [Output Format] tab.
3. Press [Sample Copy].



4. Press [Lighten / Darken List].
5. Set [Scan Start Position] and [Measurement] as necessary, and press [close].



Refer

- "3.17.6 Sample Copy (Determining the Optimal Settings Before Running the Whole Copy Job)" (p.179)

6. Set other features as necessary.
7. Load the original.

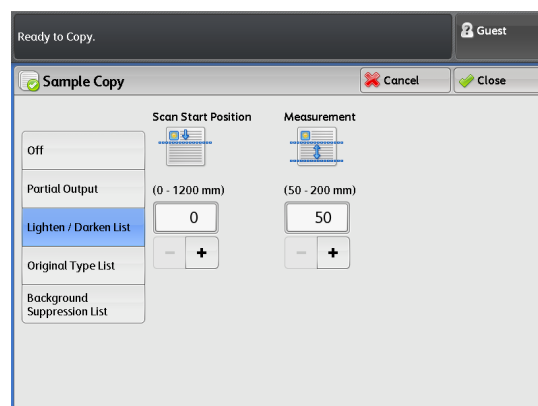
The sample copy with the specified settings applied is output.



Note

- To run another sample copy, repeat Steps 2. to 7.
- Settings are not kept between sample copies. To run another sample copy, press [Sample Copy] again.

8. When the optimal copy is output, change the setting for [Lighten / Darken] appropriately.
 9. Press [Copy from Memory] and then press [Start].
- The entire image with the specified settings applied is output.



3.11 Copying from Memory

The Copy from Memory function allows you make additional copies of the last copied original without reloading. When you have selected [Collated] for the last copy job, the same collated set of the document will be additionally output.

The Copy from Memory function is disabled if:

- You press the <Clear All> button or the machine enters the Auto Reset state.
- You turn the power off or when the machine enters the Power Saver mode.
- You load the next original.
- You return the screen to the menu screen.
- You run an Interrupt copy.
- You log out of the authenticated mode.

The Copy from Memory function cannot be used when:

- Image data for the last original has been lost due to a problem such as a paper jam.



Important

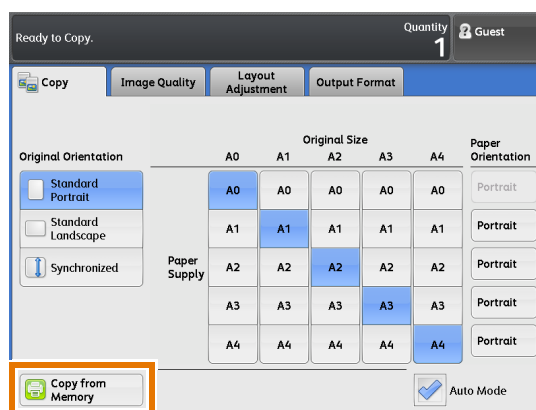
- The following functions cannot be used in conjunction with the Copy from Memory function.
 - The custom buttons on the control panel (Calling the associated feature)
 - Interrupt Copy
 - Sample Copy
 - Adjust Color Density
 - Original Scanning Speed
 - Copy Output
 - Watermark



Note

- To use this feature, the optional Color Scan Memory KIT is necessary.

1. After running a copy job, press [Copy from Memory].

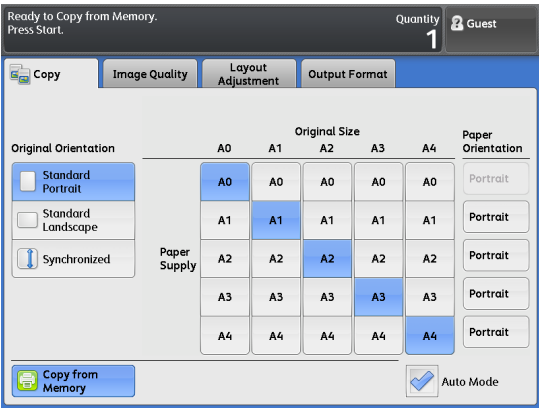


2. Set the functions as necessary.

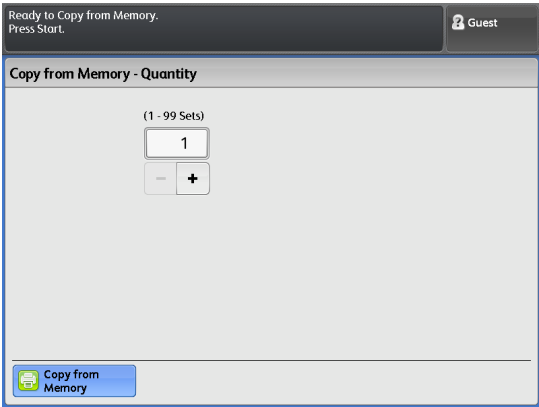


Note

- To restore the settings for the last copy job, press the <Clear All> button.



- When you have selected [Collated] for the last copy job, only the number of copies can be changed.



3. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.
4. Press the <Start> button.
The image data from memory is output.
5. After you finish copying from memory, press [Copy from Memory] again.
The Copy from Memory mode is exited.

3.12 Running an Interrupt Copy

This section describes how to interrupt an ongoing continual copy or print job to run an urgent copy job. The settings for the ongoing job are kept and will be restored immediately after you exit the Interrupt Copy mode.



Note

- The following operations cannot be used during the Interrupt Copy mode.
 - Interrupting another copy job
 - Sample Copy
 - Copy from Memory
 - Copy Output
- Interrupt Copy cannot be executed when; A sample copy or scan job is running.

1. Press the <Interrupt> button on the control panel.

The <Interrupt> button lights up, indicating the Interrupt mode is enabled.



Note

- When you press the <Interrupt> button while a job is being performed, the <Interrupt> button blinks, indicating the Interrupt mode will be enabled after the current job is completed (reserve mode). Once the current job is completed, the <Interrupt> button lights up, indicating the Interrupt mode is enabled.

2. During a print job, the menu screen appears. Press [Copy].

3. Set other features as necessary.

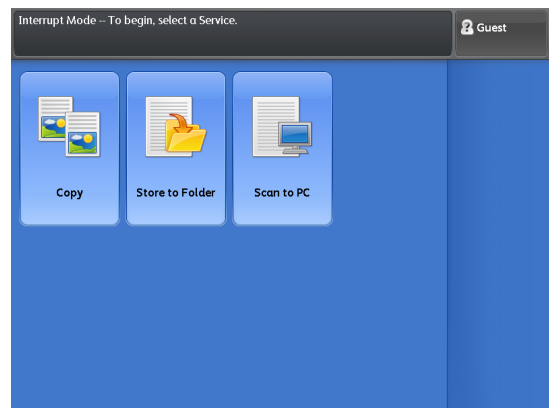
4. Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.

5. Load the original.

6. After you finish the interrupt copying, press the <Interrupt> button.

The <Interrupt> button goes out, indicating the Interrupt mode has exited.

The suspended print or copy job resumes.

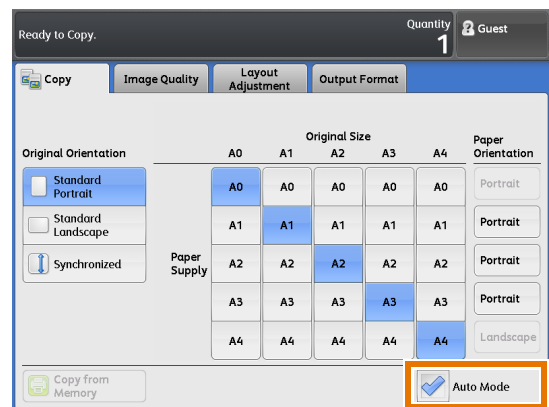


3.13 [Copy (Auto Mode)] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Copy (Auto Mode)] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Original Orientation (Specifying the Document Feeding Orientation).....p.154
- Mapping Table between Original Sizes and Paper Sizes (Matrix)p.155
- Paper Orientation (Specifying the Target Paper Orientation).....p.155

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the [Auto Mode] check box.
3. Select the desired function on the [Copy (Auto Mode)] screen.



3.13.1 Original Orientation (Specifying the Document Feeding Orientation)

The following describes how to tell the machine the orientation in which the original is placed.

For each of the original orientations (Standard Portrait, Standard Landscape, and Synchronized), the mapping table between original sizes and paper sizes (Matrix) can be predefined.

1. Select the original orientation.

Standard Portrait

Select this when loading standard size originals in the portrait orientation.

Standard Landscape

Select this when loading standard size originals in the landscape orientation.

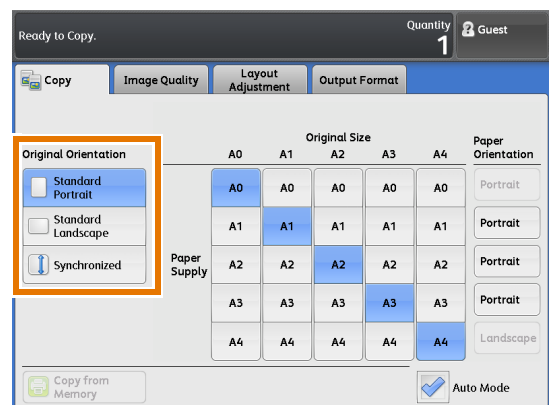
Synchronized

Select this when loading non-standard size originals.



Note

- Image rotation is not applied.

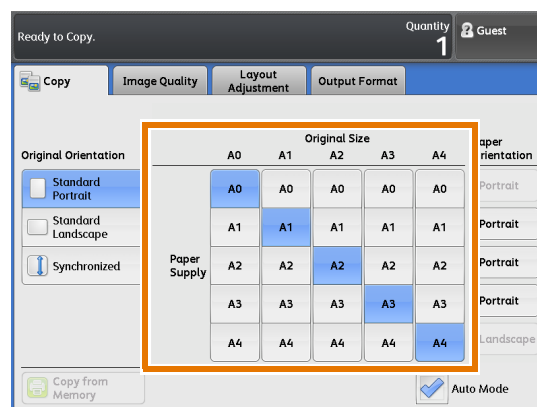


3.13.2 Mapping Table between Original Sizes and Paper Sizes (Matrix)

This following describes how to select the target paper size corresponding to the original size.

In Auto Mode, the machine automatically selects the appropriate magnification ratio and the paper tray according to the scanned original, based on the predefined mapping table between original sizes and paper sizes (Matrix).

1. Select the target paper size corresponding to the original size from the matrix.



3.13.3 Paper Orientation (Specifying the Target Paper Orientation)

This following describes how to select the target paper orientation.

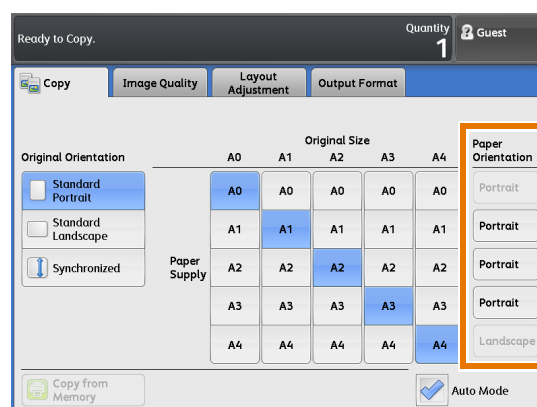
With the machine, you can predefine the target paper orientation for individual paper sizes.

1. Press [Paper Orientation] that corresponds to the desired paper size.



Note

- [Orientation] for A0 size paper is fixed to [Portrait].



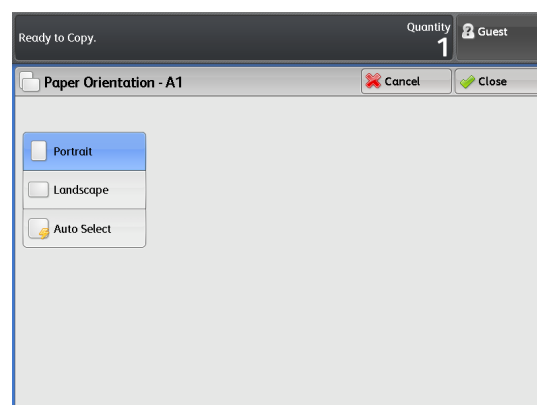
2. Select the paper orientation from [Portrait], [Landscape], and [Auto Select].

Portrait

Select this to deliver standard size paper in the portrait orientation.

Landscape

Select this to deliver standard size paper in the landscape orientation.



Auto Select

Select this to prioritize delivering paper in the same orientation as the original.

3.14 [Copy (Manual Mode)] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

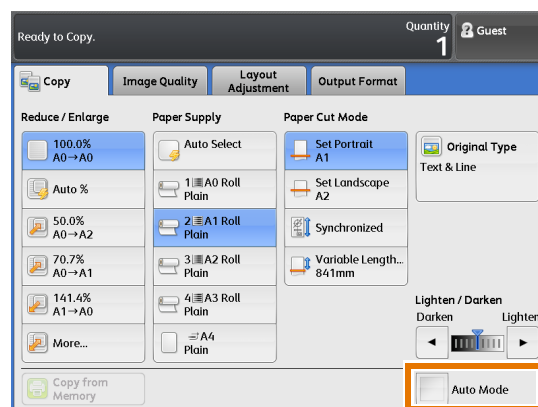
- Reduce/Enlarge (Making Enlarged/Reduced Copies) p.157
- Paper Supply (Selecting the Paper Supply Source) p.159
- Paper Cut Mode (Selecting How to Cut Delivered Paper) p.160
- Original Type (Selecting the Original Type) p.161
- Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width) p.161
- Lighten / Darken (Adjusting Copy Density) p.161



Note

- The functions shown to the right on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen can be changed. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.4.1 Copy Tab - Features Allocation" (p.414).
By factory default, [Original Type] and [Original Width] are displayed.

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Make sure that the [Auto Mode] check box is deselected.
3. Select the desired function on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen.



3.14.1 Reduce/Enlarge (Making Enlarged/Reduced Copies)

The following describes how to select a magnification ratio to make enlarged or reduced output.

1. Select the magnification ratio.

100.0 %

Makes copies at the same size as the original.

Auto %

Automatically determines the magnification to fit to paper, based on the original and paper sizes for copying.

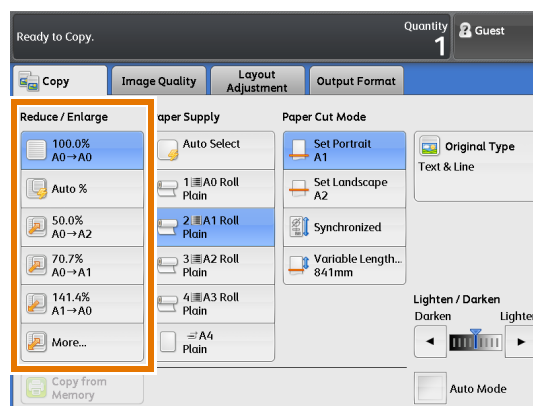


Note

- [Auto %] for [Reduce / Enlarge] and [Auto Select] for [Paper Supply] are mutually exclusive.

Ratios (3rd - 5th buttons)

Allows you to select from preset ratios.





- The magnification ratios shown on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen can be changed. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.4.2 Preset Buttons" (p.415).

More...

Select [More] to display the [Reduce / Enlarge] screen, where you can make settings for [Proportional %], [Independent X - Y %], and [Calculator %].



- For information on how to make settings on the [Reduce / Enlarge] screen, refer to "When [Proportional %] is Selected"(p.158), "When [Independent X - Y %] is Selected"(p.158), and "When [Calculator %] is Selected"(p.159).

When [Proportional %] is Selected

Use the following procedure to select a ratio from the preset standard magnifications, or to manually enter a ratio.

1. Select from preset ratios or enter a value in [Variable %].

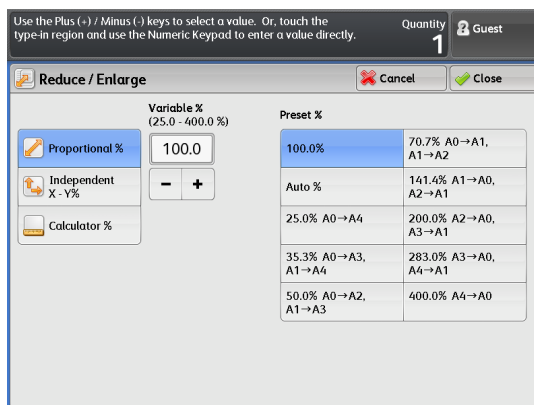
Variable %

Allows you to set a ratio in the range of 25.0 to 400.0 % in 0.1 % increments. Enter the value by using the numeric keypad or by pressing [+] and [-]. Set to 100.0 % to scan at the same size as the original.

Preset %

Allows you to select a magnification from the following options.

- 100.0 %
Makes copies at the same size as the original.
- Proportional %
Allows you to select from preset ratios.



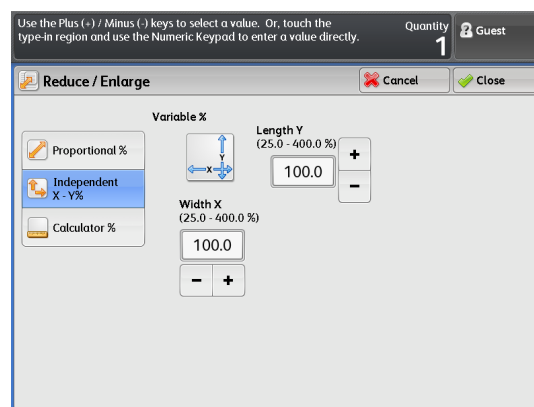
When [Independent X - Y %] is Selected

Use this procedure to specify different ratios for the width and the length to alter the proportion.

1. Enter a value in each fields.

Width X, Length Y

Set a ratio for the width and the length, in the range of 25.0 to 400.0 % in 0.1 % increments. Enter the value by using the numeric keypad or by pressing [+] and [-].



When [Calculator %] is Selected

You can specify individual sizes for the width and the length.

When you specify the sizes of the original and the desired output, the machine calculates the magnification for each of the width and the length. This calculation result, however, is within a range from 25.0 to 400.0 %.

1. Press [Original Size] under [Width X], and using the numeric keypad, enter the value for the width of the original.
2. Press [Copy Size] under [Width X], and using the numeric keypad, enter the value for the width of the desired output.
3. In the same way, enter the length in [Original Size] and [Copy Size] under [Length - Y %].

Width X, Length Y

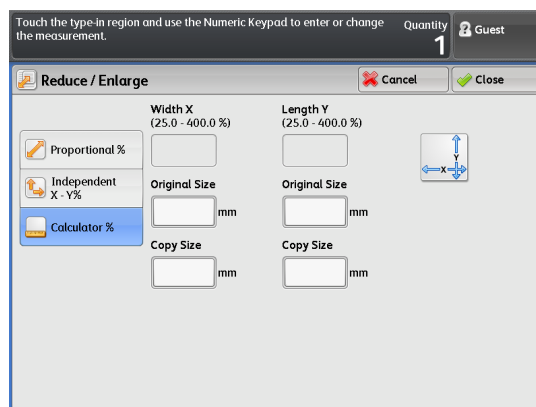
The magnification derived from the values specified in [Original Size] and [Copy Size] is displayed.

Original Size

Specify the width and the length of the originals in the range of 1 to 9999 in 1 mm increments.

Copy Size

Specify the width and the length of the desired output in the range of 1 to 9999 in 1 mm increments.



3.14.2 Paper Supply (Selecting the Paper Supply Source)

Follow the procedure below to select the paper tray to be used.

1. Check the size and type of paper loaded in each tray, and select the tray you want to use.

Auto Select

Use this option to automatically select the appropriate tray, based on the original size and the specified magnification.



- [Auto %] for [Reduce / Enlarge] and [Auto Select] for [Paper Supply] are mutually exclusive.

Paper Tray (2nd to 5th trays)

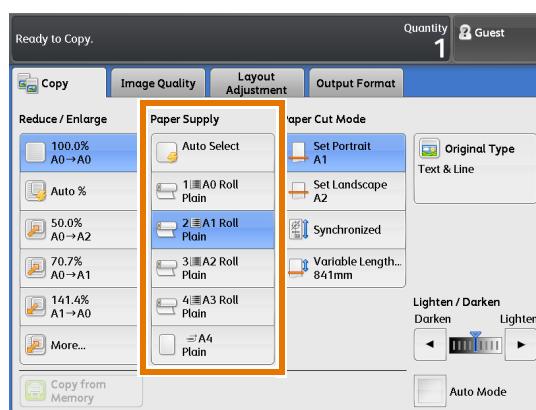
Select from the preset paper tray.

Bypass

Use this option when loading non-standard size paper and paper of sizes you do not use very often on the bypass (manual) feed table.



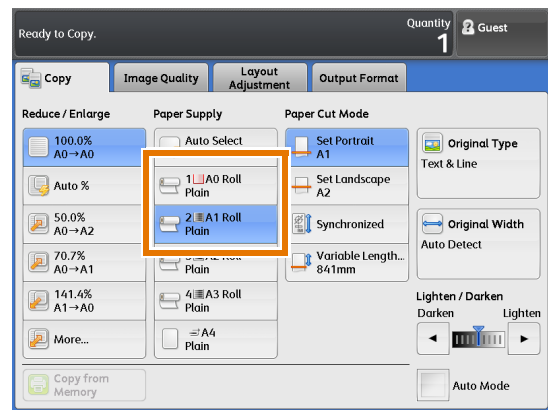
- For information on how to load paper via bypass, refer to "3.6 Loading Paper Manually (Bypass Copying)" (p.142).



Checking the remaining amount of paper

The icon displayed on each tray option indicates the remaining level of paper loaded on the tray.

- : Indicates that 20 to 100% of paper remains.
- : Indicates that 20% or less of paper remains, close to nil.
- : Indicates that paper runs out, or is not loaded.



3.14.3 Paper Cut Mode (Selecting How to Cut Delivered Paper)

Follow the procedure below to select the way in which delivered roll paper is cut.



Note

- When cutting paper is selected for [Paper Supply], Paper Cut Mode options cannot be selected.
- If you select a paper cut method that does not match the orientation of the original, part of the copied image may be lost. For example, when you load an A1 standard-size original in the landscape orientation, and make copies on A1 roll paper by selecting [Standard Size Landscape] in [Paper Cut Method], an unwanted margin occurs on the lower part of the copies, and deletion occurs along the left and right sides of the image.

1. Select how to cut delivered roll paper.

Set Portrait

Cuts roll paper to a standard portrait size.

Set Landscape

Cuts roll paper to a standard landscape size.

Synchronized

Cuts roll paper according to the length of the original.

Variable Length

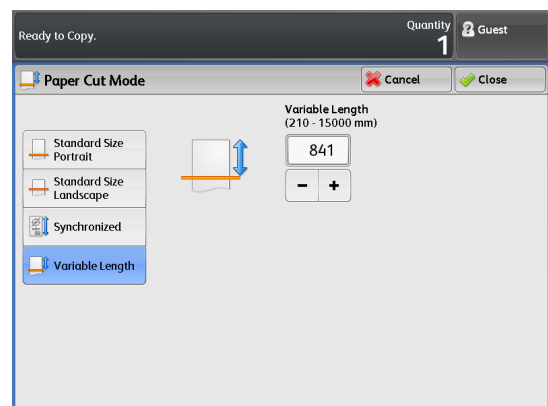
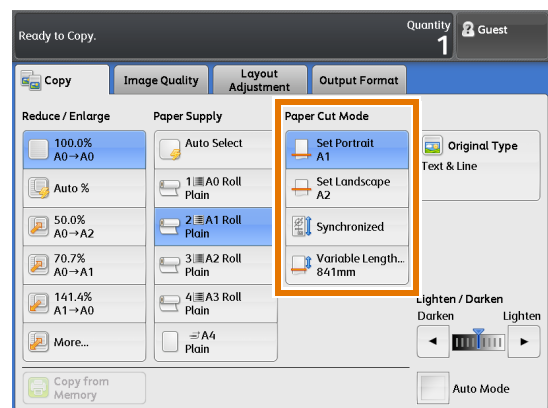
Cuts roll paper to the specified length.

The cutting length can be changed in the range of 210 to 15,000 mm when paper type is set to Plain, or in the range of 210 to 2,500 mm when set to Vellum (tracing paper) or Film. If the specified length is smaller than the actual length which is derived from the original length and the magnification, the excess part will be cut. If the specified length is larger than the actual length, a margin occurs along the trail edge of the copied image.



Note

- When performing Adjust Color Density, the range of 210 to 7,500 mm can be specified for plain paper.



- The default value for [Variable Length] can be set using the System Settings function for individual paper sizes. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.4.5 Variable Length Settings" (p.418).

3.14.4 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)

This function is equivalent to that displayed for [Original Type] on the [Image Quality] screen.



- For more information, refer to "3.15.1 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)" (p.162).

3.14.5 Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)

This function is equivalent to that displayed for [Original Width] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.



- For more information, refer to "3.16.1 Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)" (p.167).

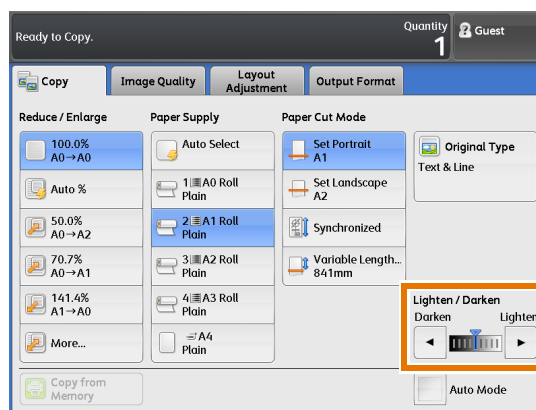
3.14.6 Lighten / Darken (Adjusting Copy Density)

Copy density can be adjusted among nine levels. Move leftward to increase the density and rightward to decrease the density.



- This function can also be set using [Lighten / Darken] on the [Advanced Settings] screen.

1. Adjust copy density using [] and [].

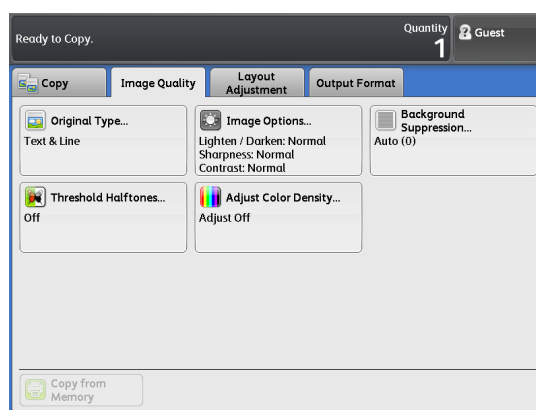


3.15 Copy - [Image Quality] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Image Quality] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)p.162
- Image Options (Adjusting the density, sharpness, and contrast of images)p.163
- Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output).....p.164
- Threshold Sort (Classifying Halftones on the Original)p.165
- Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors).....p.166

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the desired function on the [Image Quality] screen.



3.15.1 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)

The following describes how to select the type of originals, such as photo and text, to make copies with optimum image quality. In general, [Text & Line] is the most indicated option for better image quality for originals that consist mainly of text and line, such as drawings. It is recommended to select the most suitable from among the various options whenever you want more professional image quality.



- When [Background Suppression] is set to [On (Auto)], [Printed Original] and [Photograph] cannot be selected.

1. Press [Original Type].

2. Select the original type.

Text & Line

Select this to reproduce crisp text on the copied output.

With this mode, graphs and illustrations are also reproduced clearly.

Photo & Text

Select this when copying an original that contains both text and photos.

Printed Original

Select this when copying an original whose photo elements are printed materials such as pamphlets.

Photograph

Select this when copying a photo.

Blueprint

Select this when copying a blueprint original whose base color is rather dark.

Transparent

Select this when copying a translucent original. This helps to suppress fringing around text.

Uneven-Toned Background

Select this when copying an original having a non-uniform background typically due to paste-ups.

Selecting this displays the [Original Type] screen, where you can adjust the unevenness level in 80 levels.



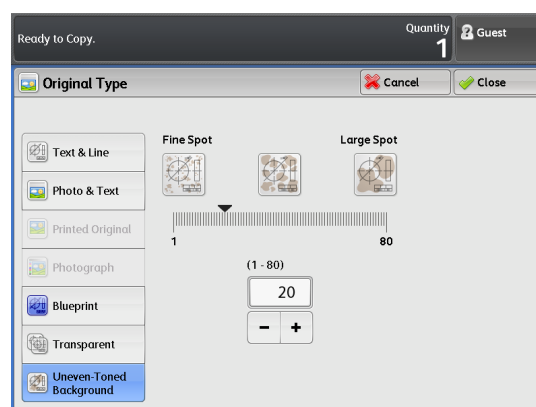
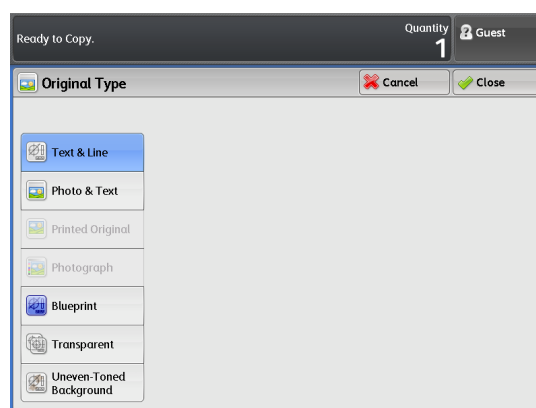
Important

- The Uneven-Toned Background option is for use with the text and line drawings. Do not use this option for photo originals such as posters.
- Since the effect of this option varies depending on the selected unevenness level, check the copied output to see the result.



Note

- The default value for the unevenness level can be set using the System Settings function. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.4.11 Detailed Settings" (p.423).



3.15.2 Image Options (Adjusting the density, sharpness, and contrast of images)

The following describes how to adjust the copy density (lighten/darken), sharpness, and contrast of images when copying.

1. Press [Image Options].

2. Make adjustments for the desired items.

Lighten / Darken

Select from nine copy density levels between [Lighten] and [Darken].

To increase the density level on the copied output, select a level closer to [Darken]. To decrease the density level, select a level closer to [Lighten].

Note • This function can also be set using [Lighten / Darken] on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen.

Sharpness

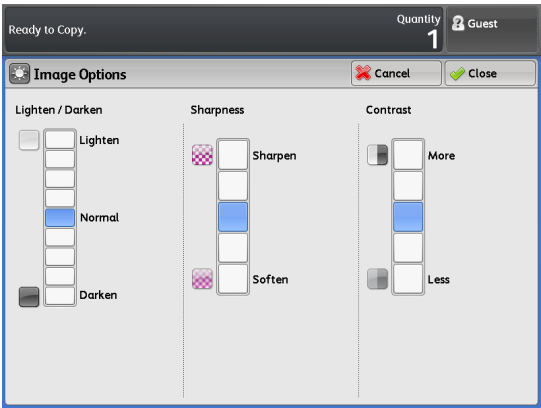
Select from five sharpness levels between [Sharpen] and [Soften].

To enhance edges on the copied output, select a level closer to [Sharpen]. To soften edges, select a level closer to [Soften].

Contrast

Select from five contrast levels between [More] and [Less].

To increase the difference between light and dark areas, or to make the darker areas darker and the lighter areas lighter, select a level closer to [More]. To decrease the difference between light and dark areas, select a level closer to [Less].



3.15.3 Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output)

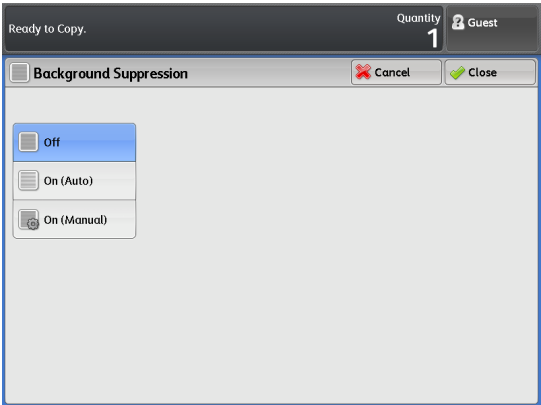
The following describes how to prevent the background colors of originals such as blue prints from appearing on the copied output.

Note • When [Original Type] is set to [Printed Original] or [Photograph], [On (Auto)] cannot be selected.

1. Press [Background Suppression].
2. Select from [Off], [On (Auto)], and [On (Manual)].

Off

Select this to copy the original as is, without applying any adjustments to the background colors.



On (Auto)

Select this to allow the machine to automatically suppress the background colors.

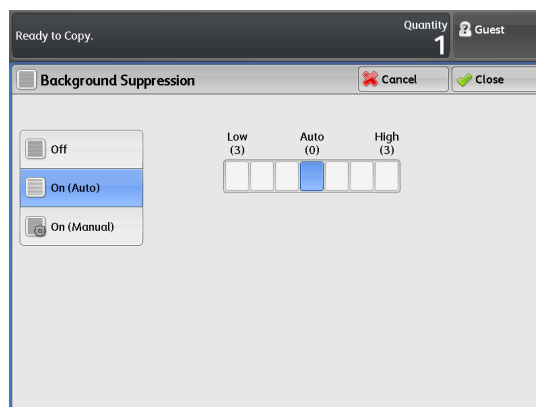
There are seven levels available between [Low] and [High].

To increase the effect of background suppression (lighten the background color on the copied output), select a level closer to [High]. To decrease effects (reproduce the background color as is), select a level closer to [Low].



Note

- If you select [On (Auto)] and part of the image is lost or unwanted background colors remain on the copied output, consider to selecting [On (Manual)] to make adjustments manually or to make adjustments under [Lighten / Darken].



On (Manual)

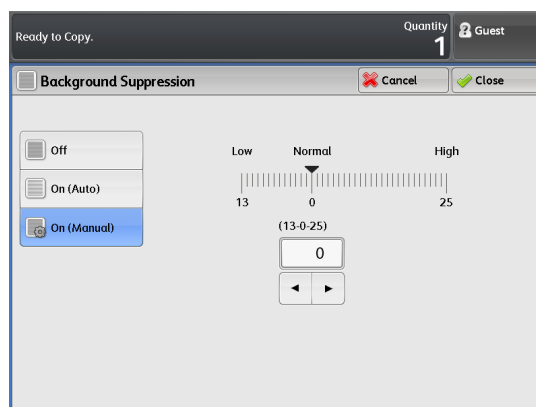
Select this to apply the specified level of suppression to the entire area of the original.

There are 39 levels available between [Low] and [High].



Note

- For the following document types, select [Off], or select [On (Manual)] to make adjustments manually.
 - Photographs/Posters/Color originals
 - Originals with intricate texture
 - Originals with parts where image coverage is high compared to the density of the background colors.



3.15.4 Threshold Sort (Classifying Halftones on the Original)

Use these steps to select whether to reproduce halftones on the original by using pseudo-halftoning or by classifying halftones via binarization.

In general, halftones on originals are reproduced by using pseudo-halftoning method. You can select [On] under [Threshold Sort] to choose classifying halftones via binarization.

1. Press [Threshold Sort].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

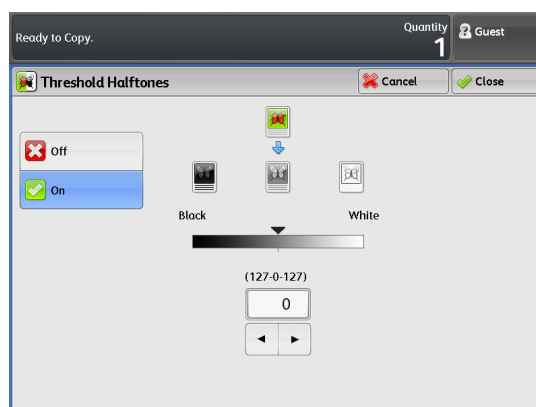
Off

Halftones on originals are reproduced on copied output with pseudo-halftoning.

On

Halftones are reproduced on copied output by classifying halftones via binarization.

You can set the threshold for classifying halftones to black or white.



3.15.5 Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors)

The following describes how to adjust density level of a color in order to enhance or suppress the color.



Note

- To use this feature, the optional Color Scan Memory KIT is necessary.
- Performing Adjust Color Density fixes the document scan speed to [Super Slow (33.8 mm/sec)] and cannot be changed.

1. Press [Adjust Color Density].
2. Adjust the density level of individual colors.

Adjust

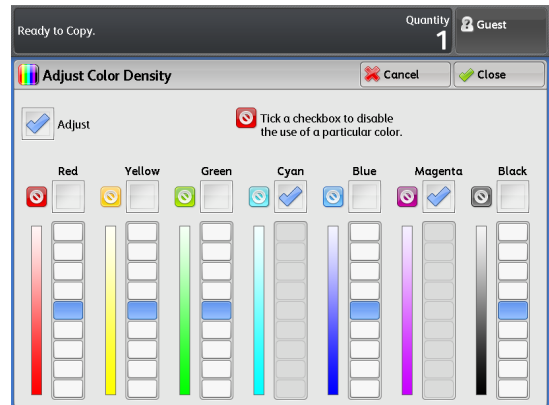
Select this check box to adjust the density level of individual colors.

There are nine levels of density available for each of the following colors: red, yellow, green, cyan, blue, magenta, and black.



(Disabling color)

Select the check box for a color to be eliminated from the copied output.

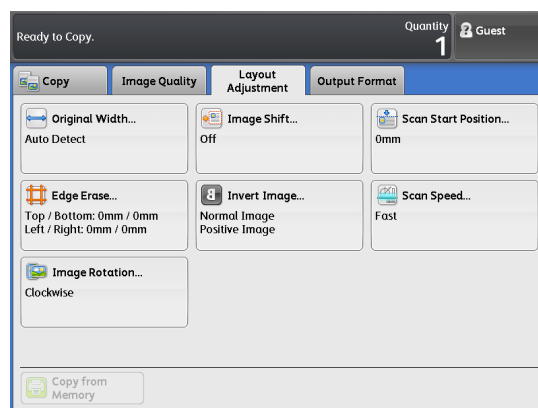


3.16 Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Layout Adjustment] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width) p.167
- Image Shift (Shifting the Image Position of the Original) p.168
- Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning) p.169
- Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original) p.170
- Invert Image (Making Copies with Inverted Images) p.171
- Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed) p.171
- Image Rotation (Setting the Orientation to Apply When Image is Rotated) p.172

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the desired function on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.



3.16.1 Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)

The following describes how to scan originals in maximum width (914.4 mm).



- This function works when the manual mode is selected. It does not function in the auto mode.
- When scanning originals in maximum width, the following functions may not work.
 - Image Shift
 - Edge Erase
 - Mirror Image
 - Negative Image

1. Press [Original Width].

2. Select the desired option.

Auto Detect

Select this to allow the machine to automatically detect the original size. Select the size series to detect.

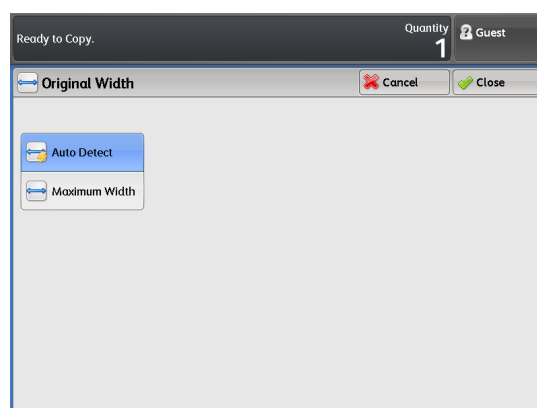


Note

- The sizes of special A series used on the machine can be adjusted using the System Settings function. For information on how to do this, refer to "Special Size Setting"(p.408).

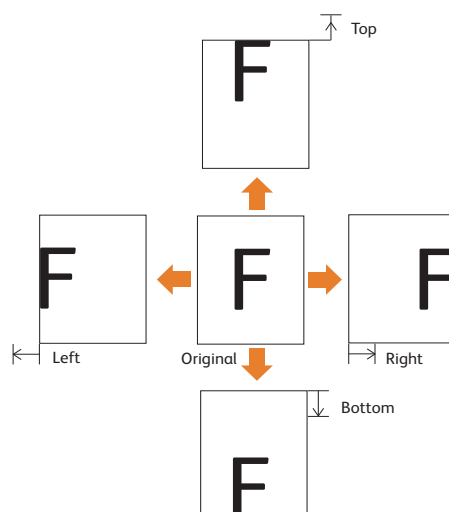
Maximum Width

Select this to scan originals in maximum width (914.4 mm).



3.16.2 Image Shift (Shifting the Image Position of the Original)

The following describes how to shift the image position of the original so that the images are copied on the left, right, top, bottom, or center of the paper. It is also possible to add a margin to the left, right, top, and bottom edges on the copied output.



Note

- The image shift amount is set in accordance with the media. Even when using [Reduce/ Enlarge], copies are made with the margin shift amount that is set with [Image Shift].
- A part of the image may not be printed because it runs off the printable area after image shift is applied, depending on the settings for [Paper Cut Mode].
- When [Lead & Tail Margins] has already been set, [Image Shift] cannot be set.

1. Press [Image Shift].

2. Set the desired items.

Off

Copies the image without any shift.

Auto Center

Copies the image with its center aligned to that of the paper.

Corner Shift

Shifts the image so that it is aligned with the edge or corner of the paper. The shift direction can be selected from eight options.

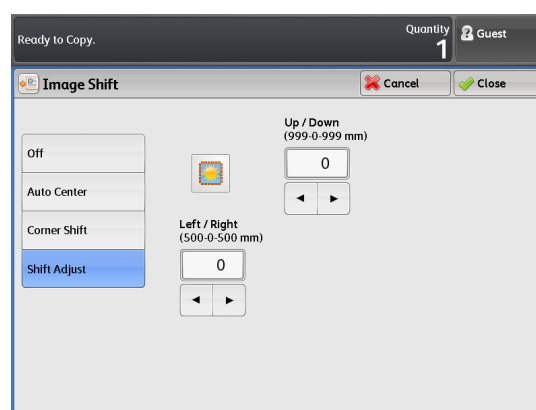
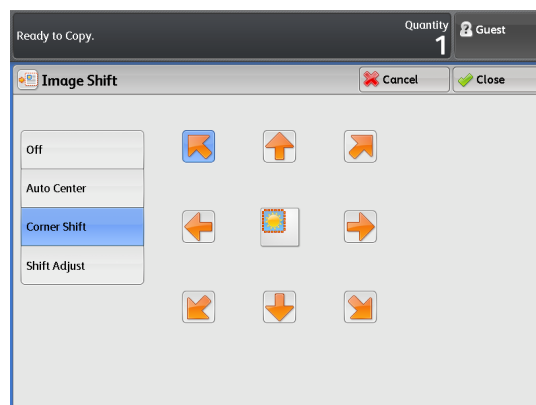
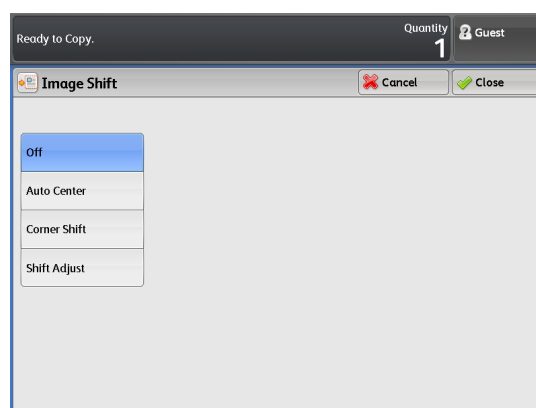
Shift Adjust

The shift distance can be set. The image can be shifted in the range of 0 to 999 mm in the up/down direction and 0 to 500 mm in the left/right direction in 1 mm increments.



Note

- Set the value by using the numeric keypad, or by pressing [◀] or [▶].



3.16.3 Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning)

The following describes how to set the position where the machine starts scanning originals.

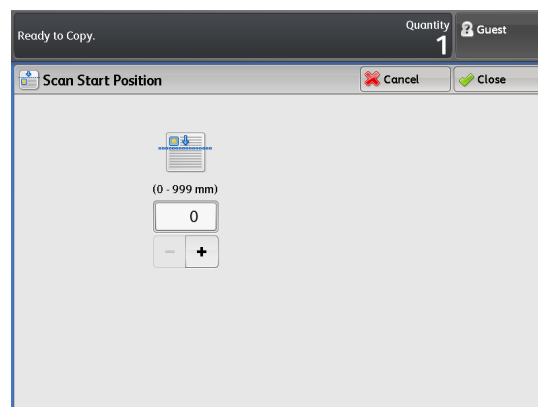


Note

- When [Reduce/Enlarge] is set, this position is also shifted according to the ratio.

1. Press [Scan Start Position].

- Set the start position from the leading edge of the original, in the range of up to 999 mm, in 1 mm increments.



3.16.4 Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original)

When you copy an original with borders, the edges of the original may be printed as black shadows. This setting can erase such shadows when copying.



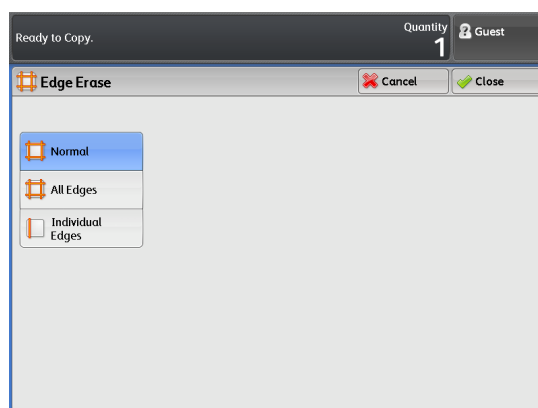
Note

- When [Reduce/ Enlarge] is set, the edge erase amount is also increased/decreased according to the ratio.
- Setting the edge erase amount to [0mm] will not result in borderless printing. For information on the actual printable area, refer to "Image loss"⁵(p.461).

- Press [Edge Erase].
- Select the desired option.

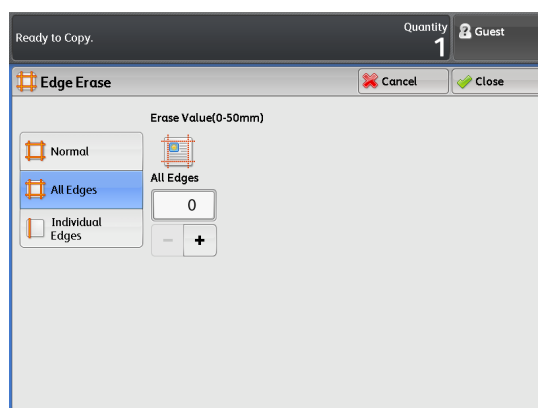
Normal

Select this to set the edge erase amount to 0 mm for the left, right, top, and bottom edges.



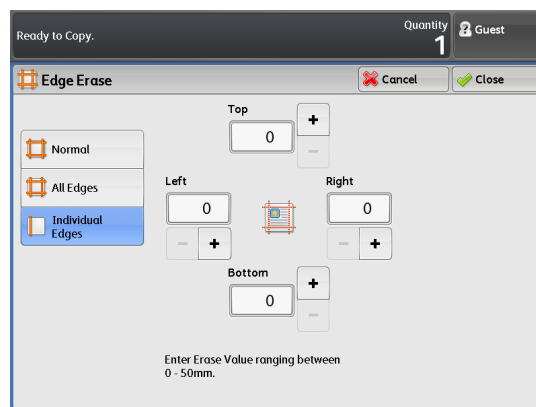
All Edges

Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges of the original. The edge erase amount can be specified in the range of 0 to 50 mm, in 1 mm increments.



Individual Edges

Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges of the original. Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges individually. The edge erase amount can be specified in the range of 0 to 50 mm, in 1 mm increments.



3.16.5 Invert Image (Making Copies with Inverted Images)

The following describes how to flip the image of the original or to create negative images by inverting the density (brightness) in the image of the original on the copied output.



Note

- When both [Negative Image] and [Edge Erase] are set, a white frame will be reproduced on the copied output.
- If the original size is smaller than the paper size, margins will occur on the copied output.

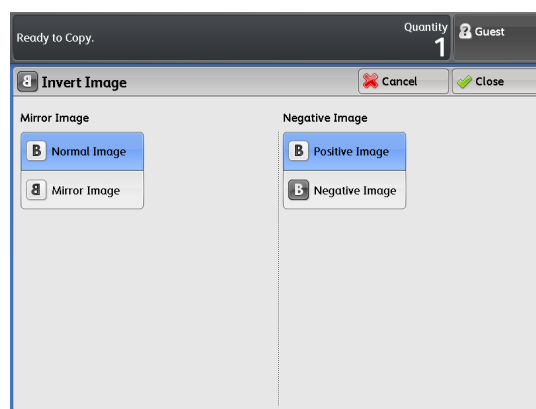
1. Press [Invert Image].
2. Select the desired option.

Mirror Image

Swaps the left and right sides of the document image.

Negative Image

Inverts the density (brightness) in the image of the original.



3.16.6 Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)

The following describes how to set slower scanning speed for additional reliability.

1. Press [Scan Speed].

2. Select the desired scan speed.



Note

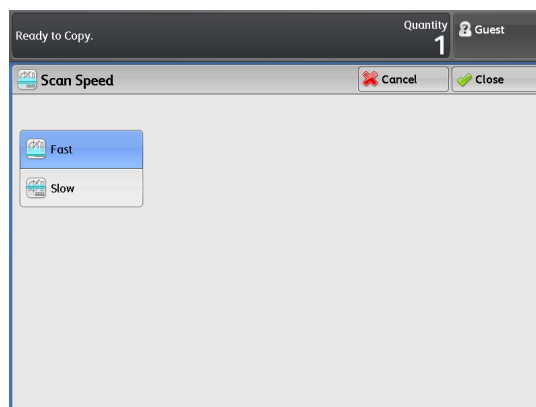
- When performing Adjust Color Density, the scan speed cannot be specified (fixed at Super Slow (33.8 mm/sec)).

Fast

Select this to scan at the normal speed (101.6 mm/sec).

Slow

Select this to scan at half the normal speed.



3.16.7 Image Rotation (Setting the Orientation to Apply When Image is Rotated)

The following describes how to set the orientation that will be applied to images whenever they are rotated automatically.



Note

- This function works when [Paper Supply] is set to [Auto].

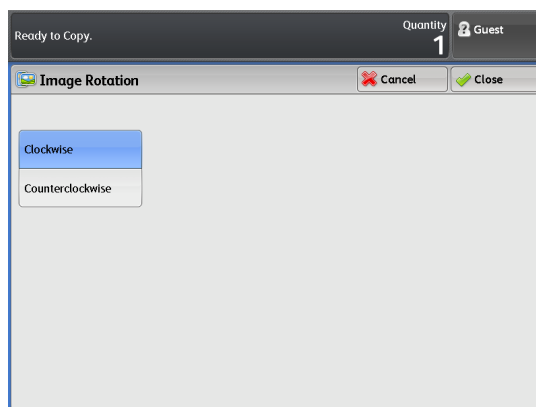
1. Press [Image Rotation].
2. Select the orientation that will be applied to images when they are rotated.

Clockwise

Select this to rotate images clockwise.

Counterclockwise

Select this to rotate images counterclockwise.

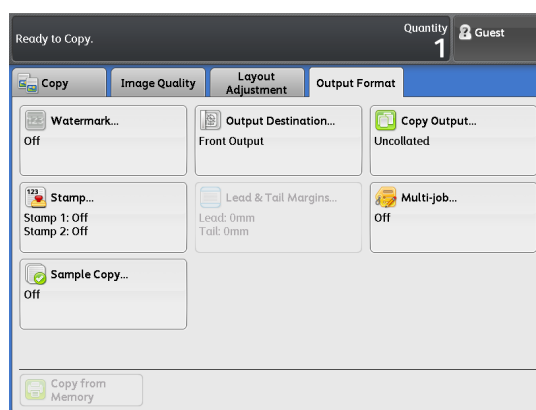


3.17 Copy - [Output Format] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Output Format] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Watermark (Printing text in the Background When Copying).....p.173
- Output Destination (Specifying the Output Destination for Paper).....p.175
- Copy Output (Specifying Finishing Options)p.176
- Lead & Tail Margins (Adding Margins to Top/Bottom Edges of Original)p.176
- Sample Copy (Determining the Optimal Settings Before Running the Whole Copy Job)p.179

1. On the menu screen, press [Copy].
2. Select the desired function on the [Output Format] screen.

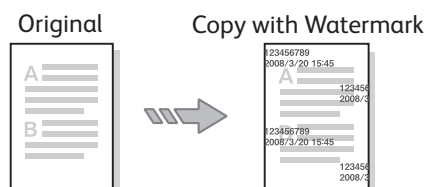


3.17.1 Watermark (Printing text in the Background When Copying)

You can print text on the background of the whole copies.

For example, if you set the start number "1" for [Control Number], "1" is printed on all pages of the first copy set, and "2" is printed on all pages of the second copy set.

The serial number on copies can be associated with each person distributed a certain copy, which prevents copying of confidential documents distributed in cases such as at a conference.



1. Press [Watermark].

2. Select any item.

Orientation

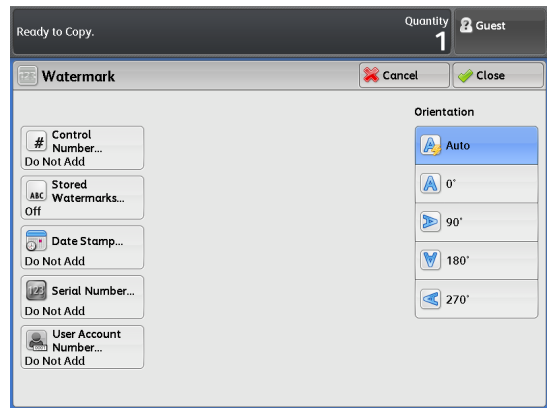
Set the clockwise rotation angle for the orientation of watermark text.

Selecting [Auto] adopts the orientation of the text that is set for each paper size using the [Tools] screen.



Refer

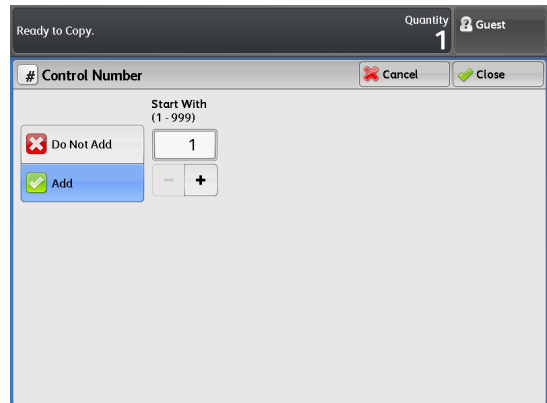
- For details about the setting method, refer to "12.4.10 Watermark Location Auto Settings" (p.423).



Control Number

Set whether to print the control number.

When selecting [Add], set the start number by a number between 1 and 999.

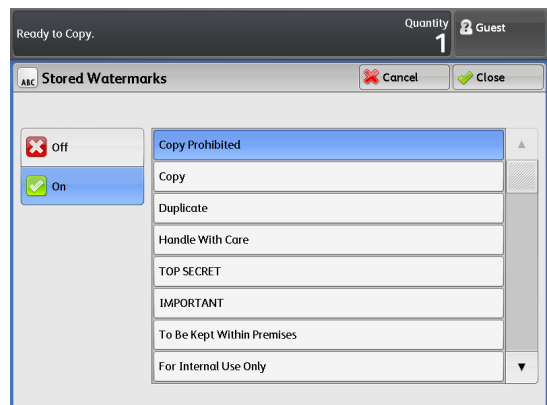


Stored Watermarks

Set whether to print text.

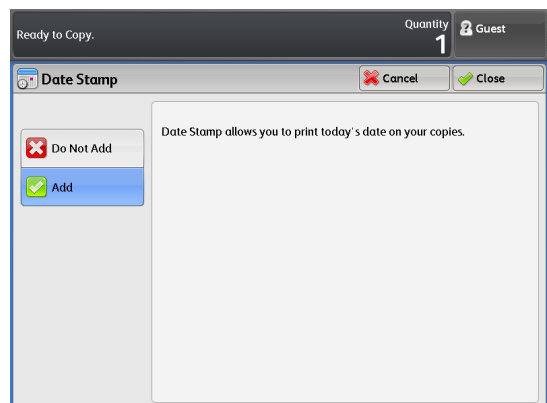
When [Add] is selected, you can select the character to use for Watermark. You can specify from 9 preset character strings.

The text that can be specified are "Copy Prohibited", "Copy", "Duplicate", "Handle With Care", "TOP SECRET", "IMPORTANT", "To Be Kept Within Premises", "For Internal Use Only", or "CONFIDENTIAL".



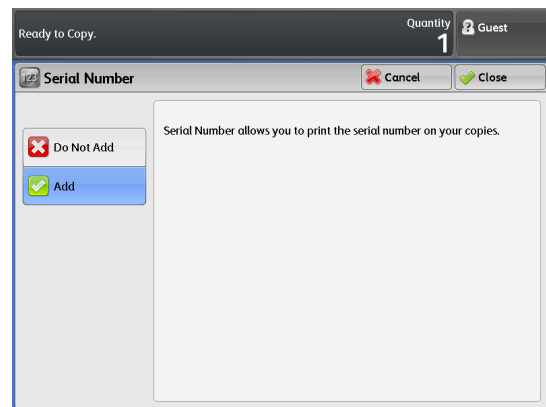
Date Stamp

Set whether to print date of copy.



Serial Number

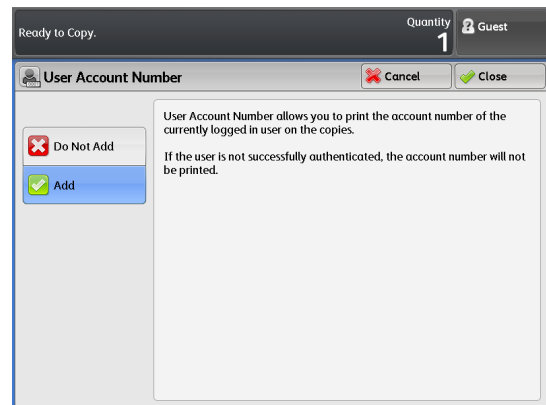
Set whether to print the serial number of the machine.



User Account Number

Set whether to print the user account number.

The user account number can be set when using the authentication function.



3.17.2 Output Destination (Specifying the Output Destination for Paper)

Set the output destination for paper.

1. Press [Output Destination].



Note

- [Output Destination] is displayed when the optional Rear output KIT is installed.

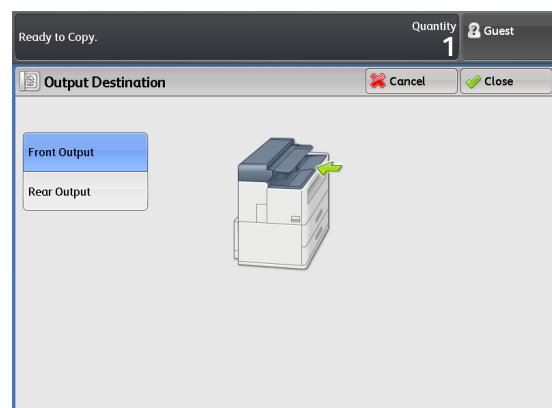
2. Select an option.

Front Output

Paper is ejected from the front output port.

Rear Output

Paper is ejected from the rear output port.



3.17.3 Copy Output (Specifying Finishing Options)

The following describes how to select finishing options.

1. Press [Copy Output].
2. Select the desired option.

Uncollated

Select this to allow the machine to output the specified number of copies and sorts sheets by page.

Collated

Select this to allow the machine to output sheets sorted into sets that are arranged in page order.

Banner Sheet

When [Collated] is selected, you can select this option to insert a banner sheet. The banner sheet will have the copy quantity and time printed on it.

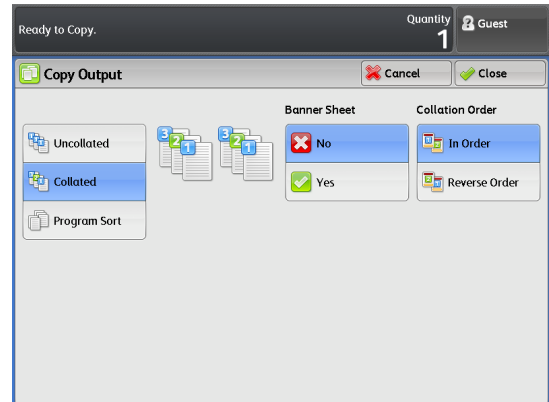


Note

- You can specify the tray from which to feed paper for banner sheets and the length of banner sheets. Refer to "12.4.11 Detailed Settings" (p.423).

Collation Order

When [Collated] is selected, select whether to output copies in the order in which originals were scanned (In Order), or to output from the last document that was scanned (Reverse Order).



3.17.4 Lead & Tail Margins (Adding Margins to Top/Bottom Edges of Original)

The following describes how to add page margins to the top and bottom edges of the original



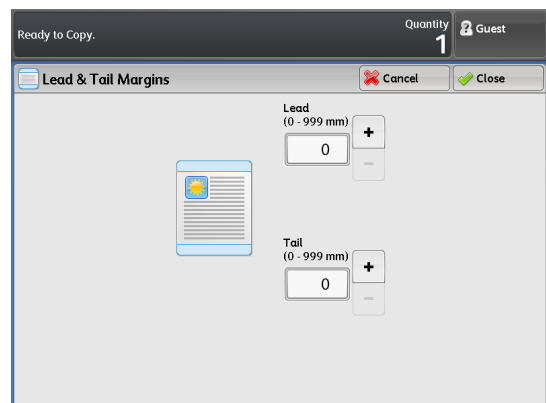
Note

- This function works when [Paper Cut Mode] is set to [Synchronized].

1. Press [Lead & Tail Margins].
2. Set the desired items.

Lead/Tail

Set the leading and trailing edges in the range of 0 to 999 mm, in 1 mm increments.



3.17.5 Stamp (Applying Stamp and Date on Copies)

You can apply stamp and date on your copies.



Note

- To use the Stamp function, the optional DW 3037 Stamp KIT is necessary.
- The size of stamp and text remain the same regardless of the reduce / enlarge setting for copy jobs.

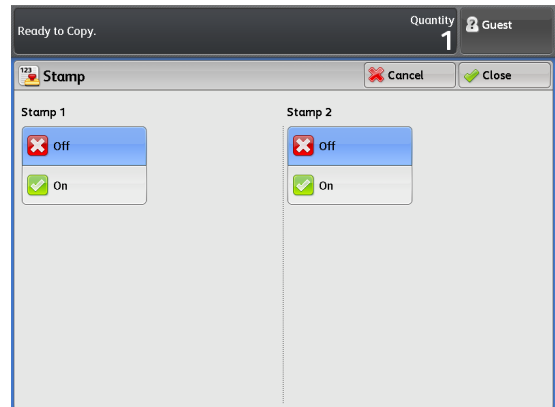
1. Press [Stamp].
2. Select items as necessary.

Off

Stamp is not applied.

On

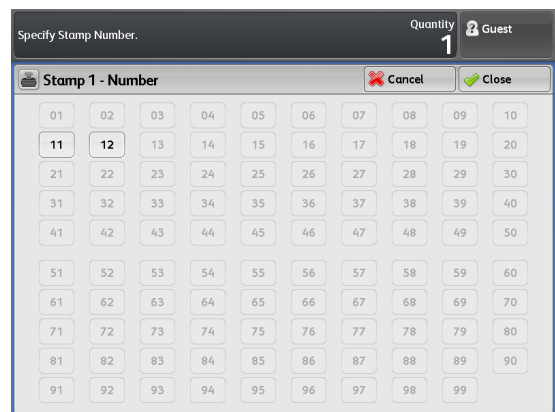
Stamp is applied.



Number

Displays the [Stamp 1 - Number] / [Stamp 2 - Number] screen.

Select the stamp number.



Color

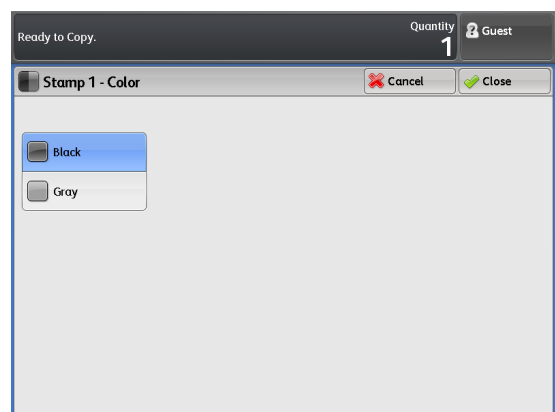
Displays the [Stamp 1 - Location / Orientation] / [Stamp 2 - Color] screen.

Select black or gray.



Note

- You can set the gray density. For details, refer to "12.3.9 Detailed Settings" (p.410).



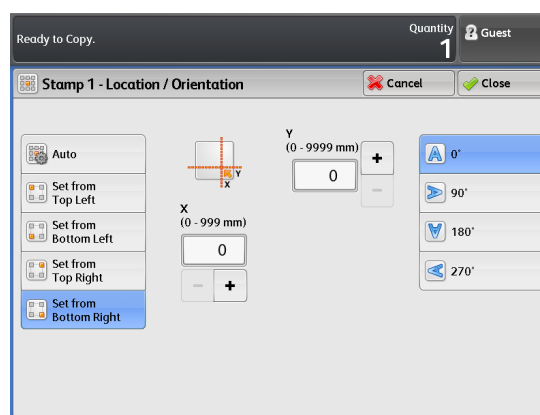
Location / Orientation

Displays the [Stamp 1 - Location/Orientation] / [Stamp 2 - Location/Orientation] screen.

Selecting [Auto] adopts the stamp location and orientation settings specified with the System Settings function.

-  **Refer**
- For details about the setting method, refer to "12.4.9 Stamp Location Auto Settings" (p.421).

Selecting [Set from Top Left], [Set from Bottom Left], [Set from Top Right] or [Set from Bottom Right] allows you to select the orientation (0°, 90°, 180°, 270°) and specify the location (Y: 0 - 9,999 mm, X: 0 ~ 999 mm).

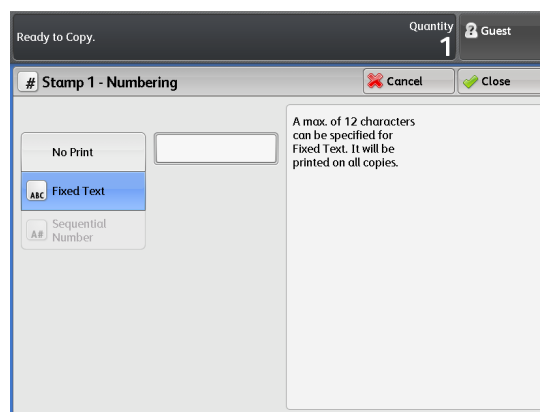


Numbering

[Stamp 1 - Numbering] / [Stamp 2 - Numbering] screen is displayed.

Selecting [Fixed Text] prints the same alphanumeric characters (any 12-digit characters) on all Copy jobs.

Selecting [Sequential Number] prints fixed text and serial number (the first 8 digits are fixed text, the last 4 digits are auto serial number). This setting is enabled only when Sort is selected.



Date

Displays the [Stamp1-Date]/[Stamp2-Date] screen.

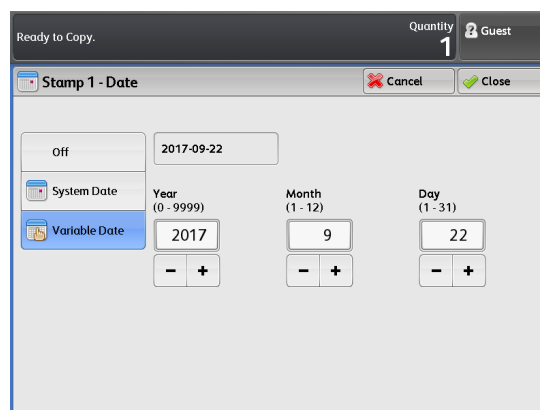
You can copy it by adding a Date.

Selecting [System] applies the date based on the calendar of the machine.

Selecting [Variable Date] applies the date based on the date format specified for the stamp with the System Settings function.

-  **Note**
- Numbering and Date are printed with 14 points fixed in Gothic style.

-  **Refer**
- For details on setting the Date format of Stamp, refer to "12.4.9 Stamp Location Auto Settings" (p.421).



3.17.6 Sample Copy (Determining the Optimal Settings Before Running the Whole Copy Job)

This following describes how to run a sample copy of an area of an original with several settings applied, in order to determine the optimal settings. Any portion on the original can be specified as the sample area. This sample area can be printed with a variety of settings such as the enlarge/reduce ratio, density level, and original type, applied. The sample copy can show a list of effects of nine levels of density, seven types of image quality, or seven levels of auto background suppression.



- The Sample Copy function cannot be used when:
 - [Copy Output] is set to [Collated], and [Change Settings] is applied to the next original
 - Copy is running in the auto mode
 - You are loading paper manually (bypass copying)
 - Copy from memory is running
 - Interrupt copy is running
- When [Original Type] is set to [Printed Original] or [Photograph], the Background Suppression List cannot be output.



- To use this feature, the optional Color Scan Memory KIT is necessary.

1. Press [Sample Copy].
2. Set the desired items.

Off

Select this to not run a sample copy.

Partial Output

Select this to run a sample copy with a variety of settings such as magnification and original type applied on it.

Lighten / Darken List

Select this to output a listing of effects of nine levels of density.

Original Type List

Select this to output a listing of effects of seven original types.

Background Suppression List

Select this to output a listing of effects of seven levels of auto background suppression.

Scan Start Position

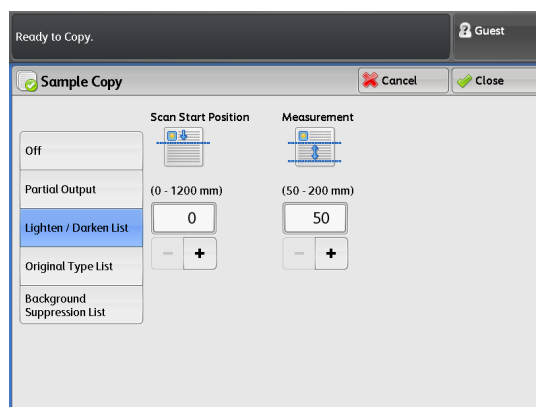
Set the position where the machine starts scanning originals in the range of 0 to 1,200 mm.

Measurement

Set the area to be scanned in the range of 50 to 200 mm.



- The default values for [Scan Start Position] and [Measurement] can be set using the System Settings function. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.4.11 Detailed Settings" (p.423).



Chapter 4 Scan (DocuWide 6057)

This chapter describes the basic operations and functions of the Scan feature.

4.1	Scanning Procedure.....	182
4.2	Stopping the Scan Job	187
4.3	Color Scanning	189
4.4	Scanning the Specified Color on the Original in Red (Red and Black Scan)	190
4.5	Displaying the Preview	191
4.6	Encrypting Scanned Data	192
4.7	Scanning Multiple Originals as One File.....	193
4.8	Running an Interrupt Scan.....	195
4.9	[Store to Folder] Screen	196
4.10	[Scan to PC] Screen	207
4.11	[Multi Send Scan] Screen	209
4.12	Scan - [Advanced Settings] Screen.....	211
4.13	Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen.....	215
4.14	Scan - [Filing Options] Screen.....	220

4.1 Scanning Procedure

This section describes the basic scanning procedure. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Step 1 Selecting the Featurep.182
- Step 2 Starting the Scan Job.....p.185
- Step 3 Importing Scanned Datap.186

4.1.1 Step 1 Selecting the Feature

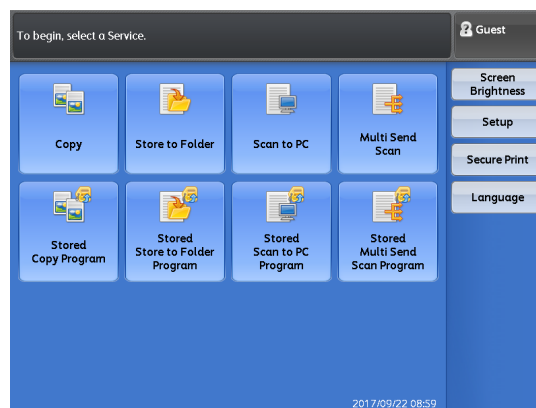
4

Scan (DocuWide 6057)

You can select from the following three scan features:

- Store to Folder
- Scan to PC
- Multi Send Scan

The menu screen provides you with three scan feature buttons: [Store to Folder], [Scan to PC], and [Multi Send Scan]. Use these button to access the corresponding screen, where you can select the desired functions.



Store to Folder

Use this feature to read (scan) originals on the machine and store data in the machine's Folders. The stored documents can be imported from a network-connected computer.



Refer

- To use the Store to Folder feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.1 Setting Up the Store to Folder Feature" (p.316).
- The destination folder must be created before running a scan job. For information on how to create folders, refer to "9.1.2 Create Folder" (p.306).

Scan to PC

Use this feature to read (scan) originals on the machine and store data on a network-connected computer (server).



Refer

- To use the Scan to PC feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.2 Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature" (p.316).
- The destination server (PC Save Address) must be registered before running a scan job. For information on how to register a server, refer to "9.1.3 Server (PC Save Address)" (p.308).

Multi Send Scan

Use this feature to store scanned data on computers (servers) registered as a group address, and print them on a printer.



Refer

- To use the Multi Send Scan feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.2 Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature" (p.316).
- The destination group address must be registered before running a scan job. For information on how to register a group address, refer to "9.1.5 Multi Send Address (Group Address)" (p.312).

- File formats available for each Scan feature.

Scan Feature	Scan Application	File Format			
		TIFF	PDF	Docu Works*1	JPEG
Store to Folder	TWAIN-compliant application	Yes*2			
	Stored File Manager 3	Yes	No	No	Yes
	CentreWare Internet Services	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scan to PC	—	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Multi Send Scan	—	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

*1 DocuWorks is a TWAIN-compliant application product from Fuji Xerox.

*2 When importing scan data from the machine's folder by using a TWAIN-compliant application, file formats supported depend on your application.

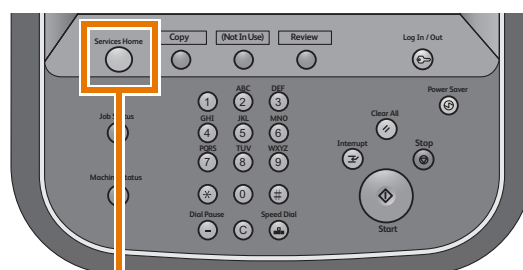


Note

- If you do not specify a file name for the document to be saved, a file name is automatically assigned to each file or folder based on a particular rule.

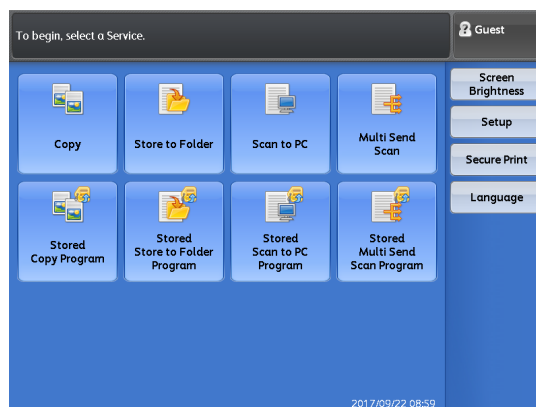
The following describes as an example how to use the [Store to Folder] feature.

1. Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel.



<Services Home> button

2. On the menu screen, press [Store to Folder].

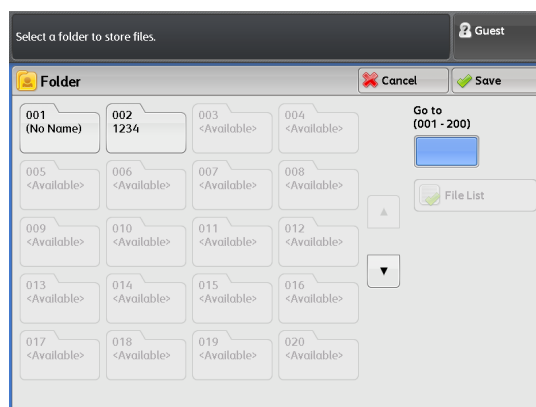


3. Select the destination folder.



Note

- Only the numbers that are registered can be selected.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific folder at the top, enter that number in [Go to].



4. Enter the password, and press [Confirm].

5. Press [Save].



6. Select functions to set on each tab as necessary.

For details on each tab, refer to these subsections.



Refer

- "4.9 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.196)
- "4.12 Scan - [Advanced Settings] Screen" (p.211)
- "4.13 Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.215)
- "4.14 Scan - [Filing Options] Screen" (p.220)

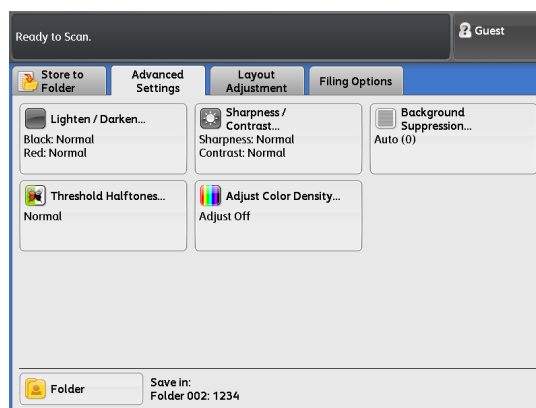
When you have selected another Scan feature, [Store to Folder] is replaced with [Scan to PC] or [Multi Send Scan].

For details on each tab, refer to these subsections.



Refer

- "4.10 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.207)



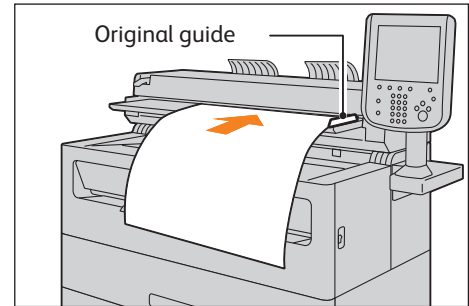
4.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job

The following describes how to load the original and start scanning.

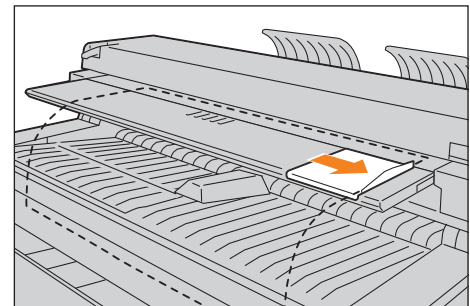


- If you hold down or pull the original while it is being scanned, the original may get jammed.
- When loading a hole-punched original, insert the edge with the holes last. If you insert the edge with the holes first, the original may get jammed.

1. Align the original against the original guide with the side to be scanned face down, and insert it all the way until it stops.



- By moving the original guide to the right, you can also adjust the scanning position on the original.
- When scanning thick originals, refer to "When Scanning Thick Originals"(p.81).



The original is automatically conveyed and stops momentarily.

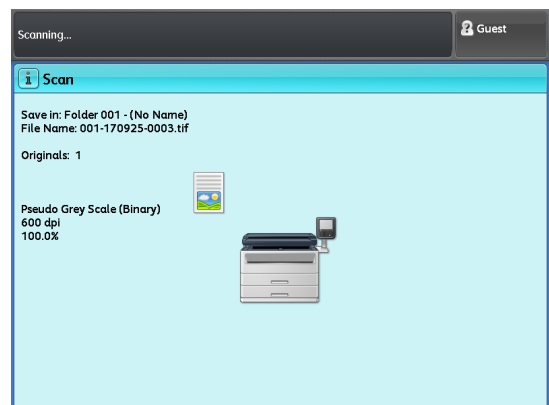
Then the machine automatically starts scanning the original.



- Do not release your hands from the original until it is conveyed. If the original is long, it might fall off the machine.



- When the scan start mode is set to [Manual Start] under System Settings, press the <Start> button on the control panel. For information on how to set Manual Start, refer to "Scan Start Mode"(p.407).



- When a problem occurs, an error message is displayed on the touch screen. Resolve the problem according to the message.

2. Remove the original that is output.

4.1.3 Step 3 Importing Scanned Data

The documents stored in the machine's folder can be imported into your computer. There are three methods of importing scanned data:

Import using a TWAIN-compliant application

Network Scanner Utility 3 is used.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "8.5.1 Import from a TWAIN-compliant Application" (p.293).

Import using Stored File Manager 3

Stored File Manager 3, which is an application product from Fuji Xerox, is used.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "8.5.2 Importing from Stored File Manager 3" (p.296).

Import using CentreWare Internet Services

CentreWare Internet Services is used.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "8.5.3 Importing Using CentreWare Internet Services" (p.299).

4.2 Stopping the Scan Job

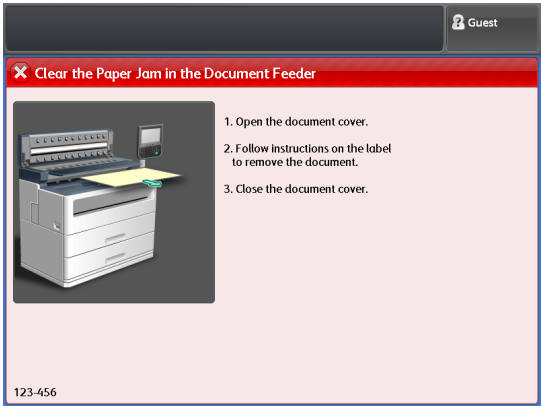
This section describes how to stop feeding originals or cancel scanning. Refer to the following subsections for more information.

- Canceling Feeding the Original.....p.187
- Canceling Scan Jobs.....p.187

4.2.1 Canceling Feeding the Original

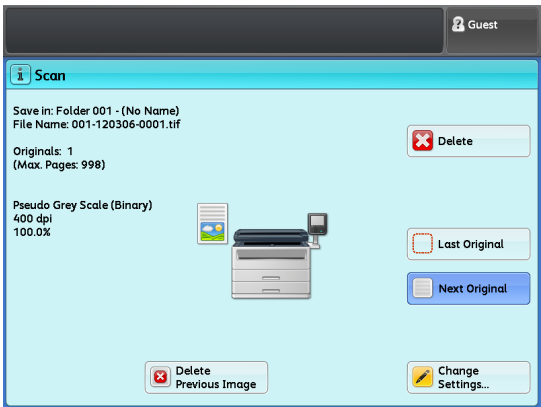
Stop the original to feed when it is bent or about being torn.

1. Press the <Stop> button on the control panel when the original feeds.
Feeding of the original stops.
2. Remove the jammed original according to the message displayed on the touch panel display, and reset the original.



4.2.2 Canceling Scan Jobs

1. Press [Delete] on the touch panel display.



2. Press [Delete].



4.3 Color Scanning

This section describes how to scan originals in full color.

1. On the menu screen, press [Store to Folder], [Scan to PC], or [Multi Send Scan], and specify the save destination or address.



Refer

- "4.9 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.196)
- "4.10 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.207)
- "4.11 [Multi Send Scan] Screen" (p.209)

2. Press [Color].

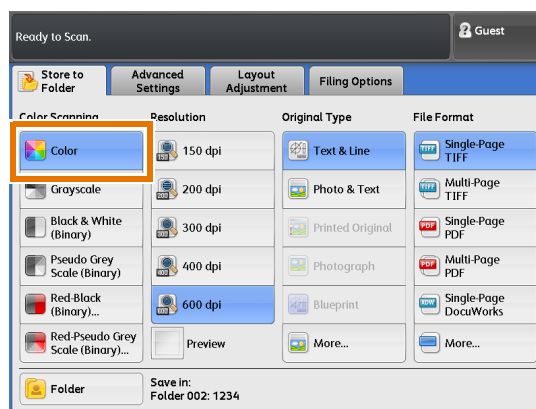
3. Set other features as necessary.



Note

- When [Resolution] is 400 dpi or higher, [Scan Speed] cannot be set to [Fast].
- [Blueprint], [Transparent], and [Uneven-Toned Background] under [Original Type] cannot be selected.
- [Threshold Halftones] cannot be selected.

4. Load the original, and start scanning.



4.4 Scanning the Specified Color on the Original in Red (Red and Black Scan)

Replace a color of your choice with red when you scan. The file size of scanned data will be smaller than the ones scanned in full-color.



- This function is available only on the DocuWide 6057.

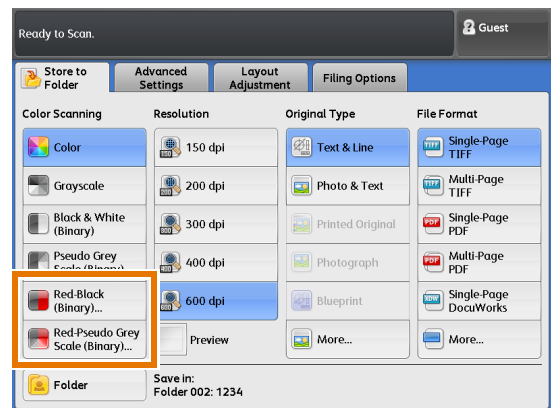
- On the menu screen, press [Stored Store to Folder Program], [Stored Scan to PC Program], or [Stored Multi Send Scan Program], and specify a save destination or recipient.



Refer

- "4.9 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.196)
- "4.10 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.207)
- "4.11 [Multi Send Scan] Screen" (p.209)

- Select [Red-Black (Binary)] or [Red-Pseudo Gray Scale (Binary)].

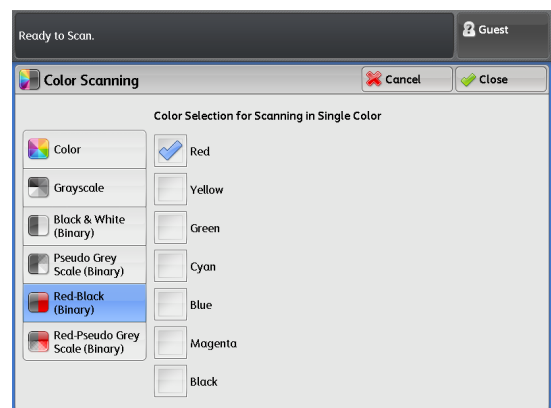


- Select the color of the original to be scanned in red.



- You can set the detection range for each color. For details about the setting method, refer to "12.3.5 Color Scan Settings" (p.404).

- Configure other functions as necessary.
- Load the original, and start scanning.



4.5 Displaying the Preview

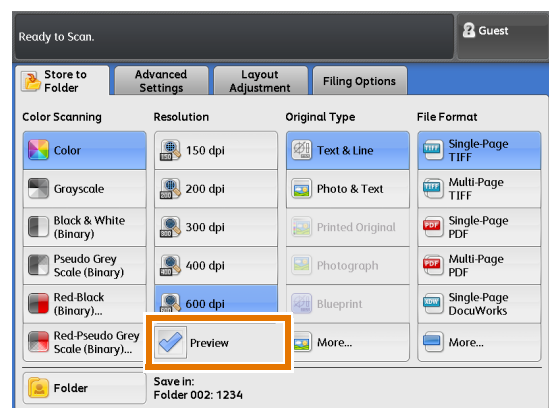
You can check the preview of the scanned image before saving the data.

- Important** • Previews are not displayed for originals whose length exceeds 2,772 mm. Although previews are not displayed, scanned data is saved.

1. On the menu screen, press [Stored Store to Folder Program], [Scan to PC], or [Stored Multi Send Scan Program], and specify the destination folder or recipient.

- Refer**
- "4.9 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.196)
 - "4.10 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.207)
 - "4.11 [Multi Send Scan] Screen" (p.209)

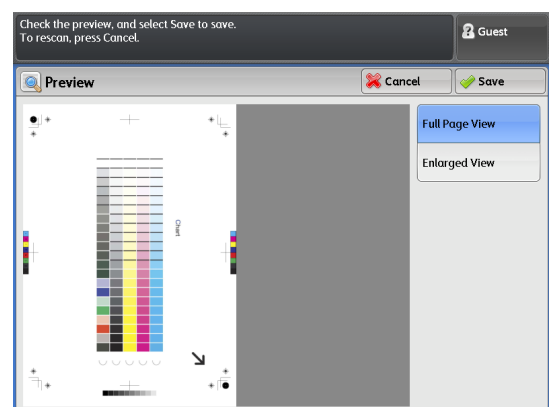
2. Select the [Preview] check box.
3. Set other functions as necessary.
4. Load the original, and start scanning.



5. Confirm the preview.

Full Page View

Displays the entire scanned page.



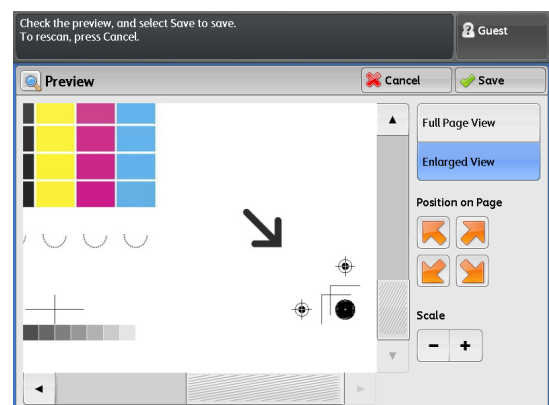
Enlarged View

Enlarges the scanned page. Drag the left / right or up / down toolbar to change the display position.

You can move the display position towards four corners with the arrows of [Position on Page].

It scales with [-] and [+] of [Scale].

6. To save, press [Save].
If you want to start all over again, press [Cancel].



4.6 Encrypting Scanned Data

This section describes how to secure scanned data that you have stored in PDF or DocuWorks file format to prevent unauthorized access.



- Security cannot be set on data that have been stored with the Store to Folder feature.
- With the Multi Send Scan feature, a password encryption file created by the same setting value will be transferred to multiple destinations (servers only).

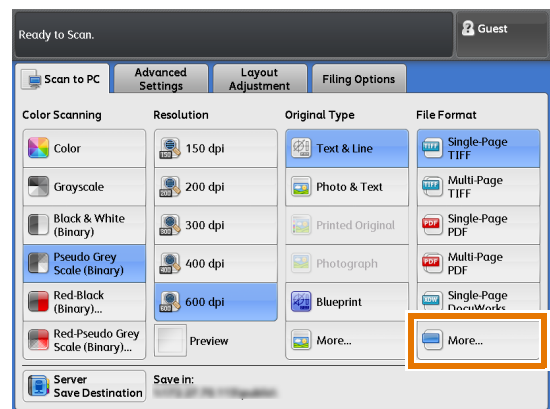
1. On the menu screen, press [Scan to PC] or [Multi Send Scan], and specify the save destination or address.



Refer

- "4.10 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.207)
- "4.11 [Multi Send Scan] Screen" (p.209)

2. Press [More...].



3. Select either [Single-Page PDF], [Multi-Page PDF], [Single-Page DocuWorks], or [Multi-Page DocuWorks].
4. Press [PDF Security] or [DocuWorks Security].

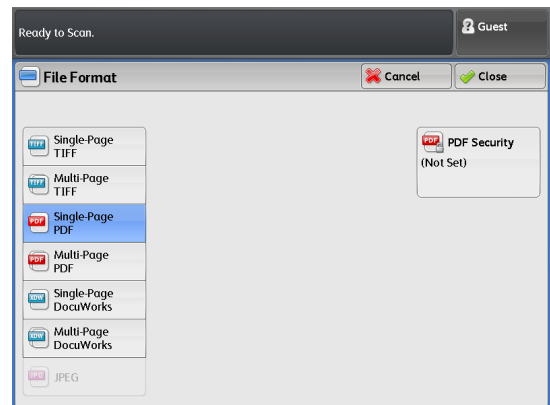
PDF Security

Displays the [File Format - PDF Security] screen, where you can set password-based encryption and file operation permissions for the PDF file.



Refer

- Refer to "[File Format - PDF Security] Screen"(p.204).



DocuWorks Security

Displays the [File Format - DocuWorks Security] screen, where you can set password-based encryption and file operation permissions for the DocuWorks file.



Refer

- Refer to "[File Format - DocuWorks Security] Screen"(p.205).

5. Set other features as necessary.
6. Load the original, and start scanning.

4.7 Scanning Multiple Originals as One File

Selecting [Multi-Page TIFF], [Multi-Page PDF], or [Multi-Page DocuWorks] under [File Format] allows you to scan multiple originals as a single file.



Note

- If the size of the file generated during scan exceeds a certain limit, an error message is displayed on the touch screen. Resolve the problem according to the message. For information on file size limitations, refer to "Size of the Scan File Created"(p.472).

1. On the menu screen, press [Store to Folder], [Scan to PC], or [Multi Send Scan], and specify the save destination or address.

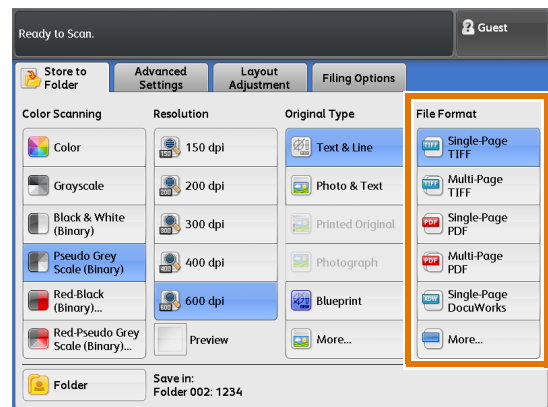


Refer

- "4.9 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.196)
- "4.10 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.207)
- "4.11 [Multi Send Scan] Screen" (p.209)

2. Select either [Multi-Page TIFF], [Multi-Page PDF], or [Multi-Page DocuWorks].

3. Set other features as necessary.



4. Load the first original.

The scanning starts.

Delete

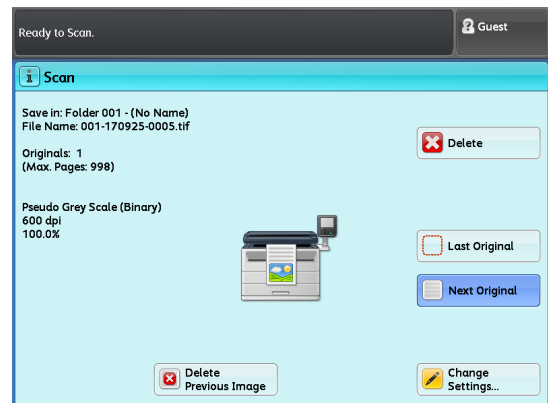
Press to cancel the scan job.

Last Original

Press this button after all originals have been scanned.

Next Original

This button is selected by default.



Delete Previous Image

Press this button to delete images of the previously scanned originals.

Change Settings

Press this button to change the settings such as color mode, resolution, and original type, for the next original.



Note

- The color mode (Color Scanning) can only be toggled between [Black & White] and [Halftone].

5. Load the next original.

Repeat this step if you have more originals.

6. When all originals have been scanned, press [Last Original].

4.8 Running an Interrupt Scan

This section describes how to interrupt an ongoing continual print job to run an urgent scan job.



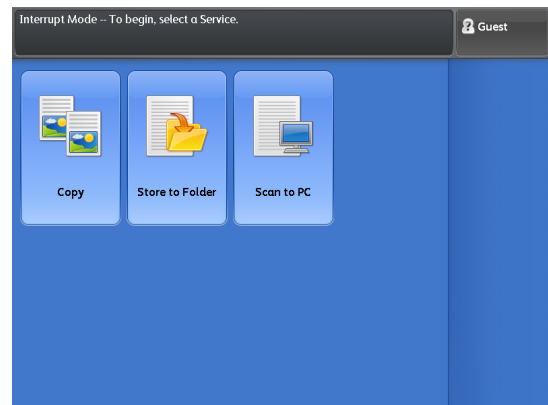
Note

- The Multi Send Scan feature is not available during the interrupt mode.
- The Interrupt Scan function is not available during copying.

1. Press the <Interrupt> button on the control panel.
The <Interrupt> button lights up, indicating the Interrupt mode is enabled.
2. When printing is in progress, the menu screen is displayed. Press [Stored Store to Folder Program] or [Stored Scan to PC Program], and specify a save destination or recipient.
3. Set other features as necessary.
4. Load the original, and start scanning.
5. After you finish the interrupt scanning, press the [Interrupt] button.

The <Interrupt> button goes out, indicating the Interrupt mode is exited.

The suspended print job resumes.



4.9 [Store to Folder] Screen

This section describes how to select functions on the [Store to Folder] screen. This screen allows you to scan originals and save the scanned data in a folder of the machine.



Refer

- To use the Store to Folder feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.1 Setting Up the Store to Folder Feature" (p.316).
- The destination folder must be created before running a scan job. For information on how to create folders, refer to "9.1.2 Create Folder" (p.306).

The following describes the [Store to Folder] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Viewing/Deleting Documents in a Folder p.197
- Color Scanning (Selecting the Color Mode for Scanning) p.198
- Resolution (Specifying the Scanning Resolution) p.199
- Preview (Select preview display) p.199
- Original Type (Selecting the Original Type) p.200
- File Format (Selecting a File Format for Output Data) p.202

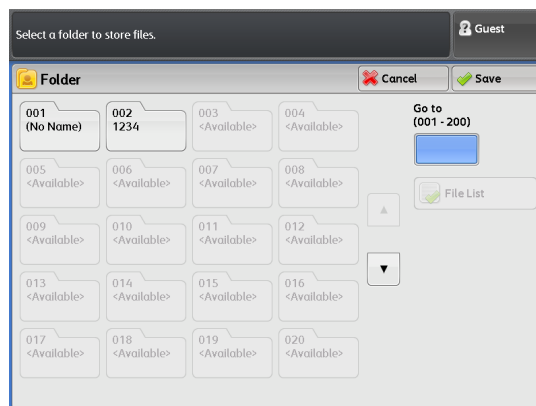
1. On the menu screen, press [Store to Folder].

2. Specify a folder to save.



Note

- Only the registered numbers can be selected.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display an arbitrary folder at the top, enter the number of the folder in [Go to].



3. Enter the password, and press [Confirm].

4. Press [Save].

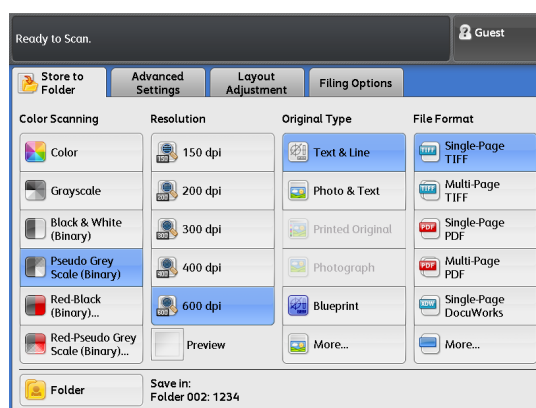


5. Select the desired function on the [Store to Folder] screen.



Note

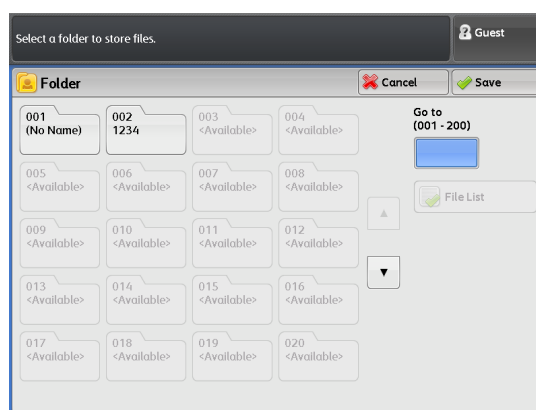
- To specify the folder to save again, press [Folder].



4.9.1 Viewing/Deleting Documents in a Folder

The following describes how to view and delete documents stored in a folder.

1. Select [Folder], and press [File List].



2. Select a document.



Note

- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.

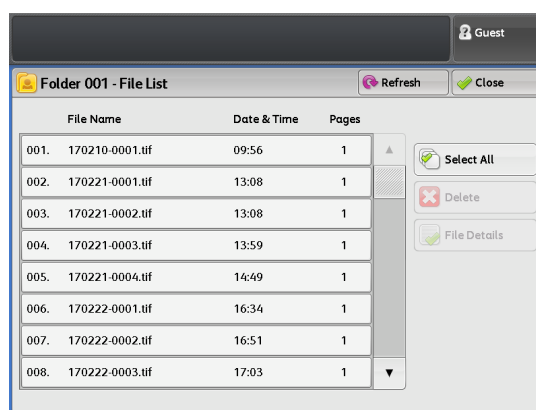
3. Select the desired option.

Select All

Select this to select all the documents in the folder. Select this again to deselect all the selected documents.

Delete

Select this to delete the selected document(s).



File Details

Select this to view the selected document.



4.9.2 Color Scanning (Selecting the Color Mode for Scanning)

The following describes how to set the color mode for scanning originals.

1. Select a color mode.



Note

- The standard setting is [Pseudo Grey Scale (Binary)].

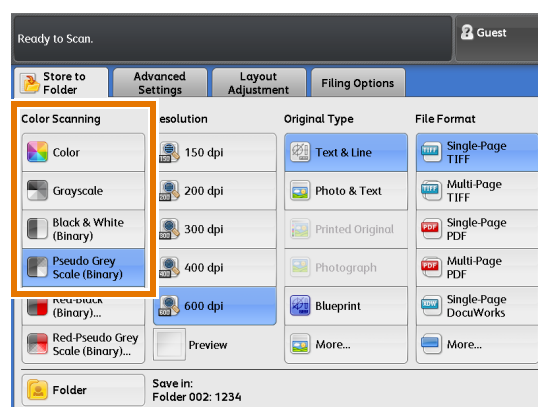
Color

Select this to scan in the full color mode.



Note

- [Blueprint], [Transparent], and [Uneven-Toned Background] under [Original Type] cannot be selected.
- [Threshold Halftones] cannot be selected.



Grayscale

Select this to scan using the 256 levels of black and white. The file size of scanned data will be larger than that scanned with Black & White or Halftone.



Note

- [Threshold Halftones] cannot be selected.

Black & White (Binary)

Select this to scan originals such as standard documents and drawings. The file size of scanned data will be smaller than that scanned with Halftone or Grayscale.



Note

- [Printed Original] and [Photograph] under [Original Type] cannot be selected.

Pseudo Grey Scale (Binary)

Select this to scan halftone originals.



Note

- [Threshold Halftones] cannot be selected.

Red-Black (Binary)

Specify this when scanning originals, such as general documents and drawings, in red and black.

Red-Pseudo Gray Scale (Binary)

Specify this when scanning a halftone originals in red and black.



Note

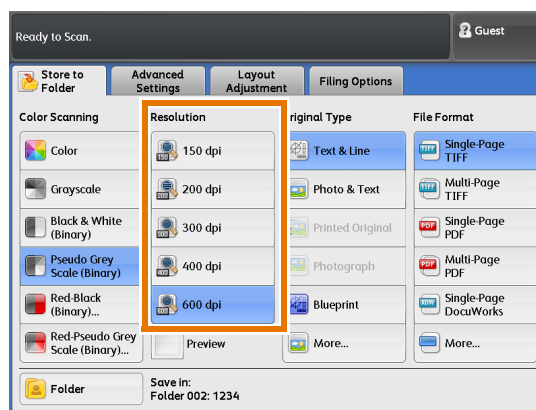
- [Threshold Halftones] is not available to set.

4.9.3 Resolution (Specifying the Scanning Resolution)

The following describes how to set the resolution for scanning originals.

The higher the resolution value, the more detail in your image, resulting in larger data size. The larger the data size, the more time is required to complete scanning and transmission.

1. Select a resolution.



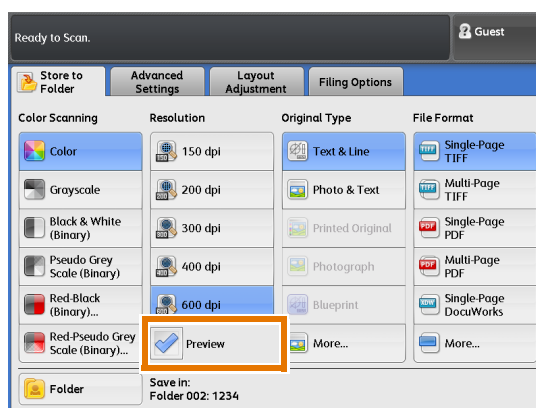
4

Scan (DocuWide 6057)

4.9.4 Preview (Select preview display)

Before scanning originals, you can select whether to display a preview.

1. Select whether to display a preview.



4.9.5 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)

The following describes how to select the type of originals, such as photo and text, to scan originals with optimum image quality. In general, [Text & Line] is most indicated option for better image quality for originals that consist mainly of text and line, such as drawings. It is recommended to select the most suitable from among the various options whenever you want more professional image quality.



- When [Black & White] is selected under [Color Scanning], [Printed Original] and [Photograph] cannot be selected. In addition, when [Color] is selected, [Blueprint], [Transparent], and [Uneven-Toned Background] cannot be selected.
- When [Background Suppression] is set to [On (Auto)], [Printed Original] and [Photograph] cannot be selected.

1. Select the type of the original.



- You can change the original type displayed on the [Scan Job] screen. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.6.1 Preset Buttons" (p.433).

Text & Line

Select this to reproduce crisp text on the scanned image. With this mode, graphs and illustrations are also reproduced clearly.

Photo & Text

Select this when scanning an original that contains both text and photos.

Printed Original

Select this when scanning an original whose photo elements are printed materials such as pamphlets.

Photograph

Select this when scanning a paste-up of photos. This option prevents the scanned image from appearing bluish.

Blueprint

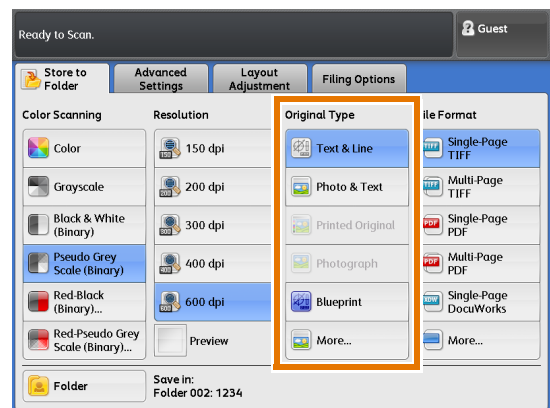
Select this when scanning a blueprint original whose base color is rather dark.

More...

Selecting this displays the [Original Type] screen.



- Refer to "[Original Type] Screen" (p.201).



[Original Type] Screen

The following describes how to select other available original types.

1. Select the document type.

Text & Line

Select this to reproduce crisp text on the scanned image. With this mode, graphs and illustrations are also reproduced clearly.

Photo & Text

Select this when scanning an original that contains both text and photos.

Printed Original

Select this when scanning an original whose photo elements are printed materials such as pamphlets.

Photograph

Select this when scanning a paste-up of photos. This option prevents the scanned image from appearing bluish.

Blueprint

Select this when scanning a blueprint original whose base color is rather dark.

Transparent

Select this when scanning a translucent original. This helps to suppress fringing around text.

Uneven-Toned Background

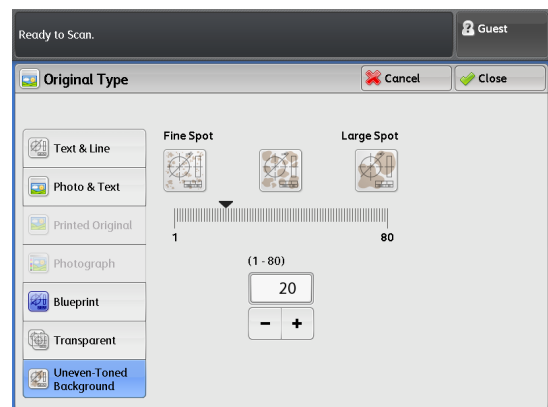
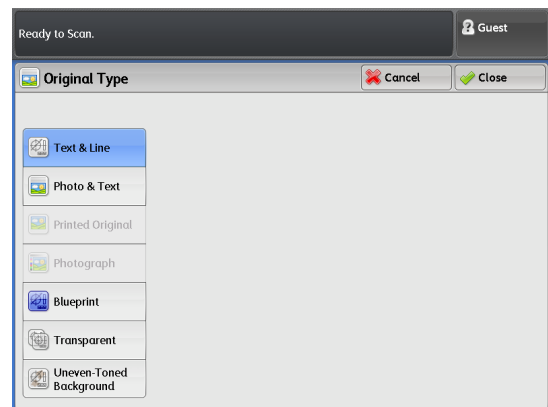
Select this when scanning an original having a non-uniform background typically due to paste-ups.

Selecting this displays the [Original Type] screen, where you can adjust the unevenness level in 80 steps.



Important

- The Uneven-Toned Background option is for use with the text and line drawings. Do not use this option for photo originals such as posters.
- Since the effect of this option varies depending on the selected unevenness level, check the copied output to see the result.



4.9.6 File Format (Selecting a File Format for Output Data)

The following describes how to set the file format in which the machine saves scanned data.



Refer

- For information on file size limitations and the number of pages within a multiple-page image, refer to "13.3.3 Notes and Restrictions on the Scan Feature" (p.471).

1. Select the output file format.



Note

- You can change the file format displayed on the [Scan Job] screen. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.6.1 Preset Buttons" (p.433).

Single-Page TIFF

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in TIFF format.

Multi-Page TIFF

Select this to save multiple pages of the original to one file in TIFF format.

Single-Page PDF

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in PDF format.

Multi-Page PDF

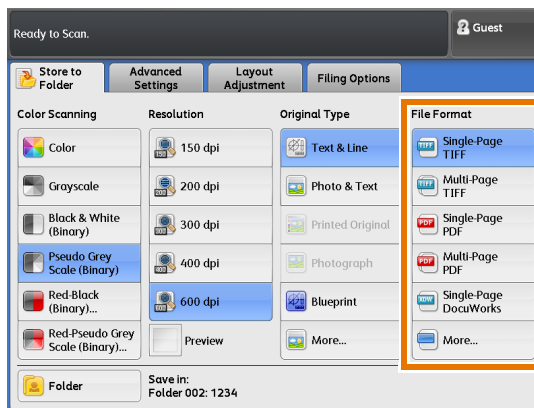
Select this to save multiple pages of the original to one file in PDF format.

Single-Page DocuWorks

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in XDW format.

More...

Displays the [File Format] screen.



Refer

- Refer to "[File Format] Screen" (p.202).

[File Format] Screen

The following describes how to select other available output file format.



Important

- Security cannot be set on data that have been stored with the Store to Folder feature.
- With the Multi Send Scan feature, a password encryption file created by the same setting value will be transferred to multiple destinations (servers only).

1. Select the output file format.

Single-Page TIFF

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in TIFF format.

Multi-Page TIFF

Select this to save multiple pages of the original to one file in TIFF format.

Single-Page PDF

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in PDF format.

Multi-Page PDF

Select this to save multiple pages of the original to one file in PDF format.

Single-Page DocuWorks

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in XDW format.

Multi-Page DocuWorks

Select this to save multiple pages of the original to one file in XDW format.

JPEG

Select this to save the original in JPEG format.



Note

- [JPEG] can be selected when [Output Color] is set to [Color] or [Grayscale].

PDF Security

Displays the [File Format - PDF Security] screen.



Note

- The [PDF Security] option is enabled when [Single-Page PDF] or [Multi-Page PDF] is selected.



Refer

- Refer to "[File Format - PDF Security] Screen"(p.204).

DocuWorks Security

Displays the [File Format - DocuWorks Security] screen.



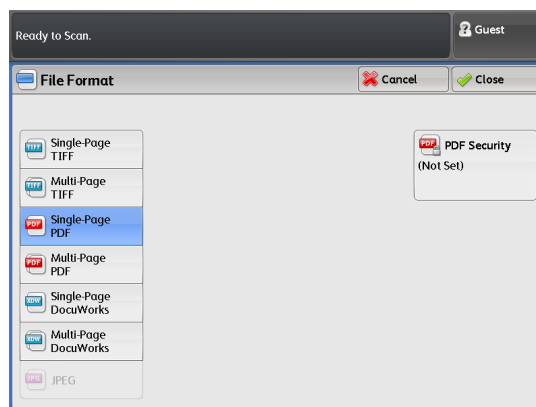
Note

- The [DocuWorks Security] option is enabled when [Single-Page DocuWorks] or [Multi-Page DocuWorks] is selected.



Refer

- Refer to "[File Format - DocuWorks Security] Screen"(p.205).



[File Format - PDF Security] Screen

The following describes how to set password-based encryption and file operation permissions for the PDF file.

1. Select the desired option.

Off

Select this not to set password-based encryption nor file operation permissions for the file.

Password

Select this to set a password to encrypt the file with the 128-bit AES method.

Encryption Algorithm

The encryption method in use (128-bit AES) is displayed. Files that are encrypted using this method can be opened in Adobe® Acrobat® 7.0 or later.

Supported Version

Before encrypting the file, you can check the compatible Adobe® Acrobat® versions.

File Open Password

Displays the [PDF Security - File Open Password] screen.

On the displayed screen, press [On], and set the password which will be required when opening the file.

Enter the password using up to 32 characters.

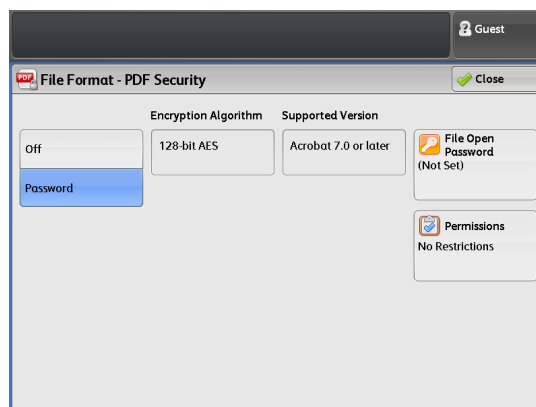
Permissions

Displays the [PDF Security - Permissions] screen.



Refer

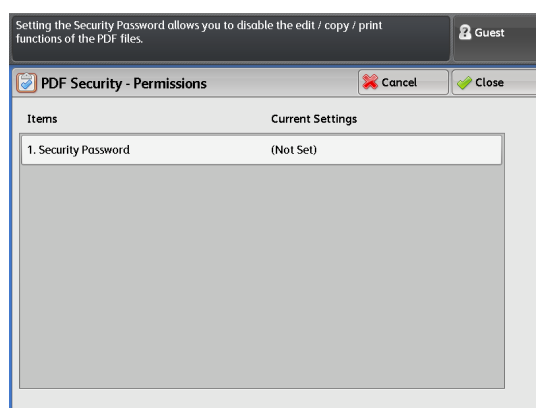
- Refer to "[PDF Security - Permissions] Screen"(p.204).



[PDF Security - Permissions] Screen

The following describes how to set operation permissions for the file.

1. Press [Security Password].



2. Press [On].
3. Enter the security password, and press [Save].
4. Enter the same password as above in [Re-enter Security Password], and press [Save].
5. Select the desired option.

Security Password

Displays the [PDF Security - Security Password] screen.

You can set a password to restrict specific file operations. This password will be required to access the restricted operations or when attempting to change the permissions assigned to the file.

Enter the password using up to 32 characters.



Printing

Displays the [Permissions - Printing] screen.

You can set whether to allow users to print the file, as well as in what resolution users can print the file.

Changes Allowed

Displays the [Permissions - Changes Allowed] screen.

You can set whether to allow users to alter the content of the file, for example inserting pages or adding annotations.

Allow Contents Copying and Extraction

Displays the [Permissions - Allow Contents Copying and Extraction] screen.

You can set whether to allow users to copy the file content such as text and images in the file.

[File Format - DocuWorks Security] Screen

The following describes how to set password-based encryption and file operation permissions for the DocuWorks file.

1. Select the desired option.

Off

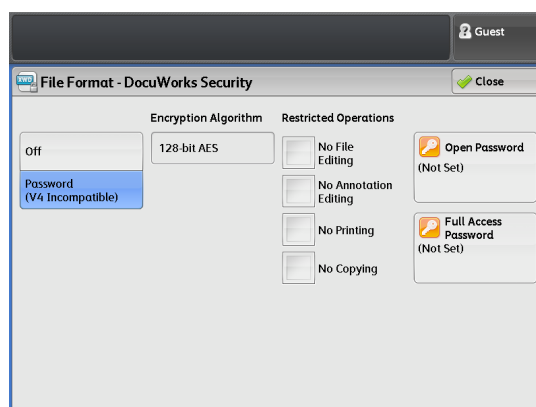
Select this not to set password-based encryption nor file operation permissions for the file.

Password (V4 Incompatible)

Select this to set a password to encrypt the file with the 128-bit AES method.

Press [File Open Password] to set the password.

Files that are encrypted using this method can be opened in DocuWorks 6.0 or later.



Encryption Algorithm

The encryption method in use (128-bit AES) is displayed.

Restricted Operations

Select operations for which you want to assign permissions.



Important

- When you choose to assign permissions to the file, be sure to also assign [Full Access Password].

Open Password

Displays the [DocuWorks Security - Open Password] screen.

Press [On] and set the password, which will be used to encrypt the file. The password will be required when opening the file. In addition, the permissions set under [Restricted Operation] will also be assigned to the file.

Enter the password using up to 32 characters.



Important

- When you choose to set [Open Password] to the file, be sure to also assign [Full Access Password].

Full Access Password

Displays the [DocuWorks Security - Full Access Password] screen.

If you set the password, users will be required to enter the password when attempting to change permissions assigned under [Restricted Operations].

Enter the password using up to 32 characters.

4.10 [Scan to PC] Screen

This section describes how to select functions on the [Scan to PC] screen. These functions allows you to store scanned data on a network-connected computer (server).



Refer

- To use the Scan to PC feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.2 Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature" (p.316).
- The destination server (PC Save Address) must be registered before running a scan job. For information on how to register a server, refer to "9.1.3 Server (PC Save Address)" (p.308).

1. On the menu screen, press [Scan to PC].
2. Specify the save destination for the scanned file.

Server Save Destination (Specifying the Save Destination PC)

- (1) Press [Server Save Destination].

- (2) Select the save destination number.



Note

- Only registered numbers can be selected.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific save destination server at the top, enter that number in [Go to].

- (3) Press [Save].

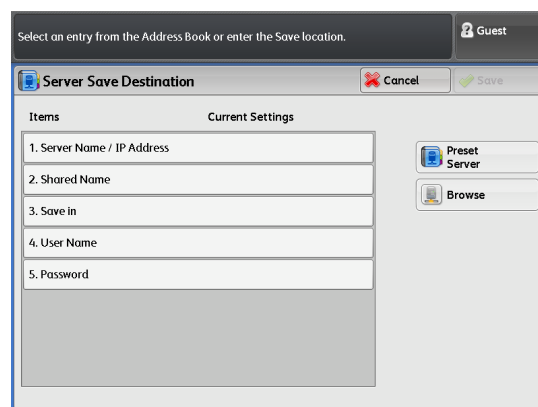


Note

- The machine checks the connection with the destination.
- If the machine fails to establish a connection with the destination, an error message is displayed. In that case, press [Confirm], and verify the settings.

Browse (Browsing Network PCs and Folders to Specify Save Destination)

(1) Press [Browse].



(2) Select a destination to save.

You can change the hierarchy by pressing [Previous] and [Next].

Save in

You can check where you are on the hierarchy.

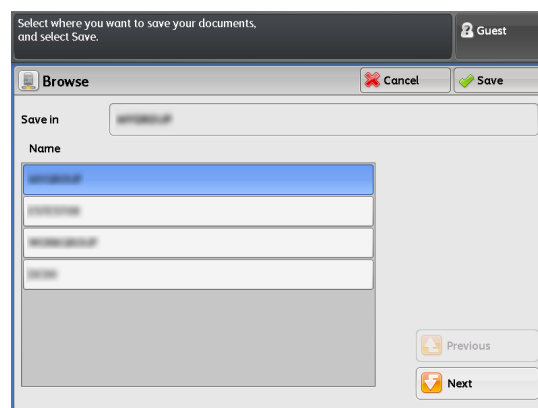
Previous

Moves one step higher than the current hierarchy.



Note

- This button cannot be selected if there is no hierarchy above it.



Next

Moves one step lower than the current hierarchy.



Note

- This button is enabled when a folder is selected.

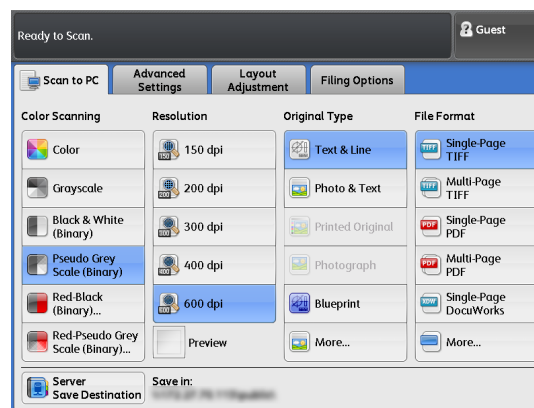
(3) Press [Save].

3. Select the desired function on the [Scan to PC] screen.



Note

- The following functions are equivalent to those displayed on the [Store to Folder] screen. For information on how to do this, refer to "4.9 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.196).
 - Color Scanning Mode
 - Resolution
 - Original Type
 - Output File Format
- To specify the save destination again, press [Save Destination].



4.11 [Multi Send Scan] Screen

This section describes how to select functions on the [Multi Send Scan] screen. Use this feature to store scanned data on computers (servers) registered as a group address, and print them on a printer.

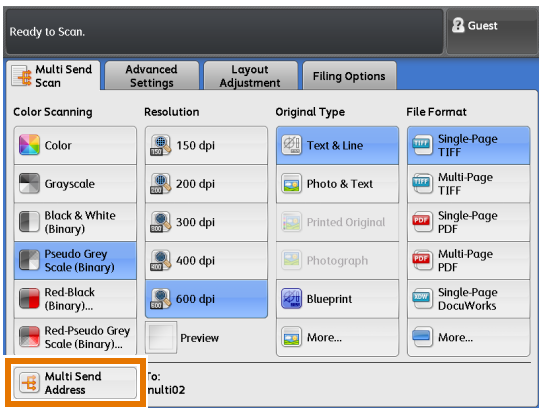


- When you select a printer as part of the destinations, TIFF or JPEG files will be transferred to the printer, regardless of the file format specified under [File Format]. For information on how to select TIFF or JPEG as the file format to be used, refer to "Multi Send Printer Transfer Format"(p.435).



- To use the Multi Send Scan feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.2 Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature" (p.316).
- The destination group address must be registered before running a scan job. For information on how to register a group address, refer to "9.1.5 Multi Send Address (Group Address)" (p.312).

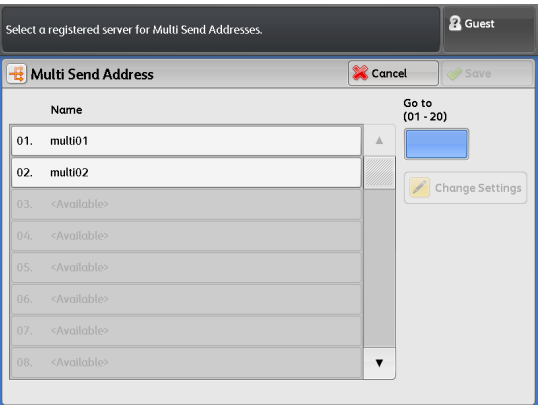
1. On the menu screen, press [Multi Send Address].



2. Select a group as the multiple destination address, and press [Change Settings].



- Only the numbers that are registered can be selected.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific group at the top, enter that number in [Go to].



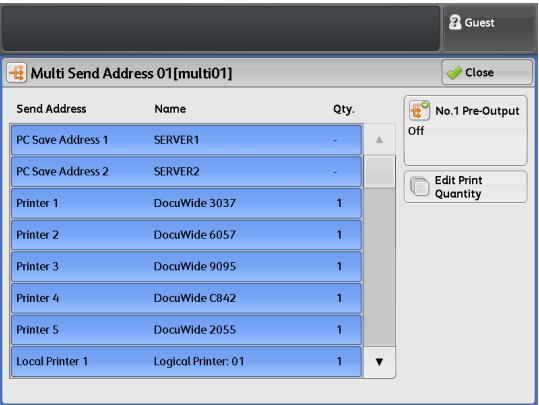
3. Select an option.

Send Address

The list of destination addresses in the group is displayed, where you can select one or more addresses to exclude them temporarily from the destination.



- The destination can include up to two servers, five printers, and one local printer (this machine).



No.1 Pre-Output

If you have selected printers as part of the send destination, and when you scan multiple originals, this function allows you to set whether to print scanned images one page after another.



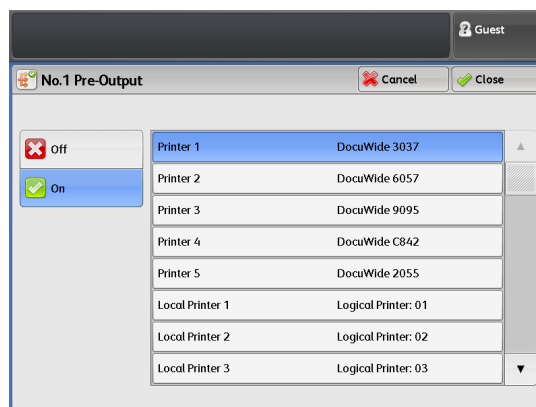
- This function is enabled only for the first set. The second and subsequent sets will be printed after you press [Last Original].

- Off

Select this not to run a pre-output.

- On

Select this to run a pre-output. You can select one printer as the destination for the pre-output.



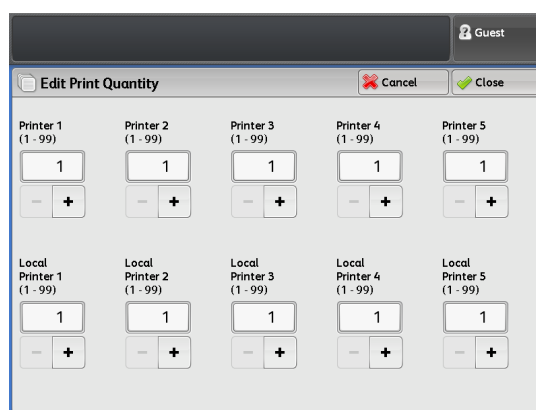
Edit Print Quantity

If you have selected printers as part of the send destination, you can specify the number of copies to be printed for individual printers.

To change the number of copies, press the entry field, and then set the value by using the numeric keypad or by pressing [+] or [-] until the desired value is displayed.



- You can specify up to 99 for the number of copies.



4. Press [Close].

5. Press [Save].

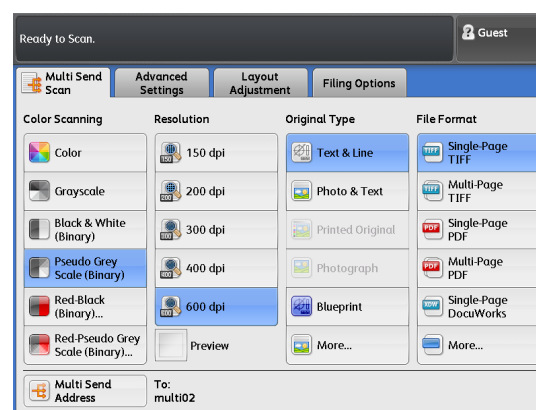


- The machine checks the connection with the destination.
- If the machine fails to establish a connection with the destination, an error message is displayed. In that case, press [Confirm], and verify the settings.

6. Select the desired function on the [Multi Send Scan] screen.



- The following functions are equivalent to those displayed on the [Store to Folder] screen. For information on how to do this, refer to "4.9 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.196).
 - Color Scanning Mode
 - Resolution
 - Original Type
 - Output File Format
- To specify the multi send address again, press [Multi Send Address].

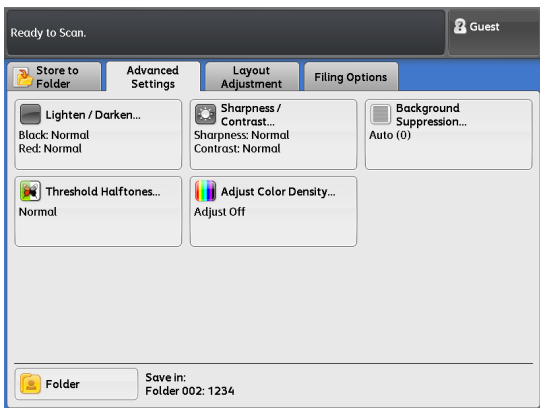


4.12 Scan - [Advanced Settings] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Image Quality] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Lighten / Darken.....p.211
- Sharpness / Contrastp.212
- Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output).....p.212
- Threshold Halftones (Classifying Halftones on the Original).....p.213
- Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors).....p.213

1. On the menu screen, press [Stored Store to Folder Program], [Stored Scan to PC Program], or [Stored Multi Send Scan Program], and specify a save destination or recipient.
2. Select the desired function on the [Image Quality] screen.



4.12.1 Lighten / Darken

You can adjust image options for your original.

1. Press [Lighten / Darken].
2. Adjust options as necessary.

Lighten / Darken

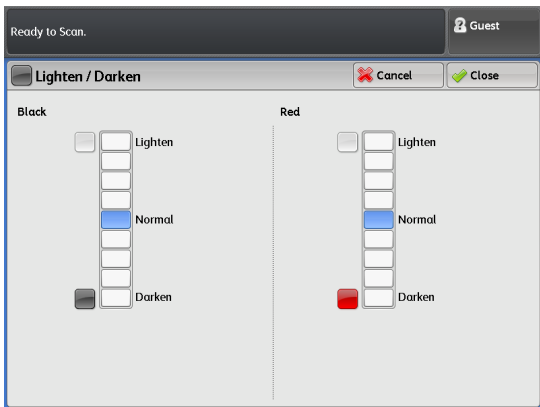
You can select nine levels of image option between [lighten] - [Darken] respectively for black and red.

The closer to [Darken], the darker the scan color becomes, and the closer to [Lighten], the lighter the scan color becomes.



Note

- Adjust the scan speed for each color set with [Output Color].



4.12.2 Sharpness / Contrast

You can adjust sharpness and contrast for the images of your original.

1. Press [Sharpness / Contrast].
2. Adjust options as necessary.

Sharpness

You can select five levels of sharpness between [Sharpen] - [Soften].

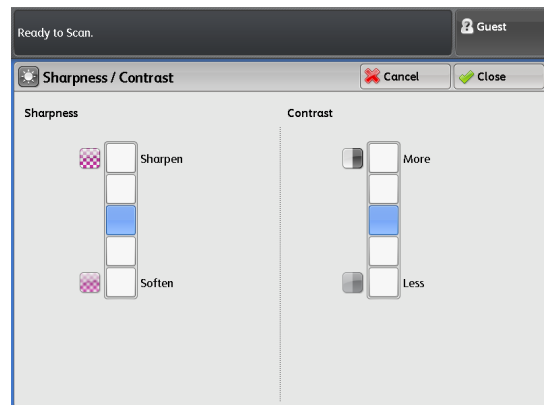
The closer to [Sharpen], the more the contour of the image is emphasized. The closer to [Soften] the more the contour of the image is blurred.

Contrast

You can select five levels of contrast between [More] - [Less].

The closer to [More], the brighter light parts and the darker the darker parts become, and the difference in light and dark becomes wider.

The closer to [Less], the narrower the difference between lighter and darker parts becomes.



4.12.3 Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output)

The following describes how to prevent the background colors of originals such as blue prints from appearing on the scanned output.



Note

- When [Original Type] is set to [Printed Original] or [Photograph], [On (Auto)] cannot be selected.

1. Press [Background Suppression].
2. Select from [Off], [On (Auto)], and [On (Manual)].

Off

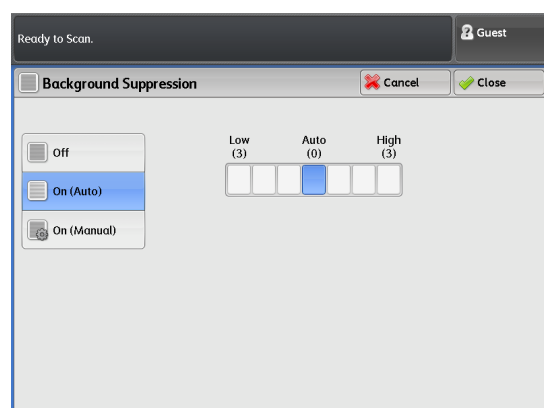
Select this to scan the original as is, without applying any adjustments to the background colors.

On (Auto)

Select this to allow the machine to automatically suppress the background colors.

There are seven levels available between [Low] and [High].

To increase the effect of background suppression (lighten the background color on the copied output), select a level closer to [High]. To decrease effects (reproduce the background color as is), select a level closer to [Low].



Note

- If you select [On (Auto)] and part of the image is lost or unwanted background colors remain on the copied output, consider to selecting [On (Manual)] to make adjustments manually or to make adjustments under [Lighten / Darken].

On (Manual)

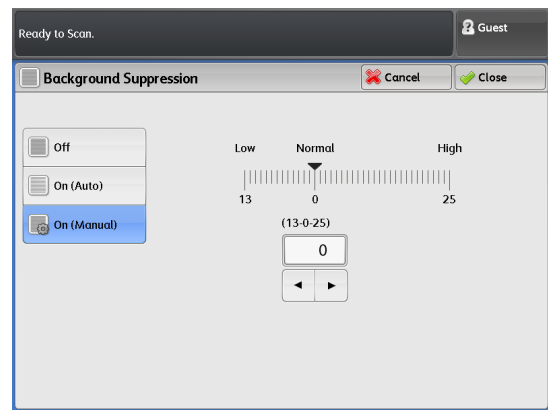
Select this to apply the specified level of suppression to the entire area of the original.

There are 39 levels available between [Low] and [High].



Note

- For the following original types, select [Off], or select [On (Manual)] to make adjustments manually.
 - Photographs/Posters/Color originals
 - Originals with intricate texture
 - Originals with parts where image coverage is high compared to the density of the background colors.



4.12.4 Threshold Halftones (Classifying Halftones on the Original)

Use these steps to select whether to reproduce halftones on the original by using pseudo-halftoning or by classifying halftones via binarization.

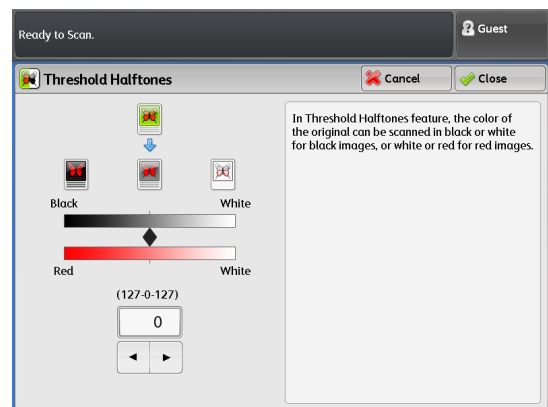
In general, halftones on originals are reproduced by using pseudo-halftoning method. You can select [On] under [Threshold Halftones] to choose classifying halftones via binarization.



Note

- When [Output Color] is [Black & White (Binary)] or [Red-Black (Binary)], [Threshold Halftones] becomes available to set.

- Press [Threshold Halftones].
- Set the threshold for assigning Black/White or Red/White.



4.12.5 Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors)

The following describes how to adjust density level of a color in order to enhance or suppress the color.

- Press [Adjust Color Density].

2. Make adjustments for density level of individual colors.

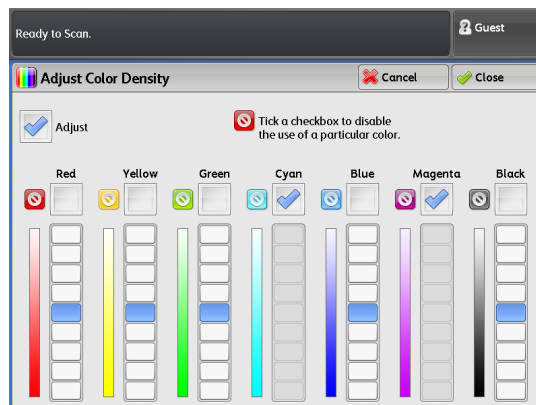
Adjust

Select this check box to adjust the density level of individual colors.

There are nine levels of density available for each of the following colors: red, yellow, green, cyan, blue, magenta, and black.

(Disabling color)

Select the check box for a color to be eliminated from the copied output.

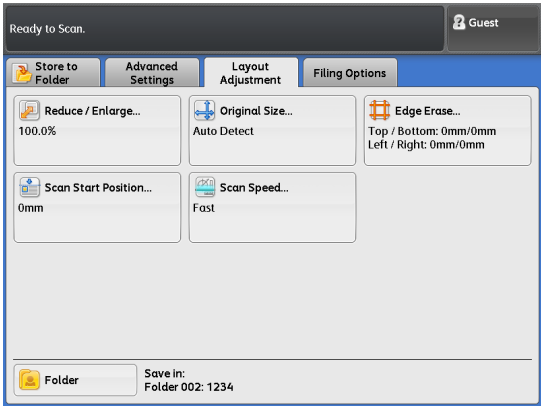


4.13 Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Layout Adjustment] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Reduce / Enlarge (Specifying the Scanning Magnification).....p.215
- Original Size (Specifying the Area Size to be Scanned)p.216
- Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original)p.218
- Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning)p.219
- Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)p.219

1. On the menu screen, press [Stored Store to Folder Program], [Stored Scan to PC Program], or [Stored Multi Send Scan Program], and specify a save destination or recipient.
2. Select the desired function on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.



4.13.1 Reduce / Enlarge (Specifying the Scanning Magnification)

The following describes how to scan and enlarge/reduce originals by specifying the desired magnification.



Note

- The maximum available ratio in order to successfully scan the entire original is:
" $((\text{Original width (mm)}/25.4) \times \text{resolution value}) \times (\text{magnification ratio}/100) \leq 21600$ (914.4 mm width)".
For example, when the original size is A0 and the scan resolution is 600 dpi, if you specify 141.4 % or more as the magnification, part of the scanned image is lost. Any area of the scanned image exceeding the upper limit will be lost.
The lowest possible magnification ratio is " $\text{resolution value} \times (\text{magnification}/100) \geq 150$ (%)".
For example, when the original size is A0 and the scan resolution is 150 dpi, you cannot specify 70 % or less (A1 or smaller) as the magnification.
If you specify a magnification lower than the minimum possible value, an error message is displayed. In that case, change your setting.

1. Press [Reduce / Enlarge].

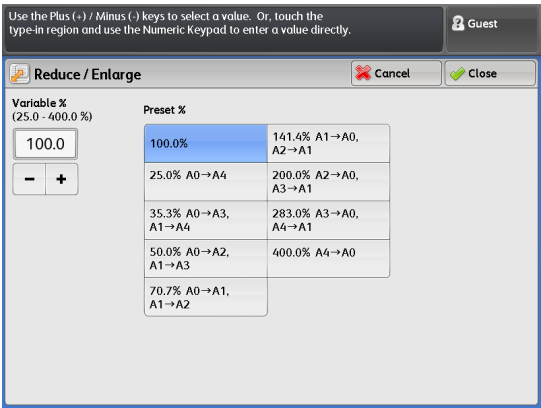
2. Select the desired option.

Variable %

Enter a numeric value to specify the magnification. The magnification can be set in the range of 25.0 to 400.0 % in 0.1 % increments. Set to 100 % to scan at the same size as the original.

Preset %

Allows you to select from preset ratios.



4.13.2 Original Size (Specifying the Area Size to be Scanned)

The following describes how to specify the size of the area to be scanned. If you want to scan an original at a different size from that of the loaded original, use this procedure to specify the original size. You can also add margins, or delete unnecessary margins using this feature.

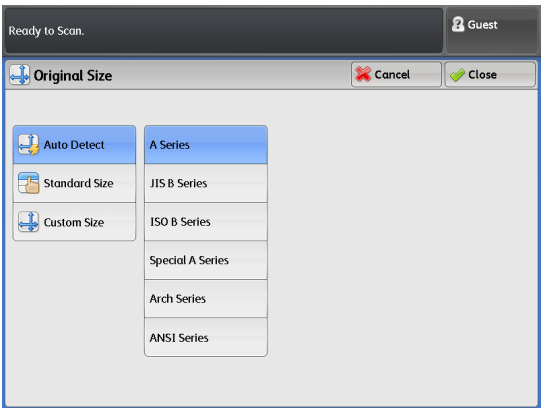
1. Press [Original Size].
2. Select the desired option.

Auto Detect

Automatically detects original size.



- Which size series to be detected when [Auto Detect] is selected can be specified with the System Settings function. For details about the setting method, refer to "Original Size System (DocuWide 6057)"(p.408).

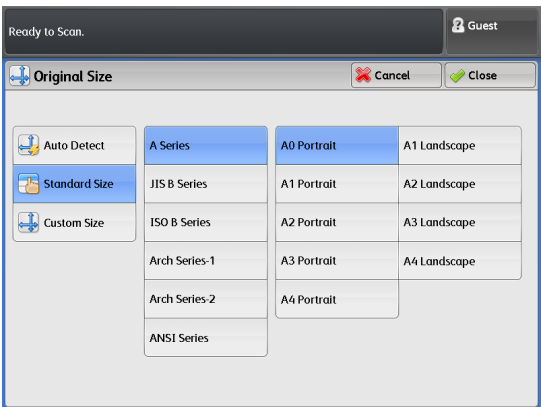


Standard Size

Select either among standard sizes.



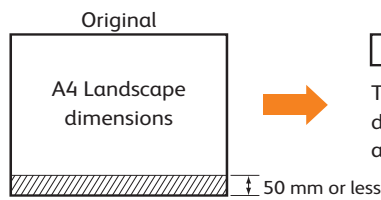
- When PDF or DocuWorks is selected in [File Format], your setting for the original size may be changed or an error may occur, depending on the combination of the ratio and resolution. For detailed information, refer to "13.3.3 Notes and Restrictions on the Scan Feature" (p.471) in "Notes and Restrictions".



When [Auto Detect] or one of the preset standard sizes is selected, and if you load an original of which length is wider than that of the standard size, the machine handles the original as shown in the figure below.

- When the length of original is equal to or less than "the length of the short edge of a Standard Landscape size + 50 mm"

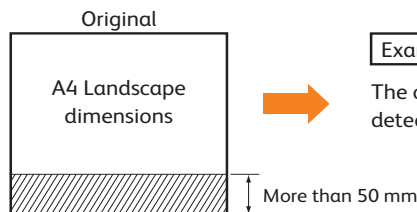
The original is detected as "Standard Landscape" and the excess area is ignored.



Example

The original shown in the figure to the left is detected as "A4 Landscape" and the excess area (shaded area) is ignored.

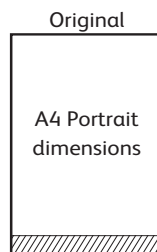
- When the length of original is more than "the length of the short edge of a Standard Landscape size + 50 mm"
- The original is detected as "Standard Portrait" of one size larger than the original.



Example

The original shown in the figure to the left is detected as "A3 Portrait".

- When the length of original is more than the length of the long edge of a Standard Portrait size
- The original is detected as "Standard Portrait" and the excess area is ignored.

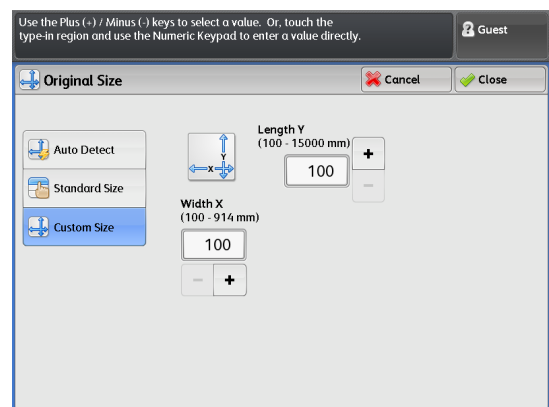


Example

The original shown in the figure to the left is detected as "A4 Portrait" and the excess area (shaded area) is ignored.

Custom Size

If you want to scan an original at a different size from that of the loaded original, specify the area size to scan. You can specify the width in the range of 100 to 914 mm and the length from 100 to 15,000 mm, in 1 mm increments.



4.13.3 Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original)

When you scan an original with borders, the edges of the original may appear on the scanned image as black shadows. This setting can erase such shadows when scanning.



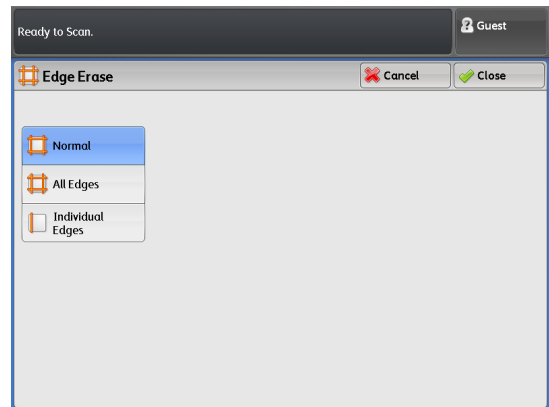
Note

- When [Reduce/Enlarge] is set, the edge erase amount is also increased/decreased according to the ratio.

1. Press [Edge Erase].
2. Select the desired option.

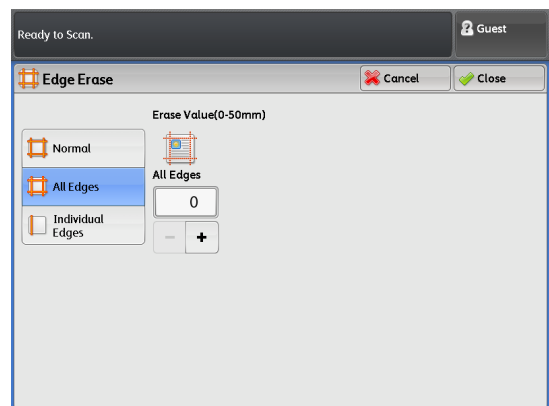
Normal

Select this to set the edge erase amount to 0 mm for the left, right, top, and bottom edges.



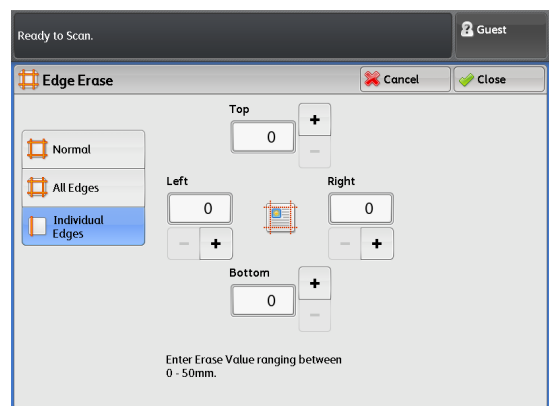
All Edges

Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges of the original. The edge erase amount can be specified in the range of 0 to 50 mm, in 1 mm increments.



Individual Edges

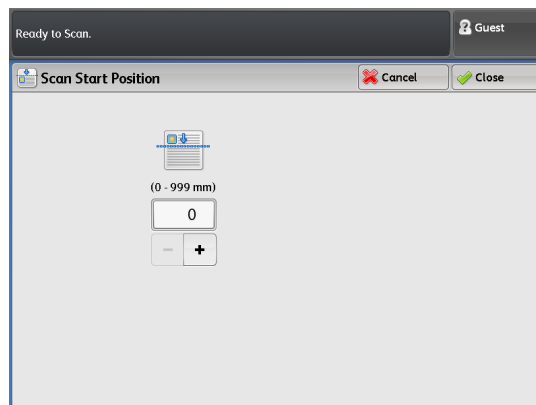
Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges of the original. Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges individually. The edge erase amount can be specified in the range of 0 to 50 mm, in 1 mm increments.



4.13.4 Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning)

The following describes how to set the position where the machine starts scanning originals.

1. Press [Scan Start Position].
2. Set the start position from the leading edge of the original, in the range of up to 999 mm, in 1 mm increments.



4.13.5 Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)

The following describes how to set slower scanning speed for additional reliability.

1. Press [Scan Speed].
2. Select the desired option.

When [Output Color] is set to [Color]

Select from among the following options: [Fast], [Slow] and [Super Slow].

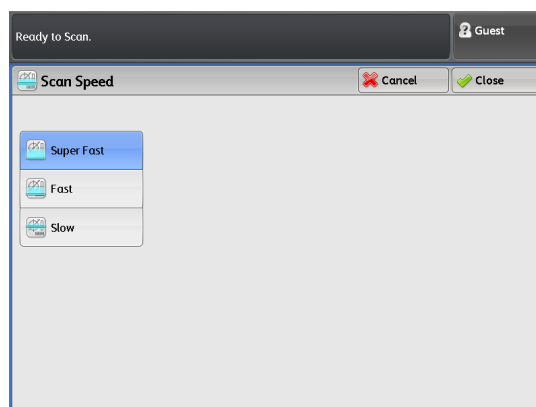
When [Output Color] is set to other than [Color]

Select from among the following options: [Fast], [Medium] and [Super Slow].



Note

- The selectable speeds vary depending on the selected color mode and scan resolution.

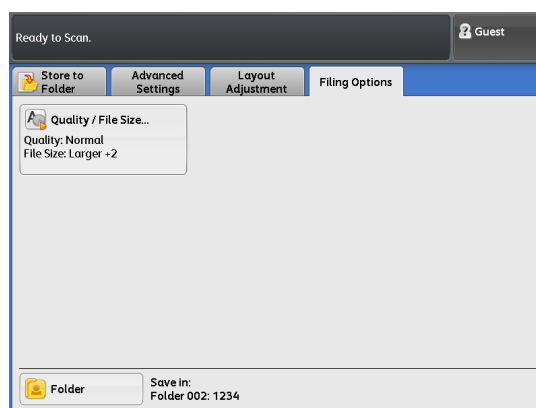


4.14 Scan - [Filing Options] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Filing Options] screen. Refer to the following subsection:

- Quality / File Size (Specifying Image Compression Ratio Used When Scanning Originals)p.220

1. On the menu screen, press [Store to Folder], [Scan to PC], or [Multi Send Scan] to specify the save destination or recipient.
2. Select the desired function on the [Filing Options] screen.



4.14.1 Quality / File Size (Specifying Image Compression Ratio Used When Scanning Originals)

The following describes how to select the image compression ratio when [Output Color] is set to [Color] or [Gray-scale].

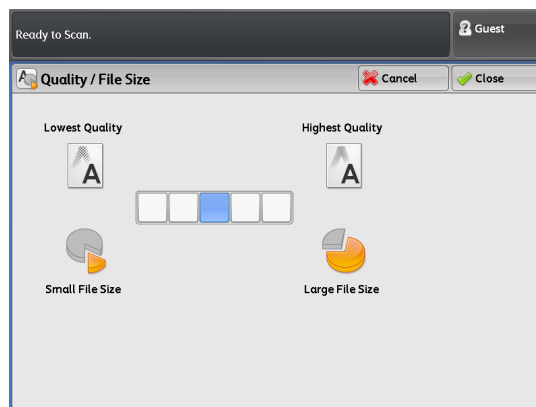
1. Press [Quality / File Size].
2. Select the desired option button.

Lowest Quality

Select this to save scanned images with high compression ratio. Image quality degrades, but the file size decreases.

Highest Quality

Select this to save scanned images with low compression ratio. Image quality improves, but the file size increases too.



Chapter 5 Scan (DocuWide 3037)

This chapter describes the basic operations and functions of the Scan feature.

5.1	Scanning Procedure.....	222
5.2	Stopping the Scan Job	227
5.3	Color Scanning	229
5.4	Displaying the Preview	230
5.5	Encrypting Scanned Data	231
5.6	Scanning Multiple Originals as One File.....	232
5.7	Running an Interrupt Scan.....	234
5.8	[Store to Folder] Screen	235
5.9	[Scan to PC] Screen	246
5.10	[Multi Send Scan] Screen	248
5.11	Scan - [Advanced Settings] Screen.....	250
5.12	Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen.....	254
5.13	Scan - [Filing Options] Screen.....	259

5.1 Scanning Procedure

This section describes the basic scanning procedure. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

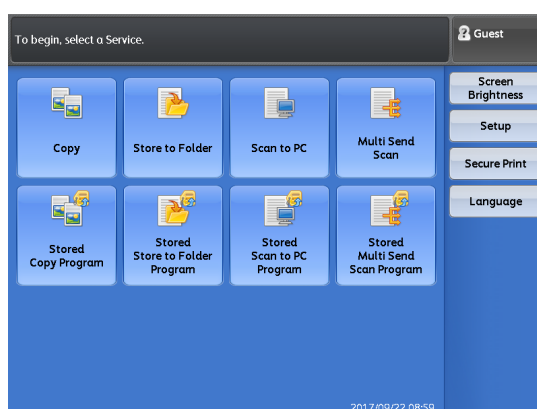
- Step 1 Selecting the Featurep.222
- Step 2 Starting the Scan Job.....p.225
- Step 3 Importing Scanned Datap.226

5.1.1 Step 1 Selecting the Feature

You can select from the following three scan features:

- Store to Folder
- Scan to PC
- Multi Send Scan

The menu screen provides you with three scan feature buttons: [Store to Folder], [Scan to PC], and [Multi Send Scan]. Use these button to access the corresponding screen, where you can select the desired functions.



Store to Folder

Use this feature to read (scan) originals on the machine and store data in the machine's Folders. The stored documents can be imported from a network-connected computer.



Refer

- To use the Store to Folder feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.1 Setting Up the Store to Folder Feature" (p.316).
- The destination folder must be created before running a scan job. For information on how to create folders, refer to "9.1.2 Create Folder" (p.306).

Scan to PC

Use this feature to read (scan) originals on the machine and store data on a network-connected computer (server).



Refer

- To use the Scan to PC feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.2 Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature" (p.316).
- The destination server (PC Save Address) must be registered before running a scan job. For information on how to register a server, refer to "9.1.3 Server (PC Save Address)" (p.308).

Multi Send Scan

Use this feature to store scanned data on computers (servers) registered as a group address, and print them on a printer.



Refer

- To use the Multi Send Scan feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.2 Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature" (p.316).
- The destination group address must be registered before running a scan job. For information on how to register a group address, refer to "9.1.5 Multi Send Address (Group Address)" (p.312).

- File formats available for each Scan feature.

Scan Feature	Scan Application	File Format			
		TIFF	PDF	Docu Works*1	JPEG
Store to Folder	TWAIN-compliant application	Yes*2			
	Stored File Manager 3	Yes	No	No	Yes
	CentreWare Internet Services	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scan to PC	—	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Multi Send Scan	—	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

*1 DocuWorks is a TWAIN-compliant application product from Fuji Xerox.

*2 When importing scan data from the machine's folder by using a TWAIN-compliant application, file formats supported depend on your application.

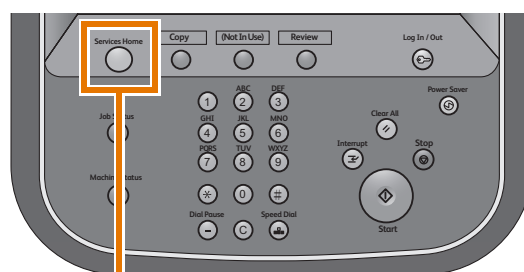


Note

- If you do not specify a file name for the document to be saved, a file name is automatically assigned to each file or folder based on a particular rule.

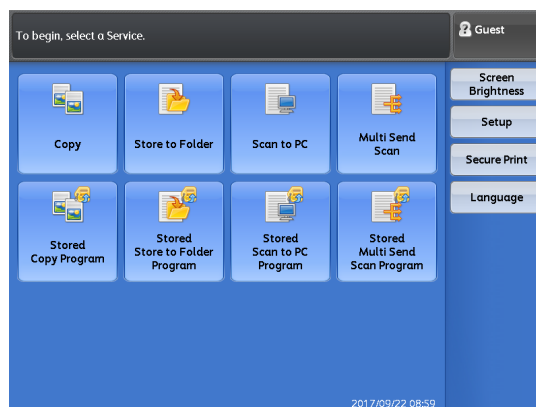
The following describes as an example how to use the [Store to Folder] feature.

1. Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel.



<Services Home> button

2. On the menu screen, press [Store to Folder].



3. Select the destination folder.



Note

- Only the numbers that are registered can be selected.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific folder at the top, enter that number in [Go to].



4. Enter the password, and press [Confirm].

5. Press [Save].



6. Select functions to set on each tab as necessary.

For details on each tab, refer to these subsections.



Refer

- "5.8 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.235)
- "5.11 Scan - [Advanced Settings] Screen" (p.250)
- "5.12 Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.254)
- "5.13 Scan - [Filing Options] Screen" (p.259)

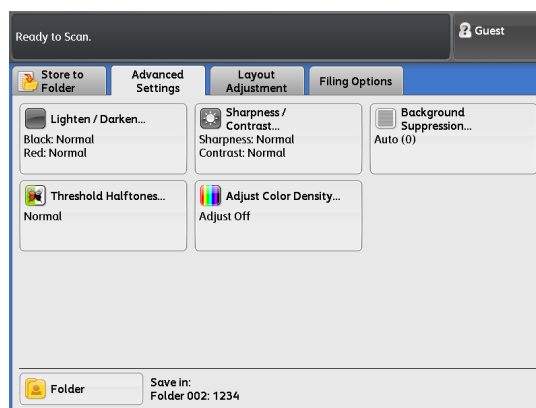
When you have selected another Scan feature, [Store to Folder] is replaced with [Scan to PC] or [Multi Send Scan].

For details on each tab, refer to these subsections.



Refer

- "5.9 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.246)



- "5.10 [Multi Send Scan] Screen" (p.248)

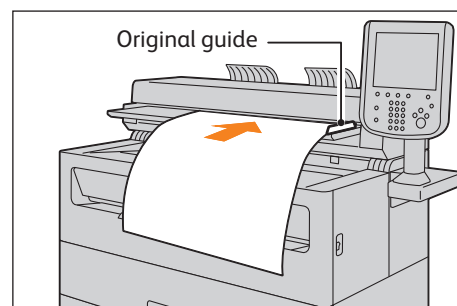
5.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job

The following describes how to load the original and start scanning.

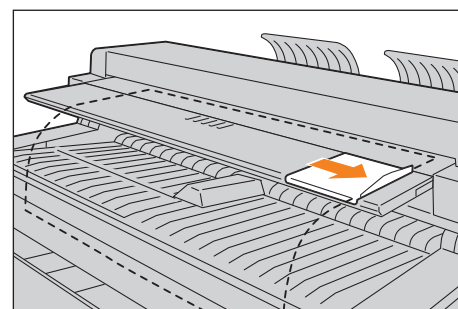


- If you hold down or pull the original while it is being scanned, the original may get jammed.
- When loading a hole-punched original, insert the edge with the holes last. If you insert the edge with the holes first, the original may get jammed.

1. Align the original against the original guide with the side to be scanned face down, and insert it all the way until it stops.



- By moving the original guide to the right, you can also adjust the scanning position on the original.



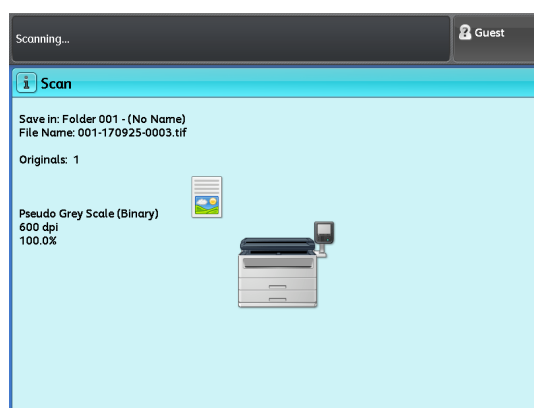
The original is automatically conveyed and stops momentarily. Then the machine automatically starts scanning the original.



- Do not release your hands from the original until it is conveyed. If the original is long, it might fall off the machine.



- When the scan start mode is set to [Manual Start] under System Settings, press the <Start> button on the control panel. For information on how to set Manual Start, refer to "Scan Start Mode"(p.407).



2. Remove the original that is output.

5.1.3 Step 3 Importing Scanned Data

The documents stored in the machine's folder can be imported into your computer. There are three methods of importing scanned data:

Import using a TWAIN-compliant application

Network Scanner Utility 3 is used.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "8.5.1 Import from a TWAIN-compliant Application" (p.293).

Import using Stored File Manager 3

Stored File Manager 3, which is an application product from Fuji Xerox, is used.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "8.5.2 Importing from Stored File Manager 3" (p.296).

Import using CentreWare Internet Services

CentreWare Internet Services is used.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "8.5.3 Importing Using CentreWare Internet Services" (p.299).

5.2 Stopping the Scan Job

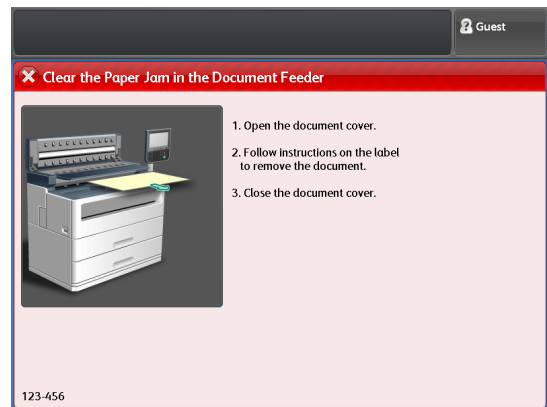
This section describes how to stop feeding originals or cancel scanning. Refer to the following subsections for more information.

- Canceling Feeding the Original.....p.227
- Canceling Scan Jobs.....p.227

5.2.1 Canceling Feeding the Original

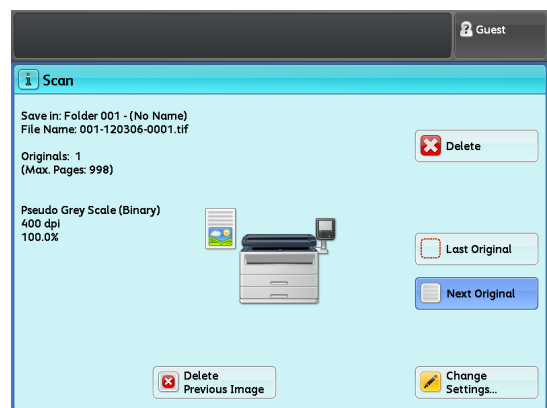
Stop the original to feed when it is bent or about being torn.

1. Press the <Stop> button on the control panel when the original feeds.
Feeding of the original stops.
2. Remove the jammed original according to the message displayed on the touch panel display, and reset the original.



5.2.2 Canceling Scan Jobs

1. Press [Delete] on the touch panel display.



2. Press [Delete].



5.3 Color Scanning

This section describes how to scan originals in full color.



Note

- To use this feature, the optional Color Scan Memory KIT is necessary.

1. On the menu screen, press [Store to Folder], [Scan to PC], or [Multi Send Scan], and specify the save destination or address.



Refer

- "5.8 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.235)
- "5.9 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.246)
- "5.10 [Multi Send Scan] Screen" (p.248)

2. Press [Color].

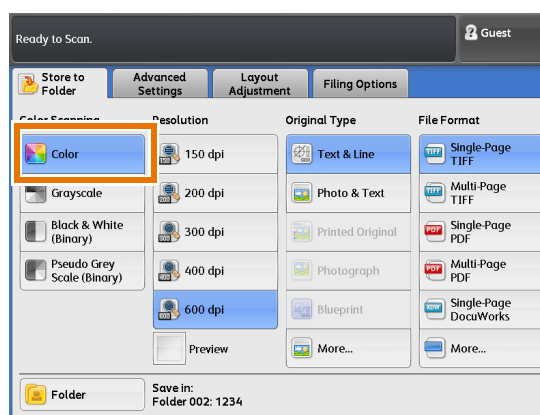
3. Set other features as necessary.



Note

- When [Resolution] is 400 dpi or higher, [Scan Speed] cannot be set to [Fast].
- [Blueprint], [Transparent], and [Uneven-Toned Background] under [Original Type] cannot be selected.
- [Threshold Halftones] cannot be selected.

4. Load the original, and start scanning.



5.4 Displaying the Preview

You can check the preview of the scanned image before saving the data.



- **Important** Previews are not displayed for originals whose length exceeds 2,772 mm. Although previews are not displayed, scanned data is saved.

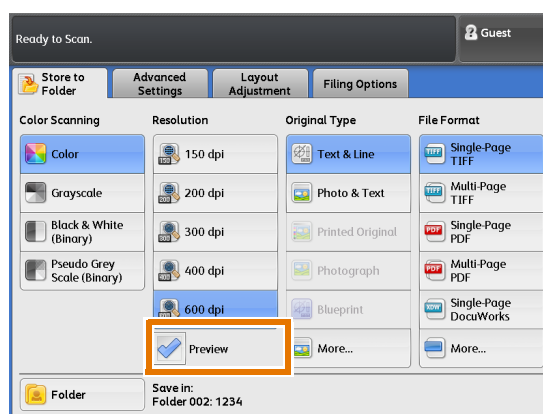
1. On the menu screen, press [Stored Store to Folder Program], [Scan to PC], or [Stored Multi Send Scan Program], and specify the destination folder or recipient.



Refer

- "5.8 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.235)
- "5.9 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.246)
- "5.10 [Multi Send Scan] Screen" (p.248)

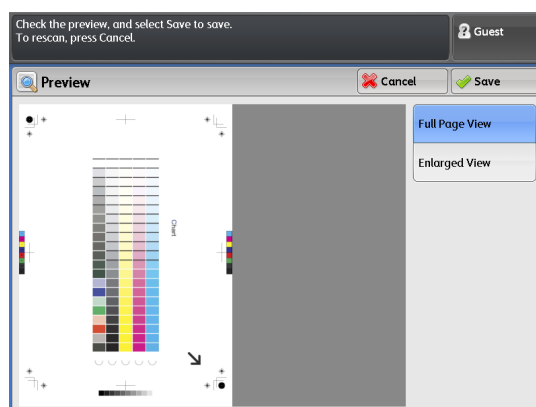
2. Select the [Preview] check box.
3. Set other functions as necessary.
4. Load the original, and start scanning.



5. Confirm the preview.

Full Page View

Displays the entire scanned page.



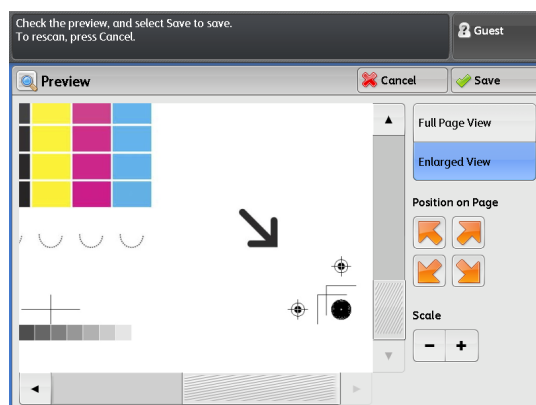
Enlarged View

Enlarges the scanned page. Drag the left / right or up / down toolbar to change the display position.

You can move the display position towards four corners with the arrows of [Position on Page].

It scales with [-] and [+] of [Scale].

6. To save, press [Save].
If you want to start all over again, press [Cancel].



5.5 Encrypting Scanned Data

This section describes how to secure scanned data that you have stored in PDF or DocuWorks file format to prevent unauthorized access.



- Security cannot be set on data that have been stored with the Store to Folder feature.
- With the Multi Send Scan feature, a password encryption file created by the same setting value will be transferred to multiple destinations (servers only).

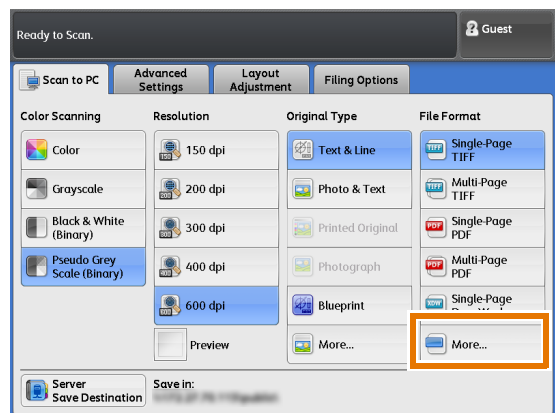
1. On the menu screen, press [Scan to PC] or [Multi Send Scan], and specify the save destination or address.



Refer

- "5.9 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.246)
- "5.10 [Multi Send Scan] Screen" (p.248)

2. Press [More...].



3. Select either [Single-Page PDF], [Multi-Page PDF], [Single-Page DocuWorks], or [Multi-Page DocuWorks].
4. Press [PDF Security] or [DocuWorks Security].

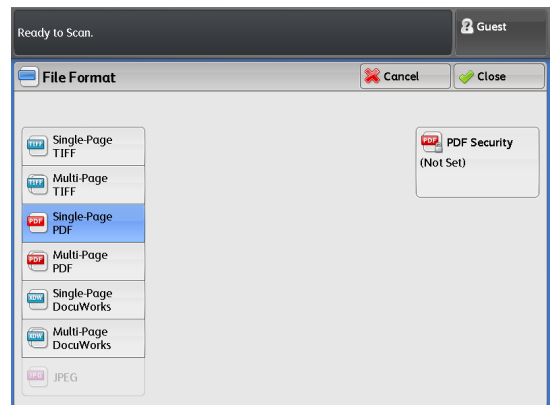
PDF Security

Displays the [File Format - PDF Security] screen, where you can set password-based encryption and file operation permissions for the PDF file.



Refer

- Refer to "[File Format - PDF Security] Screen"(p.243).



DocuWorks Security

Displays the [File Format - DocuWorks Security] screen, where you can set password-based encryption and file operation permissions for the DocuWorks file.



Refer

- Refer to "[File Format - DocuWorks Security] Screen"(p.244).

5. Set other features as necessary.
6. Load the original, and start scanning.

5.6 Scanning Multiple Originals as One File

Selecting [Multi-Page TIFF], [Multi-Page PDF], or [Multi-Page DocuWorks] under [File Format] allows you to scan multiple originals as a single file.



Note

- If the size of the file generated during scan exceeds a certain limit, an error message is displayed on the touch screen. Resolve the problem according to the message. For information on file size limitations, refer to "Size of the Scan File Created"(p.472).

1. On the menu screen, press [Store to Folder], [Scan to PC], or [Multi Send Scan], and specify the save destination or address.

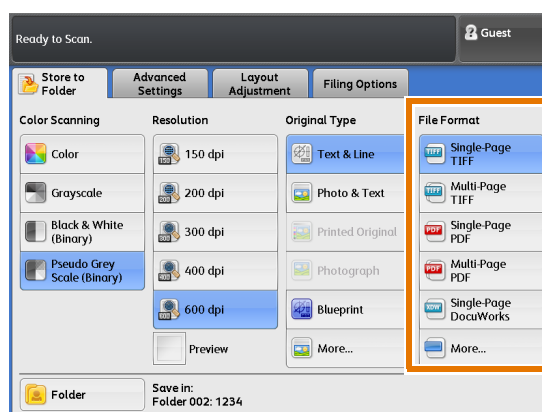


Refer

- "5.8 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.235)
- "5.9 [Scan to PC] Screen" (p.246)
- "5.10 [Multi Send Scan] Screen" (p.248)

2. Select either [Multi-Page TIFF], [Multi-Page PDF], or [Multi-Page DocuWorks].

3. Set other features as necessary.



4. Load the first original.

The scanning starts.

Delete

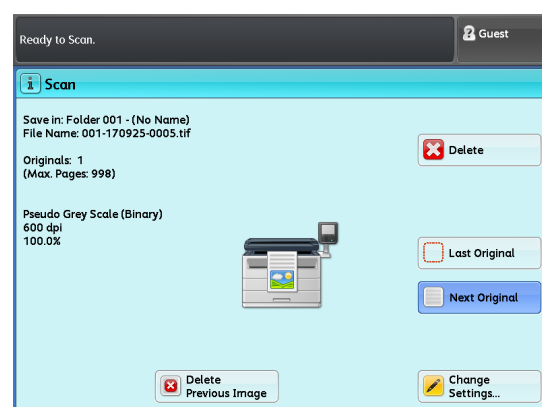
Press to cancel the scan job.

Last Original

Press this button after all originals have been scanned.

Next Original

This button is selected by default.



Delete Previous Image

Press this button to delete images of the previously scanned originals.

Change Settings

Press this button to change the settings such as color mode, resolution, and original type, for the next original.



Note

- The color mode (Color Scanning) can only be toggled between [Black & White] and [Halftone].

5. Load the next original.

Repeat this step if you have more originals.

6. When all originals have been scanned, press [Last Original].

5.7 Running an Interrupt Scan

This section describes how to interrupt an ongoing continual print job to run an urgent scan job.



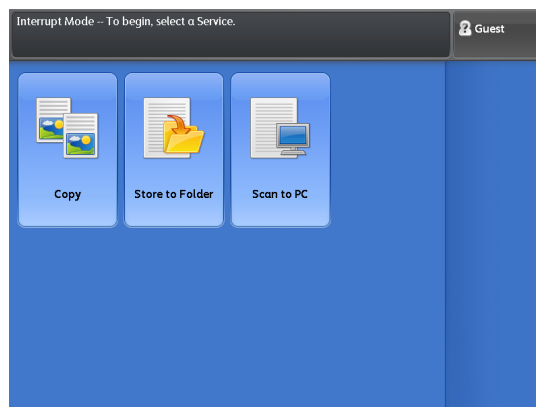
Note

- The Multi Send Scan feature is not available during the interrupt mode.
- The Interrupt Scan function is not available during copying.

1. Press the <Interrupt> button on the control panel.
The <Interrupt> button lights up, indicating the Interrupt mode is enabled.
2. When printing is in progress, the menu screen is displayed. Press [Stored Store to Folder Program] or [Stored Scan to PC Program], and specify a save destination or recipient.
3. Set other features as necessary.
4. Load the original, and start scanning.
5. After you finish the interrupt scanning, press the [Interrupt] button.

The <Interrupt> button goes out, indicating the Interrupt mode is exited.

The suspended print job resumes.



5.8 [Store to Folder] Screen

This section describes how to select functions on the [Store to Folder] screen. This screen allows you to scan originals and save the scanned data in a folder of the machine.



- To use the Store to Folder feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.1 Setting Up the Store to Folder Feature" (p.316).
- The destination folder must be created before running a scan job. For information on how to create folders, refer to "9.1.2 Create Folder" (p.306).

The following describes the [Store to Folder] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

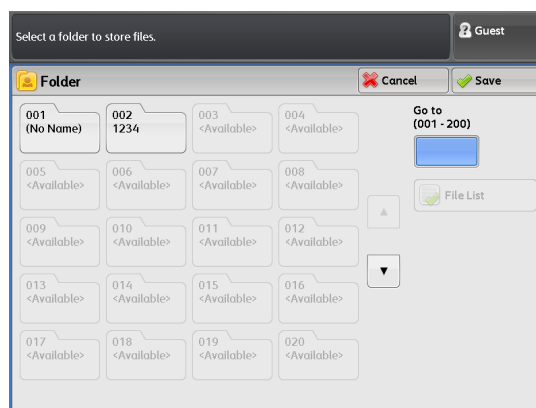
- Viewing/Deleting Documents in a Folder p.236
- Color Scanning (Selecting the Color Mode for Scanning) p.237
- Resolution (Specifying the Scanning Resolution) p.238
- Preview (Select preview display) p.238
- Original Type (Selecting the Original Type) p.239
- File Format (Selecting a File Format for Output Data) p.241

1. On the menu screen, press [Store to Folder].

2. Specify a folder to save.

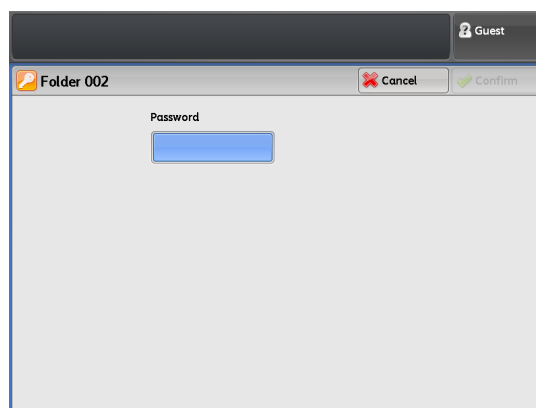


- To use the full color (Color) and 256 levels grayscale (Grayscale) options, the optional Color Scan Memory KIT is necessary.
- Only the registered numbers can be selected.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display an arbitrary folder at the top, enter the number of the folder in [Go to].



3. Enter the password, and press [Confirm].

4. Press [Save].

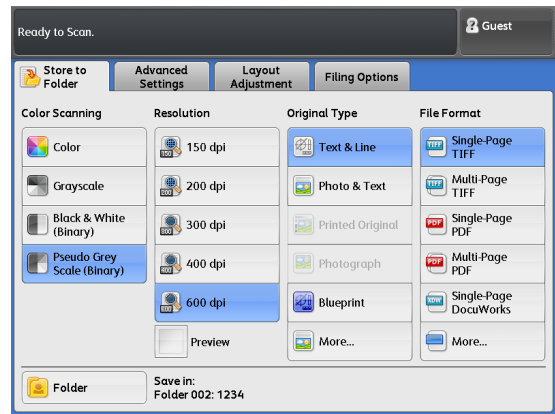


5. Select the desired function on the [Store to Folder] screen.



Note

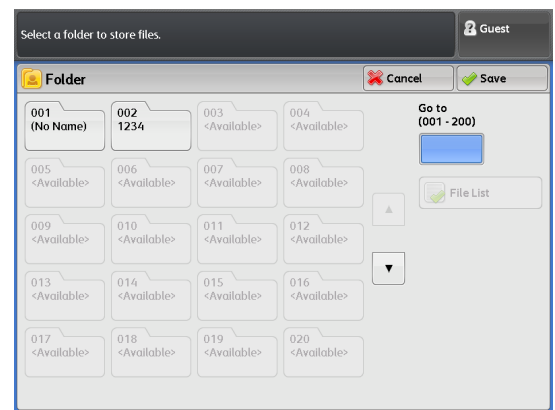
- To specify the folder to save again, press [Folder].



5.8.1 Viewing/Deleting Documents in a Folder

The following describes how to view and delete documents stored in a folder.

1. Select [Folder], and press [File List].



2. Select a document.



Note

- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.

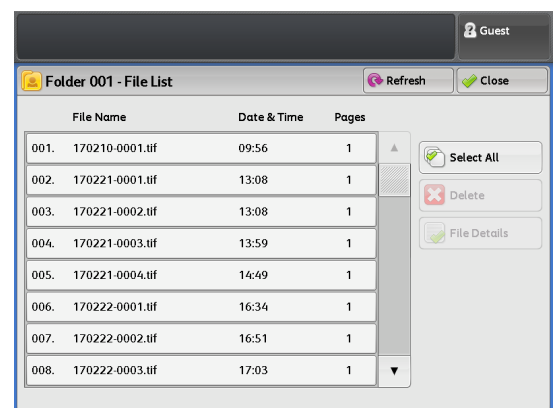
3. Select the desired option.

Select All

Select this to select all the documents in the folder. Select this again to deselect all the selected documents.

Delete

Select this to delete the selected document(s).



File Details

Select this to view the selected document.



5.8.2 Color Scanning (Selecting the Color Mode for Scanning)

The following describes how to set the color mode for scanning originals.

1. Select a color mode.



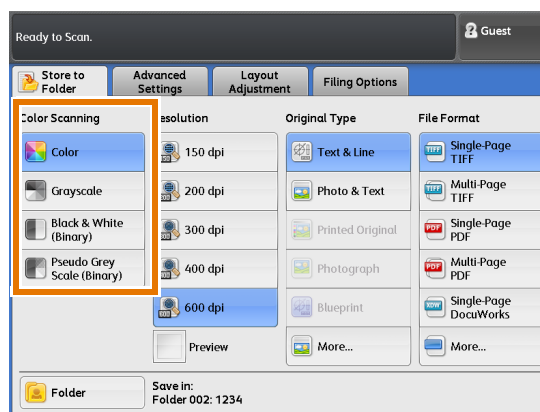
- The standard setting is [Pseudo Grey Scale (Binary)].

Color

Select this to scan in the full color mode.



- [Blueprint], [Transparent], and [Uneven-Toned Background] under [Original Type] cannot be selected.
- [Threshold Halftones] cannot be selected.



Grayscale

Select this to scan using the 256 levels of black and white. The file size of scanned data will be larger than that scanned with Black & White or Halftone.



- [Threshold Halftones] cannot be selected.

Black & White (Binary)

Select this to scan standard documents and drawings. The file size of scanned data will be smaller than that scanned with Halftone or Grayscale.



- [Printed Original] and [Photograph] under [Original Type] cannot be selected.

Pseudo Grey Scale (Binary)

Select this to scan halftone originals.

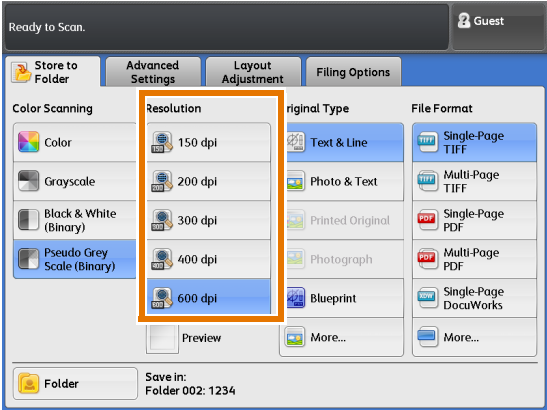


- [Threshold Halftones] cannot be selected.

5.8.3 Resolution (Specifying the Scanning Resolution)

The following describes how to set the resolution for scanning originals.
The higher the resolution value, the more detail in your image, resulting in larger data size. The larger the data size, the more time is required to complete scanning and transmission.

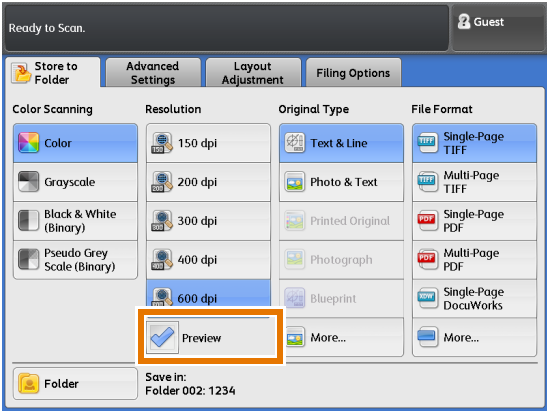
- 1. Select a resolution.



5.8.4 Preview (Select preview display)

Before scanning originals, you can select whether to display a preview.

- 1. Select whether to display a preview.



5.8.5 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)

The following describes how to select the type of originals, such as photo and text, to scan originals with optimum image quality. In general, [Text & Line] is most indicated option for better image quality for originals that consist mainly of text and line, such as drawings. It is recommended to select the most suitable from among the various options whenever you want more professional image quality.



- When [Black & White] is selected under [Color Scanning], [Printed Original] and [Photograph] cannot be selected. In addition, when [Color] is selected, [Blueprint], [Transparent], and [Uneven-Toned Background] cannot be selected.
- When [Background Suppression] is set to [On (Auto)], [Printed Original] and [Photograph] cannot be selected.

1. Select the type of the original.



- You can change the original type displayed on the [Scan Job] screen. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.6.1 Preset Buttons" (p.433).

Text & Line

Select this to reproduce crisp text on the scanned image. With this mode, graphs and illustrations are also reproduced clearly.

Photo & Text

Select this when scanning an original that contains both text and photos.

Printed Original

Select this when scanning an original whose photo elements are printed materials such as pamphlets.

Photograph

Select this when scanning a paste-up of photos. This option prevents the scanned image from appearing bluish.

Blueprint

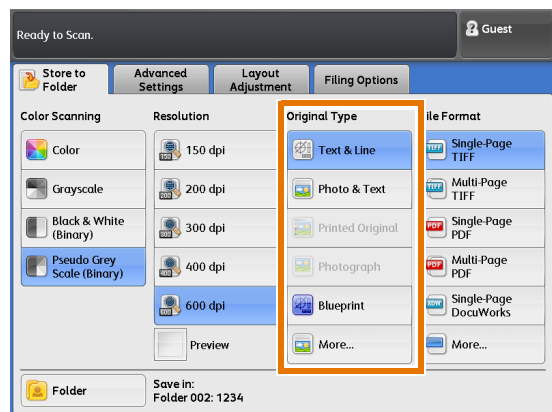
Select this when scanning a blueprint original whose base color is rather dark.

More...

Selecting this displays the [Original Type] screen.



- Refer to "[Original Type] Screen" (p.240).



[Original Type] Screen

The following describes how to select other available original types.

1. Select the type of the original.

Text & Line

Select this to reproduce crisp text on the scanned image. With this mode, graphs and illustrations are also reproduced clearly.

Photo & Text

Select this when scanning an original that contains both text and photos.

Printed Original

Select this when scanning an original whose photo elements are printed materials such as pamphlets.

Photograph

Select this when scanning a paste-up of photos. This option prevents the scanned image from appearing bluish.

Blueprint

Select this when scanning a blueprint original whose base color is rather dark.

Transparent

Select this when scanning a translucent original. This helps to suppress fringing around text.

Uneven-Toned Background

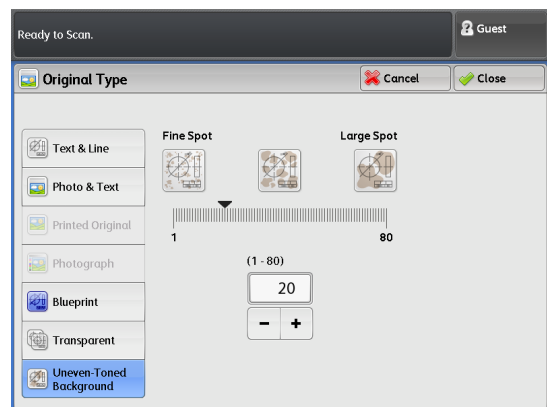
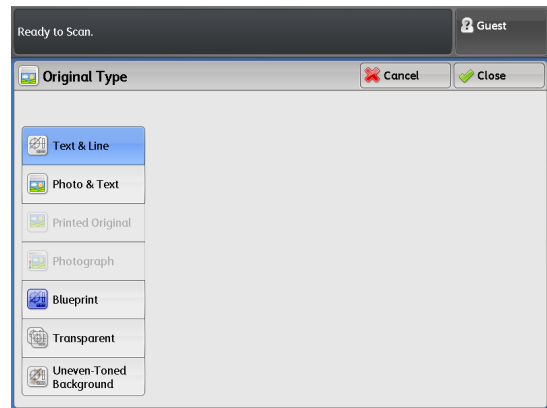
Select this when scanning an original having a non-uniform background typically due to paste-ups.

Selecting this displays the [Original Type] screen, where you can adjust the unevenness level in 80 steps.



Important

- The Uneven-Toned Background option is for use with the text and line drawings. Do not use this option for photo originals such as posters.
- Since the effect of this option varies depending on the selected unevenness level, check the copied output to see the result.



5.8.6 File Format (Selecting a File Format for Output Data)

The following describes how to set the file format in which the machine saves scanned data.



Refer

- For information on file size limitations and the number of pages within a multiple-page image, refer to "13.3.3 Notes and Restrictions on the Scan Feature" (p.471).

1. Select the output file format.



Note

- You can change the file format displayed on the [Scan Job] screen. For information on how to do this, refer to "12.6.1 Preset Buttons" (p.433).

Single-Page TIFF

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in TIFF format.

Multi-Page TIFF

Select this to save multiple pages of the original to one file in TIFF format.

Single-Page PDF

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in PDF format.

Multi-Page PDF

Select this to save multiple pages of the original to one file in PDF format.

Single-Page DocuWorks

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in XDW format.

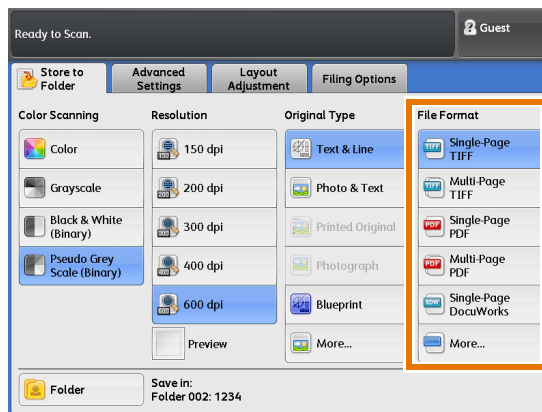
More...

Displays the [File Format] screen.



Refer

- Refer to "[File Format] Screen" (p.241).



[File Format] Screen

The following describes how to select other available output file format.



Important

- Security cannot be set on data that have been stored with the Store to Folder feature.
- With the Multi Send Scan feature, a password encryption file created by the same setting value will be transferred to multiple destinations (servers only).

1. Select the output file format.

Single-Page TIFF

Select this to save each page of the document to one file in TIFF format.

Multi-Page TIFF

Select this to save multiple pages of the original to one file in TIFF format.

Single-Page PDF

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in PDF format.

Multi-Page PDF

Select this to save multiple pages of the original to one file in PDF format.

Single-Page DocuWorks

Select this to save each page of the original to one file in XDW format.

Multi-Page DocuWorks

Select this to save multiple pages of the original to one file in XDW format.

JPEG

Select this to save the original in JPEG format.



Note

- [JPEG] can be selected when [Output Color] is set to [Color] or [Grayscale].
- To use this feature, the optional Color Scan Memory KIT is necessary.

PDF Security

Displays the [File Format - PDF Security] screen.



Note

- The [PDF Security] option is enabled when [Single-Page PDF] or [Multi-Page PDF] is selected.



Refer

- Refer to "[File Format - PDF Security] Screen"(p.243).

DocuWorks Security

Displays the [File Format - DocuWorks Security] screen.



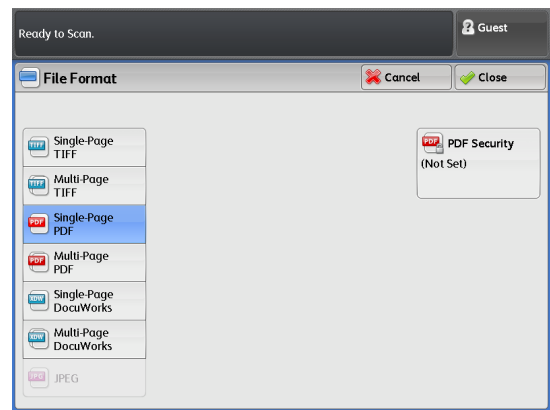
Note

- The [DocuWorks Security] option is enabled when [Single-Page DocuWorks] or [Multi-Page DocuWorks] is selected.



Refer

- Refer to "[File Format - DocuWorks Security] Screen"(p.244).



[File Format - PDF Security] Screen

The following describes how to set password-based encryption and file operation permissions for the PDF file.

1. Select the desired option.

Off

Select this not to set password-based encryption nor file operation permissions for the file.

Password

Select this to set a password to encrypt the file with the 128-bit AES method.

Encryption Algorithm

The encryption method in use (128-bit AES) is displayed. Files that are encrypted using this method can be opened in Adobe® Acrobat® 7.0 or later.

Supported Version

Before encrypting the file, you can check the compatible Adobe® Acrobat® versions.

File Open Password

Displays the [PDF Security - File Open Password] screen.

On the displayed screen, press [On], and set the password which will be required when opening the file.

Enter the password using up to 32 characters.

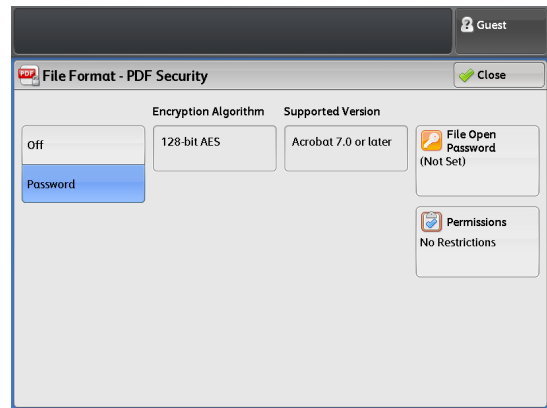
Permissions

Displays the [PDF Security - Permissions] screen.



Refer

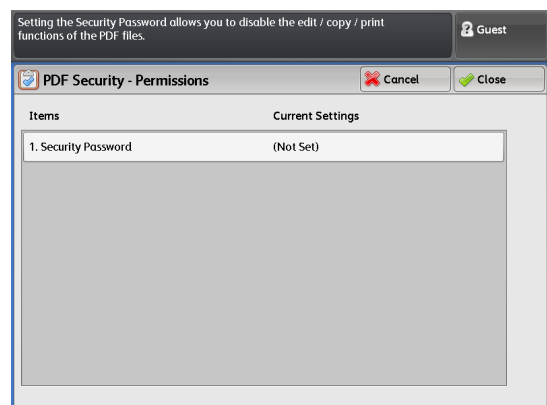
- Refer to "[PDF Security - Permissions] Screen"(p.243).



[PDF Security - Permissions] Screen

The following describes how to set operation permissions for the file.

1. Press [Security Password].



- 2. Press [On].
- 3. Enter the security password, and press [Save].
- 4. Enter the same password as above in [Re-enter Security Password], and press [Save].
- 5. Select the desired option.

Security Password

Displays the [PDF Security - Security Password] screen.

You can set a password to restrict specific file operations. This password will be required to access the restricted operations or when attempting to change the permissions assigned to the file.

Enter the password using up to 32 characters.



Printing

Displays the [Permissions - Printing] screen.

You can set whether to allow users to print the file, as well as in what resolution users can print the file.

Changes Allowed

Displays the [Permissions - Changes Allowed] screen.

You can set whether to allow users to alter the content of the file, for example inserting pages or adding annotations.

Allow Contents Copying and Extraction

Displays the [Permissions - Allow Contents Copying and Extraction] screen.

You can set whether to allow users to copy the file content such as text and images in the file.

[File Format - DocuWorks Security] Screen

The following describes how to set password-based encryption and file operation permissions for the DocuWorks file.

- 1. Select the desired option.

Off

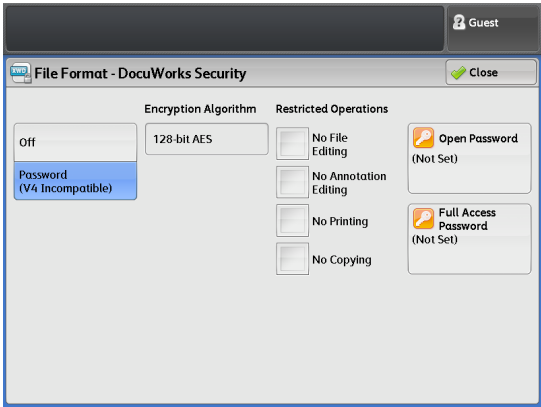
Select this not to set password-based encryption nor file operation permissions for the file.

Password (V4 Incompatible)

Select this to set a password to encrypt the file with the 128-bit AES method.

Press [File Open Password] to set the password.

Files that are encrypted using this method can be opened in DocuWorks 6.0 or later.



Encryption Algorithm

The encryption method in use (128-bit AES) is displayed.

Restricted Operations

Select operations for which you want to assign permissions.



Important

- When you choose to assign permissions to the file, be sure to also assign [Full Access Password].

Open Password

Displays the [DocuWorks Security - Open Password] screen.

Press [On] and set the password, which will be used to encrypt the file. The password will be required when opening the file. In addition, the permissions set under [Restricted Operation] will also be assigned to the file.

Enter the password using up to 32 characters.



Important

- When you choose to set [Open Password] to the file, be sure to also assign [Full Access Password].

Full Access Password

Displays the [DocuWorks Security - Full Access Password] screen.

If you set the password, users will be required to enter the password when attempting to change permissions assigned under [Restricted Operations].

Enter the password using up to 32 characters.

5.9 [Scan to PC] Screen

This section describes how to select functions on the [Scan to PC] screen. These functions allows you to store scanned data on a network-connected computer (server).



Refer

- To use the Scan to PC feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.2 Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature" (p.316).
- The destination server (PC Save Address) must be registered before running a scan job. For information on how to register a server, refer to "9.1.3 Server (PC Save Address)" (p.308).

1. On the menu screen, press [Scan to PC].
2. Specify the save destination for the scanned file.

5

Server Save Destination (Specifying the Save Destination PC)

- (1) Press [Server Save Destination].

- (2) Select the save destination number.



Note

- Only registered numbers can be selected.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific save destination server at the top, enter that number in [Go to].

- (3) Press [Save].

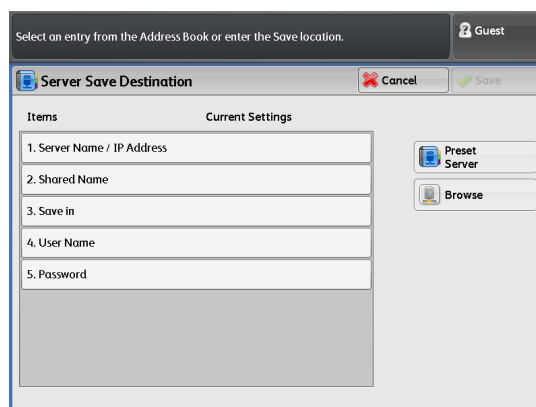


Note

- The machine checks the connection with the destination.
- If the machine fails to establish a connection with the destination, an error message is displayed. In that case, press [Confirm], and verify the settings.

Browse (Browsing Network PCs and Folders to Specify Save Destination)

(1) Press [Browse].



(2) Select a destination to save.

You can change the hierarchy by pressing [Previous] and [Next].

Save in

You can check where you are on the hierarchy.

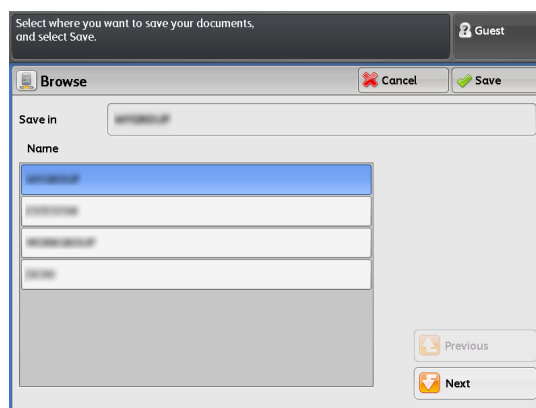
Previous

Moves one step higher than the current hierarchy.



Note

- This button cannot be selected if there is no hierarchy above it.



Next

Moves one step lower than the current hierarchy.



Note

- This button is enabled when a folder is selected.

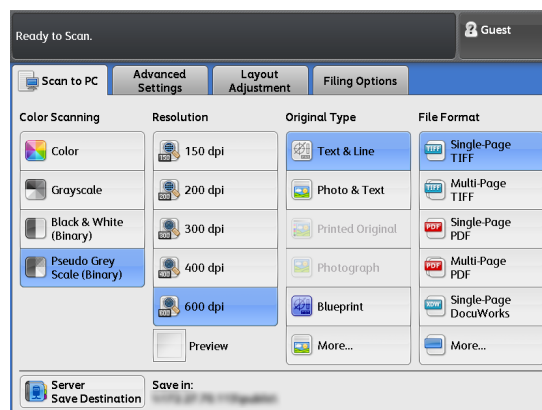
(3) Press [Save].

3. Select the desired function on the [Scan to PC] screen.



Note

- The following functions are equivalent to those displayed on the [Store to Folder] screen. For information on how to do this, refer to "5.8 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.235).
 - Color Scanning Mode
 - Resolution
 - Original Type
 - Output File Format
- To specify the save destination again, press [Save Destination].



5.10 [Multi Send Scan] Screen

This section describes how to select functions on the [Multi Send Scan] screen. Use this feature to store scanned data on computers (servers) registered as a group address, and print them on a printer.



Note

- When you select a printer as part of the destinations, TIFF or JPEG files will be transferred to the printer, regardless of the file format specified under [File Format]. For information on how to select TIFF or JPEG as the file format to be used, refer to "Multi Send Printer Transfer Format"(p.435).



Refer

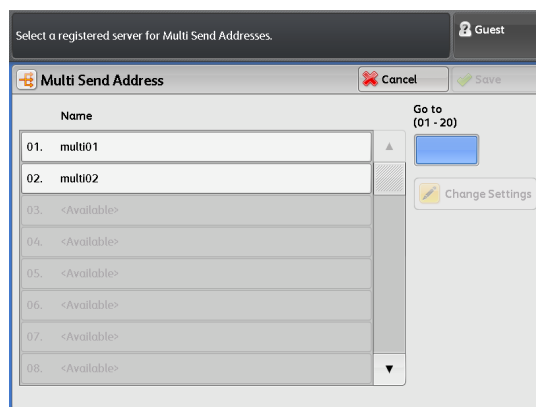
- To use the Multi Send Scan feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.2 Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature" (p.316).
- The destination group address must be registered before running a scan job. For information on how to register a group address, refer to "9.1.5 Multi Send Address (Group Address)" (p.312).

- On the menu screen, press [Multi Send Address].
- Select a group as the multiple destination address, and press [Change Settings].



Note

- Only the numbers that are registered can be selected.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific group at the top, enter that number in [Go to].



- Select an option.

Send Address

The list of destination addresses in the group is displayed, where you can select one or more addresses to exclude them temporarily from the destination.



Note

- The destination can include up to two servers, five printers, and one local printer (this machine).



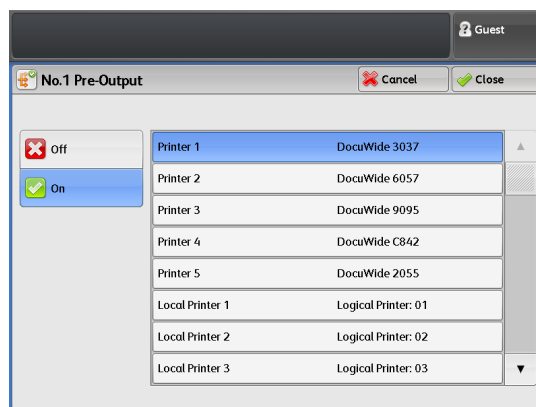
No.1 Pre-Output

If you have selected printers as part of the send destination, and when you scan multiple originals, this function allows you to set whether to print scanned images one page after another.



- This function is enabled only for the first set. The second and subsequent sets will be printed after you press [Last Original].

- Off
Select this not to run a pre-output.
- On
Select this to run a pre-output. You can select one printer as the destination for the pre-output.



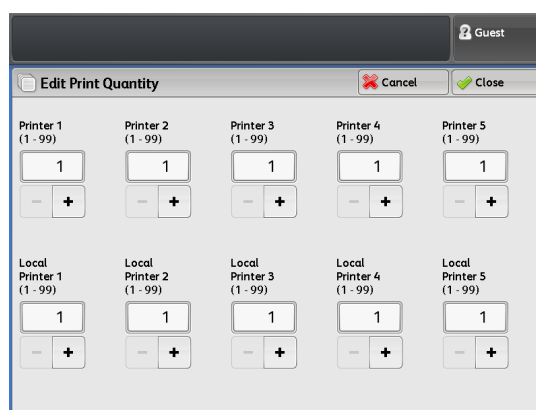
Edit Print Quantity

If you have selected printers as part of the send destination, you can specify the number of copies to be printed for individual printers.

To change the number of copies, press the entry field, and then set the value by using the numeric keypad or by pressing [+] or [-] until the desired value is displayed.



- You can specify up to 99 for the number of copies.



4. Press [Close].

5. Press [Save].

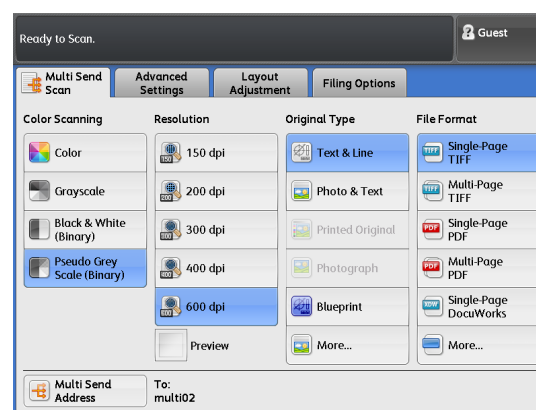


- The machine checks the connection with the destination.
- If the machine fails to establish a connection with the destination, an error message is displayed. In that case, press [Confirm], and verify the settings.

6. Select the desired function on the [Multi Send Scan] screen.



- The following functions are equivalent to those displayed on the [Store to Folder] screen. For information on how to do this, refer to "5.8 [Store to Folder] Screen" (p.235).
 - Color Scanning Mode
 - Resolution
 - Original Type
 - Output File Format
- To specify the multi send address again, press [Multi Send Address].

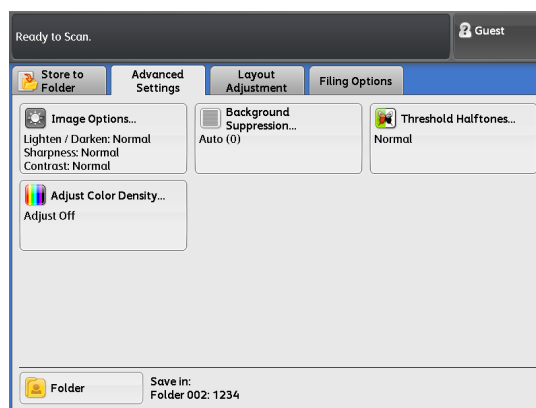


5.11 Scan - [Advanced Settings] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Image Quality] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Image Options p.250
- Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output) p.251
- Threshold Halftones (Classifying Halftones on the Original) p.252
- Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors) p.252

1. On the menu screen, press [Stored Store to Folder Program], [Stored Scan to PC Program], or [Stored Multi Send Scan Program], and specify a save destination or recipient.
2. Select the desired function on the [Image Quality] screen.



5.11.1 Image Options

The following describes how to adjust the scan density, and sharpness and contrast of images, when running a original.

1. Press [Image Options].
2. Make adjustments for the desired items.

Lighten / Darken

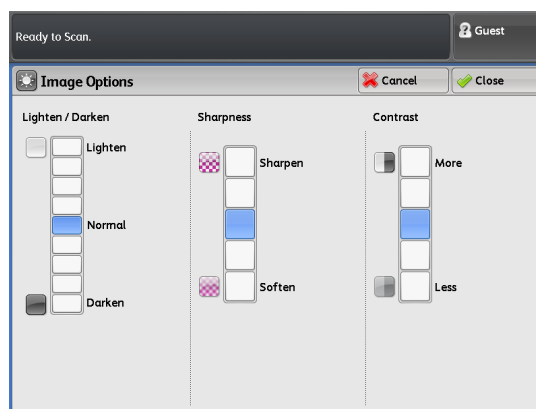
Select from nine scan density levels between [Lighten] and [Darken].

The closer to [Darken], the darker the scan color becomes, and the closer to [Lighten], the lighter the scan color becomes.

Sharpness

Select from five sharpness levels between [Sharpen] and [Soften].

The closer to [Sharpen], the more the contour of the image is emphasized. The closer to [Soften] the more the contour of the image is blurred.



Contrast

Select from five contrast levels between [More] and [Less].

The closer to [More], the brighter light parts and the darker the darker parts become, and the difference in light and dark becomes wider.

The closer to [Less], the narrower the difference between lighter and darker parts becomes.

5.11.2 Background Suppression (Preventing Background Colors from Appearing on the Copied Output)

The following describes how to prevent the background colors of originals such as blue prints from appearing on the scanned output.



Note

- When [Original Type] is set to [Printed Original] or [Photograph], [On (Auto)] cannot be selected.

1. Press [Background Suppression].
2. Select from [Off], [On (Auto)], and [On (Manual)].

Off

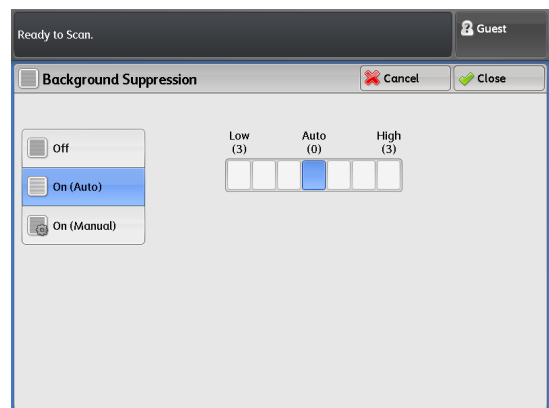
Select this to scan the original as is, without applying any adjustments to the background colors.

On (Auto)

Select this to allow the machine to automatically suppress the background colors.

There are seven levels available between [Low] and [High].

To increase the effect of background suppression (lighten the background color on the copied output), select a level closer to [High]. To decrease effects (reproduce the background color as is), select a level closer to [Low].



Note

- If you select [On (Auto)] and part of the image is lost or unwanted background colors remain on the copied output, consider selecting [On (Manual)] to make adjustments manually or to make adjustments under [Lighten / Darken].

On (Manual)

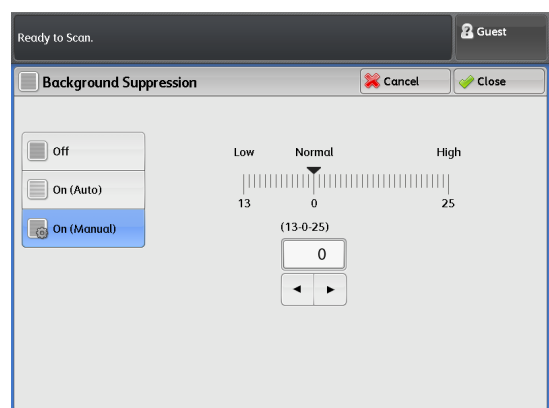
Select this to apply the specified level of suppression to the entire area of the original.

There are 39 levels available between [Low] and [High].



Note

- For the following original types, select [Off], or select [On (Manual)] to make adjustments manually.
 - Photographs/Posters/Color originals
 - Originals with intricate texture
 - Originals with parts where image coverage is high compared to the density of the background colors.



5.11.3 Threshold Halftones (Classifying Halftones on the Original)

Use these steps to select whether to reproduce halftones on the original by using pseudo-halftoning or by classifying halftones via binarization.

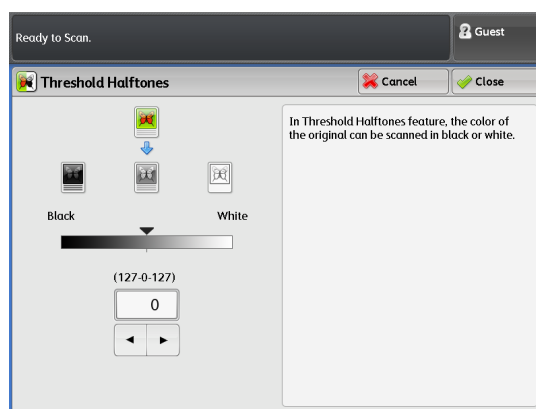
In general, halftones on originals are reproduced by using pseudo-halftoning method. You can select [On] under [Threshold Halftones] to choose classifying halftones via binarization.



Note

- When [Output Color] is [Black & White (Binary)] or [Red-Black (Binary)], [Threshold Halftones] becomes available to set.

1. Press [Threshold Halftones].
2. Set the threshold for assigning Black or White.



5.11.4 Adjust Color Density (Adjusting Density Level for Individual Colors)

The following describes how to adjust density level of a color in order to enhance or suppress the color.



Note

- To use this feature, the optional Color Scan Memory KIT is necessary.

1. Press [Adjust Color Density].
2. Make adjustments for density level of individual colors.

Adjust

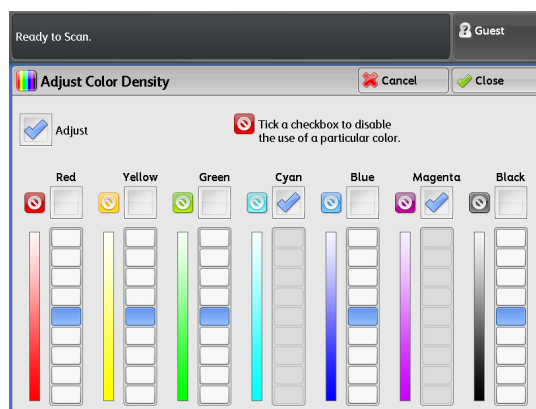
Select this check box to adjust the density level of individual colors.

There are nine levels of density available for each of the following colors: red, yellow, green, cyan, blue, magenta, and black.



(Disabling color)

Select the check box for a color to be eliminated from the copied output.





Note

- When Adjust Color Density is performed, selectable scan speed differs depending on resolution.

Scan speed	Resolution	150 dpi	200 dpi	300 dpi	400 dpi	600 dpi
[Medium] (67.6 mm/sec)		Yes	Yes	Yes	—	—
[Super Slow] (33.8 mm/sec)		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

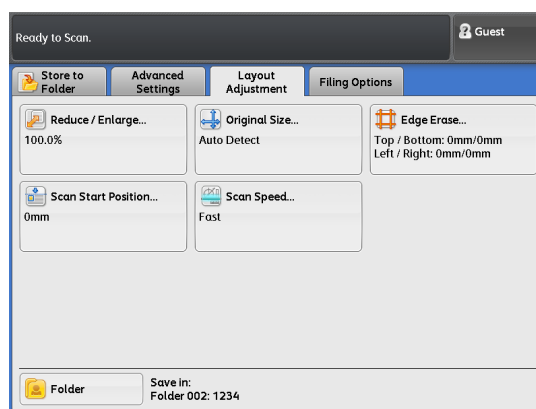
Yes: available —: unavailable

5.12 Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Layout Adjustment] screen. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Reduce / Enlarge (Specifying the Scanning Magnification).....p.254
- Original Size (Specifying the Area Size to be Scanned)p.255
- Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original)p.257
- Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning)p.258
- Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)p.258

1. On the menu screen, press [Stored Store to Folder Program], [Stored Scan to PC Program], or [Stored Multi Send Scan Program], and specify a save destination or recipient.
2. Select the desired function on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.



5.12.1 Reduce / Enlarge (Specifying the Scanning Magnification)

The following describes how to scan and enlarge/reduce originals by specifying the desired magnification.



Note

- The maximum available ratio in order to successfully scan the entire original is:

$$(((\text{Original width (mm)} / 25.4) \times \text{resolution value}) \times (\text{magnification ratio} / 100)) \leq 21600 \text{ (914.4 mm width)"}.$$
 For example, when the original size is A0 and the scan resolution is 600 dpi, if you specify 141.4 % or more as the magnification, part of the scanned image is lost. Any area of the scanned image exceeding the upper limit will be lost.
 The lowest possible magnification ratio is " $\text{resolution value} \times (\text{magnification} / 100) \geq 150 \text{ (%)}$ ".
 For example, when the original size is A0 and the scan resolution is 150 dpi, you cannot specify 70 % or less (A1 or smaller) as the magnification.
 If you specify a magnification lower than the minimum possible value, an error message is displayed. In that case, change your setting.

1. Press [Reduce / Enlarge].

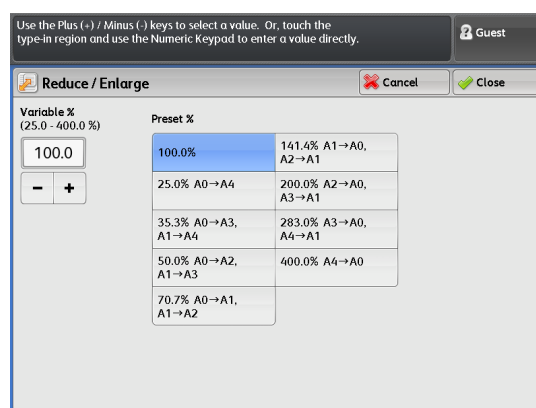
2. Select the desired option.

Variable %

Enter a numeric value to specify the magnification. The magnification can be set in the range of 25.0 to 400.0 % in 0.1 % increments. Set to 100 % to scan at the same size as the original.

Preset %

Allows you to select from preset ratios.



5.12.2 Original Size (Specifying the Area Size to be Scanned)

The following describes how to specify the size of the area to be scanned.

If you want to scan an original at a different size from that of the loaded original, use this procedure to specify the original size. You can also add margins, or delete unnecessary margins using this feature.

1. Press [Original Size].
2. Select the desired option.

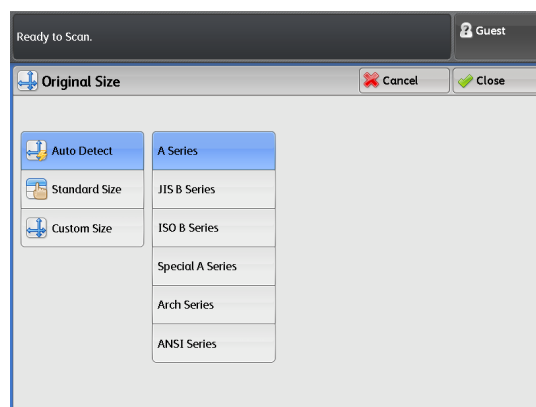
Auto Detect

Select this to allow the machine to automatically detect the original size. Select the size series to detect.



Note

- The sizes of special A series used on the machine can be adjusted using the System Settings function. For information on how to do this, refer to "Special Size Setting" (p.408).



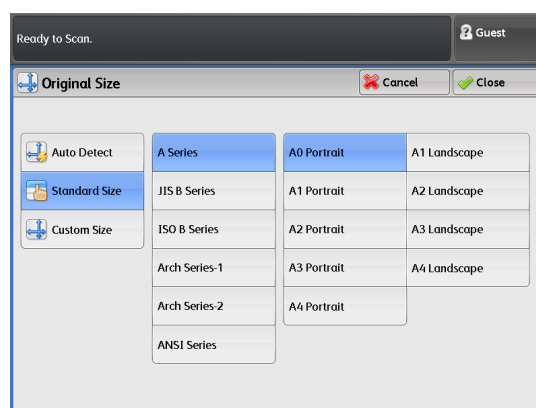
Standard Size

Select either among standard sizes.



Important

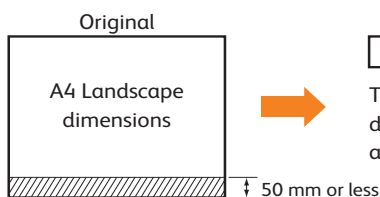
- When PDF or DocuWorks is selected in [File Format], your setting for the original size may be changed or an error may occur, depending on the combination of the ratio and resolution. For detailed information, refer to "13.3.3 Notes and Restrictions on the Scan Feature" (p.471) in "Notes and Restrictions".



When [Auto Detect] or one of the preset standard sizes is selected, and if you load an original of which length is wider than that of the standard size, the machine handles the original as shown in the figure below.

- When the length of original is equal to or less than "the length of the short edge of a Standard Landscape size + 50 mm"

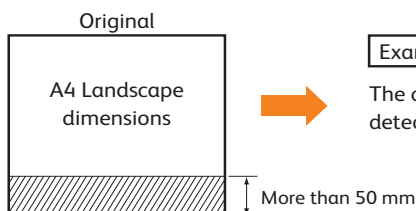
The original is detected as "Standard Landscape" and the excess area is ignored.



Example

The original shown in the figure to the left is detected as "A4 Landscape" and the excess area (shaded area) is ignored.

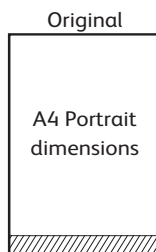
- When the length of original is more than "the length of the short edge of a Standard Landscape size + 50 mm"
- The original is detected as "Standard Portrait" of one size larger than the original.



Example

The original shown in the figure to the left is detected as "A3 Portrait".

- When the length of original is more than the length of the long edge of a Standard Portrait size
- The original is detected as "Standard Portrait" and the excess area is ignored.

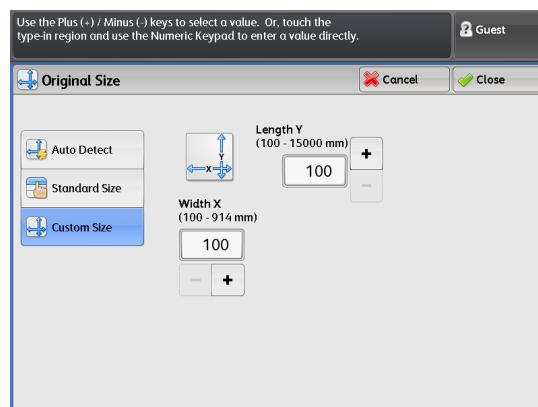


Example

The original shown in the figure to the left is detected as "A4 Portrait" and the excess area (shaded area) is ignored.

Custom Size

If you want to scan an original at a different size from that of the loaded original, specify the area size to scan. You can specify the width in the range of 100 to 914 mm and the length from 100 to 15,000 mm, in 1 mm increments.



5.12.3 Edge Erase (Erasing Edges and Margin Shadows of the Original)

When you scan an original with borders, the edges of the original may appear on the scanned image as black shadows. This setting can erase such shadows when scanning.



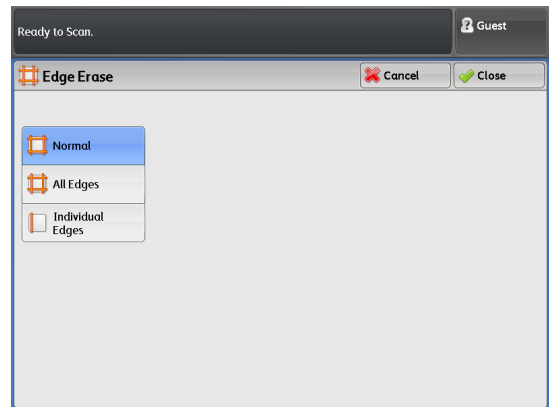
Note

- When [Reduce/ Enlarge] is set, the edge erase amount is also increased/decreased according to the ratio.

1. Press [Edge Erase].
2. Select the desired option.

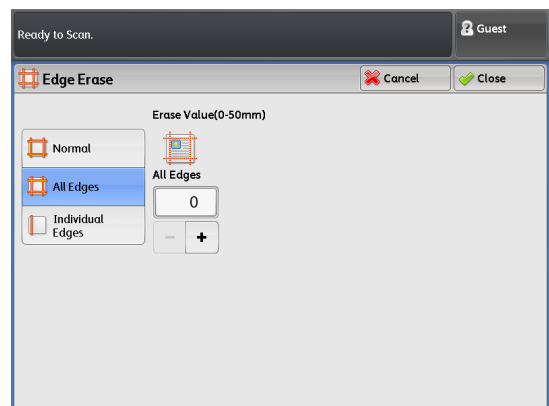
Normal

Select this to set the edge erase amount to 0 mm for the left, right, top, and bottom edges.



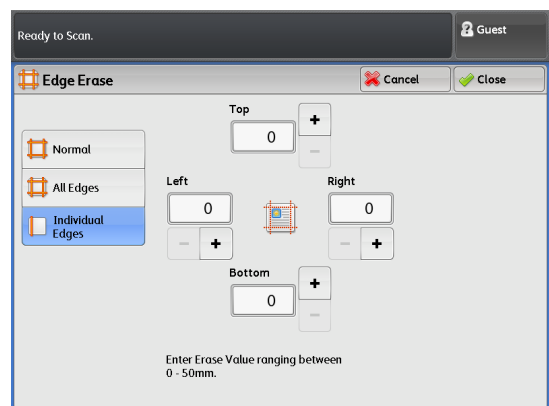
All Edges

Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges of the original. The edge erase amount can be specified in the range of 0 to 50 mm, in 1 mm increments.



Individual Edges

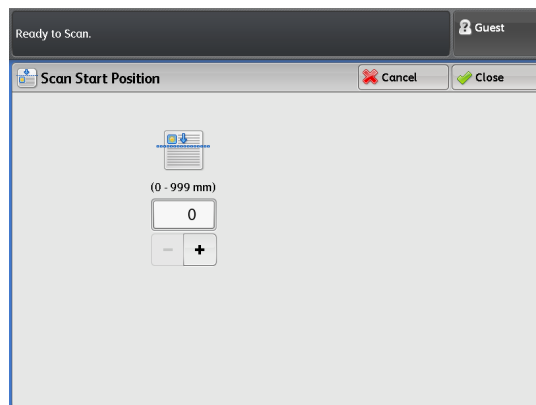
Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges of the original. Select this to erase shadows at the left, right, top, and bottom edges individually. The edge erase amount can be specified in the range of 0 to 50 mm, in 1 mm increments.



5.12.4 Scan Start Position (Specifying Where to Start Scanning)

The following describes how to set the position where the machine starts scanning originals.

1. Press [Scan Start Position].
2. Set the start position from the leading edge of the original, in the range of up to 999 mm, in 1 mm increments.



5.12.5 Scan Speed (Specifying Scanning Speed)

The following describes how to set slower scanning speed for additional reliability.

1. Press [Scan Speed].
2. Select the desired option.

When [Output Color] is set to [Color]

Select from among the following options: [Fast], [Slow] and [Super Slow].

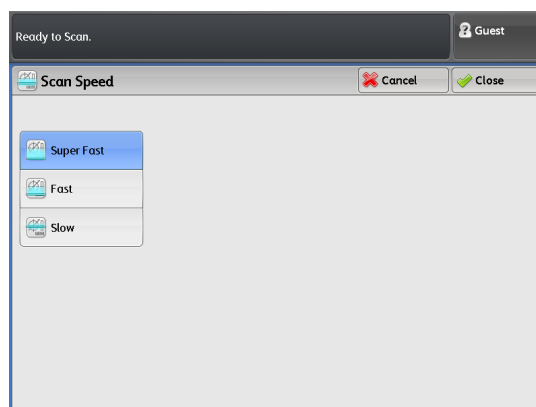
When [Output Color] is set to other than [Color]

Select from among the following options: [Fast], [Medium] and [Super Slow].



Note

- The selectable speeds vary depending on the selected color mode and scan resolution.

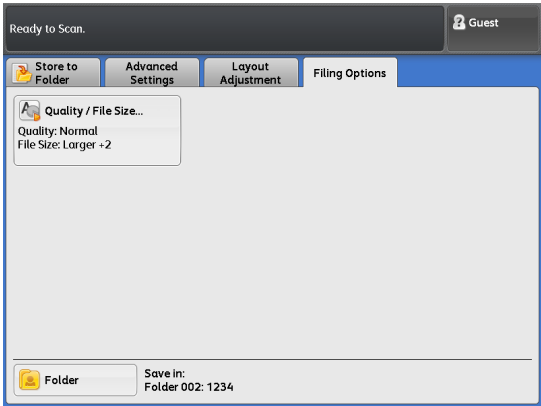


5.13 Scan - [Filing Options] Screen

This section describes functions that can be set on the [Filing Options] screen. Refer to the following subsection:

- Quality / File Size (Specifying Image Compression Ratio Used When Scanning Originals)p.259

1. On the menu screen, press [Store to Folder], [Scan to PC], or [Multi Send Scan] to specify the save destination or recipient.
2. Select the desired function on the [Filing Options] screen.



5.13.1 Quality / File Size (Specifying Image Compression Ratio Used When Scanning Originals)

The following describes how to select the image compression ratio when [Output Color] is set to [Color] or [Gray-scale].

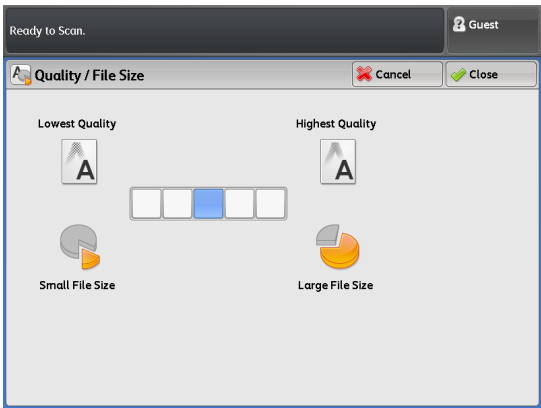
1. Press [Quality / File Size].
2. Select the desired option button.

Lowest Quality

Select this to save scanned images with high compression ratio. Image quality degrades, but the file size decreases.

Highest Quality

Select this to save scanned images with low compression ratio. Image quality improves, but the file size increases too.



Chapter 6 Scan and Copy Service (DocuWide 6057)

This chapter describes the basic procedure of the Scan and Copy service.



Note

- The Scan and Copy feature is an optional.
- This function is available only on the DocuWide 6057.

6.1	Scan and Copy Procedure	262
-----	-------------------------------	-----

6.1 Scan and Copy Procedure

Use the optional DW-Scan VI Service, and then you can copy documents and simultaneously save them as scan data.

The procedure of the Scan and Copy service is described below.



Note

- To use DW-Scan VI Service, install DW-Scan VI Service on your computer.



Refer

- For information on how to install and operate DW-Scan VI Service, and notes and restrictions, refer to the manual provided with DW-Scan VI Service.

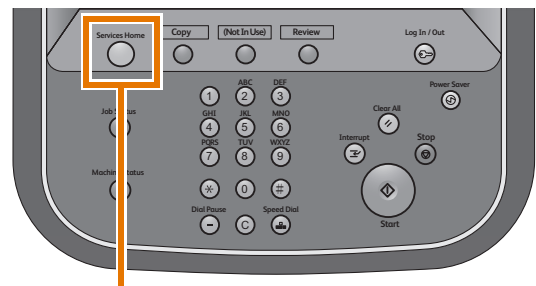
1. Connect the computer installed with DW-Scan VI Service and the machine using a USB cable.



Important

- Use the recommended USB cable (Product code: EB100282).
- Using a USB cable not recommend, you may not able to experience the expected quality or performance of the machine.

2. Press the <Service Home> button.



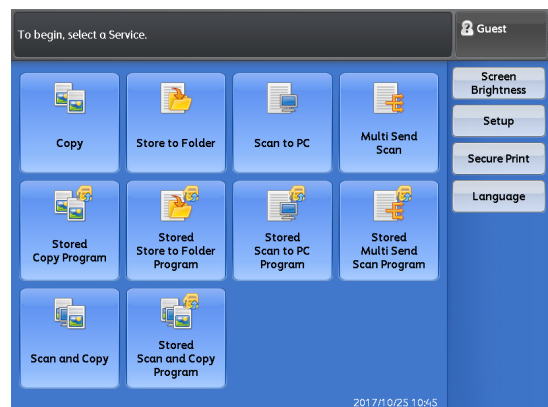
<Services Home> button

3. Press [Scan and Copy].



Important

- [Scan and Copy] is not displayed by the factory default. To display it, set it with the System Settings function. For information on how to set the function, refer to "Services Home"(p.401).
- [Scan and Copy] cannot be used in the following cases.
 - In [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Authentication / Security Settings] > [Authentication], [Login Type] is set to [Login to Local Accounts] or [Login to Remote Accounts].
 - An IC card reader is connected to the machine.



4. Select the copy functions to set on each tab as necessary.



Note

- Scan images and copy output results may not match.
- The automatic reset function is disabled.
- The following functions cannot be used with Scan and Copy.
 - Copy Output (Program Sort)
 - Multi-job Copy
 - Copy from Memory
 - Sample Copy



Refer

- For information on each item setting, refer to "Chapter 2 Copy (DocuWide 6057)" (p.77).

5. Start DW - Scan VI Service.

6. Set the scanning mode of DW - Scan VI Service, and press the [#Start Scanning#] button.

7. Load the original.

The Scan and Copy service will start.



Refer

- "2.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.80)

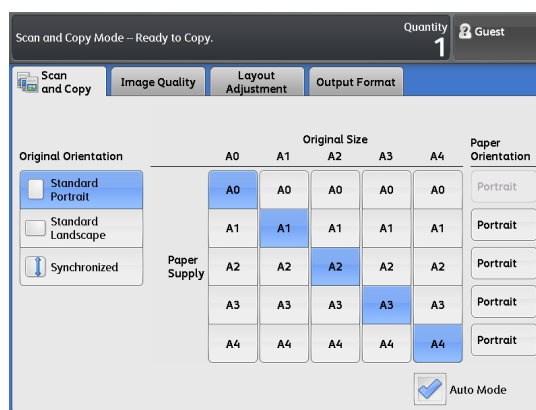
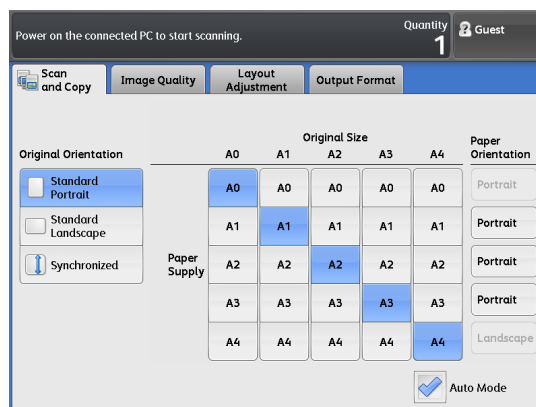
8. To exit the Scan and Copy service, press the [#Stop Scanning#] button on "DW - Scan VI Service".

You will return to the menu screen.



Important

- To use other functions, exit the Scan and Copy mode.



Chapter 7 Stored Programming

This chapter describes the Stored Programming feature that enables you to store customized settings.

7.1	Stored Programming Overview	266
7.2	Registering/Deleting/Changing a Stored Program	267
7.3	Calling up a Stored Program	271

7.1 Stored Programming Overview

The Stored Programming feature allows you to store job settings for copy and scan that you expect to use frequently and call them up with a single button operation.

Following two types of programs are available: Copy Program and Stored Multi-Job Program

Copy Program

Stored Copy Program, Stored Store to Folder Program, Stored Scan to PC Program, Stored Multi Send Scan Program, and Stored Scan and Copy Program are available.

Up to the following number of programs can be registered.

- Stored Copy Programs 40
- Stored Store to Folder Programs 40
- Stored Scan to PC Programs 40
- Stored Multi Send Scan Programs 40
- Stored Scan and Copy Programs 40

With Stored Copy Program, you can store settings on the Copy feature tabs on a function basis as well as the number of copies.

With Stored Store to Folder Program, Stored Scan to PC Program, and Stored Multi Send Scan Program, you can store settings on the Scan feature tabs on a function basis.

With Stored Scan and Copy Program, you can store settings on the Scan and Copy feature tabs on a function basis. Stored Scan and Copy Program, the functions in the tabs associated with Scanner and Copy can be registered.

 **Note** • Stored Scan and Copy Program can be displayed or registered only on the DocuWide 6057.

Stored Multi-Job Program

When making multiple copies, you can sort and print your copy jobs by applying a program to individual virtual distribution destinations. This function is referred to as "multi-job".

Stored Multi-Job Program is for copy only. Up to 20 programs can be registered.

[Quantity], [Reduce / Enlarge], [Paper Supply], [Image Rotation], [Output Destination], and [Stamp] can be registered.

 **Note** • Stored Multi-Job Program can be displayed and registered only on the DocuWide 6057.

Refer to these subsections for more information on Stored Programming.

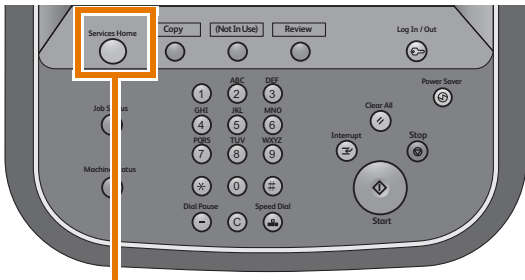
- Registering/Deleting/Changing a Stored Programp.267
- Calling up a Stored Programp.271

7.2 Registering/Deleting/Changing a Stored Program

7.2.1 Registering a Stored Program

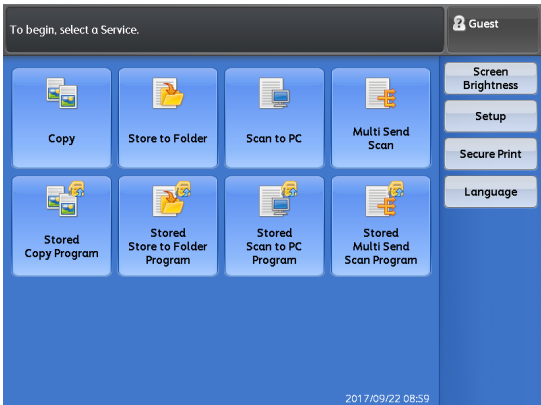
The following describes how to register job settings as a stored program. An example of how to register a scan job setting as a Stored Store to Folder Program is given below.

1. Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel.
The menu screen is displayed.

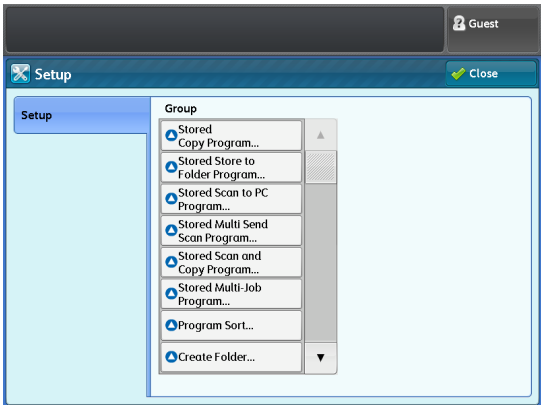


<Services Home> button

2. On the menu screen, press [Setup].



3. Press [Stored Store to Folder Program].



4. Select a number to register a stored program.



Note

- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific stored program number at the top, enter that number in [Go to].

5. Press [Register].

6. Select a folder.

7. Enter the password, and press [Confirm].

8. Press [Save].

9. Select a function to register to the stored program.



Note

- To cancel the registration, press the <Stop> button on the control panel.

10. Press the <Start> button.



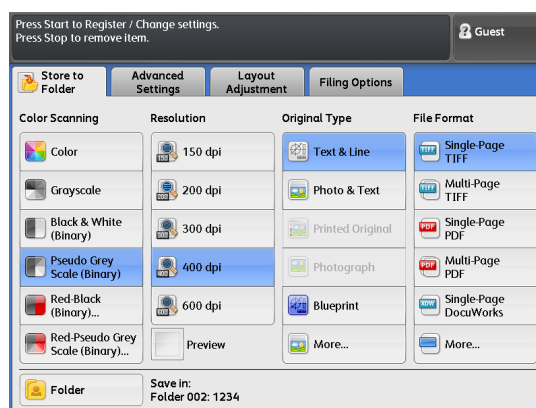
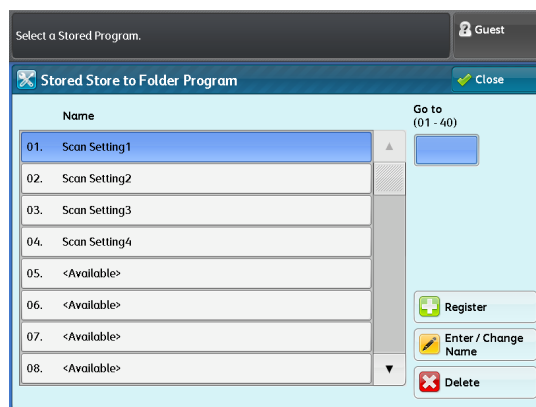
Note

- If no name is specified, the program is displayed as "(No Name)".



Refer

- For information on how to name the stored program you have registered, refer to "7.2.3 Registering/Changing the Name for a Stored Program" (p.269).



7.2.2 Deleting a Stored Program

The following describes how to delete a registered stored program.

1. Select a number to delete the stored program.
 -  **Note**
 - Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
 - If you want to display a specific stored program number at the top, enter that number in [Go to].

2. Press [Delete].

3. Select [Delete].

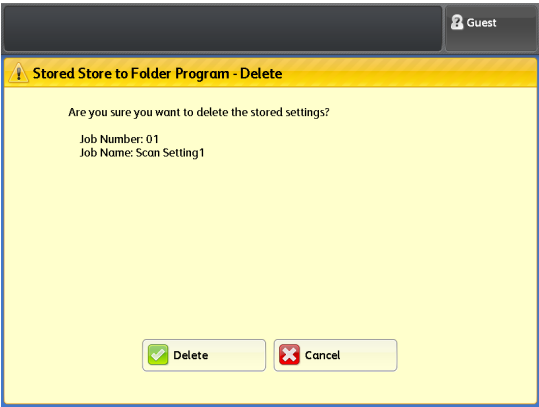
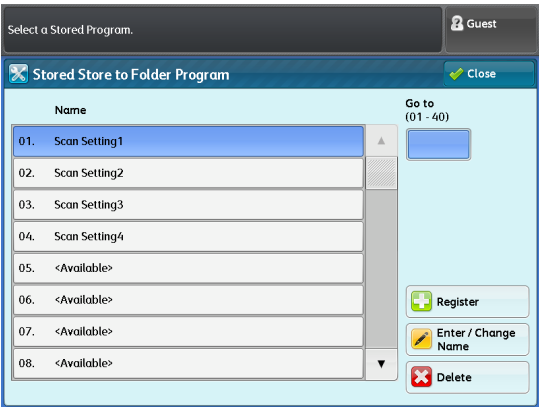
Delete

Select this to delete the stored memory.

-  **Note**
 - The stored memory cannot be restored once deleted.

Cancel

Select this to cancel deleting the stored memory.



7.2.3 Registering/Changing the Name for a Stored Program

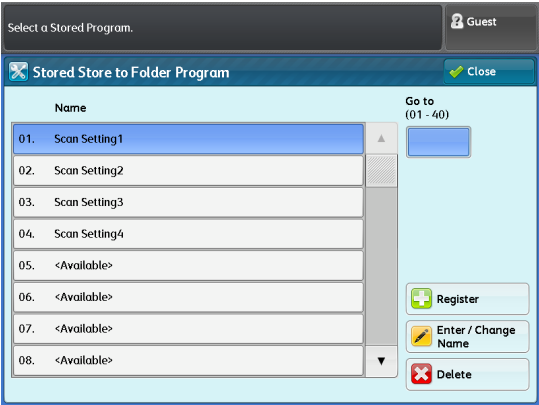
The following describes how to name/rename a registered stored memory. You can specify up to 20 characters for the name of a stored memory.

-  **Refer**
 - For information on how to enter characters, refer to "1.6 Text Entry" (p.38).

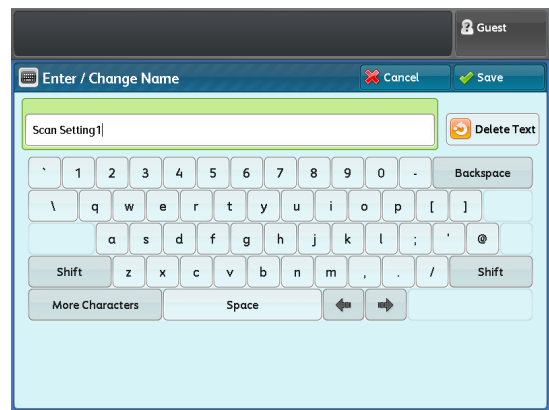
1. Select the number of the stored program you want to name or rename.

-  **Note**
 - Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.

2. Press [Enter/Change Name].



3. Enter the name and press [Save].



7.3 Calling up a Stored Program

The following describes how to select a registered stored program.



Note

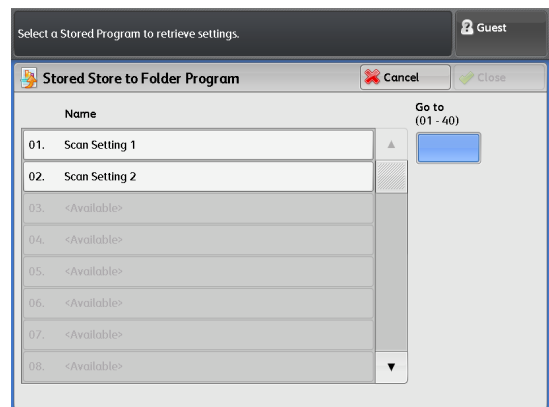
- Stored Multi-Job Program can be called from [Multi-job] in the [Copy - Output Format] screen.

1. Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel.
The menu screen is displayed.
2. On the menu screen, press [Stored Copy Program], [Stored Store to Folder Program], [Stored Store to PC Program], [Stored Multi Send Scan Program], or [Stored Scan and Copy Program].
3. Select the number of the stored program containing the settings you want to call up.



Note

- Only the numbers that are registered can be selected.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific stored program number at the top, enter that number in [Go to].



4. After the stored program is called up from memory, set other features as necessary.



Note

- When the stored program has been called up, the number of the stored program is displayed for seven seconds on the message area.

5. Load your originals and run the copy, scan, or copy and scan job.

Chapter 8 Computer Operations

This chapter covers computer operations, such as how to use CentreWare Internet Services, how to print, how to import scanned data, and how to use the Direct Scan feature.



Note

- The information on various drivers and utility software in this guide may not apply to your drivers and utility software depending on their version upgrade.

8.1	Features Overview	274
8.2	CentreWare Internet Services	275
8.3	Printing	280
8.4	Confidential Print	284
8.5	Importing Scanned Data	293
8.6	Direct Scan (DocuWide 6057)	301

8.1 Features Overview

This section describes an overview of features you can perform from a computer.

CentreWare Internet Services

By using CentreWare Internet Services, you can view status of the machine and your jobs, and change the settings of the machine, from your computer. It also allows you to import documents stored in the machine's folder into your computer.



Refer

- For information on how to do this, refer to "8.2 CentreWare Internet Services" (p.275).
- For information on how to import scanned data stored in the machine's folder, refer to "8.5.3 Importing Using CentreWare Internet Services" (p.299).

Print Job

You can submit print jobs from your computer to the machine.



Refer

- For information on how to do this, refer to "8.3 Printing" (p.280).

Importing Scanned Data

You can import the documents stored in the machine's folder into your computer.



Refer

- For information on how to do this, refer to "8.5 Importing Scanned Data" (p.293).

Direct Scan (DocuWide 6057)

Use the optional DW - Scan VI Service, and you can download scan data directly to a computer connected via USB to the machine.



Note

- This function is available only on the DocuWide6057.



Refer

- For information on how to do this, refer to "8.6 Direct Scan (DocuWide 6057)" (p.301).

8.2 CentreWare Internet Services

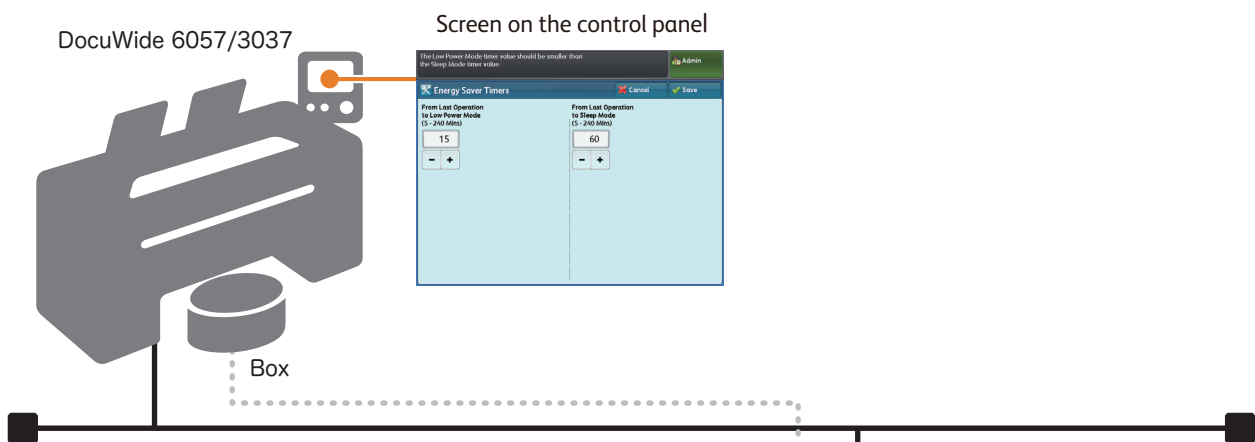
8.2.1 What is CentreWare Internet Services?

CentreWare Internet Services is a software application that enables you to remotely access the machine from your computer via a web browser, when TCP/IP connection is available.

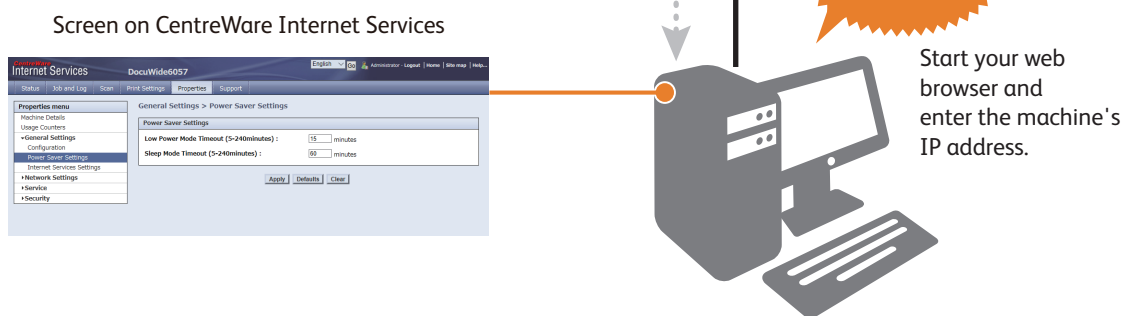
With CentreWare Internet Services, you can track the usage of the machine and change the setting values for the machine features, without going to the machine's control panel.

It also allows you to import documents stored in the machine's folder into your computer.

- When operating with the control panel



- When operating with CentreWare Internet Services



8.2.2 Setting Up for Using CentreWare Internet Services

Requirements

Your computer must support TCP/IP networking to use CentreWare Internet Services.

CentreWare Internet Services has been tested successfully with the following web browsers:

- Microsoft Edge®

- Microsoft® Internet Explorer® 10
- Microsoft® Internet Explorer® 11
- Google Chrome™ 56
- Firefox® 53



- If you encounter problems during setup, refer to "11.8 Problems with CentreWare Internet Services" (p.367).

Setting up your Web browser

Before using the service, make sure that Internet Options in your Web browser are set properly.

The following describes how to set up Microsoft Edge.

1. Display Windows Control Panel, click [Network and Internet] > [Internet Options].
The [Internet Properties] screen is displayed.
2. On the [General] tab, click [Settings] in [Browsing history].
The [Website Data Settings] screen is displayed.
3. On the [Temporary Internet Files] tab, set [Check for newer versions of stored pages:] to either [Every time I visit the webpage] or [Every time I start Internet Explorer].
4. Click [OK].

8

Proxy server and port number

The following describes the proxy server settings and the port number required for this service.

● Proxy server

We recommend that you access this service directly, not through a proxy server.



- If using a proxy server, specifying the machine's IP address in the browser may result in slower responses, preventing some screens from being displayed. In this case, set your browser not to access the machine's IP address via a proxy server. For information on how to make this setting, refer to the documentation provided with your browser.

● Port number

By default, the port number for the service is set to "80". The port number can be changed in [Properties] > [Protocol Settings] > [HTTP]. Port Number must be in the range of 1 to 65535.

If you have changed the default port number, in the address bar of your Web browser, enter the IP address or the Internet address followed by a colon ":" and the assigned port number.

For example, if you have changed the port number to "8080", enter the address as shown below.

http://[the machine's IP address]:8080/

or

http://[the machine's Internet address]:8080



- If you have enabled encrypted communication, you need to enter the address beginning "https" instead of "http" in the browser address field in order to access CentreWare Internet Services.

Setting on the machine

Set the IP address for the machine, which will be used to access CentreWare Internet Services in it.



Note

- You can skip this step when the machine is already assigned an IP address.



Refer

- For information on how to assign an IP address to the machine, refer to "9.2 Setting the IP Address" (p.315).

8.2.3 Starting CentreWare Internet Services

The following describes how to connect to CentreWare Internet Services from your computer.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Enter the machine's IP address or Internet address in the browser address field, and press the <Enter> key.
 - IP address entry example
Example - `http://192.168.0.101`
 - Internet address entry example (When the machine's Internet address is `myhost.example.com`)
Example - `http://myhost.example.com`



Note

- If your network uses DNS (Domain Name System) and the machine's host name is registered in the domain name server, you can access the machine using the Internet address which consists of the host name and the domain name. For example, if the host name is "myhost", and the domain name is "example.com", then the Internet address is "myhost.example.com".
- Ask your system administrator for the IP address or Internet address.
- When specifying a port number, enter the IP address or the Internet address followed by a colon ":" and the assigned port number.
- If you have enabled encrypted communication by selecting the [Enabled] check box under [Security] > [SSL / TLS Settings] > [HTTP - SSL / TLS Communication] on the [Properties] tab, you need to enter the address beginning "https" instead of "http" in the browser address field in order to access CentreWare Internet Services.
IP address entry example
Example - `https://192.168.1.1/`
Internet address entry example
Example - `https://myhost.example.com/`
- If authentication while attempting to log in as system administrator fails, the following message is displayed in the right frame of web browser:
"Login failed."
- If the number of times of failed attempts to log in as system administrator exceeds the limit allowed, the following message is displayed in the right frame of web browser:
"Switch the machine Off and then On for System Administrator login."



Refer

- If you encounter problems during setup, refer to "11.8 Problems with CentreWare Internet Services" (p.367).

8.2.4 CentreWare Internet Services Screen Components

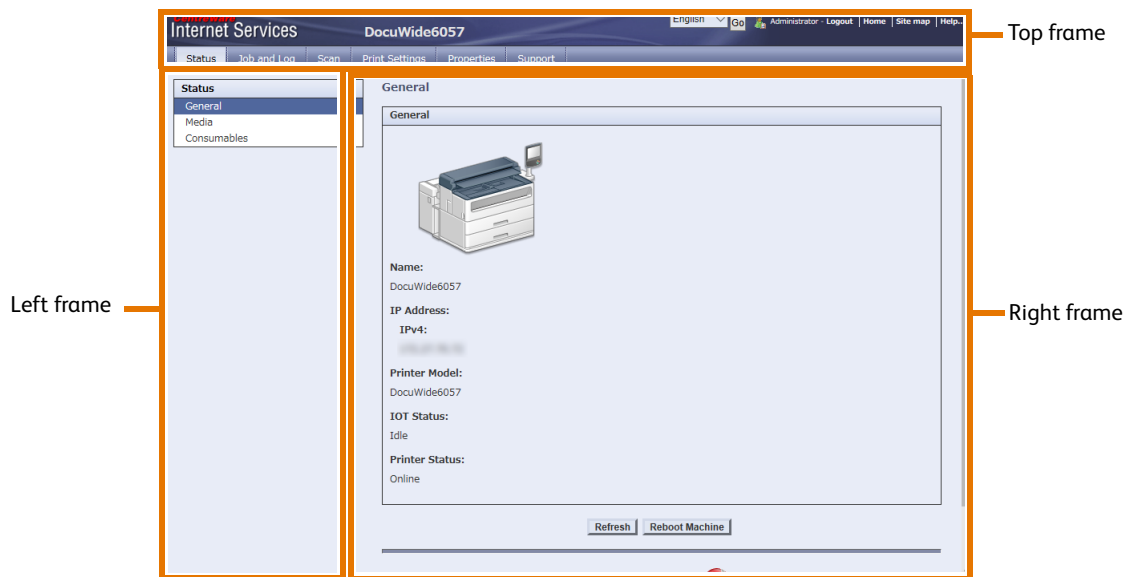
The CentreWare Internet Services screen consists of three frames (separate screens).

The information displayed in each frame depends on the feature selected: [Status], [Job and Log], [Scan], [Print Settings], [Properties], or [Support].



Note

- Clicking [Help] in the top frame displays the CentreWare Internet Services help which gives you an explanation of the service.



● Top frame

The top frame is located at the upper part of the window. This frame contains the logo, model name, the Help link, user information, and tabs to access each of the functions of the service.



Refer

- For information on each function provided by CentreWare Internet Services, refer to the Help section which can be displayed by clicking [Help] in this frame.

● Left frame

The contents in the left frame vary depending on the function you selected. When you select a function, the left frame displays items and information available for that function.

● Right frame

The right frame displays information and status of the machine and the [Refresh] button. Click [Refresh] to update the display to the current status.

The table below lists the main functions you can perform using CentreWare Internet Services.

Tab Name	Main Function
Status	Displaying the machine status The status of paper trays and consumables such as toner cartridges is displayed.
Job and Log	Displaying jobs in queue, deleting those jobs, displaying completed jobs, and displaying error history
Print Settings	Setting logical printers

Tab Name	Main Function
Scan	Folder operation You can register and set folders. You can import the documents stored in the machine's folder into your computer.
Properties	Checking and changing a variety of settings You can check the settings for items such as Machine configuration, Interface, and Emulation settings, and change those as necessary.
Support	Displaying support information



Note

- For information on each of the configurable items in CentreWare Internet Services, refer to the Help section which can be displayed by clicking [Help] in the upper right of the CentreWare Internet Services screen.
- If you make changes via CentreWare Internet Services while the machine control panel is in use, the changes you have made will not immediately take effect on the control panel. In such a case, the changes you have made will be available when the machine is turned off and then on again.
- Some of the settings may require you to enter a user identification code and password to change them. The code is User ID of the System Administrator, which is set on the machine. By factory default, the User ID is "11111", and the password is "x-admin".
For information on how to change the User ID and password of the System Administrator, refer to "12.10.1 System Administrator Settings" (p.445).

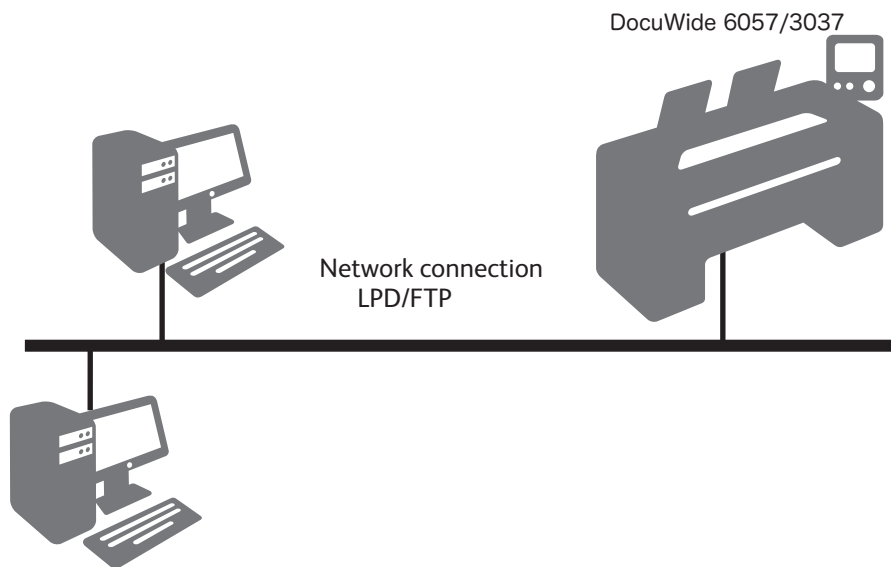
8.3 Printing

This section describes how to print on the machine by sending a print job from your computer.

8.3.1 Main Print Features

The machine can be used as a network printer by connecting it to your network.

You need to set the port to be used to [Enabled] on the machine's control panel or by using CentreWare Internet Services.



Printing Using the Print Driver

You can print on the machine using the print driver.



Refer

- For information on the Print features, refer to the print driver help that is displayed when you click [Help] on the print driver screen. For information on how to submit a print job, refer to "8.3.4 Printing Using the Print Driver" (p.282).

Printing Using BT-PlotAssistant (Optional)

BT-PlotAssistant allows you to print multiple files of different file formats at one time, as long as the data format of the files are supported on the machine.

8.3.2 Printable Data Format

The table below lists data formats that can be submitted from your computer to the machine.

Data Type	Printable Data Format
HP-GL series	HP-GL, HP-GL/2, HP RTL
VERSATEC series	VRF, VCGL, FX-MMR
TIFF/JFIF series	TIFF Version 6.0 compliant or JFIF Version 1.02 compliant data
CALS series	CALS Type1
CGM series	Version 1 + PIP Profile
PS/PDF series	Adobe PostScript® 3™ Version 3017, PDF Version 1.7

 **Note** • CGM series and PS/PDF series are optionally supported.

8.3.3 Preparation for Printing

The following describes preparation steps to print with TCP/IP. Refer to these subsections for more information on each step.

- Step 1 Requirementsp.281
- Step 2 Setting on the machinep.281
- Step 3 Setting on your computerp.282

Step 1 Requirements

There are the following prerequisites to use the machine with TCP/IP (LPD).

- Network environment supporting TCP/IP
- Media (Software/Product Manual)

Step 2 Setting on the machine

The following describes how to configure the settings on the machine in order to use the machine with TCP/IP (LPD).

 **Note** • CentreWare Internet Services can also be used to make these settings. For details, refer to the Help section which can be displayed by clicking [Help] in the upper right of the CentreWare Internet Services screen.

1. Call up the [Tools] screen.
 - (1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
 - (2) Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].

 **Note** • For information on how to enter the Administration mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

- (3) On the menu screen, press [Tools].
2. Check that the LPD port is set to [Enabled].



- For information on how to set the LPD port, refer to "12.5.1 Port Settings" (p.425).

3. Set the IP address.

You can skip this step when the machine is already assigned an IP address.



- For information on how to assign an IP address to the machine, refer to "12.5.2 Protocol Settings" (p.427).

4. Press [Close] several times until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

5. Press [Close].



- Rebooting the machine may be required depending on the settings. When a message displayed on the screen, follow the message and reboot the machine.

6. Configure other LPD settings as necessary.

Step 3 Setting on your computer

Before you can print on the machine from your computer, you need to install the print driver and the required applications on your computer.



- For information on how to install the print drive, refer to the Help section included on the provided media (Software/Product Manual).
- For information on how to install BT-PlotAssistant (optional), refer to "BT-PlotAssistant User Guide".

8.3.4 Printing Using the Print Driver

The following describes how to print using the print driver.

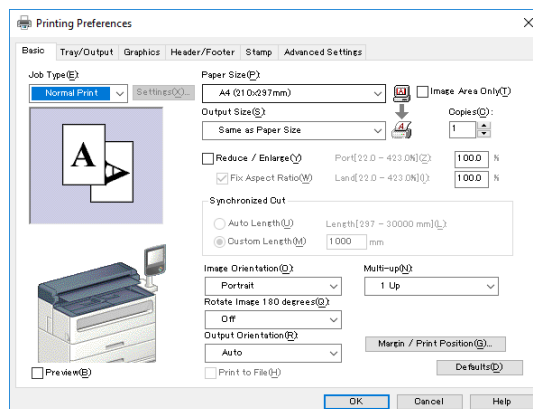
The print procedure varies depending on the application being used. For details, refer to the documentation for your application.

The following describes as an example how to print from Windows WordPad.



- For information on the Print features, refer to the print driver help that is displayed when you click [Help] on the print driver screen.

1. From the [File] menu of your application, select [Print].
2. Select [FX DocuWide 6057] or [FX DocuWide 3037], and click [Preferences] as necessary.
3. Set each item as necessary.
4. Click [OK].
5. On the [Print] dialog box, click [Print].



8.3.5 Canceling Print Jobs

The following describes how to cancel print jobs.

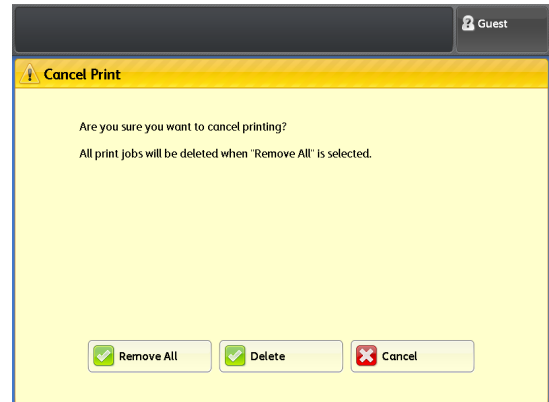
1. Press the <Stop> button on the control panel.
2. Press [Remove All] or [Delete].

Remove All

Select to delete all print jobs.

Delete

Select to delete the current print job.



8.4 Confidential Print

Print data can be stored in the machine temporarily to be printed only with the print command from the machine. This is called "Confidential Print".

Confidential Print is a convenient functionality, that allows you to set a user ID and password to a document, and so you can print private and confidential documents without worrying about other people might seeing those documents.

There are two types of Confidential Print depending on how the Authentication feature is being used, as described below.

Secure Print

Secure Print is a feature that allows you to temporarily store print data (to which a user ID and password is set) in the machine to print it only with the print command from the machine's control panel.

The print data is stored as a Secure Print document in the machine.



Note

- Even if the Authentication feature is enabled in your environment, you can use the Secure Print feature when [Private Charge Print Settings] > [Job Login Success] is set to [Print Job].
For information on how to do this, refer to "Private Charge Print Settings"(p.453).

Private Charge Print

You can select [Private Charge Print] only when the Authentication feature is enabled.

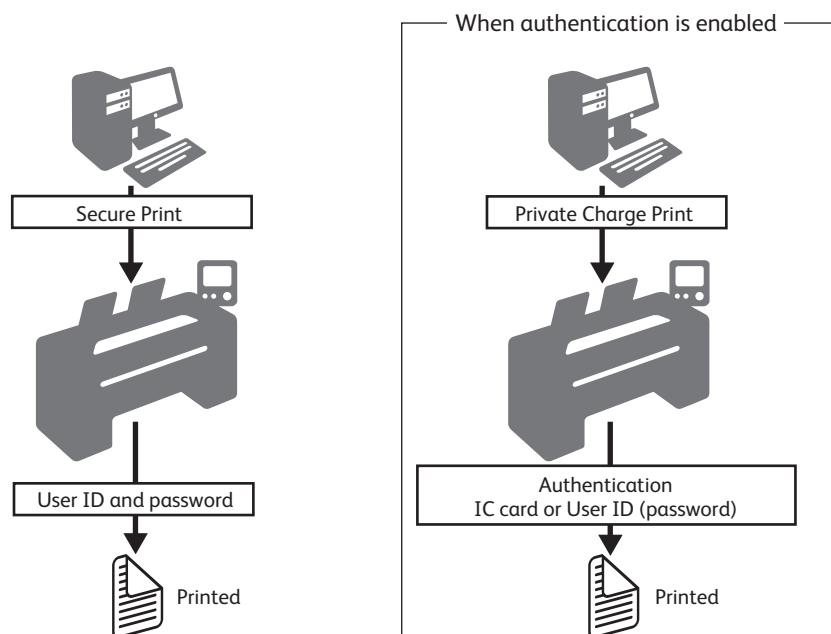
The Private Charge Print feature enables users who are allowed to use the Print feature based on the Authentication settings, to temporarily store print data in the machine and print it only with the print command from the machine's control panel. Authentication is required when the user attempts to run the print job from the control panel.

The print data is stored as a Private Charge Print document in the machine, for individual User IDs.



Note

- When [Private Charge Print Settings] > [Job Login Success] is set to [Print Job], the print job is not stored in the machine but printed as usual.
For information on how to do this, refer to "Private Charge Print Settings"(p.453).



For details on Confidential Print, refer to these subsections.

- Secure Printp.285
- Private Charge Print.....p.288

You can submit a Confidential Print job from within the print driver, the PostScript driver, or BT-PlotAssistant (optional).

The following describes as an example how to submit a Secure Print job and a Private Charge Print job from Windows WordPad.



Note

- To use PostScript printer driver, the optional DW6057 PS/PDF KIT or DW3037 PS/PDF KIT must be installed on the machine.



Refer

- The print procedure varies depending on the software application being used. For details, refer to the documentation for your application.

8.4.1 Secure Print

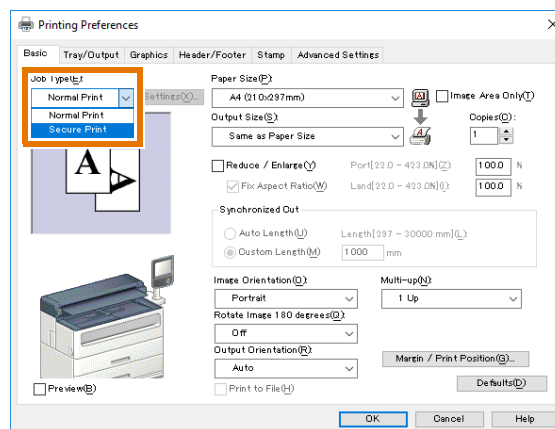
For the setting procedure, refer to these subsections.

- Step 1 Submitting a Secure Print job using the print driverp.285
- Step 2 Printing the job on the machine.....p.286

Step 1 Submitting a Secure Print job using the print driver

1. From the [File] menu of your application, select [Print].
2. Select [FX DocuWide 6057] or [FX DocuWide 3037], and click [Preferences].

3. Click the [Basic] tab.
4. From [Job Type], select [Secure Print].
The [Secure Print] screen appears.



5. Enter [User ID] and [Password].

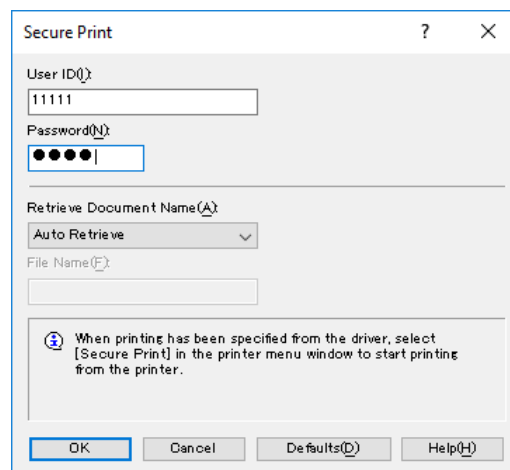


- Enter [User ID] using up to 24 single-byte alphanumeric characters and [Password] using 4 to 12 single-byte numbers.

6. From [Retrieve Document Name], select [Enter Document Name] or [Auto Retrieve].



- When [Enter Document Name] is selected, enter the document name in [File Name] using up to 24 single-byte characters.

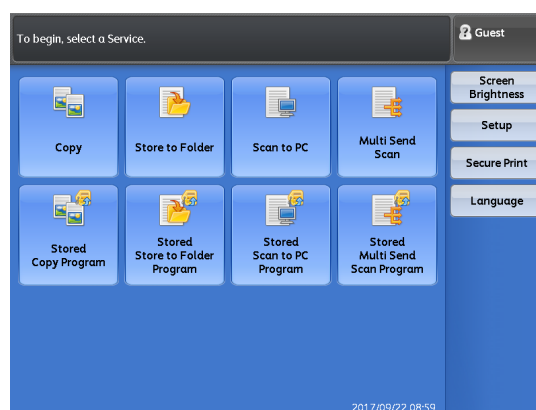


7. Click [OK].
8. Set each item as necessary, and click [OK] on the [Basic] tab.
9. On the [Print] dialog box, click [Print].

Step 2 Printing the job on the machine

Use the machine's control panel to print the Secure Print job stored in the machine.

1. On the menu screen, press [Secure Print].



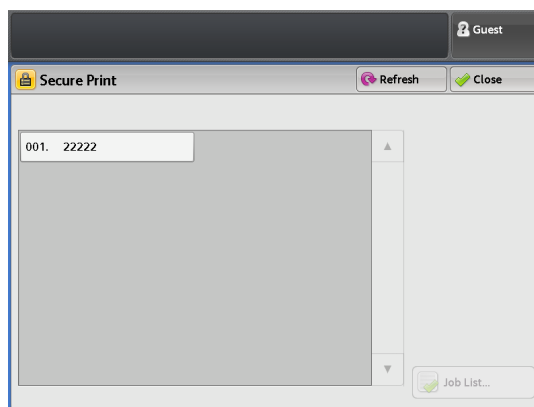
2. Select the user ID with which you submitted the Secure Print job.



Note

- Press [Refresh] to refresh the display.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.

3. Press [Job List].

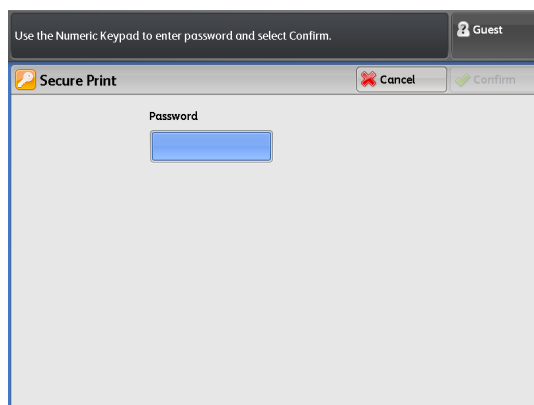


4. Enter the password, and press [Confirm].



Note

- If a password is not set, or if you are in the Admin mode, the [Password] screen does not appear.



5. Select a file you want to print.



Note

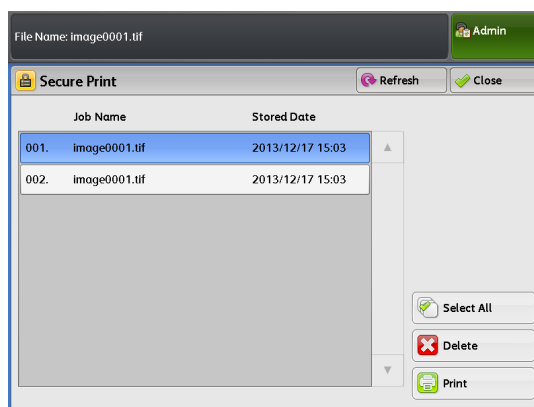
- Press [Refresh] to refresh the display.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.

Select All

Select this to select all the documents. Select this again to deselect all the selected documents.

Deleting

Select this to delete the selected document(s).



6. Press [Print].

7. On the print confirmation screen, press [Print and Delete] or [Print and Save].



Note

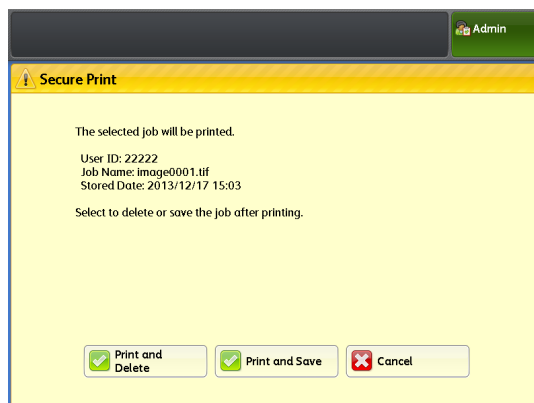
- Press [Cancel] to stop printing. (This does not erase the print job.)
- This screen is not displayed when [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Stored File Settings] > [Print Job Confirmation Screen] is set to [Disabled].

Print and Delete

Select this to delete the Secure Print document stored on the machine after printing.

Print and Save

Select this not to delete the Secure Print document stored on the machine even after printing.





- By using [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Stored File Settings], you can set to automatically delete documents for print jobs stored in the machine. ("12.8.1 Stored File Settings" (p.438))

8.4.2 Private Charge Print

The following describes how to prepare for and run a "Private Charge Print", with which you can submit a job to the machine, temporarily store it on the machine, log in to the authenticated mode, and then print it from the machine's control panel.

When [Save as Private Charge Print Job] is selected, all jobs having a User ID will be stored as Private Charge Print jobs. Jobs without User ID will be printed when [Print Job] is selected under [Job without User ID] or will be deleted when [Delete Job] is selected under [Job without User ID].

Job with User ID	Job without User ID
Save as Private Charge Print Job	Printed* ¹
	Deleted* ²

*1 When [Print Job] is selected under [Job without User ID]

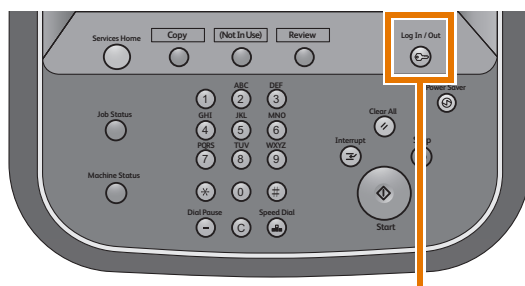
*2 When [Delete Job] is selected under [Job without User ID].

For the setting procedure, refer to these subsections.

- Step 1 Preparing for Private Charge Print on the machine.....p.288
- Step 2 Setting account information on your computerp.290
- Step 3 Submitting a Private Charge Print job from your computerp.291
- Step 4 Running a Private Charge Print job on the machine.....p.291

Step 1 Preparing for Private Charge Print on the machine

- Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.

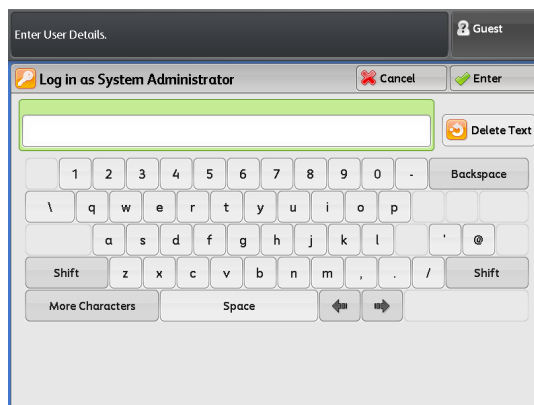


<Log In/Out> button

- Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].



- For information on how to enter the Administration mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

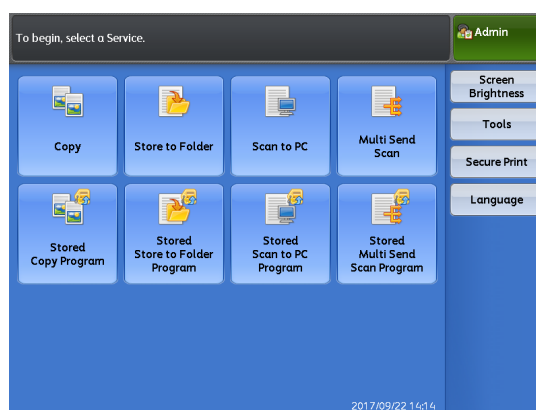


- On the menu screen, press [Tools].

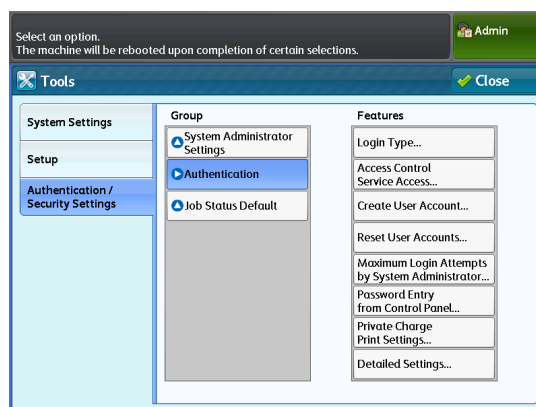


Note

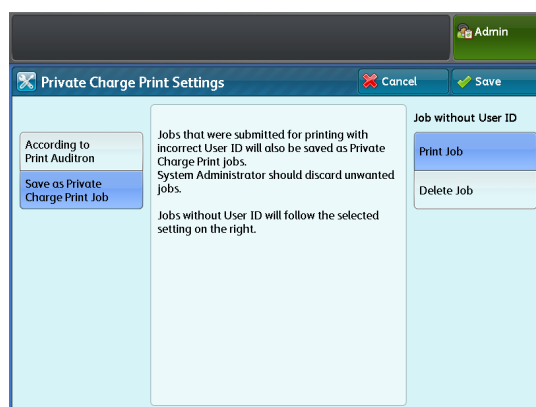
- Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel to display the menu screen, if not yet displayed.



- Press [Authentication / Security Settings] > [Authentication] > [Private Charge Print Settings].



- Press [Save as Private Charge Print Job].

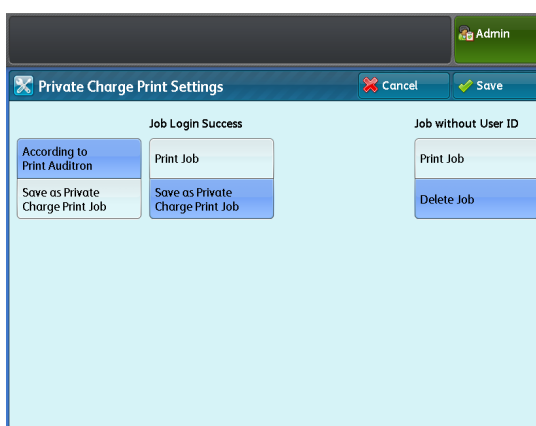


Important

- When Remote Authentication is enabled, if you select [According to Print Auditor], the settings for [Job Login Success] and [Job without User ID] are ignored and therefore all print jobs will be printed.

- Select [Print Job] or [Delete Job] under [Job without User ID].

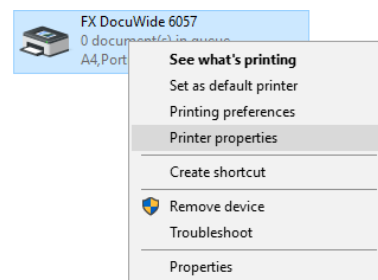
- Press [Save].



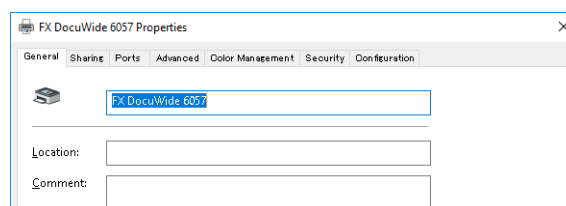
Step 2 Setting account information on your computer

To use the Private Charge Print feature with the machine, you need to specify account information for Private Charge Print on your computer.

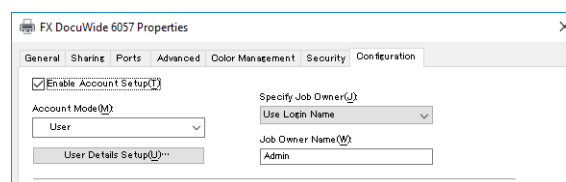
1. Right-click the printer icon.
2. From the displayed menu, select [Properties].



3. Click the [Configuration] tab.



4. Select the [Enable Account Setup] check box.
5. Press [User Details Setup].



6. Specify a User ID.

- When your Windows logon name is different from your User ID.....p.290
- When your Windows logon name is the same as your User ID.....p.291



Note

- The User ID you need to specify here depends on whether your Windows logon name is the same as your User ID registered on the authentication server (when remote authentication is enabled) or that registered on the machine (when local authentication is enabled).

When your Windows logon name is different from your User ID

If your Windows logon name for the client PC is different from your User ID registered on the authentication server (when remote authentication is enabled) or that registered on the machine (when local authentication is enabled), enter the User ID in [User ID options] on the print driver.

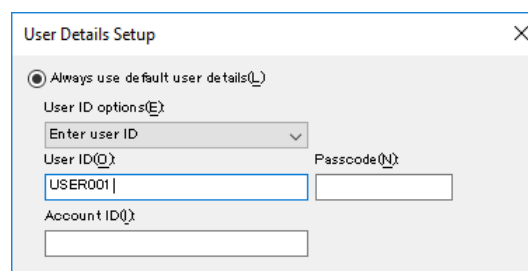
For example, if your Windows logon name is "PCUser001" and the registered User ID is "USER001", enter "USER001" for [User ID options].

- (1) Click [▼] for [User ID options], and select [Enter user ID].
- (2) Enter the registered User ID in [User ID].



Important

- Please note that if the IC Card Reader is connected to the machine, you need to enter "User ID" instead of "Card ID" when remote authentication (Login to Remote Accounts) is enabled, although "Card ID" is used when local authentication (Login to Local Accounts) is enabled.

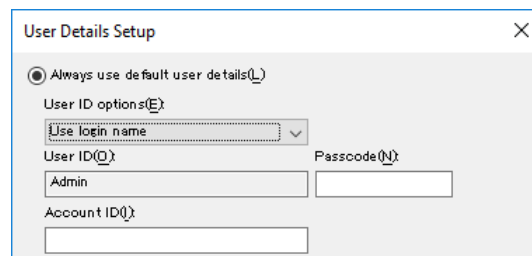


When your Windows logon name is the same as your User ID

If your Windows logon name for the client PC is equivalent to your User ID registered on the authentication server (when remote authentication is enabled) or that registered on the machine (when local authentication is enabled), select [Use login name] for [User ID options] on the print driver.

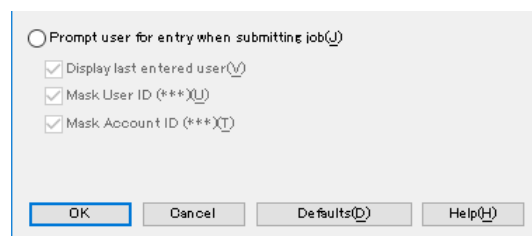
For example, if your Windows logon name is "USER001" and the registered User ID is "USER001", specify [Use login name] for [User ID options].

- (1) Click [▼] for [User ID options], and select [Use login name].



The 'User Details Setup' dialog box is shown. It has a title bar with a close button (X). The first option is 'Always use default user details(L)' with a radio button. Below it is 'User ID options(E)' with a dropdown menu currently showing 'Use login name'. There are three text input fields: 'User ID(U):' containing 'Admin', 'Passcode(P):' which is empty, and 'Account ID(A):' which is empty.

7. Click [OK].



This is the bottom section of the 'User Details Setup' dialog box. It contains four checkboxes: 'Prompt user for entry when submitting job(U)' (unchecked), 'Display last entered user(V)' (checked), 'Mask User ID (***)(U)' (checked), and 'Mask Account ID (***)(T)' (checked). At the bottom are four buttons: 'OK' (highlighted with a blue border), 'Cancel', 'Defaults(D)', and 'Help(H)'.

8. Click [OK] on the [Properties] screen.

Step 3 Submitting a Private Charge Print job from your computer

After you specify account information, you can submit a Private Charge Print job using the print driver.

 **Refer** • "8.3.4 Printing Using the Print Driver" (p.282)

Step 4 Running a Private Charge Print job on the machine

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the machine control panel.

- Enter your User ID and the password (if required), by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and select [Enter].

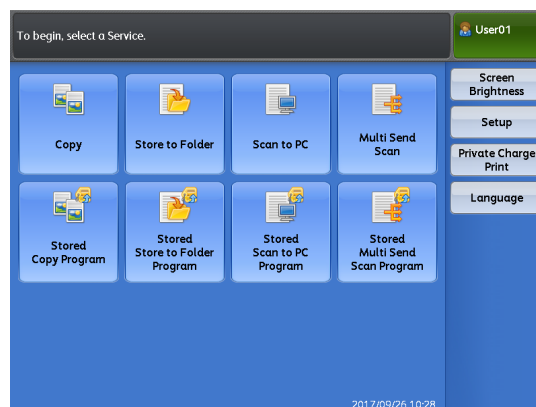


Note

- When using the Authentication feature on the machine, setting a password helps you to secure your login.
Setting a password: "Password Entry from Control Panel"(p.452)"
- If you are not sure about the user ID and password, consult your system administrator.



- On the menu screen, press [Private Charge Print].

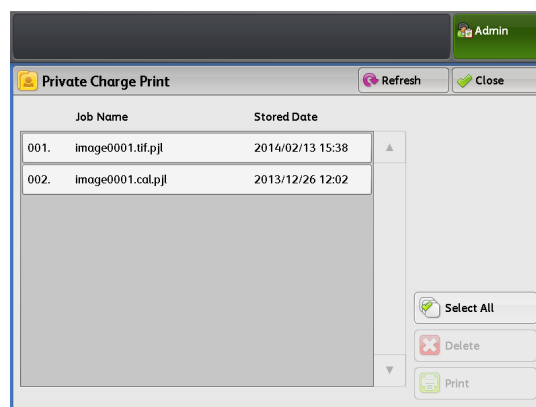


- Select the job to be printed, and press [Print].



Note

- Press [Refresh] to refresh the display.
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- Pressing [Select All] selects all the documents. All the documents will be deselected by pressing it again.
- Pressing [Delete] will delete the selected documents.



- On the print confirmation screen, press [Print and Delete] or [Print and Save].



Note

- Press [Cancel] to cancel printing of the job.
- This screen is not displayed when [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Stored File Settings] > [Print Job Confirmation Screen] is set to [Disabled].

Print and Delete

Select this to delete the Private Charge Print document stored on the machine after printing.

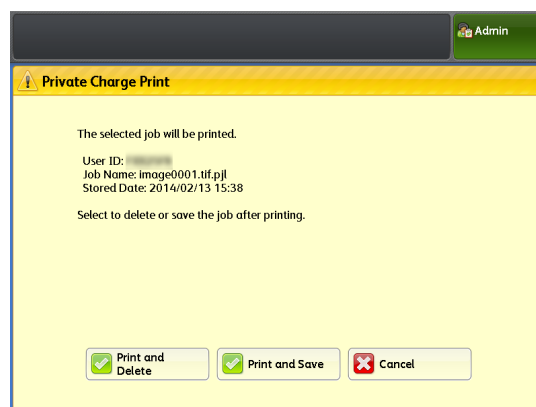
Print and Save

Select this not to delete the Private Charge Print document stored on the machine even after printing.



Note

- By using [Tools] > [System Settings] > [Stored File Settings], you can set to automatically delete documents for print jobs stored in the machine. ("12.8.1 Stored File Settings" (p.438))



8.5 Importing Scanned Data

This section describes three methods to import the documents stored in the machine's folder into your computer. Refer to these subsections for details on each procedure.

- Import from a TWAIN-compliant Application.....p.293
- Importing from Stored File Manager 3p.296
- Importing Using CentreWare Internet Services.....p.299

8.5.1 Import from a TWAIN-compliant Application

The following describes how to import the documents stored in the machine's folder into your application. Use Network Scanner Utility 3 to retrieve stored documents. Network Scanner Utility 3 is a software application for importing documents (scan data) stored in the folders of the machine to the application on the computer via network. To use Network Scanner Utility 3, Network Scanner Utility 3 must be installed on your computer.

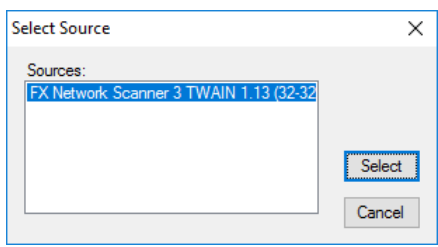
-  **Note**
- Use the provided media (Software/Product Manual) to install Network Scanner Utility 3.
 - Before you can import documents from the machine's folder, you need to configure some settings such as enabling a port. For information on how to do this, refer to "9.3.1 Setting Up the Store to Folder Feature" (p.316). For information on how to work with your application, refer to the documentation for the application.
-  **Refer**
- For information on how to install Network Scanner Utility 3, refer to the provided media (Software/Product Manual) Help.
 - For details about the items displayed in the dialog boxes, refer to Network Scanner Utility 3 Help that is displayed by clicking [Help].

1. Start the application to which you want to import documents.

 **Important** • The application software must support TWAIN, a standard for scanners and other input devices.

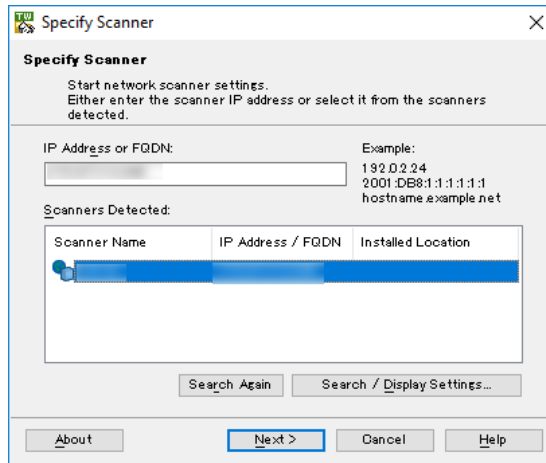
-  **Refer**
- For notes and restrictions on using your application, refer to Network Scanner Utility 3 "Readme".

2. From the [File] menu, select the command for choosing a scanner (source).
3. Select [FX Network Scanner 3 TWAIN] and click the [Select] button.

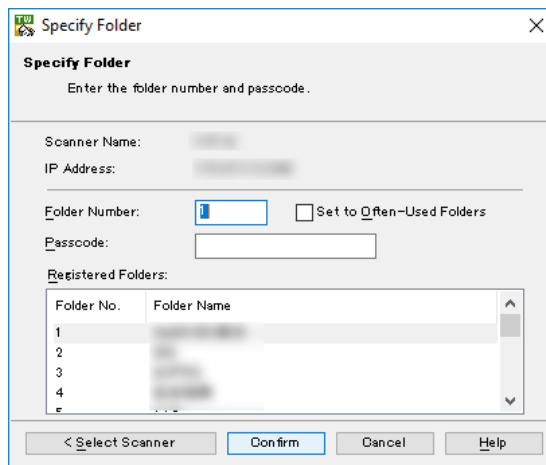


4. From the [File] menu, select the command for importing images from the scanner.

5. From the displayed list, click the scanner name of the machine to connect, and click the [Next] button.



6. In [Folder Number] and [Password], enter the folder number containing the documents you want to import (single-byte numbers in the range of 001 to 100) and the password (single-byte numbers of up to 4 digits), respectively.

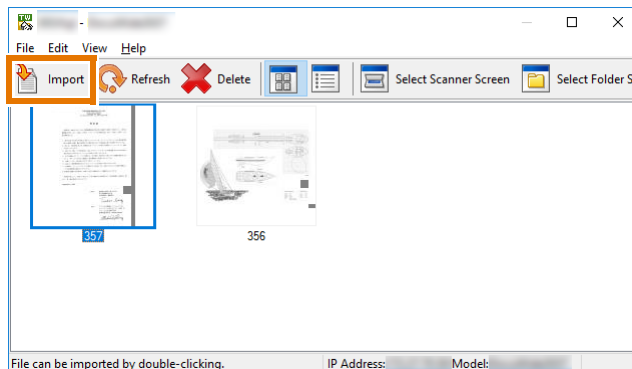


Note

- You can choose one from the folder numbers displayed under [Registered Folders].
- Click the [Select Scanner] button to return to the screen in Step 5., where you can select another scanner.

7. Click the [Confirm] button.

8. Select a document to import from the list, and click [Import].



Note

- Multiple documents can be selected.
- [Import], [Refresh], and [Delete] can also be selected from the menu which is displayed when you right-click an item on the list.

When importing starts, the scanned data from the folder begins to be transferred to the computer.

When the transfer ends, the documents are imported to the application as well as deleted from the folder.



Note

- When you have imported a document on a page-by-page basis, if some of pages in the document has not yet imported, an icon indicating the document is currently being imported is displayed at the beginning of the document row in the list.
- Depending on the application used, it may take time to transfer data due to decompression of the compressed data.
- You can select not to delete documents in the machine's folder after transfer. For information on how to do this, refer to "9.1.2 Create Folder" (p.306).

Changing the settings for Network Scanner Utility 3



Refer

- For details about the items displayed in the dialog boxes, refer to Network Scanner Utility 3 Help that is displayed by clicking [Help].

● Changing the display of scanner names

You can change the display name of the scanner which will be shown to users when they select a scanner.

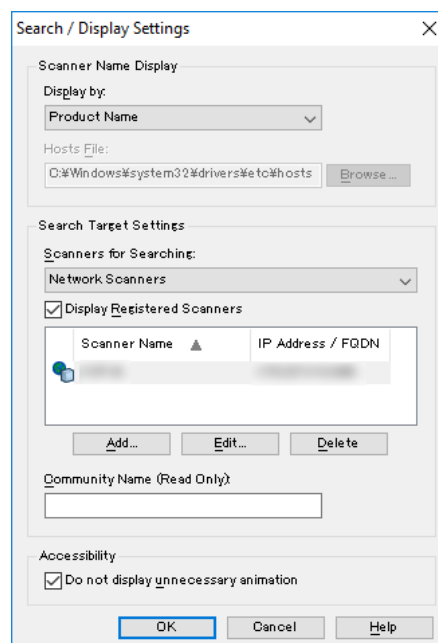
To change the display of scanner names, use the dialog box which can be displayed by clicking the [Search / Display Settings] button on a scanner selection dialog box.

Select the display of scanner names from [Display by] under [Scanner Name Display].



Note

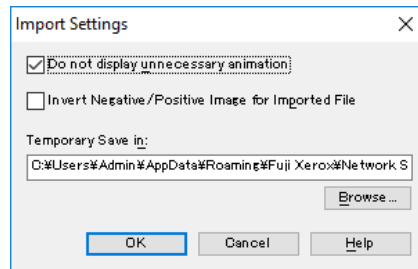
- Under [Search Target Settings], specify the scanners to be displayed as search target. Clicking the [Add] button allows you to register scanner s on a different subnetwork so that they are displayed as search targets.



● Setting the way the scanned documents are imported

You can change how documents are displayed during importing from the machine's folder and how they are imported.

To change the import settings, use the dialog box which can be displayed by selecting [Import Settings] from the [File] menu on the dialog box for selecting documents to be imported.



8.5.2 Importing from Stored File Manager 3

The following describes how to import the documents stored in the machine's folder into your computer via Stored File Manager 3.

Stored File Manager 3 allows you to import the documents stored in the machine's folder into your computer without an application.

To use Network Scanner Utility 3, Network Scanner Utility 3 must be installed on your computer.



- Use the provided media (Software/Product Manual) to install Network Scanner Utility 3.
- Before you can import documents from the machine's folder, you need to configure some settings such as enabling a port.
For information on how to do this, refer to "9.3.1 Setting Up the Store to Folder Feature" (p.316). For information on how to work with your application, refer to the documentation for the application.



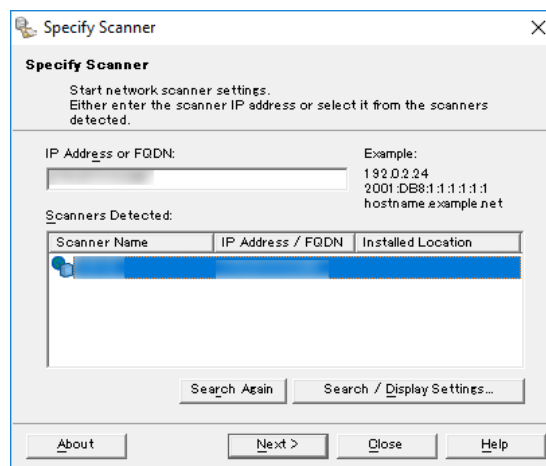
- For information on how to install Network Scanner Utility 3, refer to the provided media (Software/Product Manual) Help.
- For detailed information on items displayed in the dialog box, refer to the Help section of Stored File Manager 3 which can be displayed by clicking [Help].

1. Click the [Start] menu, and select [Programs] > [Fuji Xerox] > [Network Scanner Utility 3] > [Stored File Manager 3].



- If you used another directory for installation, specify the directory instead.

2. From the displayed list, click the scanner name of the machine to connect, and click the [Next] button.





Note

- If no scanners are shown in the list, click [Search Again]. The application searches for scanners.
- To change the display of scanner names, use the dialog box which can be displayed by clicking the [Search / Display Settings] button. For information on how to change the display name, refer to "Changing the display of scanner names"(p.298).
- The scanner name of the machine is automatically listed only when the machine is on the same network as your computer. To view the machine connected to another network, click [Search / Display Settings] to register the machine's IP address and scanner name. For information on how to register a scanner, refer to "Changing the display of scanner names"(p.298).

3. In [Folder Number] and [Password], enter the folder number containing the documents you want to import (single-byte numbers in the range of 001 to 100) and the password (single-byte numbers of up to 4 digits), respectively.

Specify Folder

Enter the folder number and passcode.

Scanner Name: _____

IP Address: _____

Folder Number: ☐ Set to Often-Used Folders

Password:

Registered Folders:

Folder No.	Folder Name
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

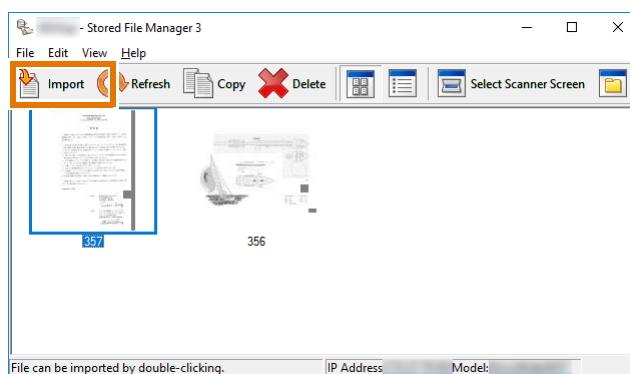
< Select Scanner Confirm Close Help



Note

- You can choose one from the folder numbers displayed under [Registered Folders].
- Click the [Select Scanner] button to return to the screen in Step 2., where you can select another scanner.

4. Click the [Confirm] button.
5. Select a document to import from the list, and click [Import].



Note

- Multiple documents can be selected.
- When [File Saving Options] is set to [Set Destination for Each File] under the import settings, a dialog box for specifying a save destination is displayed. When the dialog box appears, specify a save destination, and click [OK].
For information on the import settings, refer to "Setting the way the scanned documents are imported"(p.298).

6. The file is imported to the specified directory.



- When [File Saving Options] is set to [Save in Fixed Destination] under the import settings, a file is saved in the specified directory.
For information on the import settings, refer to "Setting the way the scanned documents are imported"(p.298).

Changing Stored File Manager 3 settings



Refer

- For detailed information on items displayed in the dialog box, refer to the Help section of Stored File Manager 3 which can be displayed by clicking the [Help] button.

● Changing the display of scanner names

You can change the display name of the scanner which will be shown to users when they select a scanner.

To change the display of scanner names, use the dialog box which can be displayed by clicking the [Search / Display Settings] button on a scanner selection dialog box.

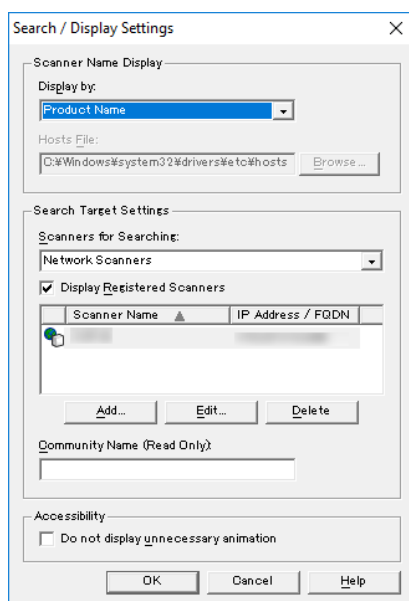
Select the display of scanner names from [Display by] under [Scanner Name Display].

Under [Search Target Settings], specify the scanners to be displayed as search targets.



Note

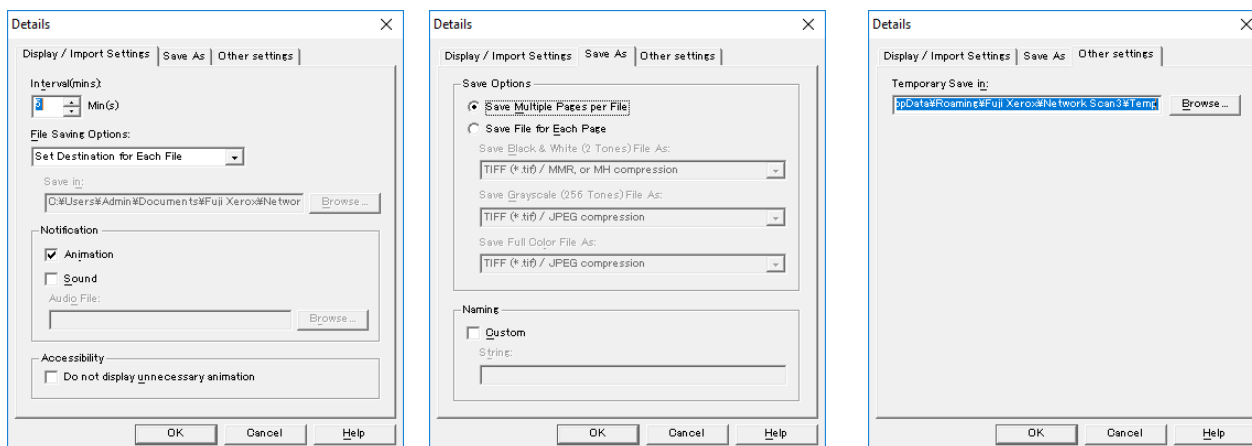
- Clicking the [Add] button allows you to register scanners on a different subnet so that they are displayed as search targets.



● Setting the way the scanned documents are imported

You can change how documents are displayed while importing from the machine's folder and where they are imported to.

To change the import settings, use the dialog box which can be displayed by selecting [Details] from the [File] menu on the dialog box for selecting documents to be imported.



8.5.3 Importing Using CentreWare Internet Services

The following describes how to import the documents stored in the machine's folder into your application by using CentreWare Internet Services.

When the machine is installed in a TCP/IP environment, CentreWare Internet Services allows you to import documents stored in the machine's folder by accessing the machine from your computer via a web browser.



Note

- Documents imported via CentreWare Internet Services are not deleted from the folder even if [Delete Files After Retrieval] is set to [Yes] under the folder settings.



Refer

- For information on an overview of CentreWare Internet Services, refer to "8.2 CentreWare Internet Services" (p.275).
- For information on how to operate it, refer to the Help section which can be displayed by clicking the [Help] button in the top frame.

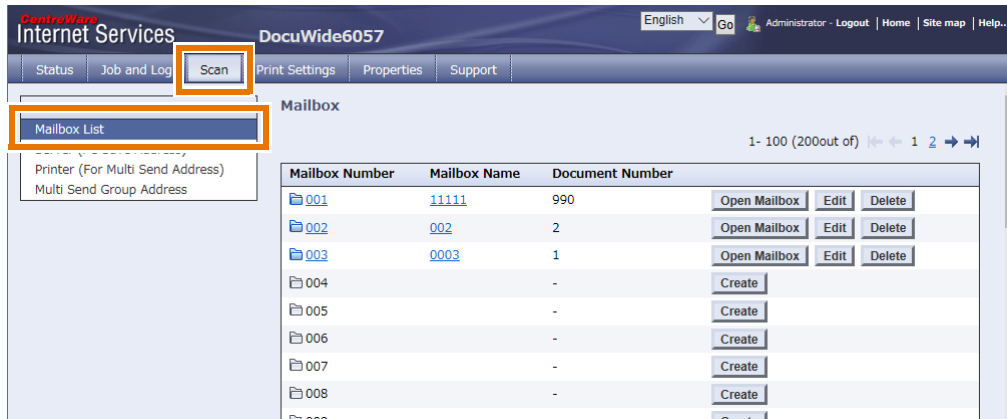
1. Start up the computer, and then a web browser.
2. Enter the machine's IP address or Internet address in the browser address field, and press the <Enter> key.



Note

- If your network uses DNS (Domain Name System) and the machine's host name is registered in the domain name server, you can access the machine using the Internet address which consists of the host name and the domain name. For example, if the host name is "myhost", and the domain name is "example.com", then the Internet address is "myhost.example.com".
- Ask your system administrator for the IP address or Internet address.
- When specifying a port number, enter the IP address followed by a colon ":" and the assigned port number such as "8080".
- If you have enabled encrypted communication, you need to enter the address beginning "https" instead of "http" in the browser address field in order to access CentreWare Internet Services.

- Click [Mailbox List] on the [Scan] tab.



- Click the [Open Mailbox] button for the folder storing the documents you want to import.



Note

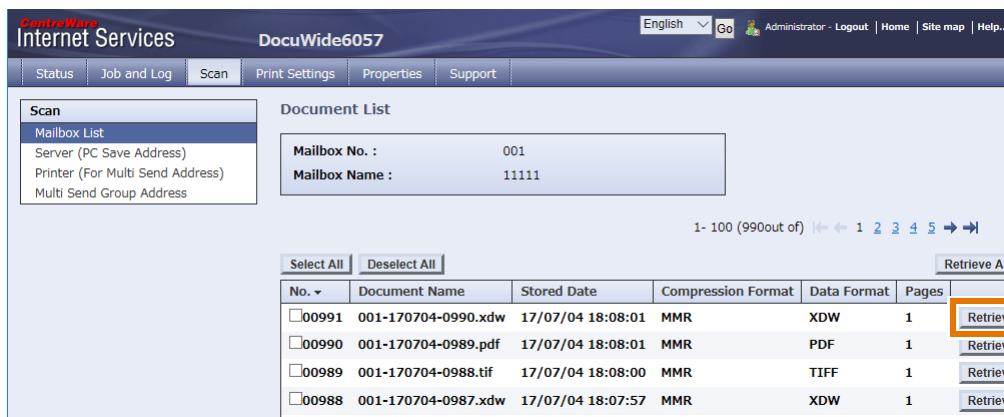
- If a password is set, enter the password (up to 4 digits) in [Password].

- Click the [Retrieve] button for the document to be imported.



Note

- Multiple documents can also be imported at one time. To do this, select those documents and click the [Retrieve All] button.



- Select the save destination for the document to save it.

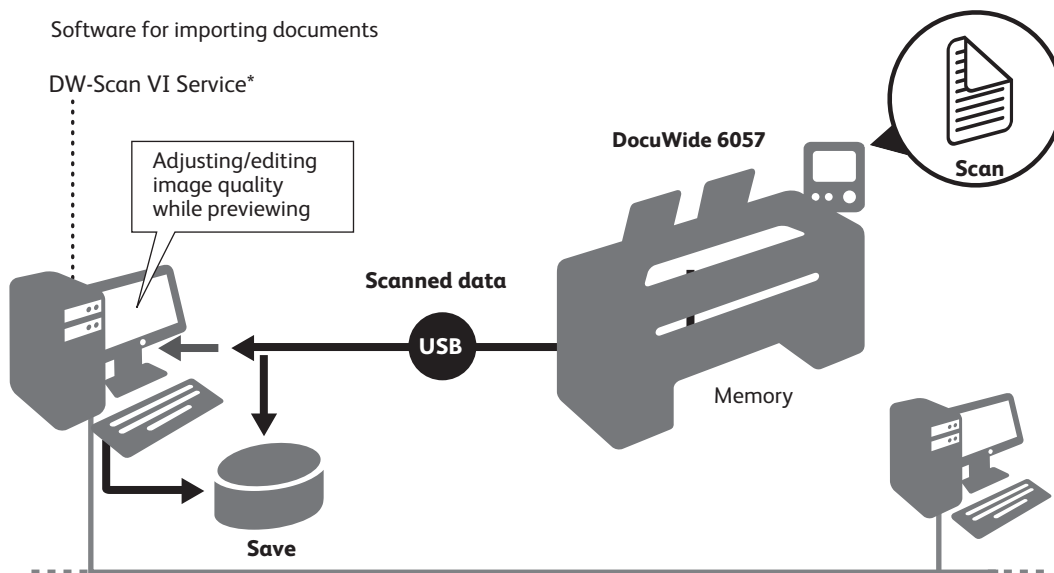
8.6 Direct Scan (DocuWide 6057)

Use the optional DW - Scan VI Service, and then you can download scan data directly to a computer connected via USB to the machine. This function is referred to as "Direct Scan".

- Important** • Use the recommended USB cable (product code: EB 100282). Using a USB cable that we do not recommend, you may not be able to experience the expected quality or performance of the machine.
- Direct Scanning is not available when a user logs in.

- Note** • This function is available only on the DocuWide 6057.

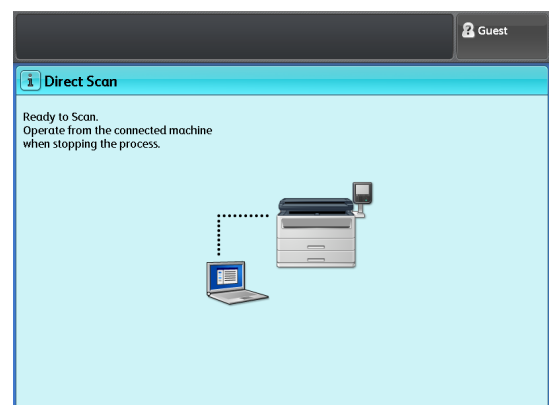
- Refer** • For details about how to operate Direct Scan, refer to the DW-Scan VI Service manual.



* Optional software applications
For information on how to work with your application, refer to the documentation for the application.

While Direct Scan is being performed, the screen shown to the right is displayed.

- Note** • Following operations are available even when Direct Scan is performed.
 - Printing
 - Displaying the [Job Status] screen by pressing the <Job Status> button on the control panel.



Chapter 9 Configuration

This chapter describes how to create folders, register IP addresses, and set up save destinations, as well as change those settings.

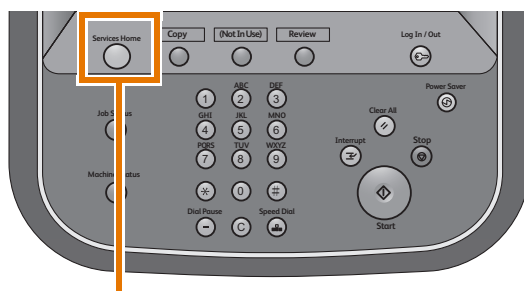
9.1	Setup	304
9.2	Setting the IP Address.....	315
9.3	Scanner Environment Settings.....	316
9.4	Setting up the Secondary Ethernet.....	320

9.1 Setup

Selecting [Setup] allows you to configure settings that are related to Stored Programs, Folders, and Send Addresses. Refer to these subsections for more information on each setting.

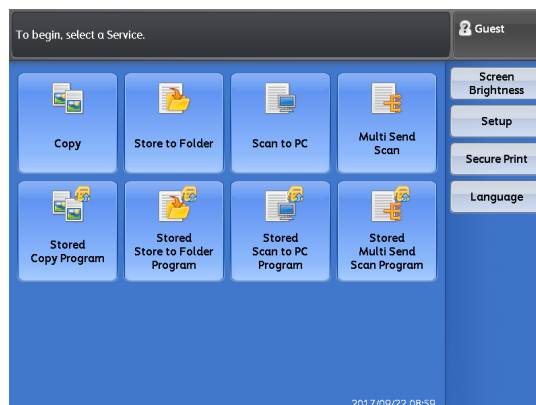
- Program Sort (DocuWide 6057)p.305
- Create Folderp.306
- Server (PC Save Address)p.308
- Printer (Multi Send Address)p.310
- Multi Send Address (Group Address)p.312
- Paper Tray Series / Paper Typep.314

1. Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel.

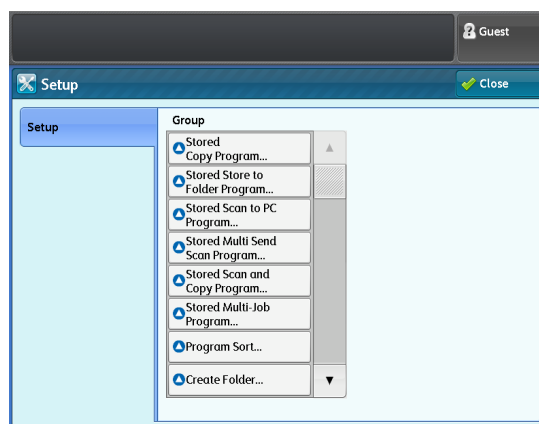


<Services Home> button

2. On the menu screen, press [Setup].



3. Select the item you want to configure or change.



9.1.1 Program Sort (DocuWide 6057)

The function that ejects your jobs in page order for each virtual destination (bin) in accordance with the pre-registered sorting program (distribution pattern) is referred to as "Program Sort".

To copy multiple sheets of an original with Program Sort, register distribution pattern in advance and specify the Program Sort (number) each time you set the original.

Up to 300 patterns of Program Sort can be registered.

 **Note** • This function is available to view and set only on the DocuWide6057.

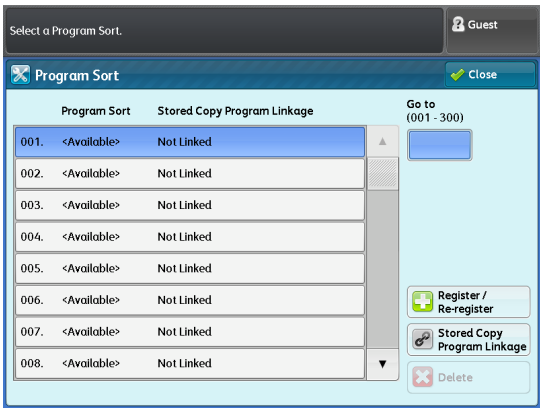
 **Refer** • For information on how to copy with Program Sort, refer to "2.17.3 Copy Output (Specifying Finishing Options)" (p.122).

1. Press [Program Sort].
2. Select the number for the Program Sort to be registered.

 **Note** • Press [] to display the previous screen, press [] to display the next screen.

• If you want to display a specific Program Sort at the top, enter that number in [Go to].

3. Select an option, and set as necessary.
4. Press [Close].



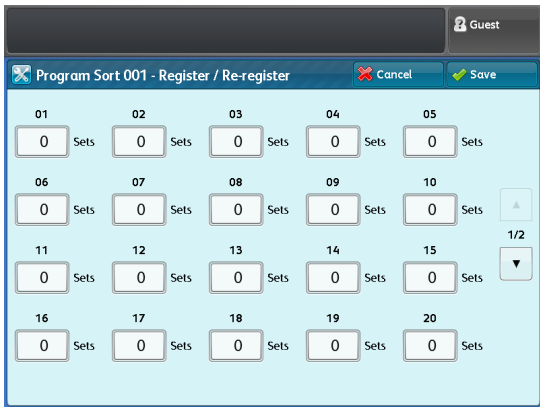
Register / Re-register

Select a virtual destination, and enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad on the control panel.

 **Note** • Press [] to display the previous screen, press [] to display the next screen.

• The maximum number of bins registered as virtual destinations is 40 bins.

• The maximum number of copies set with Program Sort is 99 copies.



Stored Copy Program Linkage

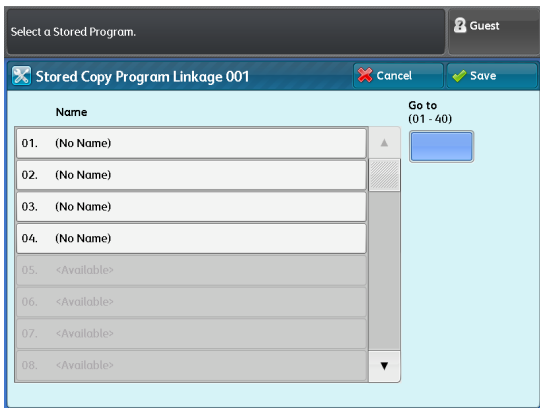
You can associate a Program Sort with a registered Stored Copy Program.

 **Note** • Press [] to display the previous screen, press [] to display the next screen.

• If you want to display a specific Stored Copy Program at the top, enter that number in [Go to].

Delete

Press this to delete the selected Program Sort.



9.1.2 Create Folder

The folders allow you to store images scanned by the machine as documents in the machine's internal memory. The stored scan documents can be retrieved from a computer on the network. Up to 200 folders can be registered on the machine.

1. Press [Create Folder].
2. Select a folder you want to register.



Note

- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific folder number at the top, enter that number in [Go to].

3. When you attempt to register a new folder, the [Check Folder Password] screen appears. Set items as necessary, and press [Save].



Note

- If you select a registered box, a screen to enter the password appears. In that case, enter the password and press [Confirm].



Refer

- For information on how to set an access restriction, refer to "Check Folder Password"(p.307).

4. Select and set the desired items.

Folder Name

You can assign a name to the folder.

Up to 20 characters can be entered by using the keyboard displayed on the screen and the numeric keypad.



Refer

- For information on how to enter characters, refer to "1.6 Text Entry" (p.38).

Check Folder Password

You can set access restrictions in order to allow only limited users to perform certain operations.

● Check Folder Password

Set whether to set access restrictions.

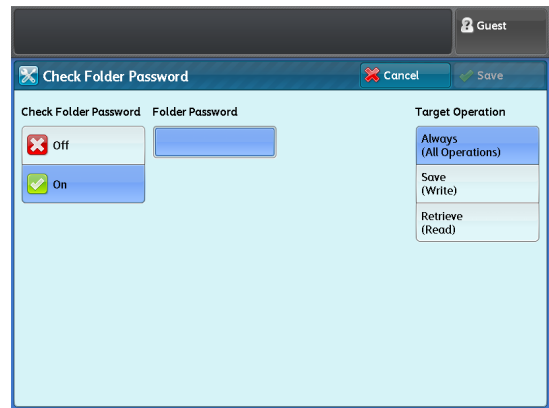
● Folder Password

To set access restrictions to the folder, set a four-digits password using numbers from 0 to 9.

● Target Operation

Set the operations to be restricted.

- Always (All Operations)
Select this to require a password when users attempt to select this folder or to retrieve documents in this folder.
- Save (Write)
Select this to require a password when users attempt to select this folder.
- Retrieve (Read)
Select this to require a password when users attempt to retrieve documents in this folder.



Delete Files After Retrieval

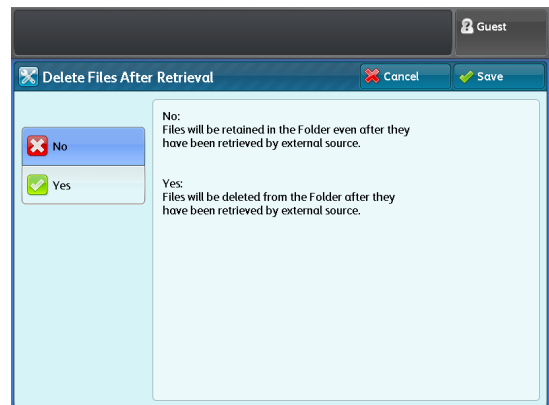
Set whether to delete documents stored in this folder after they have been retrieved from an external application.

● No

Select this to retain the documents.

● Yes

Select this to automatically delete the documents after they have been retrieved.



Note

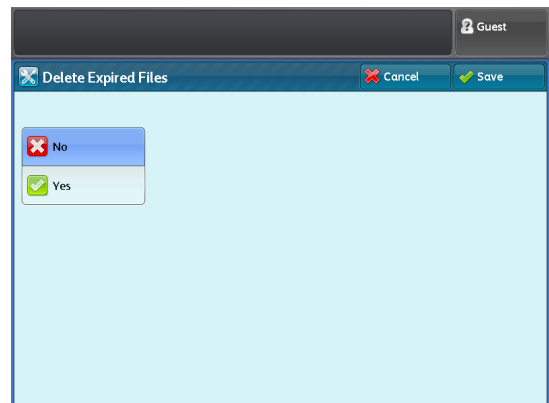
- Documents retrieved via CentreWare Internet Services are not deleted from the folder even if [Yes] is selected.

Delete Expired Files

Set whether to enable deleting the documents stored in the selected folder, at a specified time after a retention period has elapsed.

● No

Select this to retain the documents after a retention period has elapsed.



- Yes

Select this to delete the documents at a specified time after a retention period has elapsed. However, if the retention period is not specified, the documents are not deleted even if [Yes] is selected. When this option is selected, be sure to specify the retention period.



- For information on how to set the retention period, refer to "12.8.1 Stored File Settings" (p.438).

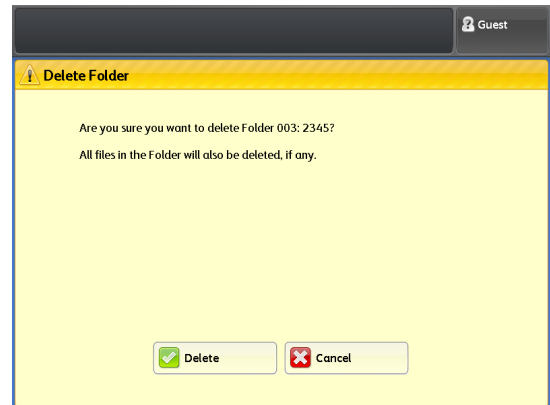
When you select the [Delete Folder] button

The selected folder will be deleted.

If the folder contains documents, all the documents will also be deleted.



- Documents cannot be restored once deleted.



5. After completing the settings, press [Close].

9.1.3 Server (PC Save Address)

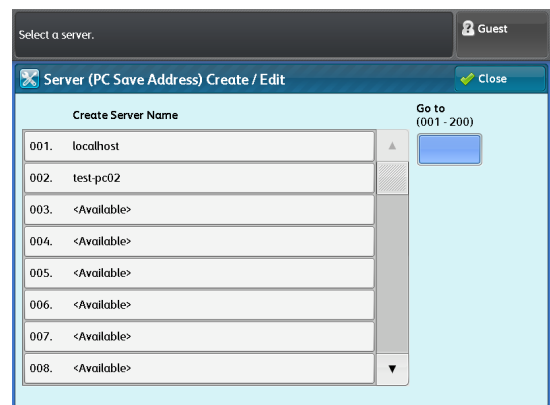
The following describes how to register addresses of the destination computers that you use often. The type of address that can be registered is server (SMB).

You can register up to 100 addresses.

1. Press [Server (PC Save Address)].
2. Select the server number that you want to register.



- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific server number at the top, enter that number in [Go to].



3. Select and set the desired items.

Name

Enter the name of the address using up to 36 characters.



Refer

- For information on how to enter characters, refer to "1.6 Text Entry" (p.38).

Server Name / IP Address

Enter the server name or IP address of the transfer destination.

Shared Name

Enter the shared name set to the SMB folder.

Save in

Enter the directory in which to save documents, in UNC format.

- Example: To save documents in the directory "bbb" located in the directory "aaa" in the specified volume "aaa", enter "aaa\bbb".
aaa\bbb

User Name

If the transfer destination server requires you to enter a user name, set the user name.

- For an active directory
user name@domain name (user name: up to 32 characters; domain name: up to 64 characters)
Input example: user1@example.com (user1: user name; example.com: domain name)
- For a Windows NT domain
domain name\user name (domain name: up to 64 characters; user name: up to 32 characters)
Input example: example\user1 (example: domain name; user1: user name)
- For a work group
local user (up to 32 characters)
Input example: Test-User

Password

If the transfer destination server requires you to enter a password, set the password.

The password can be up to 32 characters.

Port Number

Specify the port number of the transfer destination in the range of 1 to 65,535.

To disable this function, select [Default Port].

When you select [Preset Server]

Specify the save destination from the displayed servers registered.

When you select [Browse]

The hierarchical structure of the names of the save destination servers and folders is displayed. Trace through the hierarchy to specify the save destination.



Refer

- For information on how to specify the save destination, refer to "Browse (Browsing Network PCs and Folders to Specify Save Destination)"(p.208), "Browse (Browsing Network PCs and Folders to Specify Save Destination)"(p.247).

Items	Current Settings
1. Name	localhost
2. Server Name / IP Address	192.168.1.100
3. Shared Name	public
4. Save in	(Not Set)
5. User Name	matsuda
6. Password	*****
7. Port Number	Default Port

When you select [Delete Entry]

The registered information of the selected address can be deleted. To delete the registered information, select [Delete].

- **Important** Settings cannot be restored once they are deleted.

4. After completing the settings, press [Save].

9.1.4 Printer (Multi Send Address)

The following describes how to register destination addresses that you use often. The type of address that can be registered is printer.

You can register up to 10 addresses.

1. Press [Printer (Multi Send Address)].
2. Select the printer number that you want to register.



Note

- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific printer number at the top, enter that number in [Go to].

3. Select and set the desired items.

Name

Enter the name of the address using up to 36 characters.



Refer

- For information on how to enter characters, refer to "1.6 Text Entry" (p.38).

Server Name / IP Address

Enter the host name, domain name, or IP address of the transfer destination.

Logical Printer Name

Enter the name of the logical printer.

- For Doc series
plt**t (**: numbers from 00 to 99)
Example: plt03t
- For ApeosPort/DocuCentre/DocuPrint series
TIFF** (**: numbers from 01 to 20)
Example: TIFF03

Output Size

When printing on a printer other than Doc series, set the printable size.

- Same size printing
Select this to print at the same size of the original.
- Smaller than A3
Select this to reduce to fit to A3 size whenever printing A3 or larger original.
- Smaller than A4
Select this to reduce to fit to A4 size whenever printing A4 or larger original.



Note

- For a printer which supports A3 size printing, select [Smaller than A3].

High Speed Multi-print

Set whether to enable high speed printing if multiple copies are specified.

- Off
Select this to transfer print data equivalent to the amount of job size multiplied by the number of copies. This results in more time spent for printing according to the specified number of copies.
- On
Select this to process printing with the number-of-copies command. This enables high speed printing regardless of the specified number of copies.



Important

- When [On] is selected, multiple copies of print jobs will not succeed on a printer that cannot accept the number-of-copies command. For information on such printer models, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
- If you specify a printer other than Doc series as destination, and one or more logical printers for it are assigned with settings such as Output Destination and a finishing like folding, hole punching, or stapling, set this option to [Off]. If [On] is selected, settings of such a printer may not function.

Add User ID to Job

Set whether to assign a user ID to the job.

- Off
Select this when not adding User ID.
- On
Select this when adding User ID.

When the [Delete Entry] button is selected

The registered information of the selected address can be deleted. To delete the registered information, select [Delete].



Important

- Settings cannot be restored once they are deleted.

4. After completing the settings, press [Save].

9.1.5 Multi Send Address (Group Address)

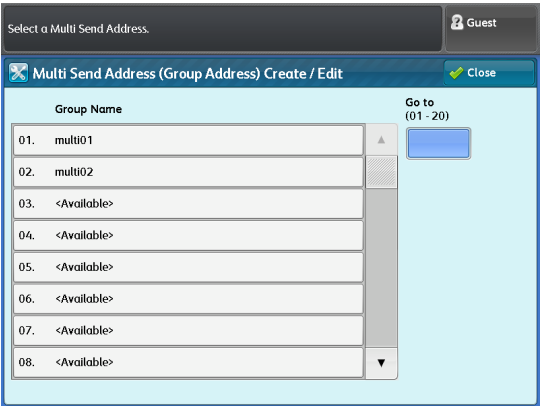
The following describes how to register broadcast recipients as a group address. The group name, up to two servers, up to five printers, and up to five local printer (this machine) can be registered to a group. Up to 20 groups can be registered.

To register addresses to a group, you must first register the individual addresses.

- 
Note
- A group address cannot contain a group address in it.
 - To use the Scan to PC feature, you must first set up your network. For information on how to configure network settings, refer to "9.3.2 Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature" (p.316).
 - To register servers and printers to a group, you must first register them. For information on how to register servers and printers, refer to "9.1.3 Server (PC Save Address)" (p.308) and "9.1.4 Printer (Multi Send Address)" (p.310).

1. Press [Multi Send Address (Group Address)].
2. Select the group number that you want to register.

- 
Note
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
 - If you want to display a specific group at the top, enter that number in [Go to].



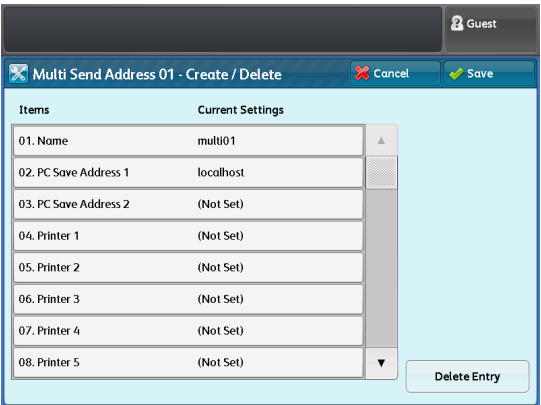
3. Select and set the desired items.

- 
Note
- The group name (Name), up to two servers (PC Save Address), up to five printers, and one local printer (this machine) can be registered to a group.

Name

Enter the group name using up to 36 characters.

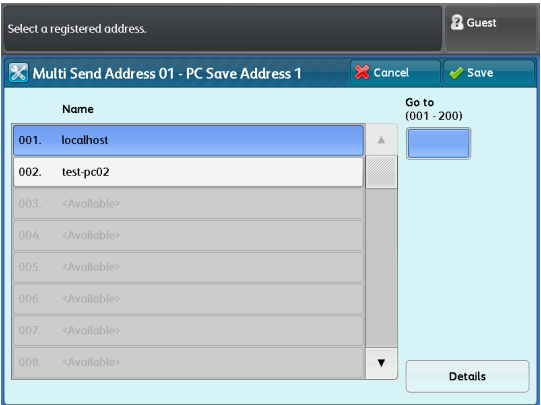
- 
Refer
- For information on how to enter characters, refer to "1.6 Text Entry" (p.38).



PC Save Addresses 1, 2

Select a server.

- 
Note
- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
 - If you want to display a specific server number at the top, enter that number in [Go to].
 - To display information on a registered server, select the server, and press [Details].
 - Multiple instances of a server cannot be registered to a group.



Printers 1 to 5

Select a printer.



Note

- Press [$\blacktriangle$] to display the previous screen, and press [$\blacktriangledown$] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific printer number at the top, enter that number in [Go to].
- To display information on a registered printer, select the printer, and press [Details].
- Multiple instances of a printer cannot be registered to a group.

Local Printer 1 to 5

Set whether to print documents on the local printer (this machine).

- Off
Select this not to print on the machine.
- On
Select this to print on the machine. Specify the number of the logical printer.

Specify the logical printer number, and select whether enable image rotation for each copy.

PC Save Address Details

You can confirm the setting of PC save destination.

Printer Details

You can confirm the printer settings.

When the [Delete Entry] button is selected

The registered information of the selected group can be deleted. To delete the registered information, select [Delete].



Important

- Settings cannot be restored once they are deleted.

4. After completing the settings, press [Save].

9.1.6 Paper Tray Series / Paper Type

Allows you to specify the paper series, type, and weight.

The table below summarizes the sizes of paper that can be loaded, grouped in paper series.

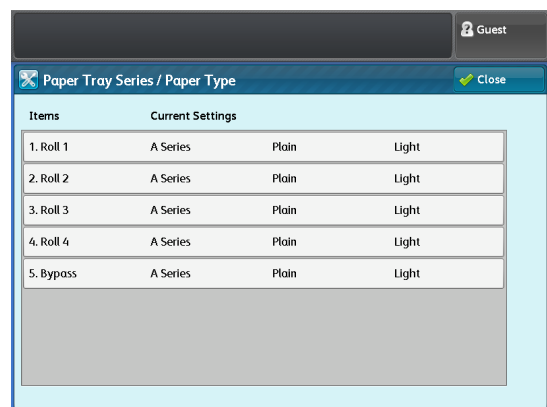
Paper Tray	Paper Series	Paper Size
Roll/Bypass	A Series	A0, A1, A2, A3 Wide
	JIS B Series	B1, B2, B3 Wide
	ISO B Series	B1, B2, B3 Wide
	Special A Series	Special A0 (880/860 mm), Special A1 (625/620 mm), Special A2 (440/435 mm), Special A3 (310 mm) Wide
	Arch Series-1	36", 24", 18", 12" Wide
	Arch Series-2	30", 24", 15", 12" Wide
	ANSI Series	34", 22", 17", 11" Wide



Note

- Roll media can be specified only when [Paper Tray Attributes on Setup Screen] is set to [Enabled](p.403).

1. Press [Paper Tray Settings].
2. Press the item you want to configure.



3. Select and set the desired items.

Paper Series

Select from [A Series], [JIS B Series], [ISO B Series], [Special A Series], [Arch Series-1], [Arch Series-2], and [ANSI Series].

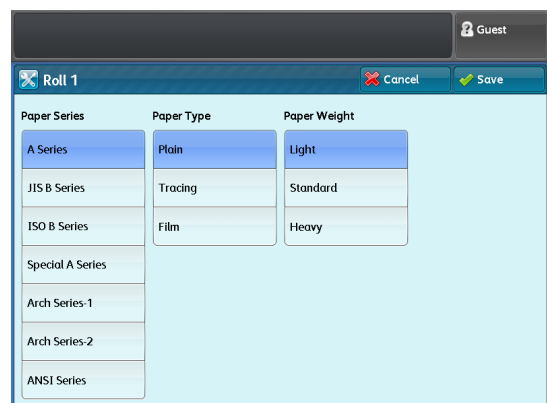
Paper Type

Select from [Plain], [Tracing], and [Film].

Paper Weight

Select from [Light], [Standard], and [Heavy].

4. After completing the settings, press [Save].



9.2 Setting the IP Address

This section describes how to set the machine's IP address so that it can communicate with network services.

1. Call up the [Tools] screen.
 - (1) Press the <Log In/Out> button.
 - (2) Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].

Note

 - For information on how to enter the Administration mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).
 - (3) On the menu screen, press [Tools].
2. Make settings for [TCP/IP - IP Address] under [Protocol Settings].
 - (1) On the [Tools] screen, press [Connectivity & Network Setup].
 - (2) Press [Protocol Settings].
 - (3) Press [IPv4 - IP Address].
 - (4) Enter the IP address using the numeric keypad.
 - (5) Press [Close] several times until the [Tools] screen is displayed.

Refer

 - For information on how to set the IPv6 IP address, refer to "12.5.2 Protocol Settings" (p.427).
3. Press [Close] on the [Tools] screen.

9.3 Scanner Environment Settings

This section describes how to configure the environment for using the machine's Scan feature.

9.3.1 Setting Up the Store to Folder Feature

The following describes how to set up the Store to Folder feature. Refer to these subsections for more information on each step.

- Step 1 Configuring TCP/IP p.316
- Step 2 Registering a folder p.316
- Step 3 Setting on your computer p.316

Step 1 Configuring TCP/IP

When using Fuji Xerox Network Scanner Utility 3, configure the IP address.



- You can skip this step when the machine is already assigned an IP address.



Refer

- For information on how to assign an IP address to the machine, refer to "9.2 Setting the IP Address" (p.315).

Step 2 Registering a folder

Register a folder to store scanned data.



Refer

- For information on how to register a folder, refer to "9.1.2 Create Folder" (p.306).

Step 3 Setting on your computer

To use Network Scanner Utility 3, Network Scanner Utility 3 must be installed on your computer.



Refer

- Network Scanner Utility 3 is stored in the provided media (Software/Product Manual). For information on how to install Network Scanner Utility 3, refer to the provided media (Software/Product Manual) Help.
- For information on the operation of Network Scanner Utility 3, refer to "Chapter 8 Computer Operations" (p.273).

9.3.2 Setting Up the Scan to PC Feature

The following describes how to set up the Scan to PC feature. Refer to these subsections for more information on each step.

- Step 1 Requirements p.317
- Step 2 Configuring TCP/IP p.317
- Step 3 Setting on your computer p.317

Step 1 Requirements

To use the Scan to PC function with the machine, you need a computer equipped with an OS capable of the shared folder function. For information on the supported OS, refer to "Scan Feature"(p.464).

Step 2 Configuring TCP/IP

To use Scan to PC feature, the machine's IP address must be configured.



Note

- You can skip this step when the machine is already assigned an IP address.



Refer

- For information on how to assign an IP address to the machine, refer to "9.2 Setting the IP Address" (p.315).

Step 3 Setting on your computer

Create a transfer destination folder on your computer and set it as a shared folder. Set write access to the shared folder.

● Setting Up the Shared Folder

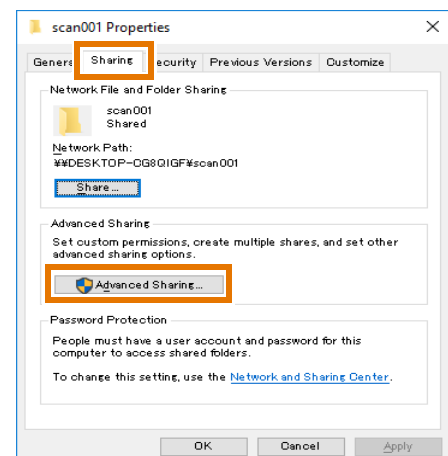
1. Anywhere on your computer, create a folder to be shared.



Note

- The created folder will be used to store scanned data.
Give the folder a name such as "scan001", using alphanumeric characters.

2. Right-click on the folder, and select [Properties].
3. Click the [Sharing] tab.
4. Click [Advanced Sharing].



5. Select the [Share this folder] check box.



Note

- Make sure that the folder name displayed in [Share Name] is the same as that of the folder you created in Step 1..

6. Click [Permissions].

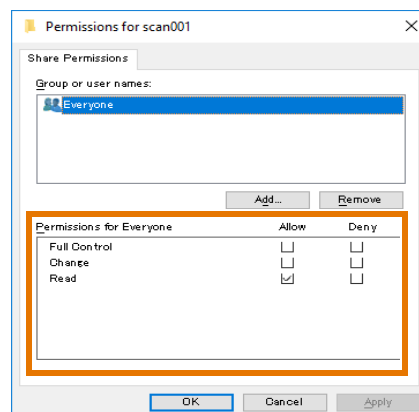
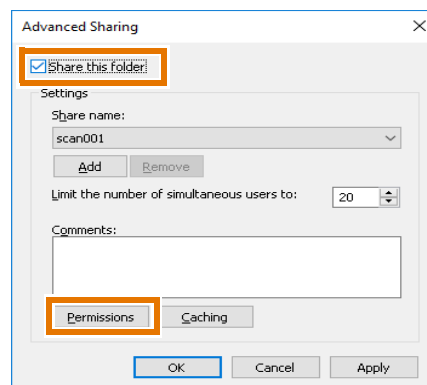
7. Set the appropriate permissions.



Note

- Set the permissions according to the security rules of your organization.

8. Click [OK].



9. Click the [Security] tab.

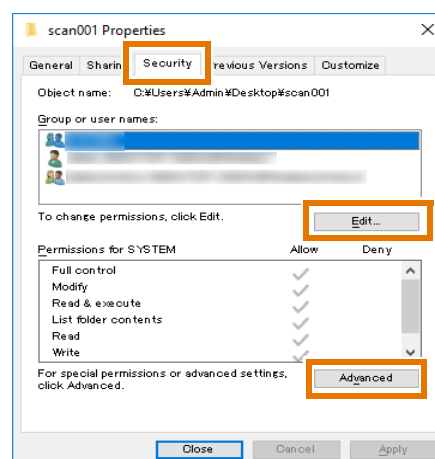
10. Click [Edit] or [Advanced], and set the appropriate permissions.



Note

- Set the permissions according to the security rules of your organization.

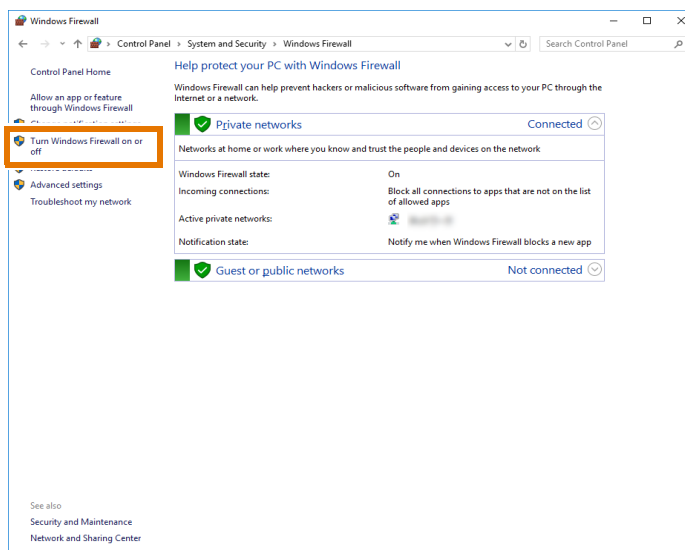
11. Click [Close].



● Configuring Windows Firewall

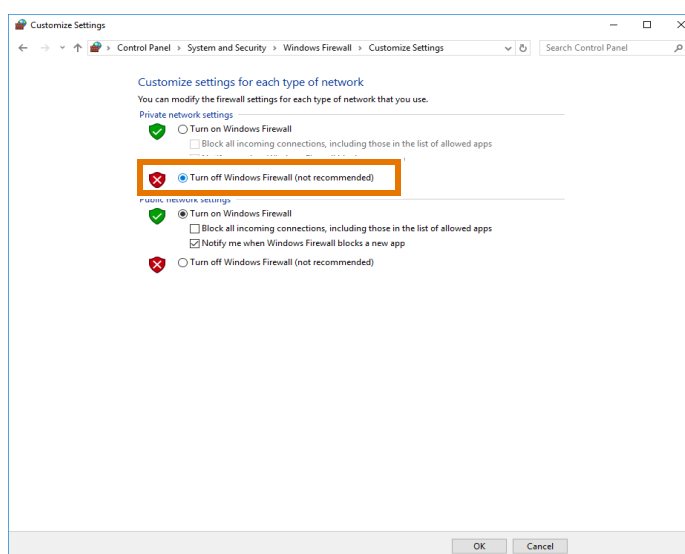
1. Display Windows Control Panel, and select > [System and Security] > [Windows Firewall].

2. Click [Turn Windows Firewall on or off].



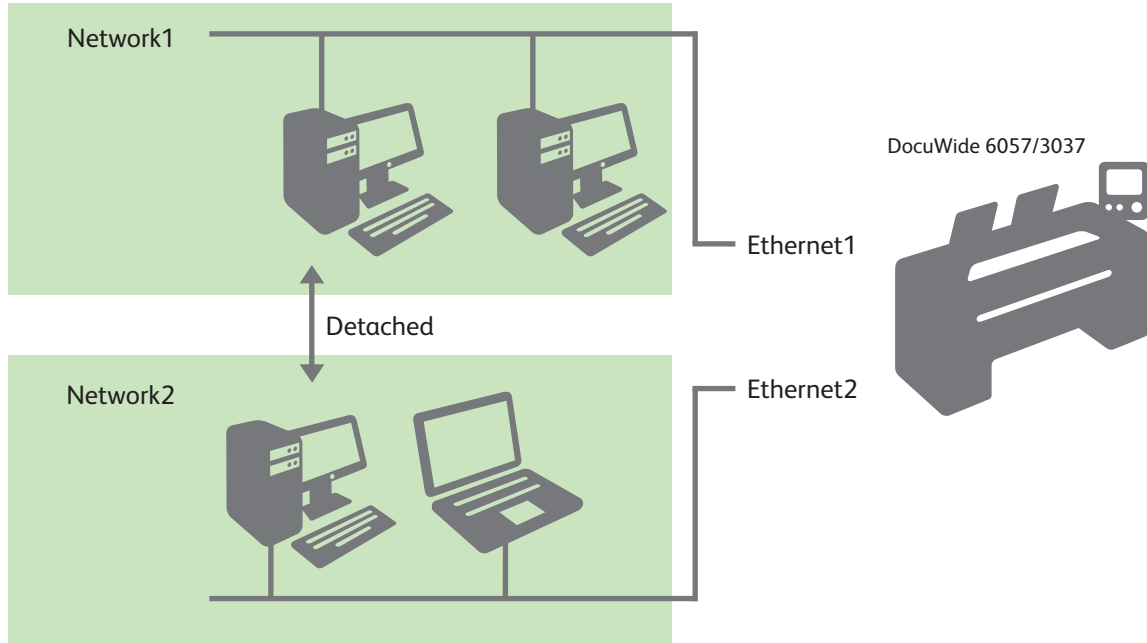
3. Under [Home or work (private) network location settings], click [Turn off Windows Firewall (not recommended)].

4. Click [OK].



9.4 Setting up the Secondary Ethernet

If you use the secondary Ethernet function, you can print in two separated network environments. Since there is no connection between Ethernet 1 and Ethernet 2, security can be maintained.



For the secondary Ethernet function, the following client software can be used.

- DocuWide Plot driver
- PostScript (PS) driver
- MacPPD



Note

- The secondary Ethernet function is available only for printing.
- Use CentreWare Internet Services for configuring the secondary Ethernet setting. Note that, however, connection from the secondary Ethernet side to CentreWare Internet Services is not available.

Notes / Restrictions on the Secondary Ethernet Function

For print jobs from the secondary Ethernet, the machine does not exit the Power Saver Mode.

- The following client software cannot be used.
 - BT-PlotAssistant
 - Network Scanner Utility 3
 - DocuWide Plot driver installer
 - Stamp tool
 - ApeosWare Management Suite
 - ArcEPS

Chapter 10 Authentication

This chapter describes the authentication features available for the machine.



Important

- While Direct Scan is in progress, the user authentication is not available.



Note

- The Smart Card Authentication feature is optional.

10.1	Overview of the Authentication Features.....	322
10.2	Authentication Features.....	323
10.3	Services Controlled by Authentication.....	325
10.4	Folder Authentication.....	326
10.5	Enabling Local Authentication.....	329
10.6	Enabling Remote Authentication	339

10.1 Overview of the Authentication Features

This section outlines the authentication features available for the machine.

Types of users

The users include the System Administrator, Login User, Unregistered User, and Local User.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "10.2.1 Authentication for Each User Types" (p.323).

Types of authentication

The machine supports two authentication types: "Login to Local Accounts" that authenticates users based on user information registered on the machine, and "Login to Remote Accounts" that authenticates users based on user information registered on a remote server.



Note

- The supported remote servers include LDAP and Authentication Management servers.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "10.2.2 Types of Authentication" (p.323).

Service based access control

Use of the machine features can be restricted on a feature basis (Copy, Scan, and Print).



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Access Control Service Access" (p.448).

User based access control

Use of the machine features can be restricted on a user basis.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "10.3 Services Controlled by Authentication" (p.325).

Creating, editing, or using the machine's folders can be restricted for individual user.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "10.4 Folder Authentication" (p.326).

10.2 Authentication Features

This section describes the authentication features that can be used with the machine.

- Authentication for Each User Types.....p.323
- Types of Authenticationp.323

10.2.1 Authentication for Each User Types

The following describes the types of users to whom machine use restrictions can be applied via the authentication feature.

Use restrictions for the machine can be applied to the four types of users, as described below.

● System Administrator

A user who can register and change system settings according to the usage environment.

The system administrator needs to use a specific user ID called a system administrator ID.

To log in to the machine as system administrator, the registered system administrator ID must be entered in the user ID entry field on the Login screen.

● Login User

A user who is registered on the machine or a remote server.

The Login users must enter the user ID and password on the Login screen in order to use restricted services.

If necessary, sub-users can be associated with a Login User's user ID, depending on the purpose. Up to 10 sub-user IDs can be associated with a single user ID.



Note

- A separate software application is required to use the sub-users function. For more information, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

● Unregistered User

A user who is not registered.

Unregistered users cannot use restricted services.

● Local User

All users other than system administrators are called "local" users when the machine's authentication is not used.

10.2.2 Types of Authentication

The following describes the types of authentication available on the machine.

The machine supports three types of authentication methods as described below.

User ID Authentication

This authentication method requires users to enter their user IDs and password on the machine's control panel.

The machine authenticates users by means of the user information registered on the machine or a remote server.

There are two types of authentication methods according to where the user information is stored.

● Login to Local Accounts

When this option is selected, the machine checks the user information registered on the machine to manage authentication.

When the machine receives print data directly from a computer, the machine checks the account information designated via the print driver on the client computer, against the account information registered on the machine to authenticate the user before accepting a job.

For information on driver settings, refer to the Help section of the driver.

● Login to Remote Accounts

With this authentication method, the machine performs authentication by querying a remote authentication server. No user information is registered to the machine.

With remote authentication, the user information maintained on the remote authentication server (Active Directory (LDAP connection) or Authentication Management server can be used) is used for authentication.



- Any user information and personal folders registered on the machine will be deleted if you change the authentication method from "Login to Local Accounts" to "Login to Remote Accounts", and vice versa.
- The user ID and password to be registered on the remote authentication server can be set using up to 32 and 128 characters, respectively.



- Active Directory supports Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2012 R2, and Windows Server 2016.
- Once authenticated by a remote authentication server, the authenticated user can access the machine features through the control panel based on user information which has been previously retrieved from the remote authentication server and stored on the machine, even if a remote authentication server is not started up. For information on how to do this, refer to "10.6.3 Saving Remote Authentication Information on the Machine" (p.341).

Smart Card Authentication

With this method, authentication is performed using the optional IC Card Reader.

Before you can use your smart card to log in to the machine, the card ID stored on the smart card must be registered to the machine or a remote authentication server.



- If you choose to use the optional IC Card Reader with the machine, consult with your local Fuji Xerox representative. For information on how to manage or use IC Card Reader, refer to the documentation provided with the device.
- Smart Card Authentication can be used with User ID Authentication.
- The smart cards are delivered with the specific card ID configured on it.
- It is not necessary to register card IDs to the machine when using Remote Authentication.

10.3 Services Controlled by Authentication

This section describes the functions that can be controlled by the machine using the authentication function. Which function can be restricted varies depending on how the machine is used.



Important

- Scan and Copy Service cannot be restricted. When [Login Type] is set to [Login to Local Accounts] or [Login to Remote Accounts], [Scan and Copy Service] does not appear on the menu screen and cannot be used.



Note

- For information on restrictions applied folders when the Authentication feature is enabled, refer to "10.4 Folder Authentication" (p.326).



Refer

- For details about [Login Type], refer to "Login Type" (p.447).

When [Login Type] is [Login to Local Accounts]

Service	User based access control ^{*1}
Copy	Yes
Print	Yes
Scan	Yes

Yes: Available

^{*1} Indicates the service can be restricted on a user basis. For more information, refer to "Create User Account" (p.449).

When [Login Type] is [Login to Remote Accounts]

Service	User based access control ^{*1}
Copy	Yes
Print ^{*2}	Yes
Scan	Yes

Yes: Available

^{*1} The restriction is available on a feature basis if you are using Authentication Management as the authentication system. For information on Authentication Management, refer to the documentation provided with the application.

^{*2} Authentication is not required for print operations.

10.4 Folder Authentication

This section describes the restriction that are applied to folders when the Authentication feature is enabled.

- Overviewp.326
- When Authentication is Disabledp.326
- When Authentication is Enabled.....p.328

10.4.1 Overview

There are three types of folders available when you work with the machine.

- General shared folder
A folder created by a local user when the Authentication feature is disabled.
- Administrator shared folder
A folder created by the system administrator.
To create an administrator shared folder, press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel to log in to the machine as the system administrator.
- Personal folder
A folder created by a login user when the Authentication feature is enabled.

The types of folders users can create and use vary depending on whether the Authentication feature is enabled or not, as shown in the table below.

Type of Folder	When Authentication is Disabled			When Authentication is Enabled		
	Create	Edit/Delete	Use* ¹	Create	Edit/Delete	Use* ¹
General shared folder	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	(Yes)	(Yes)
Administrator shared folder	(Yes)	(Yes)	Yes	(Yes)	(Yes)	Yes
Personal folder	No	No	(Yes)	Yes	Yes	Yes

Yes - Available, No - Not available, (Yes) - Available to the System Administrator only

*¹ Viewing folders, and viewing, deleting, registering, and outputting files

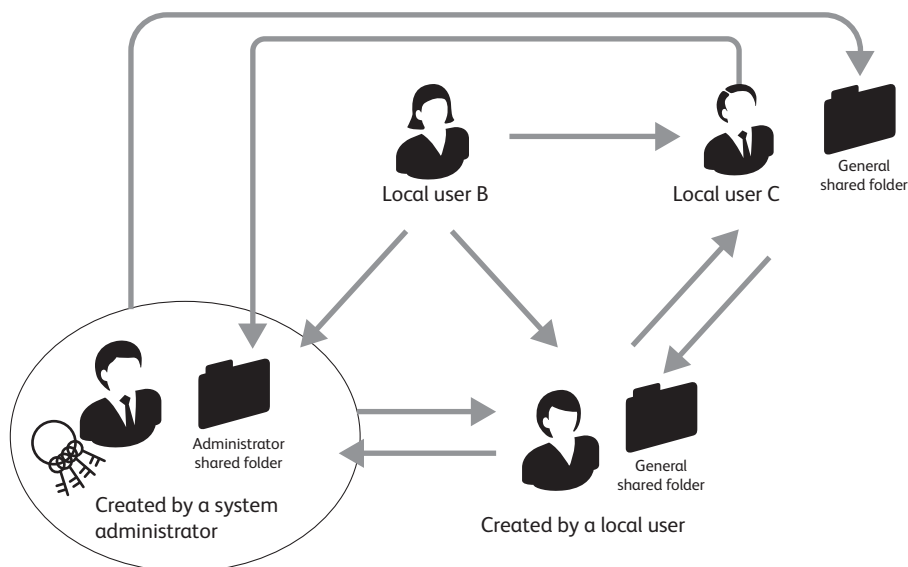
10.4.2 When Authentication is Disabled

The following describes the types of folders available with the machine when the Authentication feature is disabled.

- General shared folder
All users who use the machine can share this type of folders and change the settings.
- Administrator shared folder
All users who use the machine can share this type of folders.
Only the system administrator can change the settings.

- Personal folder

Only the system administrator can create this type of folders and change the settings.



The table below lists the types of folders that each of the user types can use when the Authentication feature is disabled.

Folder Operation	Local User			System Administrator		
	General Shared Folder	Administrator Shared Folder	Personal Folder	General Shared Folder	Administrator Shared Folder	Personal Folder
Create/Register	Yes	No	No	No	Yes	No
View	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Delete	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Change settings	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
View files	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Delete files	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Register files	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Output files	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Yes: Available No: Not available



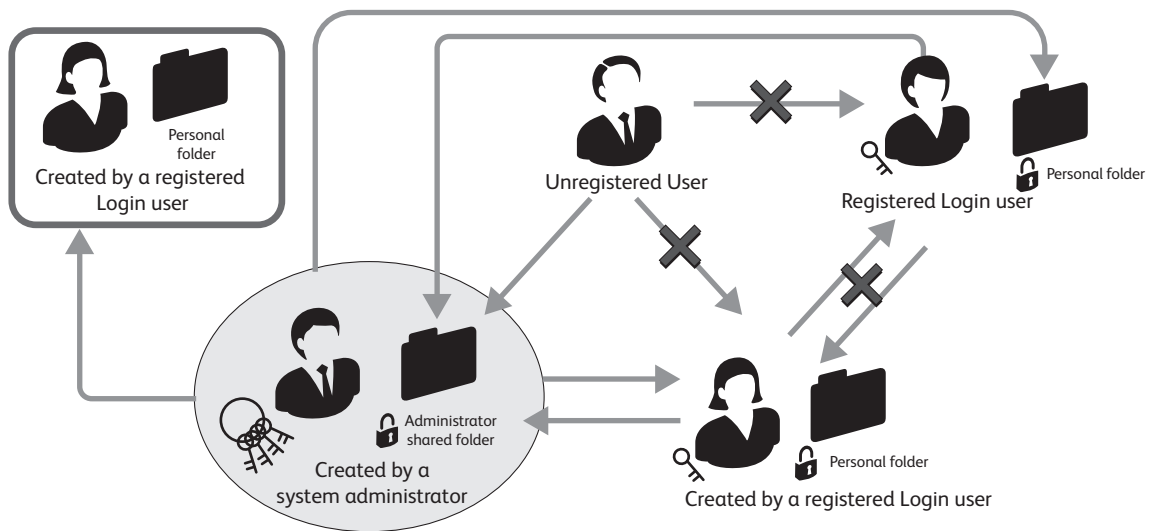
Note

- If you change the machine authentication setting from enabled to disabled, local users will no longer be able to use any personal folders created by login users. In such a case, first delete all personal folders and then create a new General Shared folder.

10.4.3 When Authentication is Enabled

The following describes the types of folders available with the machine when the Authentication feature is enabled.

- **General shared folder**
Only the system administrator can create this type of folders and change the settings.
- **Administrator shared folder**
All Login users who use the machine can share this type of folders.
Only the system administrator can change the settings.
- **Personal folder**
Only the login user who created the folder and the system administrator can use the given Personal folder.



The table below lists the types of folders that each of the user types can use when the Authentication feature is enabled.

Folder Operation	Unregistered User (Local User)			Login User			System Administrator		
	General Shared Folder	Adminis-trator Shared Folder	Personal Folder	General Shared Folder	Adminis-trator Shared Folder	Personal Folder (Owner/ (Non-owner)	General Shared Folder	Adminis-trator Shared Folder	Personal Folder
Create/Register	No	No	No	No	No	Yes/No	No	Yes	No
View	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes/No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Delete	No	No	No	No	No	Yes/No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Change settings	No	No	No	No	No	Yes/No	Yes	Yes	Yes
View files	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes/No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Delete files	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes/No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Register files	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes/No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Output files	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes/No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Yes: Available No: Not available



Note

- If you change the machine authentication setting from disabled to enabled, Unregistered and Login users will no longer be able to use any General Shared folders.
In such a case, first delete all personal folders and then create a new General Shared folder.

10.5 Enabling Local Authentication

This section describes how to make settings to use the machine with local authentication.
Refer to these subsections for more information on each step.

- Set the Authentication Method to "Local Authentication"p.329
- Setting Access Restrictionp.331
- Registering a Userp.331
- Batch Registering Usersp.332

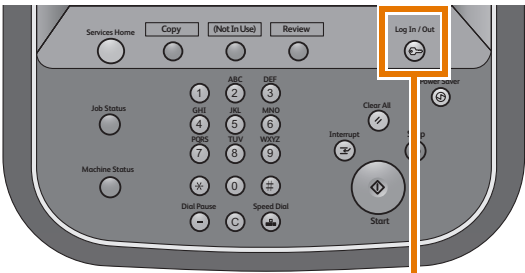
10.5.1 Set the Authentication Method to "Local Authentication"

To use the machine with local authentication, set the authentication method to "Login to Local Accounts".

 **Important**

- Any user information and personal folders registered on the machine will be deleted If you change authentication method from "Login to Remote Accounts" to "Login to Local Accounts".

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.

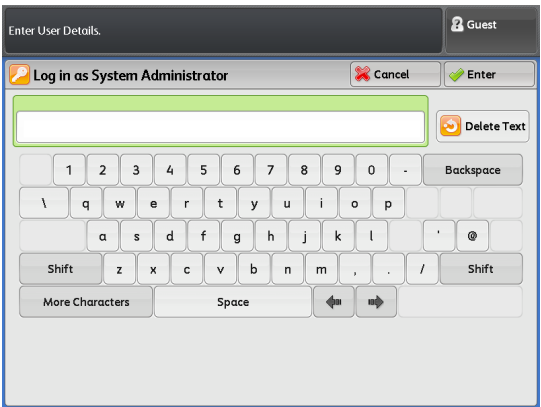


<Log In/Out> button

2. Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].

 **Note**

- For information on how to enter the Administration mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

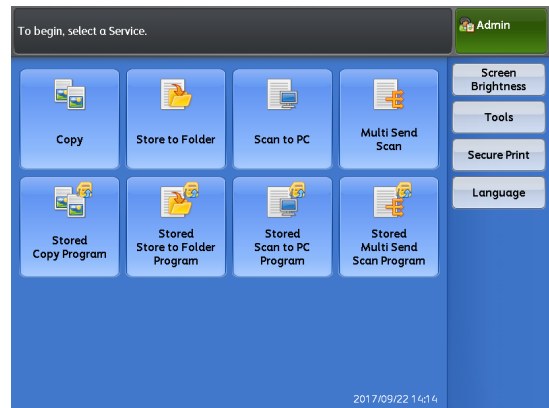


3. On the menu screen, press [Tools].

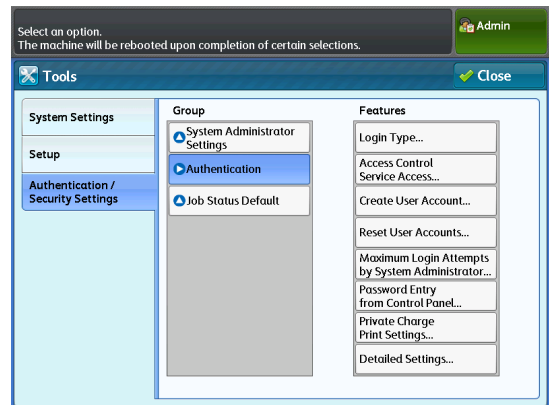


Note

- Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel to display the menu screen, if not yet displayed.



4. Press [Authentication / Security Settings] > [Authentication] > [Login Type].



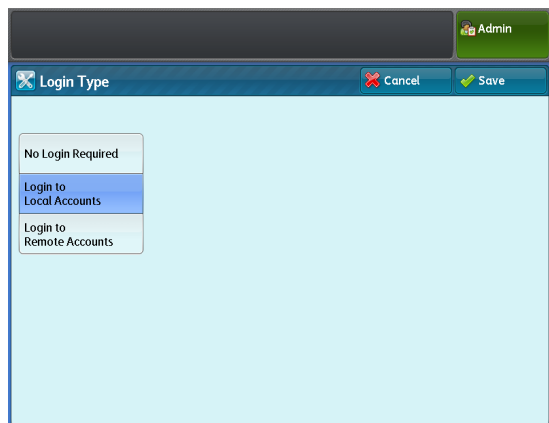
5. Press [Login to Local Accounts].



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Login Type" (p.447).

6. Press [Save].



10.5.2 Setting Access Restriction

The following describes how to restrict access to certain features.

1. Press [Authentication / Security Settings] > [Authentication] > [Access Control Service Access].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].



- For more information, refer to "Access Control Service Access" (p.448).

Items	Current Settings
1. Copy	Locked
2. Store to Folder	Locked
3. Scan to PC	Locked
4. Multi Send Scan	Locked
5. Print	Locked

10.5.3 Registering a User

The following describes how to register uses.

Up to 999 user data can be registered.

1. Press [Authentication / Security Settings] > [Authentication] > [Create User Account].
2. Select the user number that you want to register.



- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific user number at the top, enter that number in [Go to].

User ID	User Name
001. User01	User01
002. <Available>	
003. <Available>	
004. <Available>	
005. <Available>	
006. <Available>	
007. <Available>	
008. <Available>	

3. Select and set the desired items.



- For more information, refer to "Create User Account" (p.449).

4. After completing the settings, press [Close].

Items	Current Settings
1. User ID	User01
2. User Name	User01
3. Password	*****
4. Feature Access - Copy	Free Access
5. Feature Access - Scan	Free Access
6. Feature Access - Print	Free Access

10.5.4 Batch Registering Users

CentreWare Internet Services allows you to export Login user information registered to the machine as a CSV format (comma-delimited) file. You can edit the exported CSV file to add/modify/delete login user accounts, then go back to CentreWare Internet Services to register the accounts to the machine at one time.

Refer to these subsections for more information on each step.

- CSV File Format p.332
- Step 1 Exporting Login user information p.333
- Step 2 Editing Login user information p.334
- Step 3 Registering Login user information p.336



- If you choose to batch register login user accounts from a CSV file, please note that all the registered login user accounts are erased from the machine memory before the batch registration process begins.

CSV File Format

The following describes the CSV format that the system uses.



- You must use comma (,) characters as column delimiters in the CSV file. Tab characters cannot be used.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
1	USER001	passwd001	User001	A	A	A							
2	USER002	passwd002	User002	A	A	A							
3	USER003	passwd003	User003	A	A	A							
4	USER004	passwd004	User004	A	A	A							
5	USER005	passwd005	User005	A	A	A							
6	USER006	passwd006	User006	A	N	N							
7	USER007	passwd007	User007	A	N	N							
8	USER008	passwd008	User008	A	N	N							
9	USER009	passwd009	User009	A	N	N							
10	USER010	passwd010	User010	A	N	N							
11	USER011	passwd011	User011	N	N	A							
12	USER012	passwd012	User012	N	N	A							
13	USER013	passwd013	User013	N	N	A							
14	USER014	passwd014	User014	N	N	A							
15	USER015	passwd015	User015	N	N	A							

```

USER001,passwd001>User001,A,A,A
USER002,passwd002>User002,A,A,A
USER003,passwd003>User003,A,A,A
USER004,passwd004>User004,A,A,A
USER005,passwd005>User005,A,A,A
USER006,passwd006>User006,A,A,A
USER007,passwd007>User007,A,A,A
USER008,passwd008>User008,A,A,A
USER009,passwd009>User009,A,A,A
USER010,passwd010>User010,A,A,A
USER011,passwd011>User011,N,N,A
USER012,passwd012>User012,N,N,A
USER013,passwd013>User013,N,N,A
USER014,passwd014>User014,N,N,A
USER015,passwd015>User015,N,N,A
  
```

Column	Item	Description
1	User ID	The user ID used to identify the user. When Smart Card Authentication is enabled, the machine checks the user ID against the card ID read via a IC Card Reader. The user ID can be up to 32 characters. Important • The following characters cannot be used for the User ID: " + ; < > ? [] ' { } If a field contains a comma character, it must be surrounded by double-quote characters (").
2	Password	Set the password. The password can be 4 to 12 characters.
3	User name	Set the user ID. The user name can be up to 32 characters.
4	Access control to the Copy feature	Select [Free Access] or [No Access to Copy Service]. Free Access: Enter "A" or "a". No Access to Copy Service: Enter "N" or "n".

Column	Item	Description
5	Access control to the Print feature	Select [Free Access] or [No Access to Print Service]. Free Access: Enter "A" or "a". No Access to Print Service: Enter "N" or "n".
6	Access control to the Scan feature	Select [Free Access] or [No Access to Scan Service]. Free Access: Enter "A" or "a". No Access to Scan Service: Enter "N" or "n".

Step 1 Exporting Login user information

The following describes how to use CentreWare Internet Services to export Login user information registered to the machine as a CSV file.



Note • Among the Login user information, passwords cannot be exported.

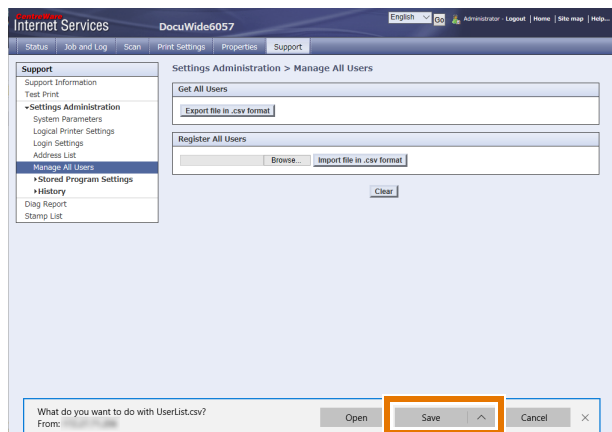
1. Start your web browser.
2. Enter the machine's IP address or Internet address in the browser address field, and press the <Enter> key.
 - IP address entry example
Example - http://192.168.0.101
 - Internet address entry example (When the machine's Internet address is myhost.example.com)
Example - http://myhost.example.com
3. Fill in the [User ID] and [Password] fields, and click [Login].



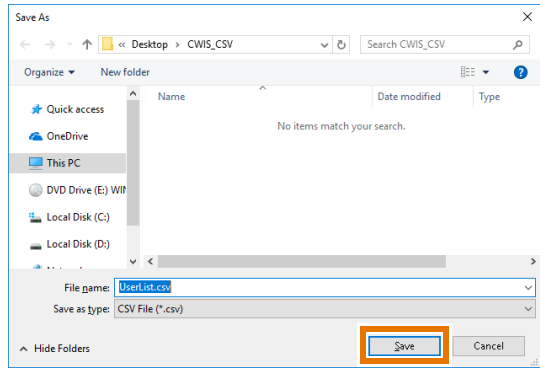
Note • By factory default, the User ID is "11111", and the password is "x-admin".

4. Select [Support] > [Settings Administration] > [Manage All Users].
5. Click [Export file in .csv format].

6. Click [Save].



7. Select where to save the file, enter a file name, and click [Save].



The CSV file containing Login user information is saved in the specified location.

Step 2 Editing Login user information

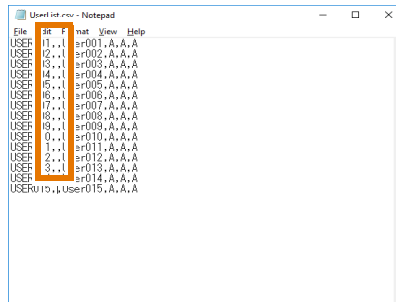
The following describes how to use Microsoft® Excel® or a text editor in order to edit the CSV file containing Login user information exported from the machine to add/modify/delete login user accounts.

1. Open the CSV file that contains the exported Login user information in Microsoft Excel or a text editor.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
1	USER001	User001	A	A	A								
2	USER002	User002	A	A	A								
3	USER003	User003	A	A	A								
4	USER004	User004	A	A	A								
5	USER005	User005	A	A	A								
6	USER006	User006	A	N	N								
7	USER007	User007	A	N	N								
8	USER008	User008	A	N	N								
9	USER009	User009	A	N	N								
10	USER010	User010	A	N	N								
11	USER011	User011	N	N	A								
12	USER012	User012	N	N	A								
13	USER013	User013	N	N	A								
14	USER014	User014	N	N	A								
15	USER015	User015	N	N	A								



- Since no password can be exported from among the Login user information, the second column "Password" in the CSV file appears blank in Microsoft Excel. (In a text editor, the delimiter appears in the second column, resulting in two consecutive comma (,) characters.)



- Login users whose password field is blank in the CSV file will be registered as described below.
 - Existing Login user
The current password registered on the machine will be retained. (Password will no be changed.)
 - Added Login user
A new Login user without password assigned will be registered.

User account database on
DocuWide 6057/3037 (before editing)

User ID	Password
USER001	passwd001
USER002	passwd002
USER003	passwd003

Retrieve

Existing user accounts

	B	C	D	E	F	G
1 USER001		User001	A	A	A	
2 USER002		User002	A	A	A	
3 USER003		User003	A	A	A	
4 USER004		User004	A	A	A	
5						

User account to be added

Register

User account database on
DocuWide 6057/3037 (after editing)

User ID	Password
USER001	passwd001
USER002	passwd002
USER003	passwd003
USER004	- None -

2. Edit Login user information.

- Adding Login user accountsp.335
- Modifying Login user accountsp.336
- Deleting Login user accountsp.336

Adding Login user accounts

- (1) Add new Login users at the bottom of the listing of registered Login users.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	USER001		User001	A	A	A	
2	USER002		User002	A	A	A	
3	USER003		User003	A	A	A	
4	USER004		User004	A	A	A	
5	USER005		User005	A	A	A	
6	USER006		User006	A	N	N	
7	USER007		User007	A	N	N	
8	USER008		User008	A	N	N	
9	USER009		User009	A	N	N	
10	USER010		User010	A	N	N	
11	USER011		User011	N	N	A	
12	USER012		User012	N	N	A	
13	USER013		User013	N	N	A	
14	USER014		User014	N	N	A	
15							
16							
17							
18							
19							

Adding

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	USER001		User001	A	A	A	
2	USER002		User002	A	A	A	
3	USER003		User003	A	A	A	
4	USER004		User004	A	A	A	
5	USER005		User005	A	A	A	
6	USER006		User006	A	N	N	
7	USER007		User007	A	N	N	
8	USER008		User008	A	N	N	
9	USER009		User009	A	N	N	
10	USER010		User010	A	N	N	
11	USER011		User011	N	N	A	
12	USER012		User012	N	N	A	
13	USER013		User013	N	N	A	
14	USER014		User014	N	N	A	
15							
16	USER016	passwd016	User016	N	N	A	
17	USER017	passwd017	User017	N	N	A	
18							
19							

Modifying Login user accounts

(1) Overwrite to modify the listings.

Modifying

A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	USER001	User001	A	A	A	
2	USER002	User002	A	A	A	
3	USER003	User003	A	A	A	
4	USER004	User004				
5	USER005	User005	A	A	A	
6	USER006	User006	A	N	N	
7	USER007	User007	A	N	N	
8	USER008	User008	A	N	N	
9	USER009	User009	A	N	N	
10	USER010	User010	A	N	N	
11	USER011	User011	N	N	A	
12	USER012	User012	N	N	A	
13	USER013	User013	N	N	A	
14	USER014	User014	N	N	A	
15	USER015	User015	N	N	A	

A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	USER001	User001	N	N	N	
2	USER002	User002	N	N	N	
3	USER003	User003	N	N	N	
4	USER004	User004				
5	USER005	User005	A	A	A	
6	USER006	User006	A	N	N	
7	USER007	User007	A	N	N	
8	USER008	User008	A	N	N	
9	USER009	User009	A	N	N	
10	USER010	PASS010	ser010	A	N	N
11	USER011	PASS011	ser011	N	N	A
12	USER012	PASS012	ser012	N	N	A
13	USER013	User013	N	N	A	
14	USER014	User014	N	N	A	
15	USER015	User015	N	N	A	

Deleting Login user accounts

(1) Delete the lines for the accounts you want to remove.

Deleting

A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	USER001	User001	A	A	A	
2	USER002	User002	A	A	A	
3	USER003	User003	A	A	A	
4	USER004	User004	A	A	A	
5	USER005	User005	A	A	A	
6	USER006	User006	A	N	N	
7	USER007	User007	A	N	N	
8	USER008	User008	A	N	N	
9						
10	USER010	User010	A	N	N	
11	USER011	User011	N	N	A	
12	USER012	User012	N	N	A	
13						
14	USER014	User014	N	N	A	
15	USER015	User015	N	N	A	

A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	USER001	User001	A	A	A	
2	USER002	User002	A	A	A	
3	USER003	User003	A	A	A	
4	USER004	User004	A	A	A	
5	USER005	User005	A	A	A	
6	USER006	User006	A	N	N	
7	USER007	User007	A	N	N	
8						
9	USER009	User009	A	N	N	
10						
11	USER013	User013	N	N	A	
12	USER015	User015	N	N	A	
13						
14						
15						
16						
17						
18						
19						

- Save the CSV file you have edited.
The CSV file to be used for user registration is saved.

Step 3 Registering Login user information

The following describes how to use CentreWare Internet Services to register Login user information from the edited CSV file to the machine.



- Registration from the CSV file must be performed when the machine is not working.



- You need to reboot the machine after completing registration of Login user information.

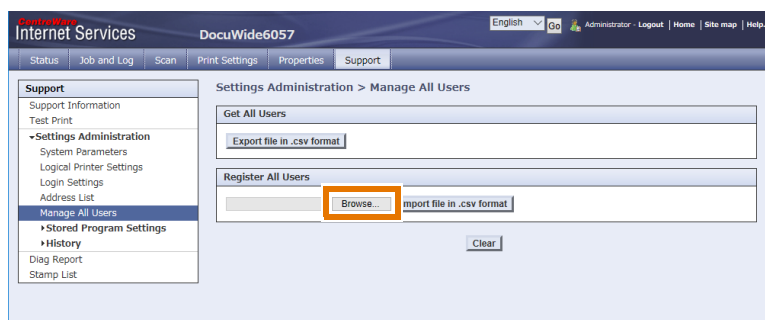
- Log in to CentreWare Internet Services.



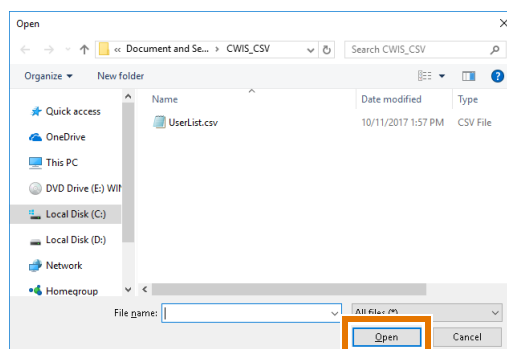
- For information on how to log in to CentreWare Internet Services, refer to Steps 1. to 3. in "Step 1 Exporting Login user information" (p.333).

- Select [Support] > [Settings Administration] > [Manage All Users].

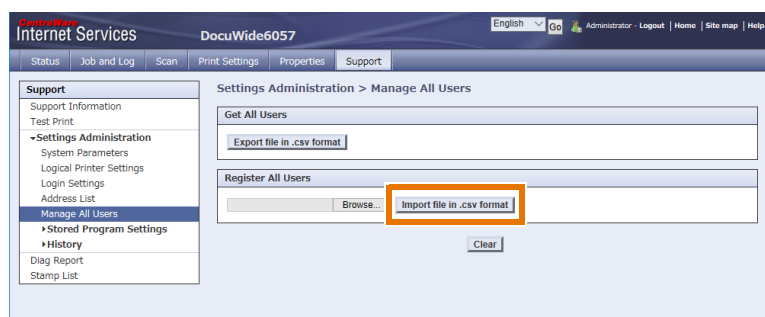
- Click [Browse].



- Select the CSV file in which you edited Login user information, and click [Open].

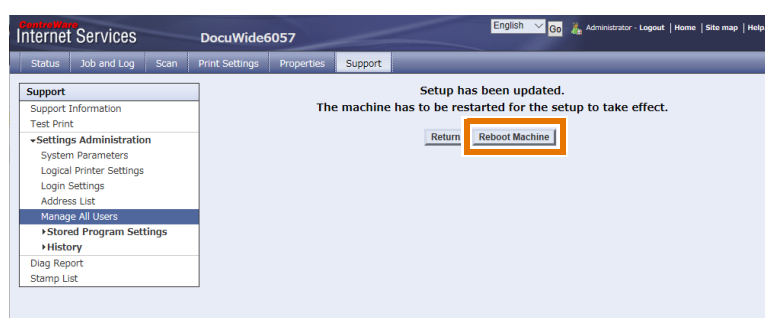


- Click [Import file in .csv format].



When the Login users registration completes, the message "Setup has been updated." is displayed.

- Press [Reboot Machine] to reboot the machine.



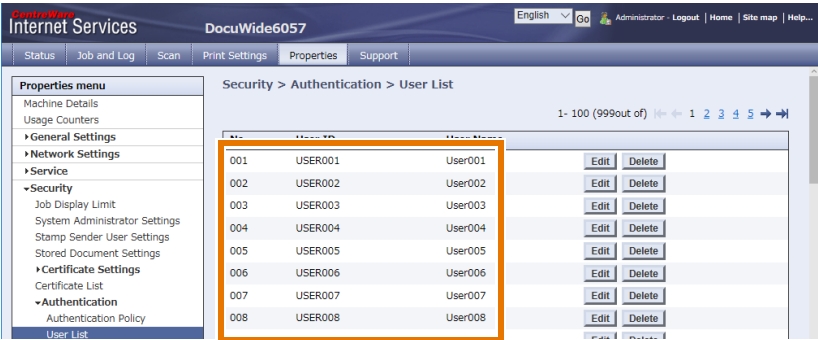
- To display Login user information you have registered, log in to CentreWare Internet Services and select [Properties] > [Security] > [Authentication] > [User List].

8. Check that the user list contains Login user information as you expect.



Note

- Login user information registered to the machine can be changed using CentreWare Internet Services. For information on how to do this, refer to the Help section of CentreWare Internet Services.



10.6 Enabling Remote Authentication

This section describes how to make settings to use the machine with remote authentication.
Refer to these subsections for more information on each step.

- Set the Authentication Method to "Login to Remote Accounts"p.339
- Setting Access Restrictionp.340
- Saving Remote Authentication Information on the Machine.....p.341
- Configuring the Authentication Server.....p.342

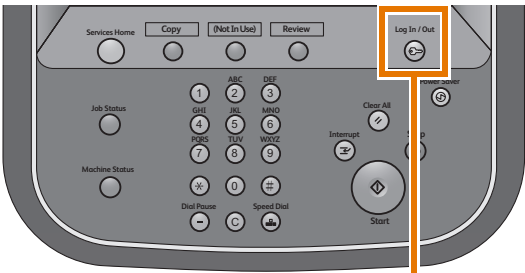
10.6.1 Set the Authentication Method to "Login to Remote Accounts"

To use the machine with remote authentication, set the authentication method to "Login to Remote Accounts".

 **Important**

- Any user information and personal folders registered on the machine will be deleted If you change authentication method from "Login to Local Accounts" to "Login to Remote Accounts".

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.

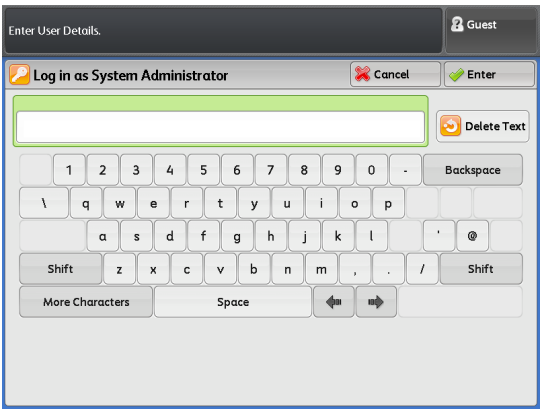


<Log In/Out> button

2. Enter the User ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].

 **Note**

- For information on how to enter the Administration mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

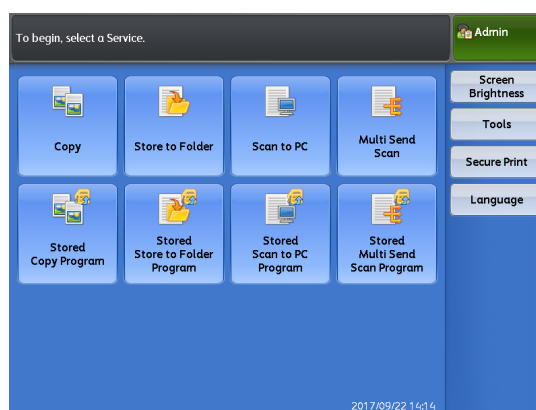


3. On the menu screen, press [Tools].

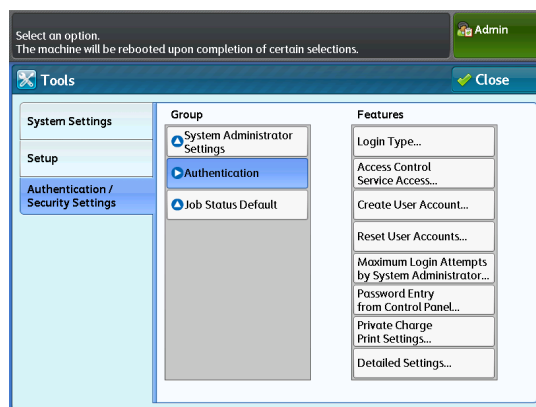


Note

- Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel to display the menu screen, if not yet displayed.



4. Press [Authentication / Security Settings] > [Authentication] > [Login Type].



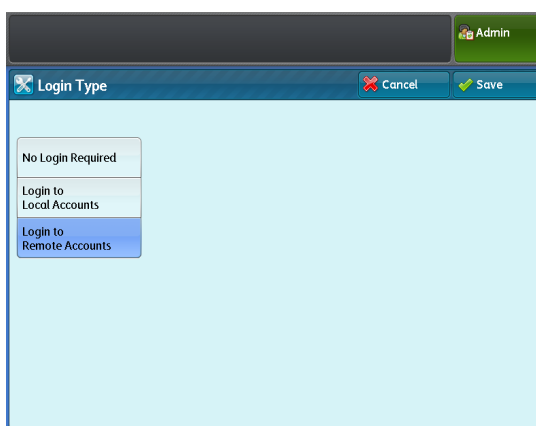
5. Press [Login to Remote Accounts].



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Login Type" (p.447).

6. Press [Save].



10.6.2 Setting Access Restriction

The following describes how to restrict access to certain features.

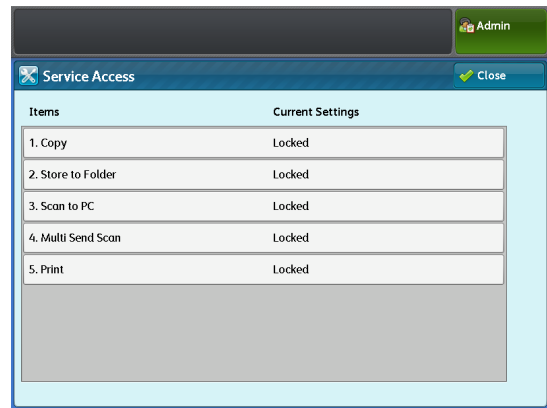
1. Press [Authentication / Security Settings] > [Authentication] > [Access Control Service Access].

2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Access Control Service Access" (p.448).



10.6.3 Saving Remote Authentication Information on the Machine

The following describes how to enable saving user information that was used for remote authentication to the machine.

1. Press [Authentication / Security Settings] > [Authentication] > [User Details Setup] > [Save remote accounts in this machine].
2. Select [Disabled] not to allow the machine to save remote authentication information to it or [Enabled] to allow the machine to save it.



Note

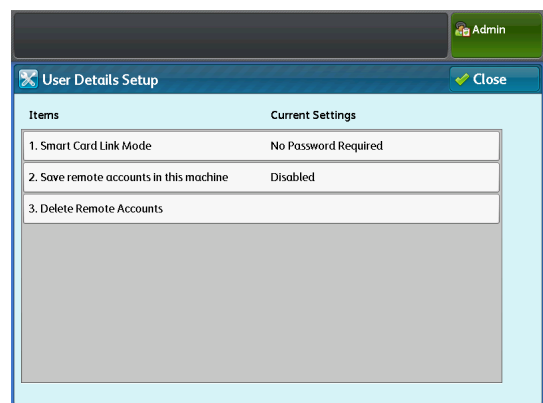
- If you do not want the machine to save user information that was used for remote authentication, be sure to select [Disabled].



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Save remote accounts in this machine" (p.451).

3. Press [Close].



10

Authentication

Deleting remote authentication information stored on the machine

The following describes how to delete user information stored on the machine, which was saved at remote authentication.

1. Press [Authentication / Security Settings] > [Authentication] > [User Details Setup] > [Delete Remote Accounts].
2. Select [Manual Execution].

10.6.4 Configuring the Authentication Server

The following describes how to configure the authentication server via CentreWare Internet Services.



- You need to reboot the machine after completing configuration of the authentication server.

The parameters you need to configure depends on which authentication server you are using.

For the setting procedure, refer to these subsections.

- Configuring Active Directory p.342
- Configuring Authentication Management p.345

Configuring Active Directory

The following describes how to configure the parameters of the authentication server (Active Directory).



- When you are using Active Directory as authentication server, LDAP authentication must be used as the authentication method.



Refer

- For information on items available on CentreWare Internet Services, refer to the Help section of CentreWare Internet Services.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Enter the machine's IP address or Internet address in the browser address field, and press the <Enter> key.
 - IP address entry example
Example - http://192.168.0.101
 - Internet address entry example (When the machine's Internet address is myhost.example.com)
Example - http://myhost.example.com
3. Fill in the [User ID] and [Password] fields, and click [Login].

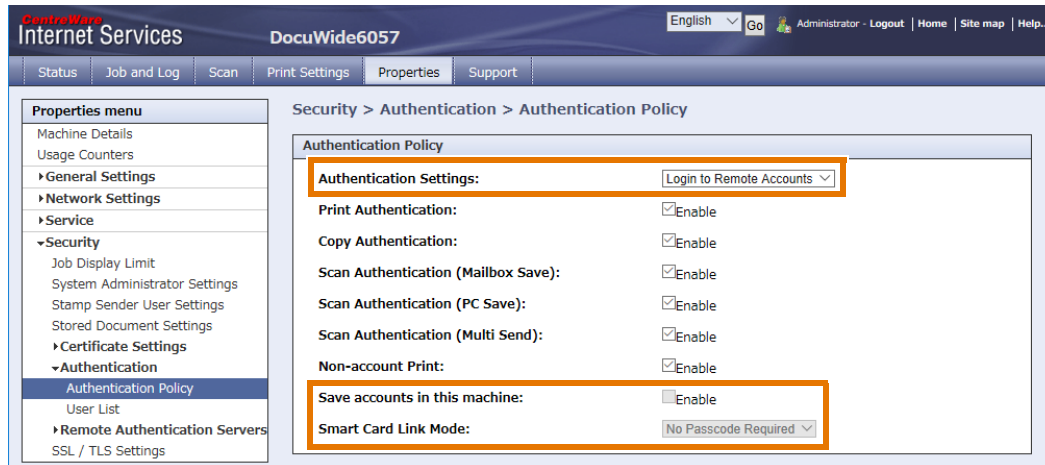


- By factory default, the User ID is "11111", and the password is "x-admin".

4. Set up the authentication server.
Refer to the following setup procedures:
 - Authentication Policy p.343
 - Authentication System p.343
 - LDAP Server / Directory Service p.343
 - LDAP Authentication p.344
 - Custom Filters p.344
 - SSL / TLS Settings p.345

Authentication Policy

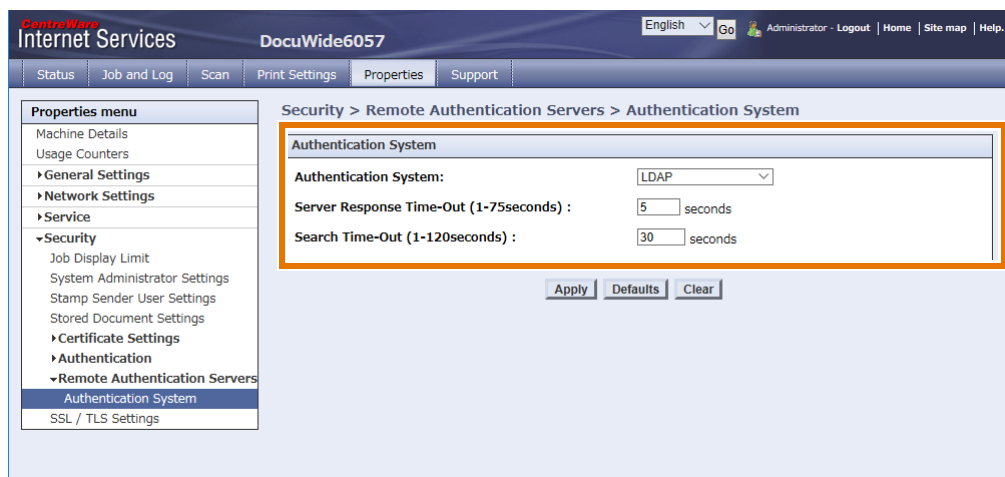
- (1) Select [Properties] > [Security] > [Authentication] > [Authentication Policy].
- (2) Select [Login to Remote Accounts] for [Authentication Settings].
- (3) Set each of the other items indicated in the rectangle in the figure below.



- (4) Click [Apply].

Authentication System

- (1) Select [Properties] > [Security] > [Remote Authentication Servers] > [Authentication System].
- (2) Select [LDAP] for [Authentication System].
- (3) Set each of other items indicated in the rectangle in the figure below.



- (4) Click [Apply].

LDAP Server / Directory Service

- (1) Select [Properties] > [Network Settings] > [Protocol Settings] > [LDAP] > [LDAP Server].

- (2) Set each of items indicated in the rectangle in the figure below.

CentraWare Internet Services DocuWide6057

English Go Administrator - Logout Home Site map Help...

Status Job and Log Scan Print Settings Properties Support

Properties menu

- Machine Details
- Usage Counters
- General Settings
- Network Settings
 - Port Status
 - Port Settings
 - Protocol Settings
 - TCP/IP
 - SMB
 - SNMP
 - LPR/LPD
 - FTP
 - LDAP
 - LDAP Server
 - LDAP Authentication
 - Restrict Access to Services
 - Custom Filters
 - HTTP
 - WebDAV
- Service
- Security

Network Settings > Protocol Settings > LDAP > LDAP Server

LDAP Server

Primary Server Name / IP Address:

Primary Server Port Number (1-65535) :

Secondary Server Name / IP Address:

Secondary Server Port Number (1-65535) :

Search Directory Root:

Login Name:

Password:

Retype Password:

LDAP Referrals: ☐ Enable

LDAP Referral Hop Limit (1-5) :

Apply Defaults Clear

- (3) Click [Apply].

LDAP Authentication

- (1) Select [Properties] > [Network Settings] > [Protocol Settings] > [LDAP] > [LDAP Authentication].
- (2) Set each of items indicated in the figure below.

CentraWare Internet Services DocuWide6057

English Go Administrator - Logout Home Site map Help...

Status Job and Log Scan Print Settings Properties Support

Properties menu

- Machine Details
- Usage Counters
- General Settings
- Network Settings
 - Port Status
 - Port Settings
 - Protocol Settings
 - TCP/IP
 - SMB
 - SNMP
 - LPR/LPD
 - FTP
 - LDAP
 - LDAP Server
 - LDAP Authentication
 - Restrict Access to Services
 - Custom Filters
 - HTTP
 - WebDAV
- Service
- Security

Network Settings > Protocol Settings > LDAP > LDAP Authentication

LDAP Authentication

Authentication Method:

Attribute of Typed User Name:

Attribute of Login User Name:

Network User ID Attribute:

Attribute of Smart Card:

Use Added Text String:

Text String Added to User Name:

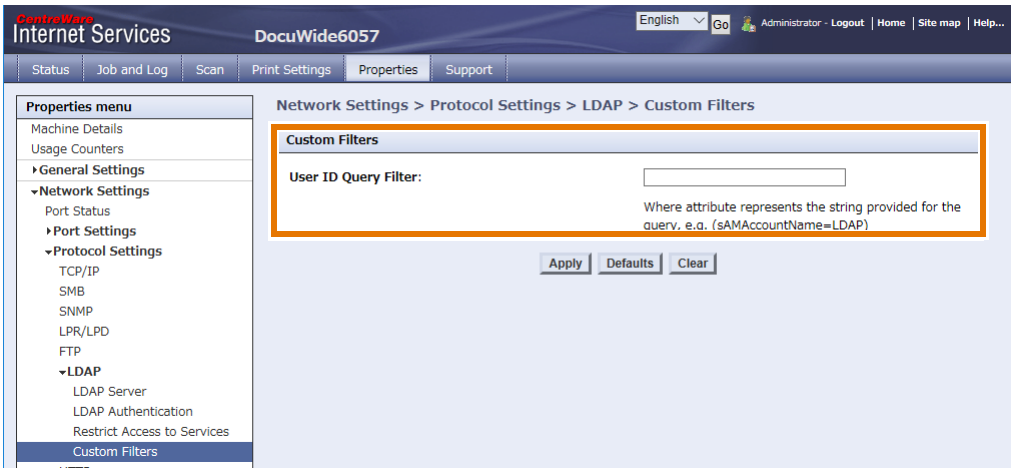
Apply Defaults Clear

- (3) Click [Apply].

Custom Filters

- (1) Select [Properties] > [Network Settings] > [Protocol Settings] > [LDAP] > [Custom Filters].

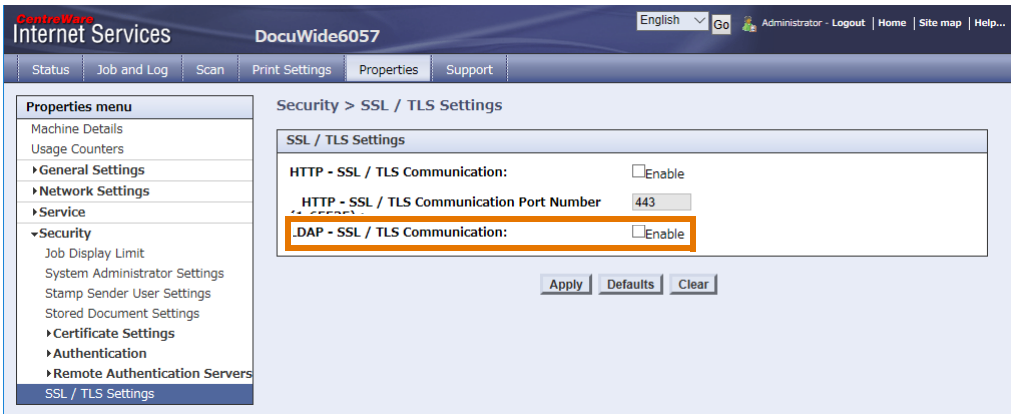
(2) Set the filter in [User ID Query Filter].



(3) Click [Apply].

SSL / TLS Settings

- (1) Select [Properties] > [Security] > [SSL / TLS Settings].
- (2) Make setting for [LDAP - SSL / TLS Communication].



(3) Click [Apply].

5. Reboot the machine.

Configuring Authentication Management

The following describes how to configure the parameters of the authentication server (Authentication Management).

When using Authentication Management, you need to configure the settings on both the machine and Authentication Management.

For the setting procedure, refer to these subsections.

- Configuration on Authentication Management.....p.346
- Setup procedure on the machine.....p.347

Configuration on Authentication Management

The following gives an overview of how to configure Authentication Management.



Refer

- For detailed instructions, refer to "ApeosWare Management Suite Administrator Guide for Identity Management / Common Settings / Device Management.

1. Login to the ApeosWare Management Suite.

2. Set up ApeosWare Management.

Refer to the following setup procedures:

- Step 1 Setting device information to device groupsp.346
- Step 2 Adding usersp.346
- Step 3 Adding sub-usersp.346
- Step 4 Adding users to a device groupp.347
- Step 5 Updating Devicesp.347

Step 1 Setting device information to device groups

Add DocuWide 6057/3037 to device groups by following the steps below.

- (1) From the menu, select [Management Service] > [Device/User] > [Device List].
- (2) On the [Device Group] portlet, click the desired device group.
- (3) Click [Add Device].
- (4) Select [Specify and add IP address/host name directly], and click [Next].
- (5) On the [Basic Information] tab, enter the IP address or host name of your DocuWide 6057/3037 in [IP Address/Host Name].
- (6) In [Device Name], enter the device name used within Device Management.
To enter the device name (for device settings), deselect the [Retrieve from Device] check box.
- (7) Set other items as necessary.
- (8) Click [Add].
DocuWide 6057/3037 is added to the device group.

Step 2 Adding users

Add users who will be remotely authenticated, by following the steps below.

- (1) From the menu, select [Management Service] > [Identity Management] > [Users/Groups].
- (2) On the [User Group] portlet, click [local].
- (3) Click [Add User].
- (4) On the [Basic Information] tab, fill in each of the following items: [User ID], [User Name], [Card ID], [Password], and [Confirm Password].
- (5) Set other items as necessary.
- (6) Click [OK].
The user is added.

Step 3 Adding sub-users

To use the sub-user feature, add sub-users to a user.



Note

- When you add one or more sub-users to a user, the user is treated as the main user.

- (1) From the menu, select [Management Service] > [Identity Management] > [Users/Groups].
- (2) On the [User Group] portlet, click [local].
- (3) Select the check box for the user to whom sub-users are to be added, and click [Edit].
- (4) Click the [Details] tab.
- (5) Click [Sub User Settings].
- (6) Click [Add From User List].
- (7) Fill in [Search Target], [Search Condition], and [Keyword] as necessary, and click [Search].
- (8) Select the check box for the user to be added as sub-user, and click [OK].
- (9) Set other items as necessary.
- (10) On the [Edit User] page, click [OK].

The selected sub-user is added to the user.

Step 4 Adding users to a device group

Add users who will be remotely authenticated to a device group, by following the steps below.

- (1) From the menu, select [Management Service] > [Device/User] > [Device List].
- (2) On the [Device Group] portlet, click the device group in which DocuWide 6057/3037 is included.
- (3) Click [Users/Permissions].
- (4) Click [Add].
- (5) Search for the users you have added in "Step 2 Adding users" (p.346).
Fill in [Search Target], [Search Condition], and [Keyword] as necessary, and click [Search].
- (6) Select the check box for the desired (found) user, and click [Next].
- (7) On the [Add User/Group (Permission Settings)] page, set items as necessary.
- (8) Click [Finish].

The user is added to the device group.

Step 5 Updating Devices

Apply information that you have set to DocuWide 6057/3037, by following the steps below.

- (1) From the menu, select [Management Service] > [Device/User] > [Device List].
- (2) On the [Device Group], click the device group in which DocuWide 6057/3037 is included.
- (3) Select the check box for the device group in which DocuWide 6057/3037 is included, and click [Update Device].
- (4) Select the way to update the settings, and click [Next].
- (5) Click [Update Device].

The DocuWide 6057/3037 update process starts.

Setup procedure on the machine



- For information on items available on CentreWare Internet Services, refer to the Help section of CentreWare Internet Services.

1. Login to the CentreWare Internet Services.



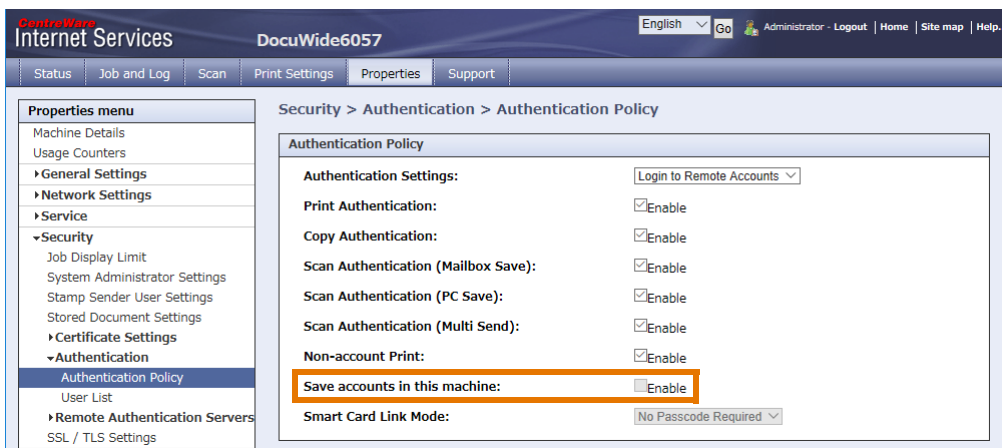
- For information on how to log in to CentreWare Internet Services, refer to Steps 1. to 3. in "Configuring Active Directory" (p.342).

2. Set up the authentication server.
Refer to the following setup procedures:

- Authentication Policy p.348
- Authentication System p.348

Authentication Policy

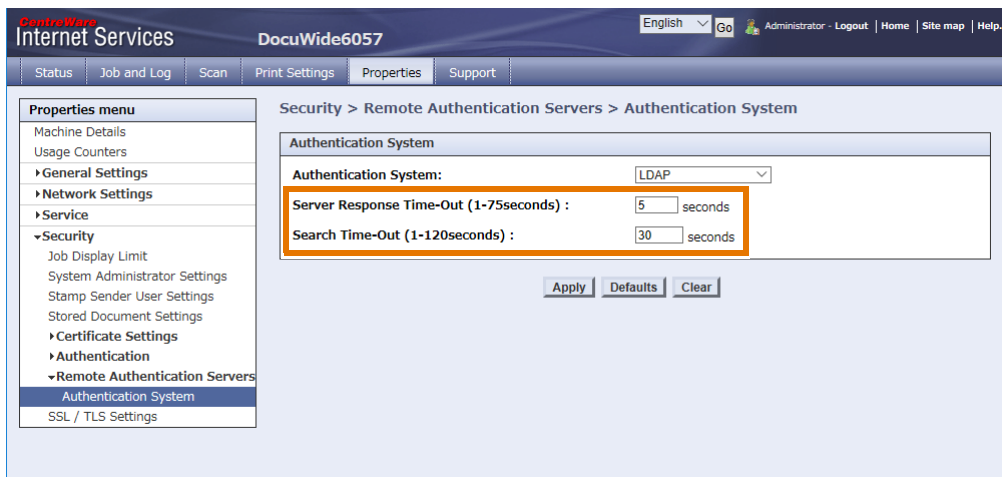
- (1) Select [Properties] > [Security] > [Authentication] > [Authentication Policy].
- (2) Make setting for [Save accounts in this machine].



- (3) Click [Apply].

Authentication System

- (1) Select [Properties] > [Security] > [Remote Authentication Servers] > [Authentication System].
- (2) Set each of items indicated in the rectangle in the figure below.



- (3) Click [Apply].

3. Reboot the machine.

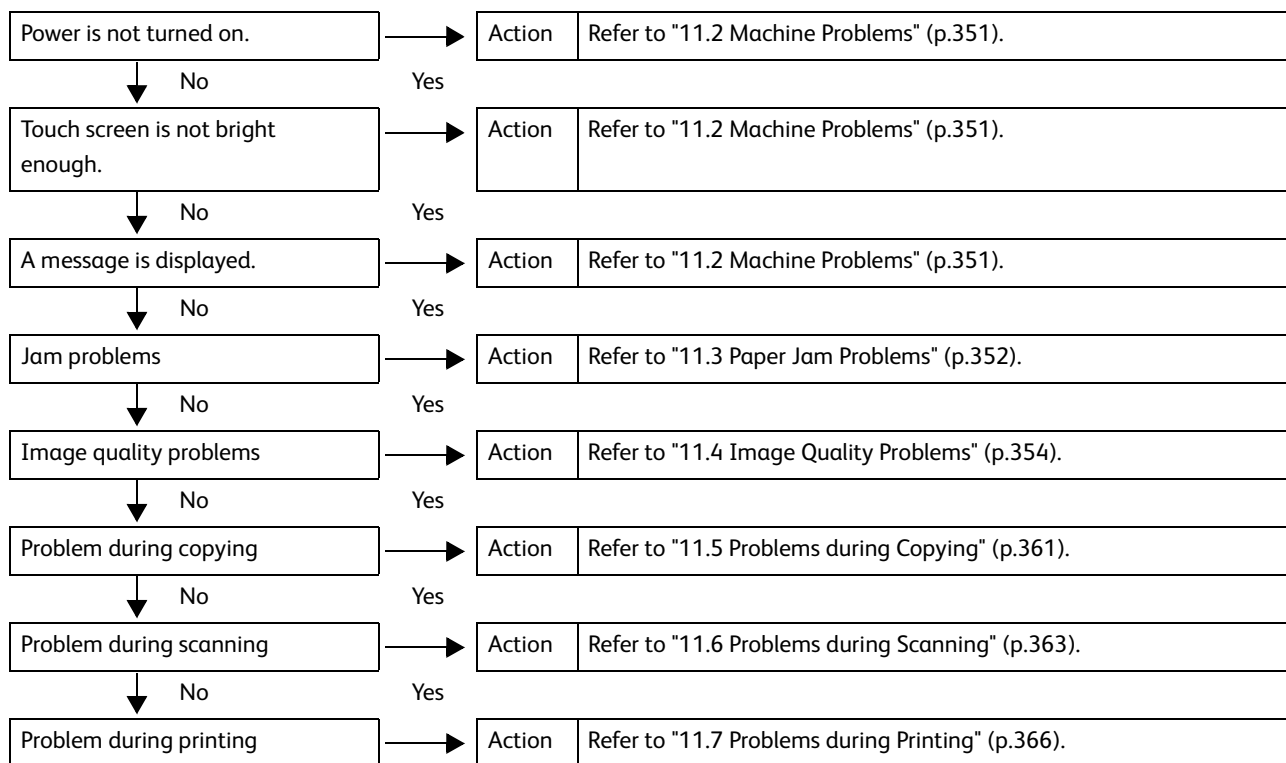
Chapter 11 Problem Solving

This chapter describes solutions to various problems you may have with the machine.

11.1	Troubleshooting	350
11.2	Machine Problems.....	351
11.3	Paper Jam Problems.....	352
11.4	Image Quality Problems.....	354
11.5	Problems during Copying	361
11.6	Problems during Scanning	363
11.7	Problems during Printing	366
11.8	Problems with CentreWare Internet Services.....	367
11.9	Error Messages	368
11.10	When Paper Jams.....	372
11.11	When the Original Jams	377
11.12	Finding More.....	380

11.1 Troubleshooting

This section describes what to do when you encounter a problem in working with the machine.
Take proper action according to the following troubleshooting procedures.



If the error is not resolved even after following the above procedure, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

11.2 Machine Problems

Check the status of your machine again before contacting us.

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Power is not switched on.	Is the main power and power switch turned on?	Turn the power on.  Refer • Refer to "1.2 Power Source" (p.25).
	Is the plug connected to a receptacle?	Turn the power switch and the power breaker off and connect the power cord firmly. Then turn the power breaker and the power switch on again.  Refer • Refer to "1.2 Power Source" (p.25).
	Is the power cord disconnected from the machine?	
Touch screen is dark.	Is the <Power Saver> button lit?	The machine has entered the Power Saver mode. Exit the Power Saver mode by pressing the <Power Saver> button on the control panel.  Refer • Refer to "1.3 Power Saver Mode" (p.27).
	Are three LEDs on the control panel - <Data> indicator, <Error> indicator, and <Power Saver> button - blinking?	Turn the power switch off and then on to restart the machine. If the three LEDs are still blinking after restart, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
A message is displayed.	Hardware internal fault.	 Refer • Refer to "11.9 Error Messages" (p.368).
	Has a paper jam occurred?	 Refer • Refer to "11.10 When Paper Jams" (p.372).
	Has an original jam occurred?	 Refer • Refer to "11.11 When the Original Jams" (p.377).
	Is the message "Please wait..." displayed?	If the message is displayed for more than 5 minutes, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
The screen freezes when started	Is the number such as "6/7" displayed?	Turn the power switch off and then on to restart the machine. If the screen freezes with the number such as "6/7" displayed even after restarting the machine, take a note of the number and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

11.3 Paper Jam Problems

This section describes possible causes and remedies for paper jams.

For information on how to clear a jammed original, refer to "11.11 When the Original Jams" (p.377), Clearing Jammed Paper, and "11.10 When Paper Jams" (p.372).

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Original jam occurs frequently.	Is the appropriate type of original being used?	Correctly load the appropriate type of original.  Refer • For a copy job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "2.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.80) • For a copy job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "3.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.134). • For a scan job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "4.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.185), • For a scan job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "5.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.225).
	Is the original too small?	The minimum size of the original that can be loaded is 176 (width) x 210 (length) mm.  Refer • Refer to "1.16 About Originals" (p.72).

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Media is often jammed or wrinkled.	Are the media settings correct for the media loaded?	Set the correct media size series and media type/weight to match the media loaded.  Refer • Refer to "9.1.6 Paper Tray Series / Paper Type" (p.314).
	Is the appropriate type of media being used?	Correctly load the appropriate type of media.  Refer • Refer to "1.17 Media Types" (p.73).
	Is the media loaded correctly?	Correctly load the media.  Refer • Refer to "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).
	Is the media damp?	Replace with media just unpacked.  Refer • Refer to "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).
		Use the paper heater.  Refer • Refer to "1.18 Paper Heater" (p.76).
	Are there any jammed sheets or torn pieces of paper still remaining inside the machine or is there a foreign object in the machine?	Open the front door and pull out the roll unit to remove the torn paper or the foreign object.  Refer • Refer to "11.10 When Paper Jams" (p.372) and "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).

11.4 Image Quality Problems

When the image quality of the copied/scanned/printed output is poor, identify the symptom in the following table to perform the corresponding remedy.

If the image quality does not improve even after the remedy is performed, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.



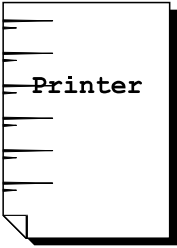
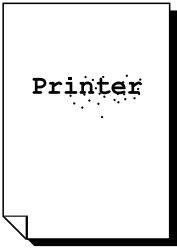
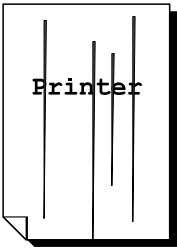
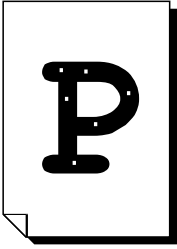
Note

- Confirm with the following sections; "1.17.1 Media Type" (p.73) for paper quality , and "9.1.6 Paper Tray Series / Paper Type" (p.314) for paper settings.

Symptom	Check	Remedy
The copied/scanned output is dirty.	Is the surface of the scanning glass dirty?	Clean the surface of the scanning glass.  Refer • Refer to "1.12 Cleaning the Machine" (p.59).
	Is the paper type of the original colored paper, rough paper, or blueprint?	Adjust the copy density, original type, or background color before copying.  Refer • For a copy job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "2.16 Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.114) • For a copy job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "3.16 Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.167) • For a scan job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "4.9.5 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)" (p.200). - Refer to "4.12 Scan - [Advanced Settings] Screen" (p.211). • For a scan job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "5.8.5 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)" (p.239). - Refer to "5.11 Scan - [Advanced Settings] Screen" (p.250).
The copied/scanned output has black lines or streaks on it.	Is the surface of the scanning glass dirty?	Clean the surface of the scanning glass.  Refer • Refer to "1.12 Cleaning the Machine" (p.59).

Symptom	Check	Remedy
The copied/ scanned output is too dark.	Is Copy Density or Lighten / Darken set to [Darken]?	Adjust Image Options or Lighten /Darken.  Refer • For a copy job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "2.16.2 Image Shift (Shifting the Image Position of the Original)" (p.115) • For a copy job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "3.16.2 Image Shift (Shifting the Image Position of the Original)" (p.168) • For a scan job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "4.12.1 Lighten / Darken" (p.211). • For a scan job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "5.11.1 Image Options" (p.250)
A gap appears on part of the copied/ scanned output.	The gap between the scanning sensors may have become miscalibrated.	Calibrate the gap between the scanning sensors.  Note • This feature is only available with DocuWide 3037.  Refer • Refer to "1.10 Calibrating the Scan Sensor Gap (DocuWide 3037)" (p.52).
The copied/ scanned/printed output is too light.	Is the copy density set to [Lighten]?	Adjust Image Options or Lighten /Darken.  Refer • For a copy job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "2.16.2 Image Shift (Shifting the Image Position of the Original)" (p.115) • For a copy job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "3.16.2 Image Shift (Shifting the Image Position of the Original)" (p.168) • For a scan job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "4.12.1 Lighten / Darken" (p.211). • For a scan job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "5.11.1 Image Options" (p.250)
	Is Copy Density or Lighten / Darken set to [Lighten]?	
	Is the Original Type setting appropriate?	Specify the correct original type. and then try again.  Refer • For a copy job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "2.16.1 Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)" (p.114) • For a copy job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "3.16.1 Original Width (Scanning to Copy Originals in Maximum Width)" (p.167) • For a scan job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "4.9.5 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)" (p.200). • For a scan job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "5.8.5 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)" (p.239)

Symptom	Check	Remedy
The copied/scanned/printed image is mis-aligned or skewed.	Is the original loaded correctly?	Load the original properly.  Refer • For a copy job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "2.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.80) • For a copy job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "3.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.134) • For a scan job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "4.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.185). • For a scan job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "5.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.225)
	Is the original guide set properly?	Set the original guide properly.  Refer • For a copy job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "2.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.80) • For a copy job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "3.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.134) • For a scan job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "4.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.185). • For a scan job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "5.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.225)
Part of the image is missing on the copied/printed output. (smudged or unclear) 	Is the media damp?	If the media is damp, some parts of the copied output may not be printed or may be unclear. Replace with media just unpacked.  Refer • Refer to "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).
	Is the loaded media folded or wrinkled?	Remove the defective media or replace with media just unpacked.  Refer • Refer to "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).
	Is part of the image outside of the printable area?	Recreate the original so that the image fit to the printable area.  Refer • Refer to "Image loss width" in "13.1 Specifications" (p.460).

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Dirt appears at regular intervals. 	Is the paper path dirty?	Run a copy job of a few pages. If the symptom does not improve, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
	Internal components are soiled.	Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
Unwanted black dots are printed. 	Internal components are soiled.	Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
Unwanted black lines are printed. 	Is the surface of the scanning glass dirty?	Clean the surface of the scanning glass.  Refer • Refer to "1.12 Cleaning the Machine" (p.59).
	Internal components are soiled.	Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
Unwanted white dots appear in black filled areas. 	Is the appropriate type of media being used?	Load the appropriate type of media.  Refer • Refer to "1.17 Media Types" (p.73).
	Internal components are soiled.	Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Printed toner smudges when rubbed with your finger. Toner is not fused to the paper. The paper is soiled with toner. 	Is the media damp?	Replace with media just unpacked.  Refer • Refer to "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).
	Is the appropriate type of media being used?	Load the appropriate type of media.  Refer • Refer to "1.17 Media Types" (p.73).
	Are the media settings appropriate?	Select appropriate media.  Refer • Refer to "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).
The entire area of the output paper is black.	High-voltage power supply may have malfunctioned.	Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
Nothing is copied/printed.	For a copy job, is the scanned side of the original facing down?	Place the original with the side to be scanned facing down.
	High-voltage power supply may have malfunctioned.	Contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
The entire output is faint.	Is the toner density appropriate?	Adjust the toner density.  Refer • Refer to "Toner Density" (p.407).
The copied/printed image is misaligned or skewed.	Is the media loaded correctly?	Correctly load the media.  Refer • Refer to "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Part of the copied/scanned image is missing.	Is the original placed correctly?	Load the original properly.  Refer • For a copy job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "2.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.80) • For a copy job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "3.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.134) • For a scan job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "4.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.185). • For a scan job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "5.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.225)
	Is the media loaded correctly?	Correctly load the media.  Refer • Refer to "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).
	Are the copy settings such as Reduce/Enlarge, Paper Supply, Image Shift, Edge Erase, and Scan Start Position correct?	Specify the correct settings. and then try again.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "2.15 Copy - [Image Quality] Screen" (p.109) - Refer to "2.17 Copy - [Output Format] Screen" (p.120) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "3.15 Copy - [Image Quality] Screen" (p.162) - Refer to "3.17 Copy - [Output Format] Screen" (p.173)
	Are the copy settings such as Reduce/Enlarge, Original Size, Edge Erase, and Scan Start Position correct?	Specify the correct settings. and then try again.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "4.13 Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.215) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "5.12 Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.254)

Symptom	Check	Remedy
The copied/scanned output has shadows.	Is the original a paste-up or folded?	Adjust Image Options, Lighten /Darken., or .Original Type.  Refer • For a copy job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "2.16 Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.114) • For a copy job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "3.16 Copy - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.167) • For a scan job (DocuWide 6057) - Refer to "4.12.1 Lighten / Darken" (p.211). - Refer to "4.9.5 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)" (p.200). • For a scan job (DocuWide 3037) - Refer to "5.11.1 Image Options" (p.250) - Refer to "5.8.5 Original Type (Selecting the Original Type)" (p.239)
	Is the original quite translucent such as a transparency film?	
Image is lost on the edge of paper.	Is part of the image outside of the printable area?	Set a higher resolution.  Refer • Refer to "Image loss width" in "13.1 Specifications" (p.460).
The scanned image is coarse.	Is the scan resolution too low?	Select a higher resolution.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "4.9.3 Resolution (Specifying the Scanning Resolution)" (p.199) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "5.8.3 Resolution (Specifying the Scanning Resolution)" (p.238)
	Is the color mode setting correct?	Set an appropriate color mode.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "4.9.2 Color Scanning (Selecting the Color Mode for Scanning)" (p.198) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "5.8.2 Color Scanning (Selecting the Color Mode for Scanning)" (p.237)

11.5 Problems during Copying

This section describes how to troubleshoot problems during copying.

Symptom	Check	Remedy
The original is not correctly fed.	Is the original too small?	The minimum size of the original that can be loaded is 176 (width) x 210 (length) mm.  Refer • Refer to "1.16 About Originals" (p.72).
The output image on the media fed from the bypass (manual) feed table is mis-aligned.	Is the position of the media loaded on the bypass (manual) feed correct?	Load media in the correct position.  Refer • Refer to "1.7.2 Loading Cut Sheet Paper (Bypass)" (p.41).
The corner of the copied original is dog-eared.	Is the original curled?	Flatten the curled original before loading it.

Symptom	Check	Remedy
The original is not copied at the desired size.	Did you select the original size series properly?	Set the original size series properly in accordance with the actual original size.  Refer • Refer to "Original Size System (DocuWide 6057)" (p.408).
	Did you select the media size series properly?	Set the paper size series properly in accordance with the actual paper size.  Refer • Refer to "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).
	Is the original placed correctly?	Load the original properly.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "2.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.80) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "3.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.134)
	Is the original guide set properly?	Set the original guide properly.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "2.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.80) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "3.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.134)
	Is the original bent?	Flatten the sheets of original, and then load the original properly.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "2.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.80) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "3.1.3 Step 3 Starting the Copy Job" (p.134)

11.6 Problems during Scanning

This section describes how to troubleshoot problems during scanning.

11.6.1 Unable to Scan with the Machine

The table below lists how to troubleshoot scanning problems of the machine.

Symptom	Check	Remedy
The original is not correctly fed.	Is the original too small?	The minimum size of the document that can be loaded is 176 (width) x 210 (length) mm.  Refer • Refer to "1.16 About Originals" (p.72).
The corner of the scanned original is dog-eared.	Is the original curled?	Flatten the curled original before loading it.
Document is not scanned at the desired size.	Did you select the document size series properly?	Set the original size series properly in accordance with the actual original size.  Refer • Refer to "Original Size System (DocuWide 6057)" (p.408).
	Is the document placed correctly?	Load the original properly.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "4.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.185) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "5.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.225)
	Is the original guide set properly?	Set the original guide properly.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "4.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.185) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "5.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.225)
	Is the original bent?	Flatten the sheets of original, and then load the original properly.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "4.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.185) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "5.1.2 Step 2 Starting the Scan Job" (p.225)

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Unable to store scanned data.	Is there free space on the machine's hard disk?	If the machine's hard disk becomes full while saving scanned data, the machine stops the operation and displays a message.  Refer • Refer to "11.9 Error Messages" (p.368).
Unable to rescan.	Is the file size too large?	Adjust Resolution, Reduce / Enlarge, and Original Size.  Refer • DocuWide 6057 - Refer to "4.9.3 Resolution (Specifying the Scanning Resolution)" (p.199) - Refer to "4.13 Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.215) • DocuWide 3037 - Refer to "5.8.3 Resolution (Specifying the Scanning Resolution)" (p.238) - Refer to "5.12 Scan - [Layout Adjustment] Screen" (p.254)
	Is the original size too large?	

11.6.2 Unable to Import Scanned Data to the Computer

If you cannot import scanned data to the computer, identify the symptom in the following table to perform the corresponding remedy.

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Unable to find the scanner.	Is the main power and power switch turned on?	Turn the main power and power switch on.
	Is the network cable disconnected from the computer?	Connect the network cable to the computer.
	Is the network between the computer and the machine working?	Consult with your network administrator.
	Is the SNMP port enabled?	Set the SNMP port to Enabled.  Refer • Refer to "12.5.1 Port Settings" (p.425).
		Specify the IP address of the scanner you want to discover, manually.
	Is the machine in the Sleep mode?	Exit the Power Saver mode.  Refer • Refer to "1.3.2 Exiting the Power Saver Mode" (p.27).
		Specify the IP address of the scanner you want to discover, manually.

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Unable to access data in a folder from PC.	Are the network settings correct?	Make sure the IP Address settings are correct.  Refer • Refer to "12.5.2 Protocol Settings" (p.427).
	Is the DNS server turned on?	Make sure the DNS server is turned on.
Unable to open a folder.	Is the folder registered?	Register the folder.  Refer • Refer to "9.1.2 Create Folder" (p.306).
	Password forgotten?	Set the password again.  Refer • Refer to "Check Folder Password" (p.307).

11.6.3 Unable to Send Scanned Data over the Network (SMB/LPR)

If you cannot send scanned data over the network, identify the symptom in the following table to perform the corresponding remedy.

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Unable to send data over the network.	Is the server specified correctly?	Correctly specify the server.
	Is the save destination specified correctly?	Correctly specify the save destination.
	Is the shared name specified correctly?	Correctly specify the shared name.
	Is the login name specified correctly?	Correctly specify the login name.
	Is the password specified correctly?	Correctly specify the password.
	Are you attempting SMB data transfer with a user account for which no password has been set.	Follow the steps below to change the settings of network access: 1. Start Windows, and from the start menu, select [Windows Administrative Tools] > [Local Security Policy]. 2. Select [Security Options] from [Security Settings] > [Local Policies]. 3. Set [Accounts: Limit local account use of blank passwords to console logon only] to [Disabled].
	Is the network communication blocked by firewall protection?	Make sure the firewall settings are correct.  Refer • Refer to "Configuring Windows Firewall" (p.318).
	Are the access permissions assigned to the destination shared folder to which you are attempting SMB data transfer correct?	Make sure the settings for the shared folder are correct.  Refer • Refer to "Setting Up the Shared Folder" (p.317).

11.7 Problems during Printing

This section describes how to troubleshoot problems during printing.

Symptom	Check	Remedy
Unable to print.	Is the network cable disconnected?	Connect the network cable.
	Is the printer status Offline?	Check the setting for [Printer Status]. Select [Online] if the status is [Offline].  Refer • Refer to "Print Mode" (p.65).
	Has an error occurred on the machine?	Check the error message, and follow the instructions to solve the problem.
	Are the IP address and Subnet Mask set correctly?	Set the correct IP address and Subnet Mask.  Refer • Refer to "12.9 Print Service Settings" (p.441).
	Is the network between the computer and the machine working?	Consult with your network administrator.
	Is the port enabled?	Set the port in use to Enabled.  Refer • Refer to "12.5.1 Port Settings" (p.425).
	Is the media of the specified size loaded?	Load the specified size media in the machine.  Refer • Refer to "1.7 Loading/Replacing Paper" (p.39).
		Switch to another available tray to continue printing.  Refer • Refer to "1.7.3 Switching Between Trays" (p.42).
	Is the Interrupt mode active?	Cancel the interrupting operation.
	Is a Copy, Multi Send Scan, or Scan and Copy job in progress?	While a Copy, Multi Send Scan, or Scan and Copy job is in progress, you cannot print.
	Is Arc Occupied mode active?	In Occupied mode, print jobs other than ArcEPS are received but not printed. The status of occupied mode can be confirmed in the [Job Status] screen.  Refer • Refer to "1.14 Job Status" (p.67).

11.8 Problems with CentreWare Internet Services

This section describes the causes and recommended remedies for problems that may occur while using CentreWare Internet Services.

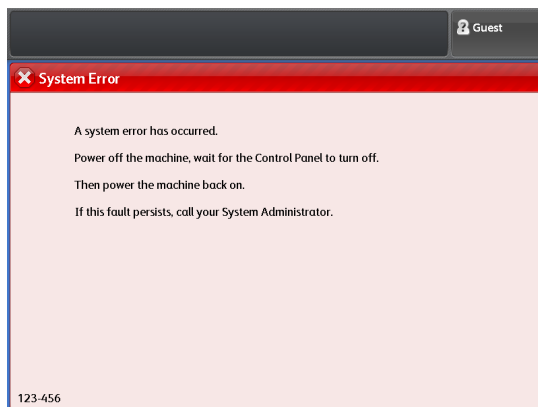
Symptom	Check	Remedy
Unable to connect to CentreWare Internet Services.	Is the machine working properly?	Check if the machine is powered on.
	Is the Internet address correctly entered?	Confirm the Internet address again. If the problem persists, enter an IP address to make a connection.
	Is a proxy server being used?	Depending on the proxy server, connections may not be possible. Set the browser not to "Use proxy server" or set that particular address not to use a proxy server.
The [Update] button is not working.	Are you using a specified browser?	Confirm if your browser is supported.  Refer • Refer to "8.2.2 Setting Up for Using CentreWare Internet Services" (p.275).
Selecting the menu on the left frame does not update the right frame contents.		
The screen display is distorted.	Is the window size for the browser too small?	Change the window size for the browser.
The latest information is not displayed.	Is the display refreshed?	Press the [Update] button.
Characters are not displayed properly.	Is your browser's encode setting correct?	Set your browser's encode setting to UTF-8.
Japanese characters cannot be set correctly.	Is the correct character encoding selected?	Use UTF-8 for encoding.
The [Apply New Settings] button does not reflect the new settings.	Are all entered values correct?	If a value outside of the permitted range is entered, the update will automatically change the value to that within the range.
	Is it during operation or after operation by the control panel on the machine?	When the automatic reset function is configured, any setting by CentreWare Internet Services is not applied until the setting time passes. Wait for a while.
The [Apply New Settings] button displays a message on the browser, such as [The server returned an invalid or unrecognized response] and [No Data].	Is the entered password correct?	Entry in [Password] does not match that in [Re-enter Password]. Enter the correct password.
	Is the machine working properly?	Reboot the machine.
Unable to delete jobs.	The machine is processing.	Wait for a while and then press the [Update] button.

11.9 Error Messages

This section describes how to solve the problem when an error message appears.



- The message displayed may vary depending on each error.



Error Message	Cause	Remedy
A system error has occurred. Power off the machine, wait for the Control Panel to turn off. Then power the machine back on. If this fault persists, call your local Fuji Xerox representative. XXX-XXX	An internal error occurred.	• Turn the power switch off and wait for a while. After the <Main Power> indicator on the control panel goes out, turn the power switch on again. If the message persists, record the displayed contents [XXX-XXX]. Then, turn the power switch off, and after the <Main Power> indicator on the control panel goes out, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

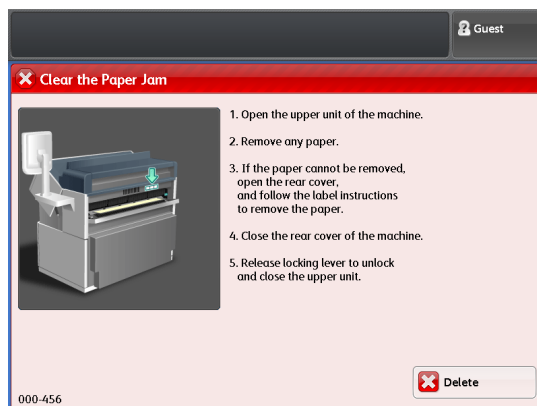
Error Message	Cause	Remedy
The image size is too large. Unable to scan. Select Confirm. The current scanned image will be deleted from the memory.	[Excess data amount - No.1] The total amount of data scanned so far has exceeded the defined amount. Defined amount: • 2GB for TIFF/PDF/JPEG, 1GB for DocuWorks • For Red-Black TIFF, refer to "Red-Black TIFF File to be Created (DocuWide 6057)" (p.472).	• Press [Confirm] to return to the scan ready screen, and press [Last Original] to complete the scanning. Scanned data prior to occurrence of the message can be stored.
	[Insufficient data storage] Free space on the machine's hard disk for storing scanned data is insufficient. Free space: • For Store to Folder, this is folders storage (12GB). • For Scan to PC or Multi Send Scan, this is a temporary area (40GB).	• For Store to Folder, delete unnecessary data in folders to increase free space. • For Scan to PC or Multi Send Scan, wait until the current job is completed.
	[Excess data amount - No.2] The scanned original length has exceeded the maximum allowed data length. Example: • Scanned data length exceeds 15 m.	• Press [Confirm] to cancel the scan job. Before you can try scanning of the original again, lower the original size to less than the maximum allowed length or select [Custom Size] in [Original Size] and enter the appropriate size.
The number of originals have reached the maximum limit. Select Last Original.	The number of scanned pages has exceeded 999 in a single job.	• Press [Last Original] to cancel the scan job. Scanned data prior to occurrence of the message can be stored.
Unable to create file. The scanned data size has exceeded the limit. To recreate file, change the setting and select Start. To stop scanning, select Stop.	[Excess data amount - No.3] (When rescanning with other settings is possible) The amount of scanned data has exceeded the defined amount. → The original you have just scanned exceeds the limit (width/length, data length).	• Change the settings accordingly so that the data amount is within the limit, for example lower the scan resolution/ reduce the original size/lower the image quality, and press [Start]. Recreate scanned data using the changed settings without rescanning the original.
Unable to create file as it exceeds the output file format limit Select Confirm. Current scan job will be deleted from memory.	[Excess data amount - No.4] The width and length of the scanned original exceeds the limit for the specified file format. → The original you have just scanned exceeds the limit (width/length, data length). Example: • The file format is set to PDF (full color/ 600 dpi) and the scanned length exceeds 2,772 mm	• Press [Confirm] to return to the scan ready screen, and press [Last Original] to complete the scanning. Scanned data prior to occurrence of the message can be stored.

Error Message	Cause	Remedy
The Folder is full. Retrieve documents from the Folder.	The machine cannot start the Store to Folder job because free space is less than 2MB.	Delete unnecessary data in the folder to increase free space.
Memory is full.	The machine cannot start the Scan to PC or Multi Send Scan job because free space is less than 2MB.	Wait for a while until the current job is completed and free space is made available.
Failed to connect to send destination. Server Name / IP Address: Shared Name: Save In:	An error has been detected in the settings of the destination server for a Scan to PC job while attempting to establish connection. - Settings such as the server name are incorrect. - The server is turned off. - Unable to resolve the names such as the server name. - The specified user name and/or password is incorrect. - The folder name is incorrect/the folder does not exist. - The folder is not shared. - There is a LAN failure (including disconnection and bad connection of cables). - The server belongs to a work-group with a name that exceeds 14 byte characters.	Clear the causes shown to the left, and run the scan job again.
Failed to connect to send destination. PC Save Add.1: xxx PC Save Add.2: xxx Printer1: xxx ... Printer5: xxx Cannot send to these addresses. Please change the settings.	An error has been detected in the settings of the destination servers for a Multi Send Scan job while attempting to establish connection. - Settings such as the server name are incorrect. - The servers and/or printers are turned off. - Unable to resolve the names such as the server name. - The specified user name and/or password is incorrect. - The folder name is incorrect/the folder does not exist. - The folder is not shared. - The logical printer name is incorrect. - There is a LAN failure (including disconnection and bad connection of cables). - The server belongs to a work-group with a name that exceeds 14 byte characters.	- Clear the causes shown to the left, and run the scan job again. - Exclude the destination addresses for which the connection error is indicated.

Status	Cause	Remedy
Scanned data is not sent to the save destination although no error message is displayed. After you press the <Job Status> button on the control panel, the status "Completed-Error" is displayed for the Scan to PC or Multi Send Scan job.	A submission error occurred during a Scan to PC or Multi Send Scan job. • Write permissions are not enabled on the save destination. • Insufficient storage space of the save destination. • Failed to write to the destination disk. • Other failures such as a communication error (including LAN failure such as disconnection and bad connection of cables, disk error).	• Clear the causes shown to the left, and run the scan job again.

11.10 When Paper Jams

When a paper jam occurs, the machine stops, and a paper jam error message appears on the touch screen. Clear the paper jam according to the message.



Remove the jammed paper gently as not to tear it. If the paper is torn, remove all the torn pieces, making sure that none remain inside the machine.

If a paper jam error message is still displayed even after you clear the jam, jammed paper remains in some other part of the machine.

When the paper jam is cleared, printing resumes from the point right before the paper jam occurred.

CAUTION

- Always follow all warning instructions marked on or supplied with this product.
To avoid the risk of burn injuries and electric shock, never touch the area with the "High Temperature" or "High Voltage" marks on.
- Do not attempt to remove a paper deeply jammed inside the product, particularly a paper wrapped around the fusing unit or the heat roller.
Otherwise, it may cause injuries or burns. Switch off the product immediately and contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.

Important

- When a paper jam occurs, check the error message to see the position of the jam before pulling out the jammed paper. Pulling out the roll paper tray without confirming the position may cause the jammed paper to be torn and pieces may remain inside the machine, causing malfunctions.
- If any piece of jammed paper remains inside the machine, the paper jam message does not disappear.
- Be sure to clear paper jams while the machine's power is on. Otherwise, the data being processed may be erased.
- Do not touch the components inside the machine, as this may cause print failure.

11.10.1 Paper Jams at the Roll Paper Tray

This section describes how to clear paper jam at the roll paper tray.

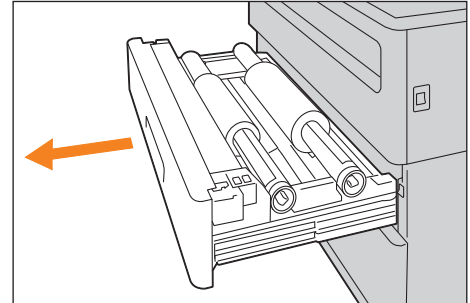
When Paper Jams by Miss-setting or Miss-feeding

Pull out the roll paper tray.

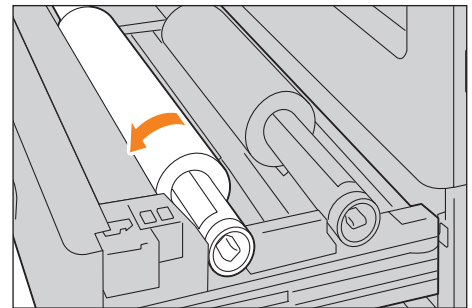


Important

- When the optional Front Print Catch Tray is installed and it is being pulled out, you need to push it back before you can pull out roll media tray.



1. Rewind the roll paper, and gently push in the roll paper tray.



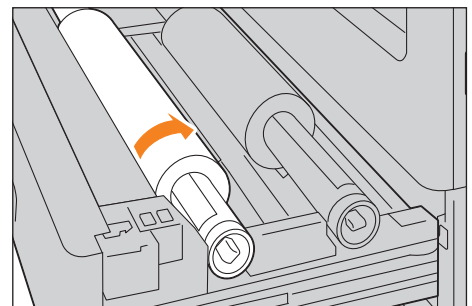
2. Pull out the roll paper tray again, and rotate the roll to inlet the edge of the roll paper under the roller.

The paper will feed and stop automatically.



Important

- If the edge of the roll paper is damaged and assumed not to feed properly, cut it off with a cutter before you set the paper.

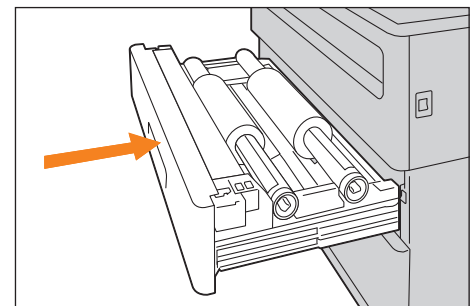


3. Insert the roll paper tray gently.



Note

- The tray must be firmly inserted all the way until it comes to the end.



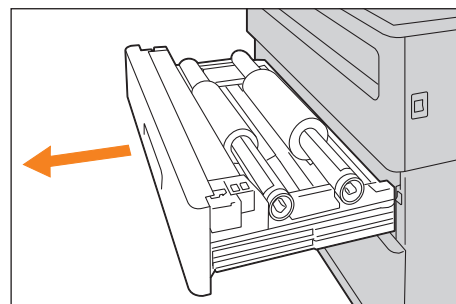
When Paper Jams at the Paper Feeding Unit or the Developing Unit

Pull out the roll paper tray.



Important

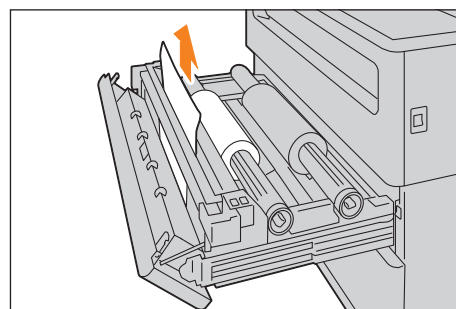
- When the optional Front Print Catch Tray is installed and it is being pulled out, you need to push it back before you can pull out roll media tray.



4. Open the roll paper tray cover.

When jammed paper is already cut

- (1) Remove the jammed paper.



When jammed paper is not cut

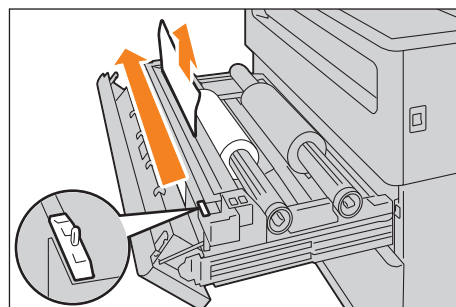
- (1) Cut the paper by sliding the cutter from one edge to the other.



Important

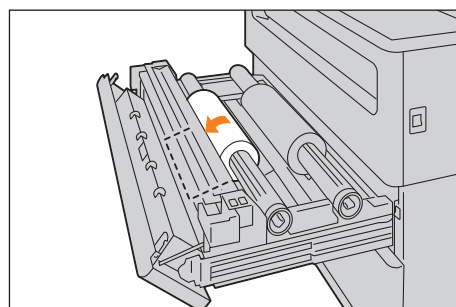
- Don't reciprocate the cutter.

- (2) Remove the cut paper.



5. Rewind the paper by turning the roll paper.

6. Close the roll paper tray cover, and gently push in the roll paper tray.



7. Close the roll paper tray cover, and gently push in the roll paper tray.



Refer

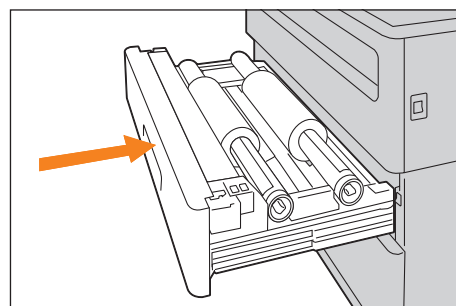
- "When Paper Jams by Miss-setting or Miss-feeding" (p.373)

8. Gently push in the roll paper tray.



Note

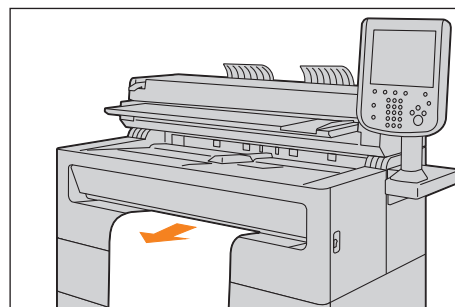
- The tray must be firmly inserted all the way until it comes to the end.



11.10.2 Paper Jams in the Bypass (Manual) Feed Table

The following describes how to clear paper jams inside the bypass (manual) feed table.

1. Pull out the paper toward you, and remove it.



11.10.3 Paper Jams in the Upper Unit

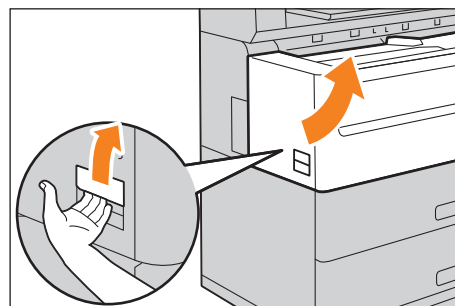
The following describes how to clear paper jams in the upper unit.

1. Lift the upper unit release lever to open the upper unit.



Note

- Holding the left of the center (rear side) of the lever makes it easy to lift.

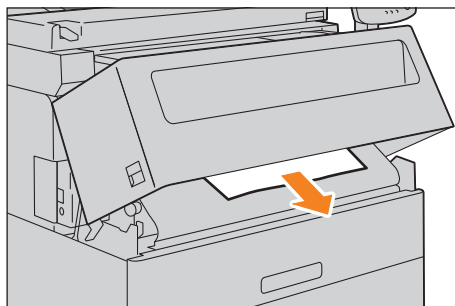


2. If you can see jammed paper from the front, remove the paper by gently pulling it towards you.



Important

- Be careful not to tear the paper when taking it out.
- Don't touch any of the internal high temperature areas when removing the paper.
- If you cannot see jammed paper from the front, remove the paper from the back.



Open the back cover (①), and pull the green lever towards you (②).

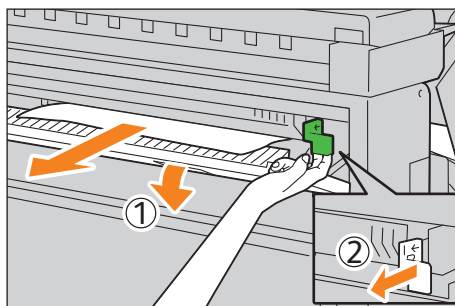
Remove the jammed paper.

After clearing the jammed paper, close the back cover.



Important

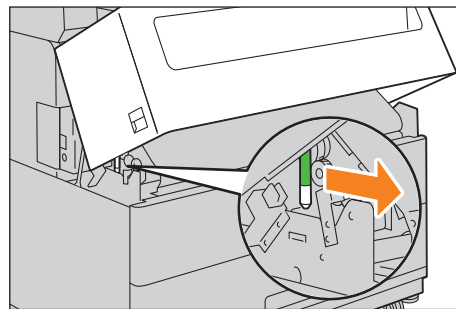
- Remove the paper by pulling horizontally. Lifting the paper upwards makes it caught by mechanical components and can cause the paper to tear.



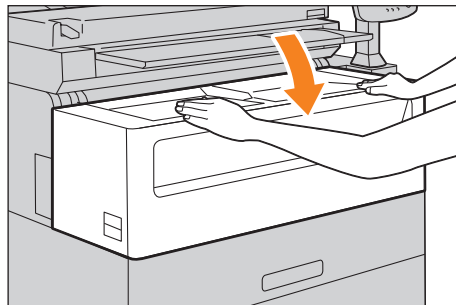
3. Pull the green stopper inside of the printer at the left towards you.



Important • Watch your fingers so as not to be pinched.



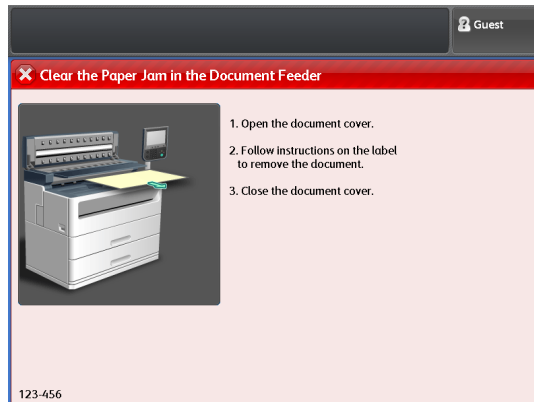
4. Place both of your hands on both ends of the upper unit, and close it.



11.11 When the Original Jams

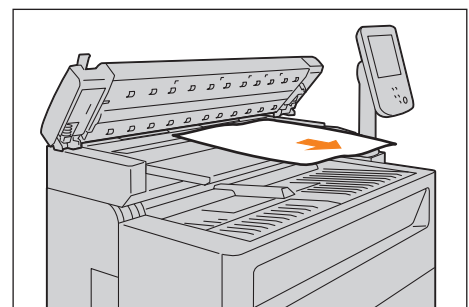
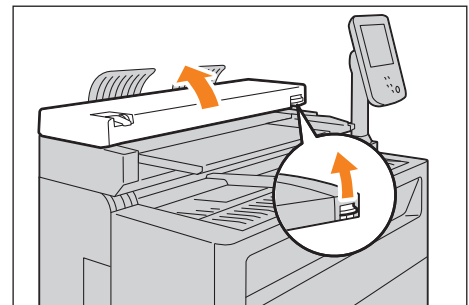
When the original jams at the original table, the machine stops, and an error message appears on the touch screen. Clear the document jam according to the message, and reload the document.

- When the Original Jams (DocuWide 6057)p.377
- When the Original Jams (DocuWide 3037)p.378

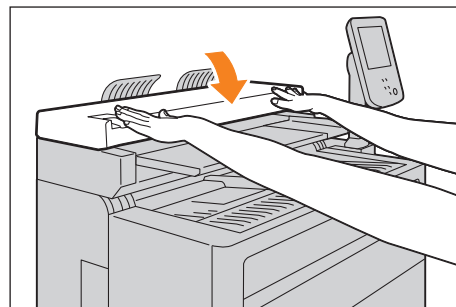


11.11.1 When the Original Jams (DocuWide 6057)

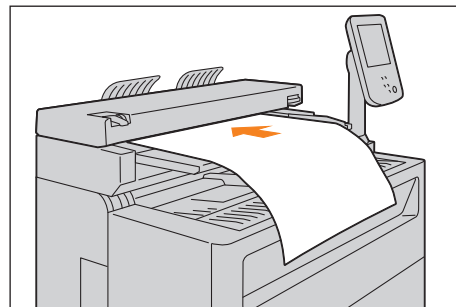
1. Lift the original cover by lifting the lever on the right of the original cover.
2. Remove the jammed original.



3. Return the original cover back to its original position.

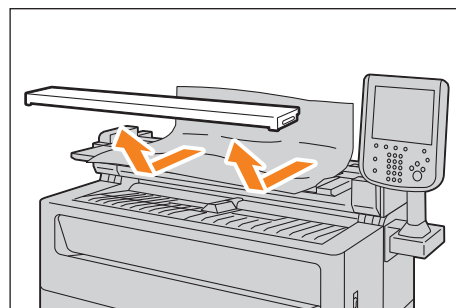


4. Make sure that the original is not torn, wrinkled, or folded, and reload it.

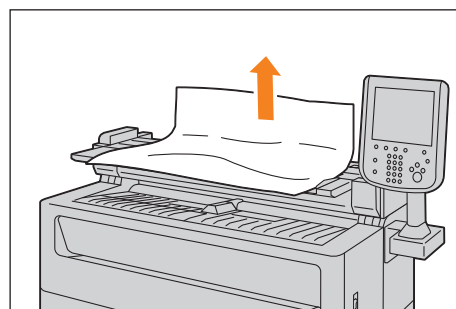


11.11.2 When the Original Jams (DocuWide 3037)

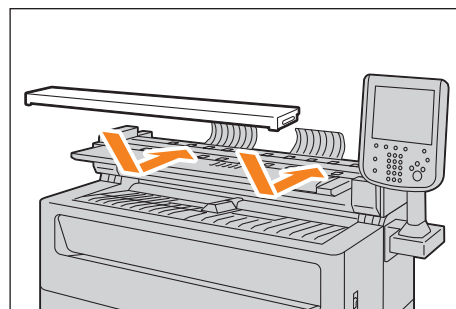
1. Pull the original cover towards you until it stops, and lift and remove the cover.



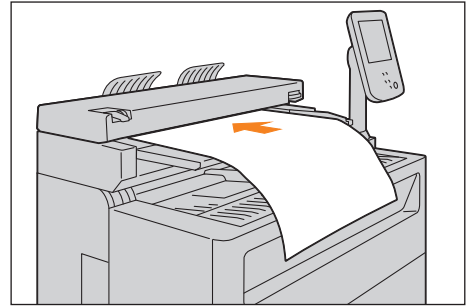
2. Remove the jammed original.



3. Replace the original cover.



4. Make sure that the original is not torn, wrinkled, or folded, and reload it.



11.12 Finding More

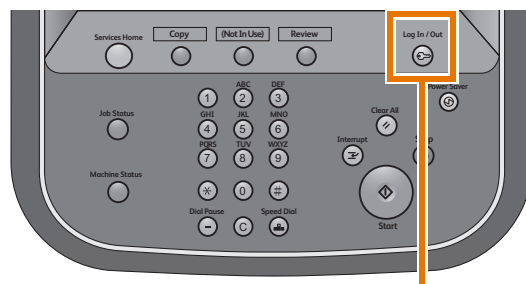
Refer to these subsections.

- To Increase Duration Before Auto Clear p.380
- To Increase the Duration Before the Machine Enters Power Saver Mode (Changing Power Saver Timers) p.382
- To Customize the Default Screen p.382
- To Go to the Target Screen with a Single Button Press (Assigning the <Custom> Buttons) p.383
- To Display the Manual Mode Screen by Default p.384
- To Change the Default Output File Format of Scanned Data p.385
- To Change the Gray Density of Stamps p.385
- To Disable Automatic Paper Switching p.386
- To Save Power Consumption When the Machine is Not in Use p.387

11.12.1 To Increase Duration Before Auto Clear

When no operation is performed for a certain period, the machine is automatically reset (auto clear). The following describes how to increase the duration of time before auto clear.

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.

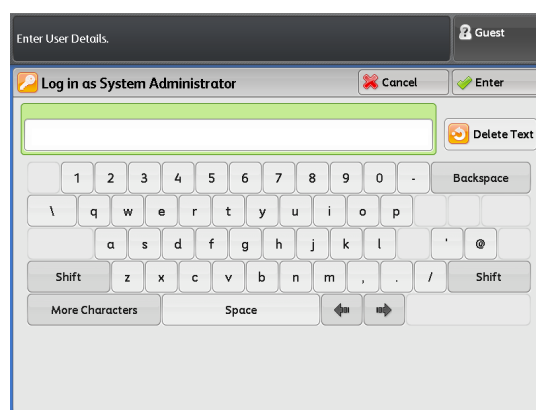


<Log In/Out> button

2. Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].



- For details about how to enter the system administrator mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

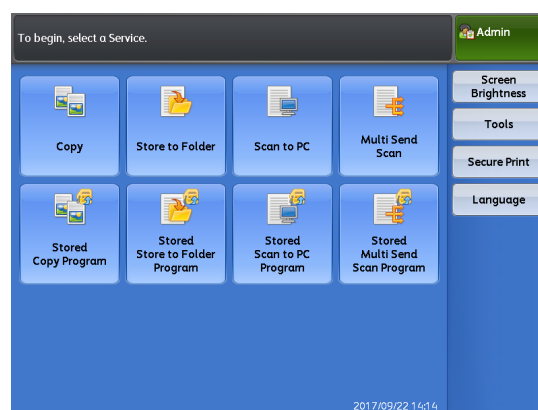


3. On the menu screen, press [Tools].

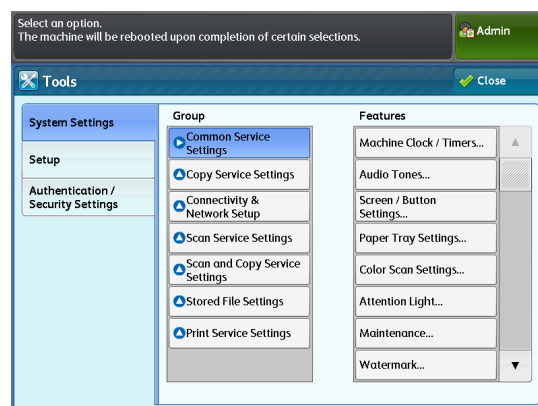


Note

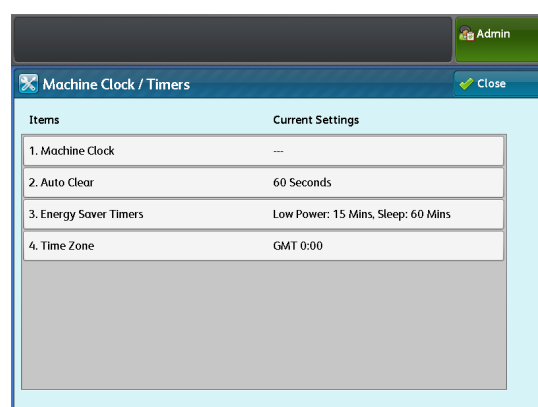
- Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel to display the menu screen, if not yet displayed.



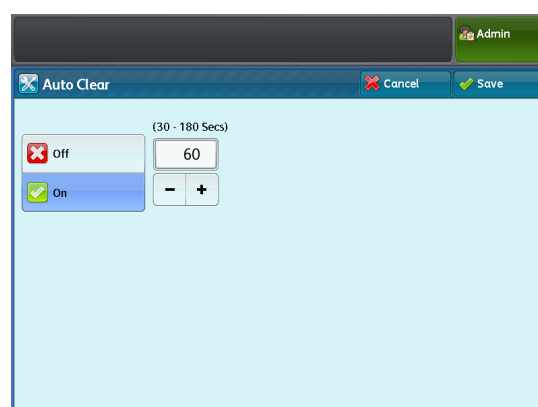
4. Press [System Settings] > [Common Service Settings] > [Machine Clock / Timers].



5. Press [Auto Clear].



6. Enter the amount of seconds before auto clear is activated, by using the numeric keypad or by pressing [+] and [-].
7. Press [Save].
8. Press [Close] several times until the [Tools] screen is displayed.
9. Press [Close].



11.12.2 To Increase the Duration Before the Machine Enters Power Saver Mode (Changing Power Saver Timers)

The following describes how to set up the Power Saver feature.

To use the Power Saver feature, you must set both the durations of time before the Low Power mode is activated and the Sleep mode is activated.



Note

- Each of these durations can be set in the range of 5 to 240 minutes in 1 minute increments.

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.
2. Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].



Note

- For details about how to enter the system administrator mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

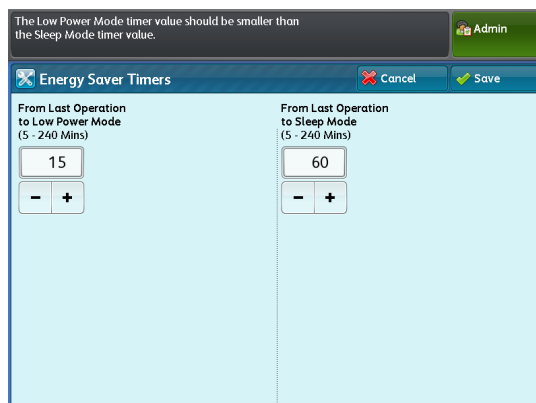
3. On the menu screen, press [Tools].
4. Press [System Settings] > [Common Service Settings] > [Machine Clock / Timers].
5. Press [Power Saver Timers].
6. Enter the amount of minutes before Power Saver is activated, by using the numeric keypad or by pressing [+] and [-].

From Last Operation to Low Power Mode

Set the time that must elapse from the last operation until the machine enters the Low Power mode.

From Last Operation to Sleep Mode

Set the time that must elapse from the last operation until the machine enters the Sleep mode.



Note

- Specify a longer time interval in [From Last Operation to Sleep Mode] than in [From Last Operation to Low Power Mode].

7. Press [Save].
8. Press [Close] several times until the [Tools] screen is displayed.
9. Press [Close].

11.12.3 To Customize the Default Screen

You can change the screen displayed when the power is turned on and when the machine exits the Power Saver mode.



Note

- Depending on users, the menu screen might appear if any function is restricted from being displayed on the default screen.

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.

2. Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].



Note

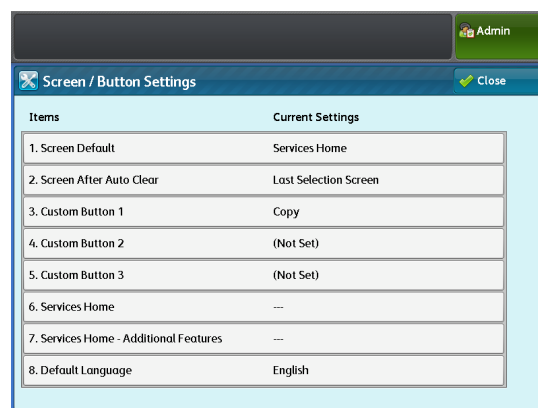
- For details about how to enter the system administrator mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

3. On the menu screen, press [Tools].
4. Press [System Settings] > [Common Service Settings] > [Screen / Button Settings].
5. Press [Screen Default].

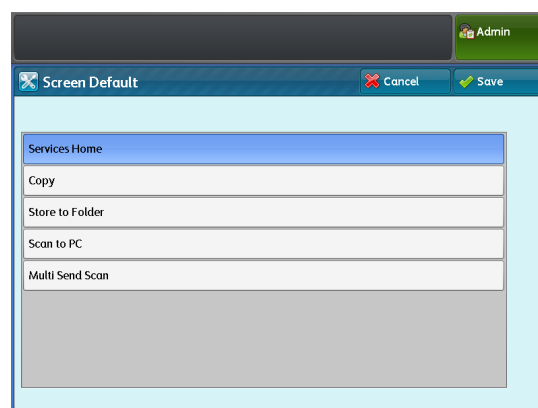


Note

- [Scan and Copy Service] is not displayed on the Screen Default screen.



6. Select features to be displayed on the menu screen by default.
7. Press [Save].



11.12.4 To Go to the Target Screen with a Single Button Press (Assigning the <Custom> Buttons)

Each of Custom Buttons 1 to 3 on the control panel can be assigned to a feature.

By assigning features to the Custom buttons, you can switch to these features without returning to the menu screen. To not assign a feature, select [(Not Set)].

The following describes as an example how to assign [Store to Folder] to Custom Button 2.



Note

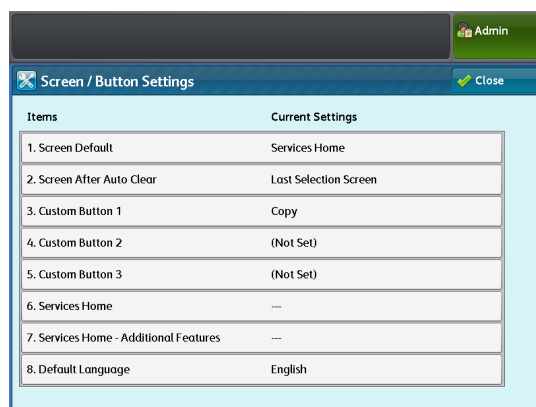
- When changing a assigned feature, paste a label from "Function Name Labels for the Control Panel" that are bundled with the machine. If you register a feature not on the label, fill in the function name on the spare blank label with an oil pen and paste it.
Note that the labels include functions that are not installed on the machine and those provided as options.
- [Scan and Copy] cannot be assigned.

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.
2. Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].

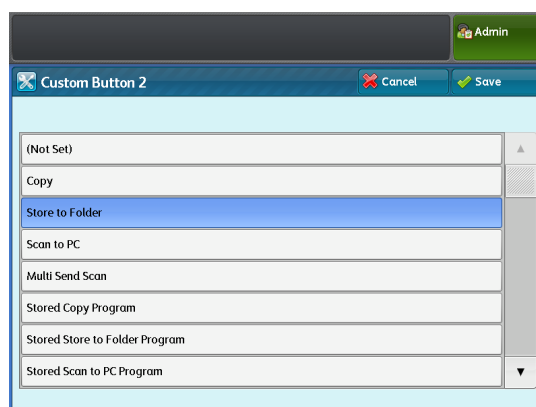


- For details about how to enter the system administrator mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

3. On the menu screen, press [Tools].
4. Press [System Settings] > [Common Service Settings] > [Screen / Button Settings].
5. Press [Custom Button 2].



6. Press [Store to Folder].
7. Press [Save].



11.12.5 To Display the Manual Mode Screen by Default

Follow the procedure below to display the [Copy(Manual Mode)] screen when you press [Copy] on the menu screen.

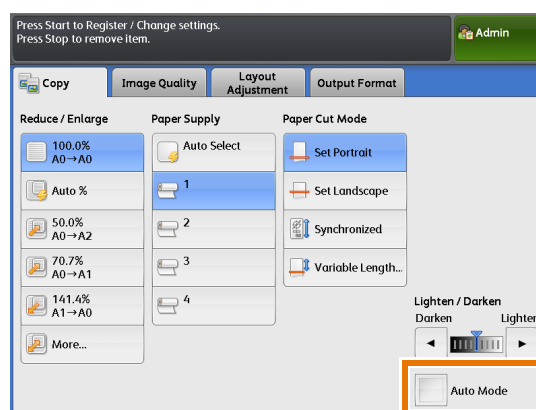
1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.
2. Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].



- For details about how to enter the system administrator mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

3. On the menu screen, press [Tools].
4. Press [System Settings] > [Copy Service Settings] > [Copy Defaults].

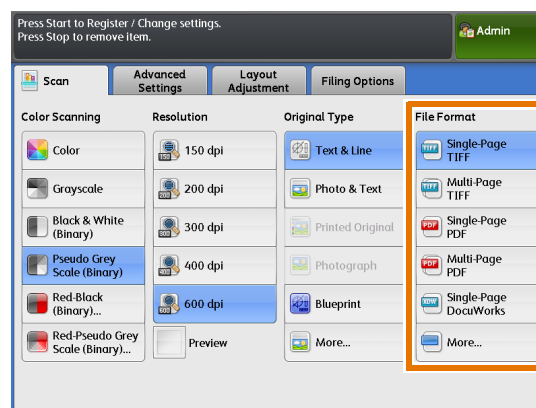
5. Deselect the [Auto Mode] check box, and press the <Start> button.



11.12.6 To Change the Default Output File Format of Scanned Data

The following describes how to change the default output file format of scanned data.

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.
 2. Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].
-  **Note** • For details about how to enter the system administrator mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).
3. On the menu screen, press [Tools].
 4. Press [System Settings] > [Scan Service Settings] > [Scan Defaults].
 5. Select a file format under [File Format], and press the <Start> button.



11.12.7 To Change the Gray Density of Stamps

The following describe how to change the gray density of stamps.

1. Press the <Login> button on the control panel.
2. Using the numeric buttons or the displayed keyboard, enter the Administrator's User ID, and press [Confirm].

-  **Note** • For details about how to enter the system administrator mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

3. On the menu screen, press [Setup].
4. Press [System Settings] > [Common Service] > [Detailed Settings].
5. Enter "34" in [Item Number], and press [Confirm / Change].
6. Enter a value in the range 0 to 4 in [New Value].



Note

- Setting options are as follows.
 - 0: Light
 - 1: Normal (default)
 - 2: Slightly darker
 - 3: Darker
 - 4: Dark

7. Press [Confirm / Change].

11.12.8 To Disable Automatic Paper Switching

Set as follows.

1. Press the <Login> button on the control panel.
2. Using the numeric buttons or the displayed keyboard, enter the Administrator's User ID, and press [Confirm].



Note

- For details about how to enter the system administrator mode, refer to "12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode" (p.390).

3. On the menu screen, press [Setup].
4. Press [System Settings] > [Common Service] > [Paper Tray Settings] > [Paper Tray Priority].
5. Set the roll paper tray not to be switched to with [Exclude from Auto Tray Switching].
6. Press [Save].
7. Press [Close] until the [Tools] screen is displayed.
8. Press [Close].

Roll 1	Roll 2	Roll 3	Roll 4
First	First	First	First
Second	Second	Second	Second
Third	Third	Third	Third
Fourth	Fourth	Fourth	Fourth
Exclude from Auto Tray Switching	Exclude from Auto Tray Switching	Exclude from Auto Tray Switching	Exclude from Auto Tray Switching

11.12.9 To Save Power Consumption When the Machine is Not in Use

The machine consumes 0.8 W or less even when the power switch is turned off. To avoid consuming (or save) this standby power, follow the steps below to turn the power breaker OFF.



- Be sure to follow the steps below when turning the power breaker on/off.

Turn Off the Power Breaker

1. Switch the power off.
2. After making sure that the <Main Power> indicator on the control panel is unlit, turn the power breaker off.

Turn On the Power Breaker

1. Turn the power breaker on.
2. Switch the power on.

Chapter 12 System Settings

This chapter describes how to configure the system defaults with the System Settings feature.

12.1	System Settings Procedure.....	390
12.2	Tools Menu List.....	394
12.3	Common Service Settings.....	398
12.4	Copy Service Settings	414
12.5	Connectivity & Network Setup.....	425
12.6	Scan Service Settings.....	433
12.7	Scan and Copy Service Settings (DocuWide 6057).....	437
12.8	Stored File Settings.....	438
12.9	Print Service Settings	441
12.10	Authentication / Security Settings	445

12.1 System Settings Procedure

To configure or change the system settings, you must enter the System Administration mode.

This section describes the basic procedures for system settings. Refer to the following setup procedures:

- Step 1 Entering System Administration Modep.390
- Step 2 Selecting the Desired Itemp.391
- Step 3 Configuring a Feature.....p.392
- Step 4 Exiting System Administration Mode.....p.393



- For information on how to register/change settings without entering in the Administrator mode, refer to "9.1 Setup" (p.304).

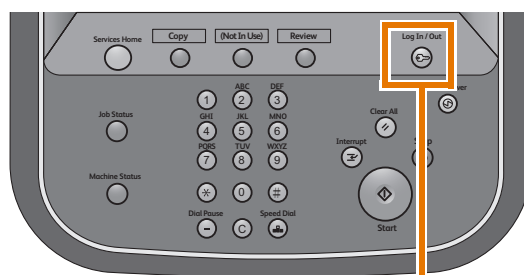
12.1.1 Step 1 Entering System Administration Mode

To enter the System Administration mode, enter the system administrator User ID. The password is also required when [Password Entry from Control Panel] is set to [On] in [Authentication] under [Authentication/Security Settings]. We recommend that you change the system administrator user ID and password immediately after the machine has been installed.



- For information on how to change them, refer to "12.10.1 System Administrator Settings" (p.445).

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button on the control panel.



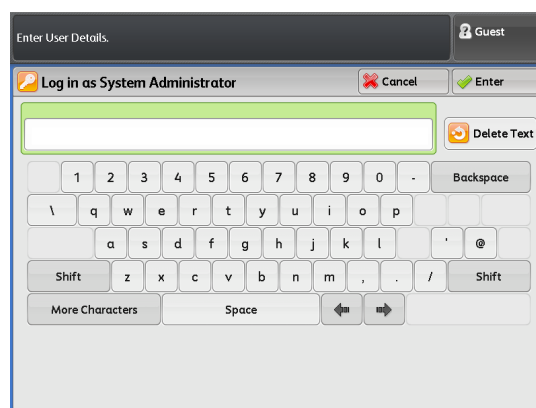
<Log In/Out> button

2. Enter the user ID of the system administrator, by using the numeric keypad or the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Enter].



Note

- By factory default, the User ID is "11111".
- The screen may differ depending on the settings of the machine.
- The <Log In/Out> button is lit when the machine enters the System Administration mode.



12.1.2 Step 2 Selecting the Desired Item

Select an item to set on the [Tools] screen.



Refer

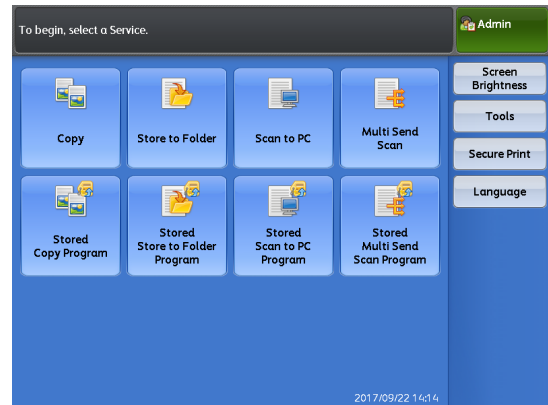
- For the list of items you can set on the [Tools] screen, refer to "12.2 Tools Menu List" (p.394).

1. On the menu screen, press [Tools].



Note

- Press the <Services Home> button on the control panel to display the menu screen, if not yet displayed.



2. Select an item to set.

System Settings

Select this to configure or change the default settings for each feature.

● Common Service Settings

Allows you to configure the general settings of the machine.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "12.3 Common Service Settings" (p.398).

● Copy Service Settings

Allows you to configure the Copy feature defaults, copy functions behavior, and button indications.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "12.4 Copy Service Settings" (p.414).

● Connectivity & Network Setup

Allows you to configure ports and protocols.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "12.5 Connectivity & Network Setup" (p.425).

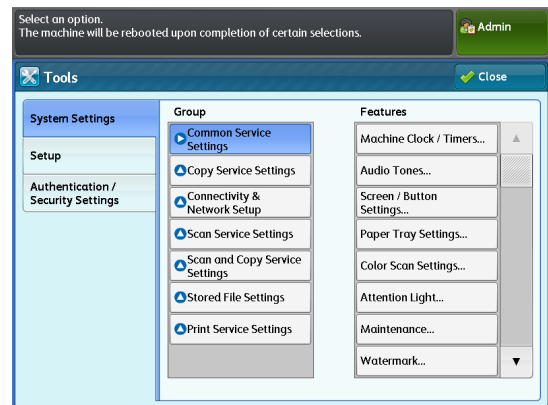
● Scan Service Settings

Allows you to configure the Scan feature defaults and scan functions behavior.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "12.6 Scan Service Settings" (p.433).



● Scan and Copy Service Settings

You can specify the default value for the Scan and Copy function.



Refer

- See For details, refer to "12.6 Scan Service Settings" (p.433).

● Stored File Settings

Allows you to set how the files stored in the machine's folders and printed documents stored in the machine are deleted.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "12.8 Stored File Settings" (p.438).

● Print Service Settings

Allows you to configure the print functions behavior.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "12.9 Print Service Settings" (p.441).

Setup

Select this to register or change stored programs, folders, and destination addresses.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "Chapter 9 Configuration" (p.303).

Authentication/Security Settings

You can configure Authentication and Secure Print settings.



Refer

- For more information, refer to "12.10 Authentication / Security Settings" (p.445).

12.1.3 Step 3 Configuring a Feature

1. Select the desired feature.



Note

- Use [▲] and [▼] as necessary.

2. Select an item to set.

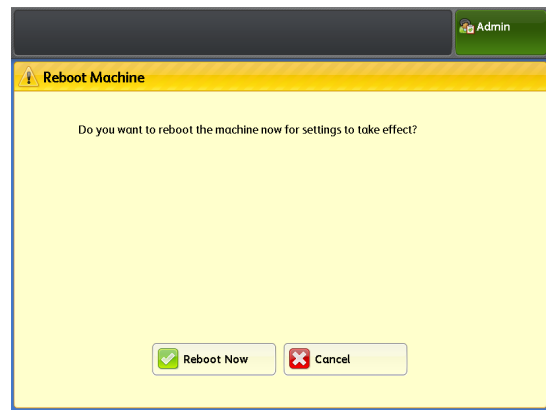
3. After completing the settings, press [Save].

4. Press [Close] several times until the menu screen is displayed.



Note

- If the changes you have made require rebooting of the machine to apply the changes, press [Close] on the [Tools] screen to display the [Reboot Machine] screen, and then press [Reboot Now].
When the machine is rebooted, the System Administrator mode automatically ends, and the [Login] button goes off.



12.1.4 Step 4 Exiting System Administration Mode

1. Press the <Log In/Out> button.



Note

- When you are logged out of the System Administration mode, the <Log In/Out> button goes out.

12.2 Tools Menu List

The following tables list the items that can be set on the [Tools] screen. Some items may not appear on your machine depending on the configuration.

Common Service Settings	
"Machine Clock / Timers"(p.398)	• "Machine Clock"(p.398) • "Auto Clear"(p.399) • "Power Saver Timers"(p.399) • "Time Zone"(p.399)
"Audio Tones"(p.399)	
"Screen / Button Settings"(p.401)	• "Screen Default"(p.401) • "Screen After Auto Clear"(p.401) • "Custom Buttons 1 to 3"(p.401) • "Services Home"(p.401) • "Services Home - Additional Features"(p.402) • "Default Language"(p.402)
"Paper Tray Settings"(p.402)	• "Paper Tray Series / Paper Type"(p.403) • "Paper Tray Attributes on Setup Screen"(p.403) • "Paper Tray Priority"(p.403) • "Paper Type Priority"(p.404)
"Color Scan Settings"(p.404)	
"Maintenance"(p.405)	• "Delete All Data"(p.405) • "Software Options"(p.405)
"Watermark"(p.406)	• "Watermark - Date Format"(p.406) • "Watermark - Font Size"(p.406) • "Watermark - Density"(p.406) • "Force Watermark - Copy"(p.407) • "Force Watermark - Client Print"(p.407)
"Other Settings"(p.407)	• "Toner Density"(p.407) • "Scan Start Mode"(p.407) • "Original Size System (DocuWide 6057)"(p.408) • "Special Size Setting"(p.408) • "Data Encryption"(p.409) • "Software Download"(p.410) • "Restrict User to Edit Address Book"(p.410) • "Stamp Color Priority of Job Log Collection"(p.410)
"Detailed Settings"(p.410)	
Copy Service Settings	

"Copy Tab - Features Allocation"(p.414)	• "Frequently Used Features 1, 2"(p.415)
"Preset Buttons"(p.415)	• "Reduce / Enlarge Buttons 3 to 5"(p.415)
"Copy Defaults"(p.415)	
"Auto Tray Switching"(p.417)	
"Variable Length Settings"(p.418)	
"Auto Mode Paper Type"(p.419)	
"Auto Mode Rotate Direction"(p.420)	
"Stamp Date Format"(p.421)	• "Format"(p.421) • "Year"(p.421) • "Month"(p.421) • "Zero Suppress"(p.421) • "Symbol"(p.421)
"Stamp Location Auto Settings"(p.421)	
"Watermark Location Auto Settings"(p.423)	
"Detailed Settings"(p.423)	
Connectivity & Network Setup	
"Port Settings"(p.425)	• "LPD"(p.426) • "SMB"(p.426) • "SNMP"(p.426) • "FTP"(p.426) • "Internet Services (HTTP)"(p.426) • "SOAP"(p.426) • "WebDAV"(p.426)
"Protocol Settings"(p.427)	• "Ethernet Rated Speed"(p.427) • "TCP/IP - IP Mode"(p.427) • "IPv4 - IP Address"(p.427) • "IPv4 - Subnet Mask"(p.428) • "IPv4 - Gateway Address"(p.428) • "IPv6 Address Manual Configuration"(p.428) • "Manually Configured IPv6 Address"(p.428) • "Manually Configured IPv6 Address Prefix"(p.428) • "Manually Configured IPv6 Gateway"(p.428) • "Automatically Configured IPv6 Address"(p.429)
"Remote Authentication / Directory Service"(p.429)	• "Authentication System Setup"(p.429) • "LDAP Server / Directory Service"(p.429)
"SSL / TLS Settings"(p.431)	• "Device Certificate - Server"(p.431) • "HTTP - SSL / TLS Communication"(p.431) • "HTTP - SSL / TLS Port Number"(p.431)

"Detailed Settings"(p.432)	
Scan Service Settings	
"Preset Buttons"(p.433)	• "Original Type - Buttons 1 to 5"(p.433) • "File Format - Buttons 1 to 5"(p.433)
"Scan Defaults"(p.434)	
"Other Settings"(p.435)	• "TIFF Format"(p.435) • "Multi Send Printer Transfer Format"(p.435)
"Detailed Settings"(p.436)	
Scan and Copy Service Settings (DocuWide 6057)	
"Scan and Copy Service Defaults"(p.437)	
Stored File Settings	
"Stored File Settings"(p.438)	• "File Expiration Date"(p.439) • "Stored Job Deletion"(p.439) • "Print Job Confirmation Screen"(p.439)
Print Service Settings	
"Job Recovery"(p.441)	
"Other Settings"(p.442)	• "VPI - Dotted Line Allocation"(p.442) • "VPI - Symbol"(p.442) • "VPI - Font Number"(p.442) • "VPI - Font Priority"(p.442) • "TIFF - Resizing"(p.442) • "HPGL - Draw Arc"(p.442) • "HPGL - Draw Dotted Line"(p.442) • "Label Offset"(p.443) • "Draw Position of Alignment Mark"(p.443) • "Detect Long Edge"(p.443) • "Detect Long Edge - A0 to A4"(p.443) • "Dither Pattern"(p.443) • "Draw Solid Thin Line"(p.443)
"Detailed Settings"(p.444)	
Authentication / Security Settings	
"System Administrator Settings"(p.445)	• "System Administrator's Login ID"(p.445) • "System Administrator's Password"(p.446)
"Stamp Data Admin Settings"(p.446)	• "Stamp Data Administrator ID"(p.446) • "Stamp Data Administrator's Password"(p.447)

"Authentication"(p.447)	• "Login Type"(p.447) • "Access Control Service Access"(p.448) • "Create User Account"(p.449) • "Reset User Accounts"(p.450) • "User Details Setup"(p.451) • "Maximum Login Attempts by System Administrator"(p.452) • "Password Entry from Control Panel"(p.452) • "Private Charge Print Settings"(p.453) • "Detailed Settings"(p.454)
"Job Status Default"(p.454)	• "Completed Jobs View"(p.454)
"Overwrite Hard Disk"(p.456)	• "Number of Overwrites"(p.456)

12.3 Common Service Settings

With [Common Service Settings], you can configure specifications relating to the machine's common features. Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

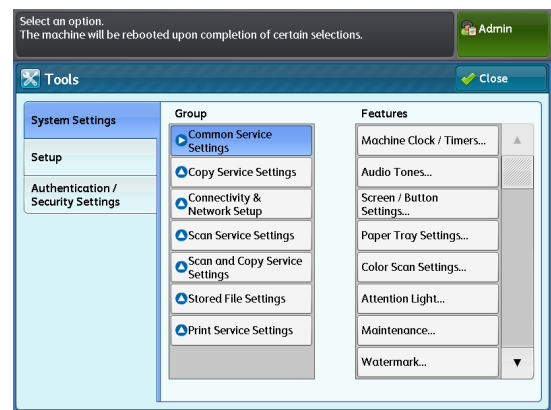
● Machine Clock / Timers.....	p.398
● Audio Tones	p.399
● Screen / Button Settings	p.401
● Paper Tray Settings	p.402
● Color Scan Settings	p.404
● Maintenance	p.405
● Watermark.....	p.406
● Other Settings.....	p.407
● Detailed Settings	p.410

1. On the [Tools] screen, press [System Settings] > [Common Service Settings].



- For information on how to display the [Tools] screen, refer to "12.1 System Settings Procedure" (p.390).

2. Select the item you want to configure or change.



12.3.1 Machine Clock / Timers

You can use this feature to set the machine clock and the time intervals before the Power Saver mode or Auto Clear is activated.

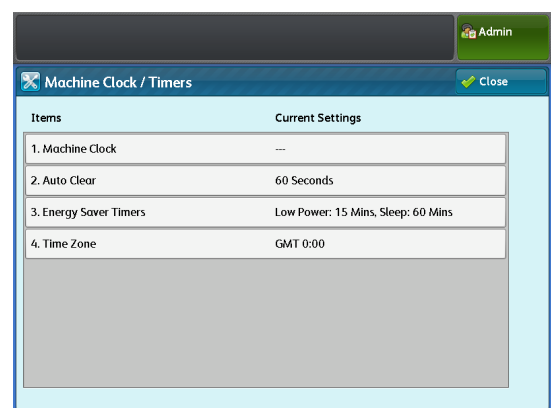
1. Press [Machine Clock / Timers].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

Machine Clock

Allows you to set the date and time in the system clock of the machine. The date and time set here will be printed on all lists and reports.

Specify [Year], [Month], [Day], [Hours], and [Minutes].

You can change the order of [Year], [Month], and [Day] by specifying [Y/M/D], [M/D/Y] or [D/M/Y] for [Date Format].



**Note**

- Changes in [Date Format] only affect the date and time displayed on the touch screen. They do not affect the date and time printed on sheets.

Auto Clear

Allows you to set the duration of time before the machine is automatically reset if no operation is performed.

When you select [On], specify a value between 30 and 180 seconds in 1 second increments.

To disable this function, select [Off].

The factory default is [60] seconds.

Power Saver Timers

The Power Saver mode has two modes: the Low Power mode and the Sleep mode. When a specified period of time has elapsed, the machine switches to these modes in the following order to reduce power consumption.

Last operation on the machine -> Low Power mode -> Sleep mode

**Note**

- You cannot disable the functionality of switching to the Low Power and Sleep modes.

From Last Operation to Low Power Mode

Set the time that must elapse from the last operation until the machine enters the Low Power mode, in the range of 5 to 240 minutes in 1 minute increments.

The factory default is [15] minutes.

From Last Operation to Sleep Mode

Set the time that must elapse from the last operation until the machine enters the Sleep mode, in the range of 5 to 240 minutes in 1 minute increments.

The factory default is [60] minutes.

**Note**

- Specify a longer time interval in [From Last Operation to Sleep Mode] than in [From Last Operation to Low Power Mode].

Time Zone

Allows you to set the time difference from GMT.

Set the time zone in the range of -12 to +12 in 30 minutes increments.

The factory default is [0] hours and [0] minutes.

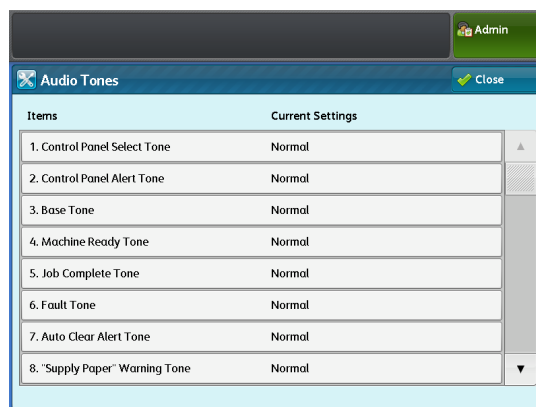
12.3.2 Audio Tones

You can use this feature to set whether to sound an alarm when a job ends or a fault occurs.

The factory default is [Normal] for all items.

1. Press [Audio Tones].

2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].



Item	Description	Possible Value
Control Panel Select Tone	Set the volume of the beep that sounds when a button on the control panel is correctly selected.	Off, Soft, Normal, Loud
Control Panel Alert Tone	Set the volume of the beep that sounds when a button that cannot be selected is selected, or an operation is performed while an error occurs.	Off, Soft, Normal, Loud
Base Tone	Set the volume of the beep that sounds at the home position of a toggle button, which you can press repeatedly to switch between selections. This alarm also beeps when the <Interrupt> or <Copy from Memory> mode is exited.  Note • There are two toggle buttons: [Copy from Memory] available during copying, and the <Interrupt> button on the control panel.	Off, Soft, Normal, Loud
Machine Ready Tone	Set the volume of the beep that sounds when the machine is ready to copy or print, for example, the power is turned on.	Off, Soft, Normal, Loud
Job Complete Tone	Set the volume of the beep that sounds when a job is completed normally.	Off, Soft, Normal, Loud
Fault Tone	Set the volume of the beep that sounds when a job fails.	Off, Soft, Normal, Loud
Auto Clear Alert Tone	When the Auto Clear feature is enabled, set the volume of the beep that sounds five seconds before the screen automatically goes back to the initial screen.	Off, Soft, Normal, Loud
"Supply Paper" Warning Tone	Set the volume of the beep that sounds when a job is suspended because there is no paper in a tray.	Off, Soft, Normal, Loud
Low Toner Alert Tone	Set the volume of the beep that sounds when the toner cartridge needs replacing.	Off, Soft, Normal, Loud
Originals Set Tone	Set the volume of the beep that sounds when an original is loaded.	Off, Soft, Normal, Loud

12.3.3 Screen / Button Settings

You can use this feature to set the default screen which is displayed when the machine is turned on and to assign functions to Custom Buttons 1 to 3.

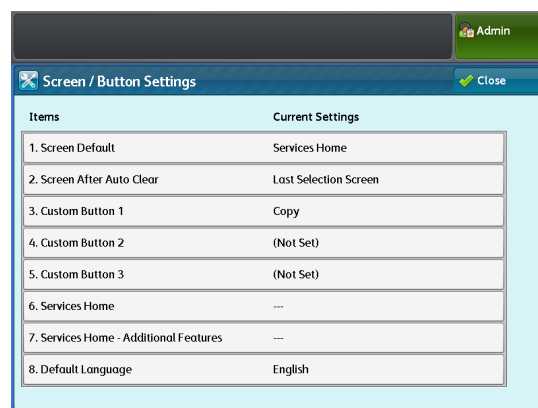
1. Press [Screen / Button Settings].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

Screen Default

Allows you to set the screen displayed when the power is turned on, when the machine exits the Power Saver mode, or when the Auto Clear feature is turned on.

Select from [Services Home], [Copy], [Store to Folder], [Scan to PC], and [Multi Send Scan].

The factory default is [Services Home].



Note

- When [Screen Default] is selected for [Screen After Auto Clear], the default screen is displayed when the Auto Clear feature is turned on. For how to select this option, refer to "Screen After Auto Clear"(p.401).
- If the feature selected here is restricted to be used base on the authentication settings, the menu screen (Services Home) is displayed.
- [Scan and Copy Service] cannot be assigned to [Screen Default].

Screen After Auto Clear

Allows you to set the screen displayed after Auto Clear. Select [Last Selection Screen] or [Screen Default].

The factory default is [Last Selection Screen].

Custom Buttons 1 to 3

Allows you to assign a feature to each of the Custom Buttons 1 to 3 on the control panel.

Select from [Copy], [Store to Folder], [Stored Scan to PC], [Multi Send Scan], [Stored Copy Program], [Stored Store to Folder Program], and [Stored Multi Send Scan Program].

The factory defaults for custom buttons 1, 2, and 3 are [Copy], [(Not Set)], and [(Not Set)], respectively.



Note

- You may assign the same feature to all the custom buttons.
- [Scan and Copy Service] cannot be assigned.

Services Home

Allows you to show/hide or arrange the display order of the function buttons on the menu screen.

Select from [Copy], [Store to Folder], [Stored Scan to PC], [Multi Send Scan], [Scan and Copy Service], [Stored Copy Program], [Stored Store to Folder Program], [Stored Scan to PC Program], [Stored Multi Send Scan Program], and [Stored Scan and Copy Program].

If you want to hide a function button, specify [(Not Set)].



Note

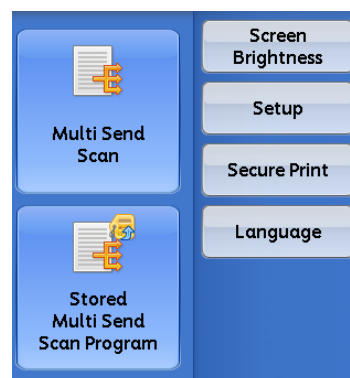
- [Scan and Copy Service] and [Stored Scan and Copy Program] are available only on the DocuWide 6057.

Services Home - Additional Features

Allows you to show/hide or arrange the display order of the additional function buttons on the menu screen.

Select from [Screen Brightness], [Setup], [Secure Print/] or [Private Charge Print], [Language], [Scan Sensor Gap Calibration], and [Fusing Unit Settings].

To hide a function button, specify [(Not Set)].



Note

- [Scan Sensor Gap Calibration] can be displayed and set only on the DocuWide 3037.

Default Language

Allows you to select the default language to be used when the machine is turned on.

Select from [English], [Simplified Chinese], and [Japanese].

The factory default is [English].



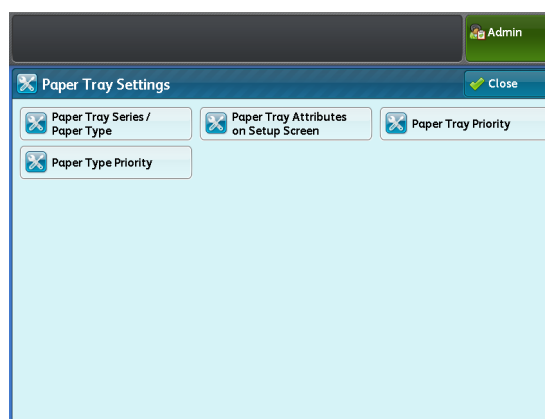
Important

- When you select English as the display language and entries such as Address Name contain characters other than ASCII, they may not be displayed appropriately.

12.3.4 Paper Tray Settings

You can use this feature to set the size series and type of paper to be used, and the priority given to the trays.

1. Press [Paper Tray Settings].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].



Paper Tray Series / Paper Type

Allows you to set paper series, type, and weight.

● Paper Series

Paper series can be selected from [A Series], [JIS B Series], [ISO B Series], [Special A Series], [Arch Series-1], [Arch Series-2], [ANSI Series].

The factory default is [A Series].

● Paper Type

The paper type can be selected from [Plain], [Tracing], [Film].

The factory default is [Plain].

● Paper Weight

Select the paper weight from [Light], [Standard], [Heavy].

The factory default is [Light].

Items	Current Settings	
1. Roll 1	A Series	Plain
2. Roll 2	A Series	Plain
3. Roll 3	A Series	Plain
4. Roll 4	A Series	Plain
5. Bypass	A Series	Plain

Paper Tray Attributes on Setup Screen

To show roll media trays and cut sheet tray in [Setup? > [Paper Tray Series / Paper Type] (P.316), set this option to [Enabled].

The factory default is [Enabled].



Note

- For EP Model, to allow users to change Paper Series, Paper Type, and Paper Weight, set this option to [Enabled].

Paper Tray Priority

Set the priority order in which paper trays are used when the following conditions are satisfied:

● When copying

- Paper selection is set to Auto.
- The same size of paper is loaded in multiple trays.

● When printing

- Paper selection is set to Auto.
- The same size of paper is loaded in multiple trays.
- The print job does not specify a paper size and a tray.

Select from [First], [Second], [Third], [Fourth] and [Exclude from Auto Tray Switching].

By default, the priority is set as Roll 1 [First], Roll 2 [Second], Roll 3 [Third], Roll 4 [Fourth].



Note

- Multiple trays cannot have the same priority.

Roll 1	Roll 2	Roll 3	Roll 4
First	First	First	First
Second	Second	Second	Second
Third	Third	Third	Third
Fourth	Fourth	Fourth	Fourth
Exclude from Auto Tray Switching	Exclude from Auto Tray Switching	Exclude from Auto Tray Switching	Exclude from Auto Tray Switching

Paper Type Priority

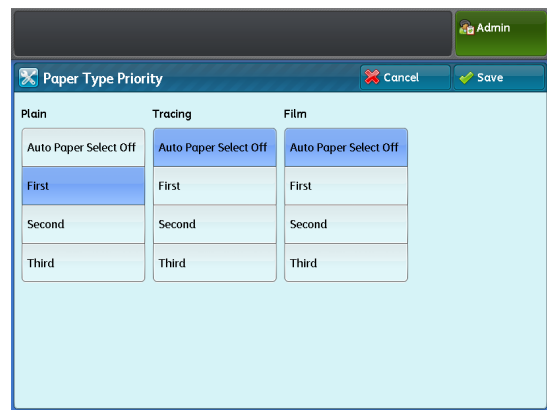
Allows you to set the priority of the paper types to use when the following conditions are satisfied:

- Paper selection is set to Auto.
 - The same size of paper is loaded in multiple trays.
- Select from [Auto Paper Select Off], [First], [Second], and [Third]. The factory defaults for Plain, Tracing, and Film are [First], [Auto Paper Select Off], and [Auto Paper Select Off], respectively.



Note

- All paper types can have the same priority. All the trays, however, cannot be assigned with [Auto Paper Select Off].
- The setting for Paper Type Priority have priority over that for Paper Tray Priority.

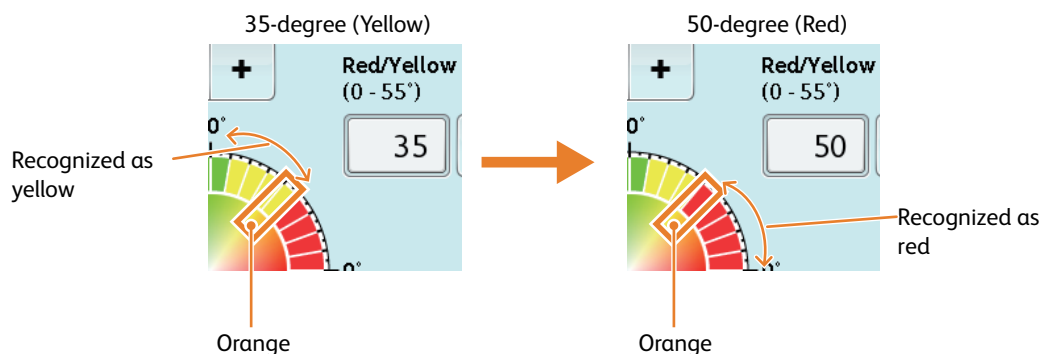


12.3.5 Color Scan Settings

You can use this feature to specify the degree value on the color circle.

This feature allows you to define the color to be recognized as the boundary between adjacent colors.

For example, when [Red/Yellow] is set to [35], orange between yellow and red illustrated in the figure below is recognized as yellow, and when it is set to [50], the orange is recognized as red.



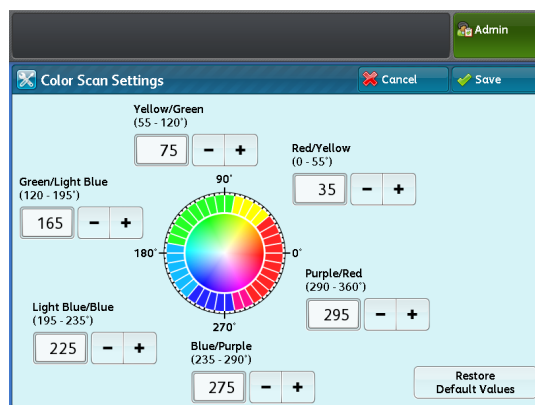
The scan color settings specified here are used with [Output Color] and [Adjust Color Density].

The factory defaults are:

- Red/Yellow: 35
- Yellow/Green: 75
- Green/Light Blue: 165
- Light Blue/Blue: 225
- Blue/Purple: 275
- Purple/Red: 295

1. Press [Color Scan Settings].

- Set the value by pressing [+] and [-].

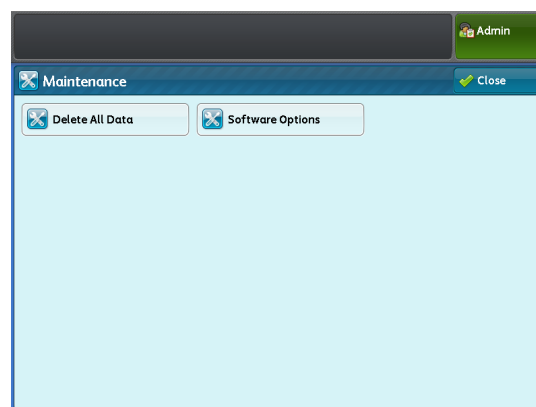


- Press [Save].

12.3.6 Maintenance

This feature can be used to delete maintenance history and all data stored on the machine at one time.

- Press [Maintenance].
- Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].



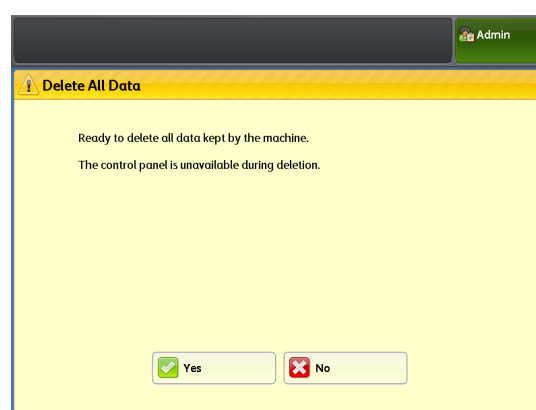
Delete All Data

This function is designed to prevent the leakage of confidential information of a customer when the machine is returned to Fuji Xerox. By executing this function, all data registered/configured on the machine is deleted.

In normal use, do not use this function.

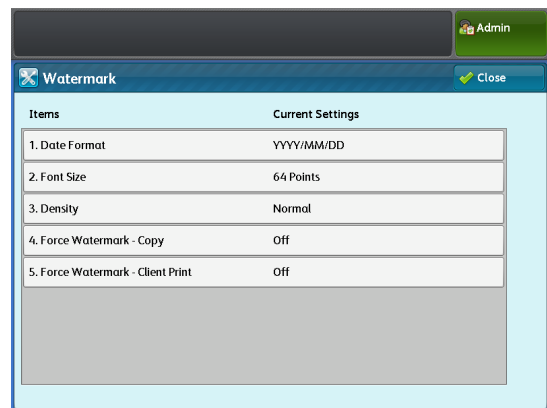
Software Options

This function is for customer engineer use.



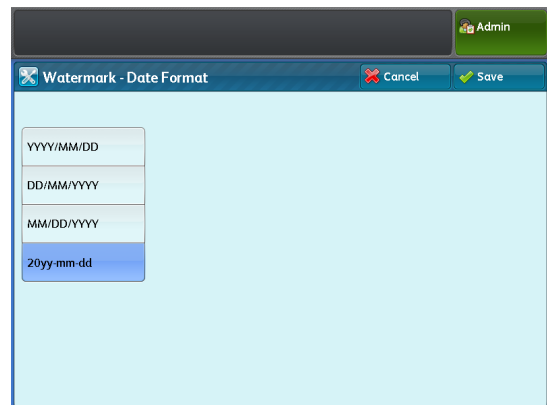
12.3.7 Watermark

Specify the text to be printed for watermark.
The setting items are as follows.



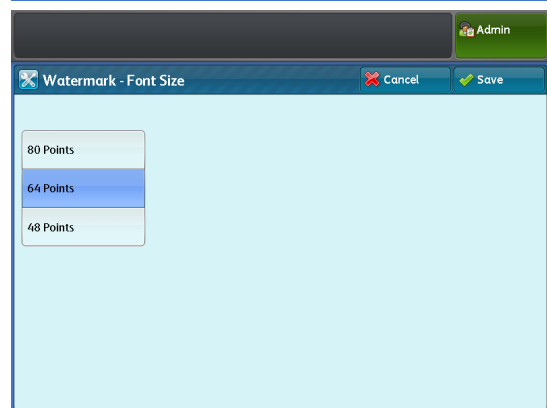
Watermark - Date Format

Specify the date format to be printed for watermark.
Select from [YYYY/MM/DD], [DD/MM/YYYY], [MM/DD/YYYY], [20yy-mm-dd].
The factory default is [20yy/mm/dd].



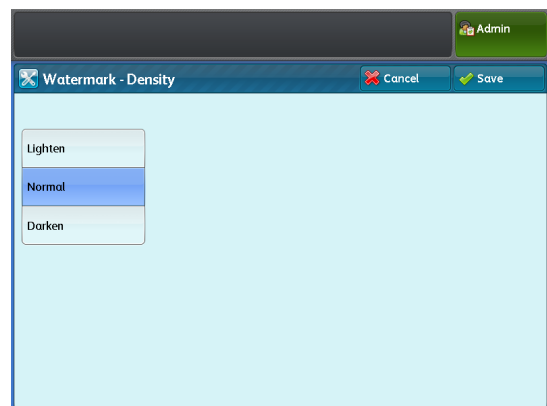
Watermark - Font Size

Specify the font size for watermark text.
Select from [80 Points], [64 Points], and [48 Points].
The factory default is [64 Points].



Watermark - Density

Specify the density of watermark text.
Select [Lighten], [Normal], or [Darken].
The factory default is [Light].



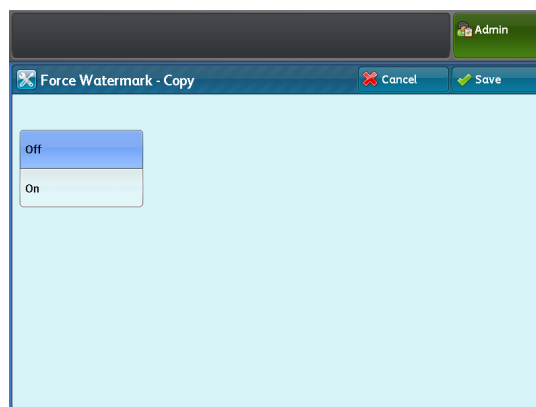
Force Watermark - Copy

Specify whether to forcibly print watermark when copying.

Select [Off] or [On].

When [On] is selected, User ID, date and time, and the machine serial number are printed.

The factory default is [Off].



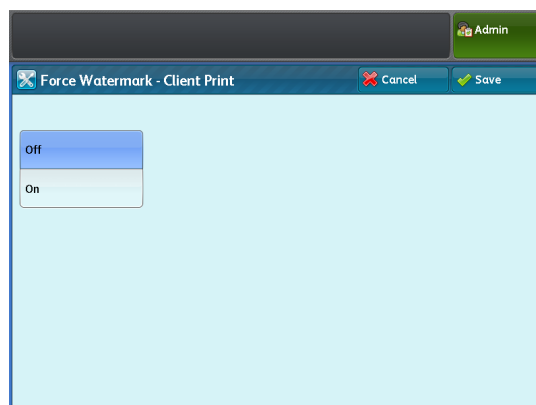
Force Watermark - Client Print

Specify whether to forcibly print watermark when printing.

Select [Off] or [On].

When [On] is selected, User ID, date and time, and the machine serial number are printed on your print job.

The factory default is [Off].



12.3.8 Other Settings

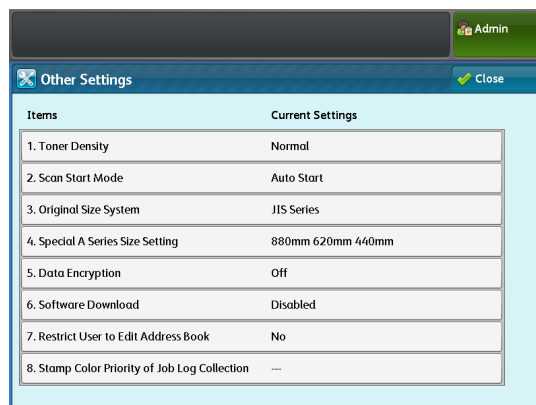
1. Press [Other Settings].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

Toner Density

Allows you to set the toner density.

Select from [Lighten +2], [Lighten +1], [Normal], [Darken +1], and [Darken +2].

The factory default is [Normal].



Scan Start Mode

Allows you to select whether to start scanning automatically or by pressing the <Start> button, after an original has been loaded.

Select [Auto Start] or [Manual Start]. The factory default is [Auto Start].



Note

- This setting is effective for Copy, Scan, Scan and Copy jobs.

Auto Start

Select this to start scanning automatically after an original has been loaded.

Manual Start

Select this to start scanning by pressing the <Start> button on the control panel.

Original Size System (DocuWide 6057)

Specify the original size series when the original of standard sizes are to be detected automatically.

Select from [JIS Series], [ISO Series], [inch Series].

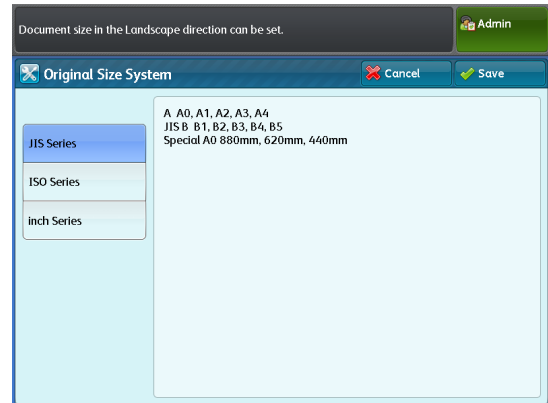
The factory default is [JIS Series].



Note

- This function is available only on the DocuWide 6057.

Settings	Size Series of Original	Auto-detected Original Width
JIS Series	A Series	A0, A1, A2, A3, A4
	JIS B Series	B1, B2, B3, B4, B5
	Special A Series	880 mm, 620 mm, 440 mm
ISO Series	A Series	A0, A1, A2, A3A4
	ISO B Series	B1, B2, B3, B4B5
	Special A Series	880 mm, 620 mm, 440 mm
inch Series	Arch Series-1	36", 24", 18", 12", 9"
	Arch Series-2	30", 21", 15", 10.5"
	ANSI Series	34", 22", 17", 11", 8.5"



Special Size Setting



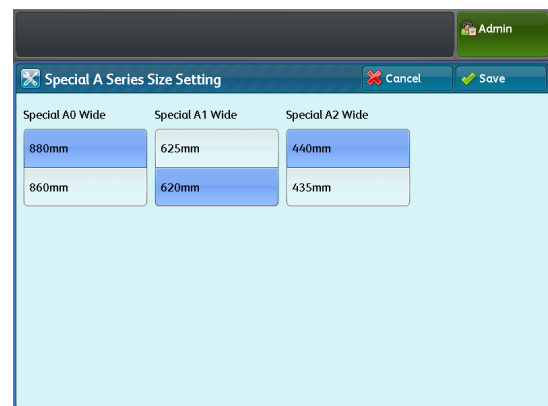
Note

- [Special Size Setting] is displayed when the item number [70] in [Detailed Settings] is set to [2]. For more information, refer to "12.3.9 Detailed Settings" (p.410).

Allows you to set the Special A Series sizes.

The factory defaults are:

Size	Item	Factory Default
Special A0 Wide	880mm	880mm
	860mm	
Special A1 Wide	625mm	620mm
	620mm	
Special A2 Wide	440mm	440mm
	435mm	



Data Encryption

Allows you to select whether to encrypt data recorded on the machine's hard disk.

When data encryption is enabled, the machine automatically encrypts copy, scan, and print data before writing these data to its hard disk. Whether to encrypt data cannot be set for individual features. Encrypting data prevents unauthorized users from reading data stored on the hard disk, even if the hard disk is stolen.

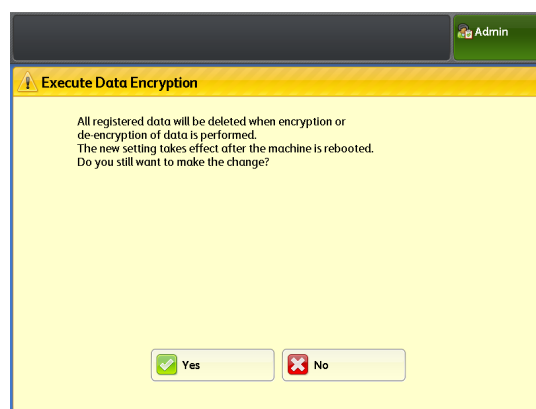
When you select [On], enter an encryption key of 1 to 12 digits in both [New Encryption Key] and [Re-enter New Encryption Key].

If you choose not to encrypt data, select [Off]. The factory default is [Off].



Select [On] and press [Save] to display the [Execute Data Encryption] screen.

Select [Yes] or [No].



● Notes on enabling the data encryption feature and changing the settings

You need to reboot the machine after enabling/disabling data encryption or changing the encryption key. The corresponding storage space (hard disk) will be initialized during the reboot process. Initializing will erase all the data stored previously.

The storage space holds data including:

- Spooled print data
- Scanned data saved in folders
- Data saved in the address book



- Be sure to save all necessary settings and files before you enable the data encryption feature or change any settings. (The address book can be retrieved via CentreWare Internet Services.)
- If the hard disk currently connected to the machine does not satisfy the encryption settings, an error occurs. For information on error messages and remedies, refer to "11.9 Error Messages" (p.368).
- Even our customer service engineers cannot see or restore the encryption key. Be sure not to lose the encryption key.



Note

- It takes a while for the encryption settings to update.
- If an error occurs during the encryption setup process, an error message is displayed on the touch screen. Reboot the machine according to the instructions displayed on the screen.
- The encryption setting is set to [off] the next time the machine starts up.

- During the encryption setup process, the machine cannot accept any user operation such as copy, scan, and print.

Software Download

This function is for customer engineer use.

Restrict User to Edit Address Book

Allows you to select whether to restrict users from registering/changing destination addresses used with [Scan to PC] and [Multi Send Scan].

Select [No] or [Yes]. The factory default is [Off].



Note

- When [No] is selected, users other than the system administrator cannot register/change destination addresses.

Stamp Color Priority of Job Log Collection

Although up to two stamps can be imprinted on a page, ApeosWare Log Management (JobLog Analyzer) manages to count only one in a page.

Specify which color of the stamp to be used for counting when different colored stamps are imprinted in a page.

The first and second priority can be set for [Black] and [Gray].

The factory default is as follows.

- [Black]: [First]
- [Gray]: [Second]

12.3.9 Detailed Settings

1. Press [Detailed Settings].
2. Fill in [Item Number] and press [Confirm / Change].



Refer

- For information on the item numbers, refer to "Item Number: Common Service Settings"(p.410).

3. Fill in [New Value].
4. Press [Confirm / Change].

Item Number: Common Service Settings

Item Number	Description	Options for New Value	Factory Default
3	Sets the amount of margin in the positive direction which the machine takes into account when determining whether the original size is of a standard/non-standard size. For example, when 5 mm is set, up to the length equivalent to a standard size plus 5 mm is considered as a standard size.	0-20 (mm)	5 (mm)
4	Sets the amount of margin in the negative direction which the machine takes into account when determining whether the original size is of a standard/non-standard size. For example, when 5 mm is set, up to the length equivalent to a standard size minus 5 mm is considered as a standard size.	0-20 (mm)	5 (mm)
5	Sets the length guaranteed to be scanned when the machine runs a job such as a copy job for which Paper Cut Mode - [Synchronized] is specified or a scan job for which Original Size - [Auto Detect] is specified.	0-15 (m) (When 0 or a value exceeding the physical memory capacity is specified, output for the current job must be completed before scanning of the next original can be started.)	6 (m)
8	Sets which Roll or Tray to be used for feeding paper for printing stamp list.	2 Roll type 1: Roll 1 2: Roll 2 4 Roll type 1: Roll 1 2: Roll 2 3: Roll 3 4: Roll 4	1: Roll
9	Sets which paper cutting method is to be used when printing stamp list.	1: Set Portrait 2: Set Landscape 3: Synchronized	3: Synchronized
12	Sets the duration of time before the machine switches to the plot mode.	3-60 (sec)	30 (sec)
14	Sets whether to use the Copy from Memory function.	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Enabled
33	When synchronized cutting is specified, set whether to print copies after scanning has been completed.	0: Prints the document while being scanned 1: Prints the document after scanning is complete.	1: Prints the document after scanning is complete.
34	Sets the density of the gray stamp.	0: light 1: normal 2: a little darker 3: darker 4: dark	1: normal
40	Set whether non-standard originals should be determined as the nearest standard size when DocuWide 6057 auto-determines original size.	1: Yes when copying 3: Yes when copying/scanning	1: Yes when copying

Item Number	Description	Options for New Value	Factory Default
Set whether these sizes should be detected when DocuWide 6057 auto-determines original size, on a size series basis. When "0" is specified for all, 41 to 47, copy will be made with the maximum width and scan will be auto detected.			
41	JIS/ISO A Series	0: Not detected 1: Detected when copying 2: Detected when scanning 3: Detected when copying/scanning	3: Detected when copying/scanning
42	JIS B Series		3: Detected when copying/scanning
43	ISO B Series		3: Detected when copying/scanning
44	Special A Series		3: Detected when copying/scanning
45	Arch-1 Series		3: Detected when copying/scanning
46	Arch-2 Series		3: Detected when copying/scanning
47	ANSI Series		3: Detected when copying/scanning
Sets whether to enhance lines for each of the Original Types. However, the machine does not support the enhanced line mode for full color jobs.			
53	Text & Line	0: Do not enhance lines 1: Enhance lines	0: Do not enhance lines
54	Photo & Text		0: Do not enhance lines
55	Printed Original		0: Do not enhance lines
56	Photograph		0: Do not enhance lines
57	Blueprint		0: Do not enhance lines
58	Transparent		0: Do not enhance lines
59	Uneven-Toned Background		0: Do not enhance lines
65	Adjusts the achromatic level the machine detects for scan.	0-254 (The lower the value, the lower intensity color the machine distinguishes.)	5
Sets whether to reduce unwanted streaks.			
66	Other than full color	- DocuWide 6057 0: Disabled 1: Weaker 2: Stronger 3: Stronger+ 4: Stronger++ - DocuWide 3037 0: Disabled 1: Weaker 2: Stronger	- DocuWide 6057 3: Stronger+ - DocuWide 3037 0: Disabled
67	Color		- DocuWide 6057 0: Disabled - DocuWide 3037 0: Disabled

Item Number	Description	Options for New Value	Factory Default
70	Defines the Special A Series sizes.	1: Standard Portrait 880 x 1240 mm, 620 x 880 mm, 440 x 620 mm, 310 x 440 mm Standard Landscape 880 x 620 mm, 620 x 440 mm, 440 x 310 mm, 310 x 220 mm 2: Standard Portrait 880 x 1230 mm, 860 x 1210 mm, 625 x 880 mm, 620 x 871 mm, 440 x 625 mm, 435 x 620 mm Standard Landscape 880 x 625 mm, 860 x 610 mm, 625 x 440 mm, 620 x 435 mm, 440 x 312 mm, 435 x 310 mm	1

12.4 Copy Service Settings

With [Copy Service Settings], you can configure specifications relating to the machine's Copy feature.

Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

● Copy Tab - Features Allocation.....	p.414
● Preset Buttons.....	p.415
● Copy Defaults.....	p.415
● Auto Tray Switching.....	p.417
● Variable Length Settings	p.418
● Auto Mode Paper Type.....	p.419
● Auto Mode Rotate Direction	p.420
● Stamp Date Format.....	p.421
● Stamp Location Auto Settings	p.421
● Watermark Location Auto Settings.....	p.423
● Detailed Settings	p.423

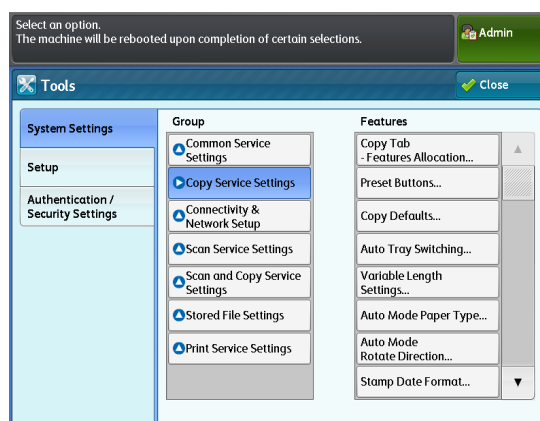
1. On the [Tools] screen, press [System Settings] > [Copy Service Settings].



Refer

- For information on how to display the [Tools] screen, refer to "12.1 System Settings Procedure" (p.390).

2. Select the item you want to configure or change.



12.4.1 Copy Tab - Features Allocation

You can use this feature to customize the functions shown to the right on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen. Setting the frequently used functions enables you to avoid extra operations such as selecting tabs.

1. Press [Copy Tab - Features Allocation].

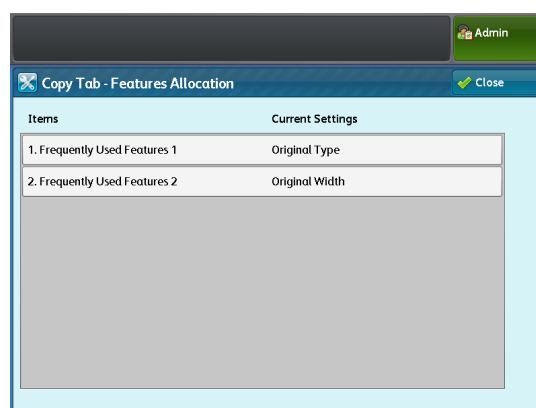
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

Frequently Used Features 1, 2

Allows you to set the functions shown to the right on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen.

Select [Original Type], [Image Options], [Background Suppression], [Threshold Halftones], [Adjust Color Density], [Original Width], [Image Shift], [Scan Start Position], [Edge Erase], [Invert Image], [Scan Speed], [Image Rotation], [Watermark], [Output Destination], [Copy Output], [Stamp], [Lead & Tail Margins], [Multi-job] (DocuWide 6057), or [Sample Copy].

The factory default setting of Frequently Used Features 1 is [Original Type] and Frequently Used Features 2 is [Original Width].



12.4.2 Preset Buttons

You can use this feature to set the magnification ratios shown on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen.

1. Press [Preset Buttons].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

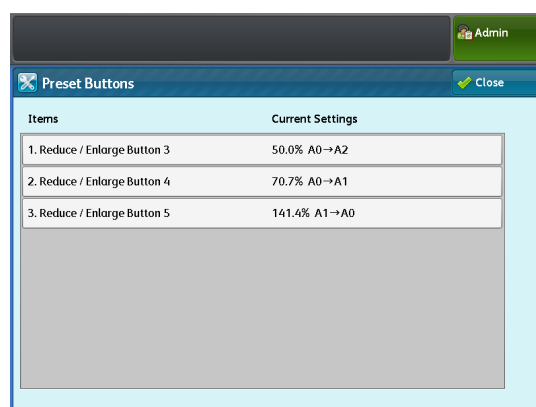
Reduce / Enlarge Buttons 3 to 5

Allows you to set the magnification ratio displayed in the third to fifth buttons in [Reduce/ Enlarge] on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen.

Select from [25.0 %], [35.3 %], [50.0 %], [70.7 %], [141.4 %], [200.0 %], [283.0 %], and [400.0 %].

The factory defaults are:

- Reduce / Enlarge Button 3: 50.0 %
- Reduce / Enlarge Button 4: 70.7 %
- Reduce / Enlarge Button 5: 141.4 %



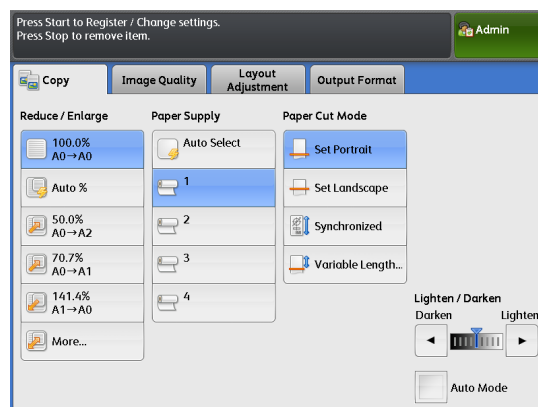
12.4.3 Copy Defaults

You can use this feature to set the default settings for the Copy feature. The default settings specified here are restored when the power is turned on, when the machine exits the Power Saver mode, when the <Clear All> button is pressed, or when the Auto Clear feature is turned on.

Setting frequently used features and values as the defaults can avoid extra operations required during the use of the machine.

1. Press [Copy Defaults].

2. Press the item you want to configure or change.
3. Select the desired value and press the <Start> button.



Item	Description	Factory Default
Auto Mode	Select either Auto Mode or Manual Mode.	Manual Mode
Original Orientation	Sets [Original Orientation] on the [Copy (Auto Mode)] screen.	Standard Portrait
Paper Orientation	Sets [Paper Orientation] on the [Copy (Auto Mode)] screen.	When [Original Orientation] is set to [Standard Portrait]: Portrait When [Original Orientation] is set to [Standard Landscape]: Landscape
Correspondence matrix	Set the correspondence matrix displayed on the [Copy (Auto Mode)] screen.	
Manual Mode		
Reduce / Enlarge	Sets the default value for [Reduce / Enlarge] on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen.	100.0 %
Paper Supply	Sets the default value for [Paper Supply] on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen.	Roll 1
Paper Cut Mode	Sets the default value for [Paper Cut Mode] on the [Copy (Manual Mode)] screen.	Set Portrait
Original Type	Sets the default value for [Original Type] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Text & Line
Image Options	Sets the default value for [Image Options] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Lighten / Darken: Normal Sharpness: Normal Contrast: Normal
Background Suppression	Sets the default value for [Background Suppression] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Auto (0)
Threshold Sort	Sets the default value for [Threshold Sort] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Off
Adjust Color Density	Sets the default value for [Adjust Color Density] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Adjust Off

Item	Description	Factory Default
Original Width	Sets the default value for [Original Width] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	- DocuWide 6057: Auto Detect - DocuWide 3037 Auto Detect (A Series)
Image Shift	Sets the default value for [Image Shift] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	Off
Scan Start Position	Sets the default value for [Scan Start Position] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	0 mm
Edge Erase	Sets the default value for [Edge Erase] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	Normal
Invert Image	Sets the default value for [Invert Image] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	Normal Image Positive Image
Scan Speed	Sets the default value for [Scan Speed] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	Fast
Image Rotation	Sets the default value for [Image Rotation] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	Clockwise
Watermark	Sets the default value for [Watermark] on the [Output Format] screen.	Off
Output Destination	Sets the default value for [Output Destination] on the [Output Format] screen.	Front Output
Copy Output	Sets the default value for [Copy Output] on the [Output Format] screen.	Uncollated
Stamp	Sets the default value for [Stamp] on the [Output Format] screen.	Stamp1: Off Stamp2: Off Number: Not set Color: Black Location / Orientation: Auto Numbering: No Print Date: Off
Lead & Tail Margins	Sets the default value for [Lead & Tail Margins] on the [Output Format] screen.	Lead: 0 mm Tail: 0 mm

* Multi-job and Sample Copy cannot be set as the default.

12.4.4 Auto Tray Switching

You can use this feature to set how the tray is switched when running out of paper loaded in the selected tray. The factory default is [Enable During Auto Paper Select].

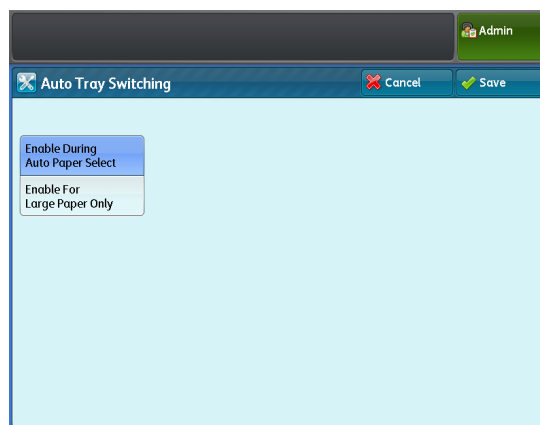


Note

- Selecting [Enable During Auto Paper Select] tells the machine to switch the tray to an alternative one when [Auto] is selected on the [Copy] screen or in the print drivers' s [Paper Source] option.

1. Press [Auto Tray Switching].

2. Select [Enable During Auto Paper Select] or [Enable For Large Paper Only].



12.4.5 Variable Length Settings

You can use this feature to set the default variable length to be used when [Variable Length] is specified on the [Paper Cut Mode] screen under the Copy feature.

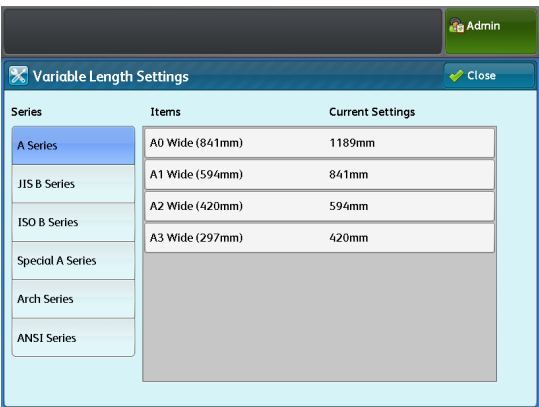
The default variable length can be set for individual paper sizes, in the range of 210 to 15,000 mm.

The factory defaults are:

Series	Item	Factory Default
A series	A0 Wide	1189mm
	A1 Wide	841mm
	A2 Wide	594mm
	A3 Wide	420mm
JIS B series	B1 Wide	1030mm
	B2 Wide	728mm
	B3 Wide	515mm
ISO B Series	B1 Wide	1000mm
	B2 Wide	707mm
	B3 Wide	500mm
Special A series	880mm Wide	1240mm
	620mm Wide	880mm
	440mm Wide	620mm
	310mm Wide	440mm
Arch series	36" Wide	1219mm
	30" Wide	1066mm
	24" Wide	914mm
	18" Wide	610mm
	15" Wide	533mm
	12" Wide	457mm

Series	Item	Factory Default
ANSI Series	34" Wide	1118mm
	22" Wide	864mm
	17" Wide	559mm
	11" Wide	432mm

1. Press [Variable Length Settings].
2. Press the paper size to set.
3. Enter the variable length value by using the numeric keypad or by pressing [+] and [-].
4. Press [Close].

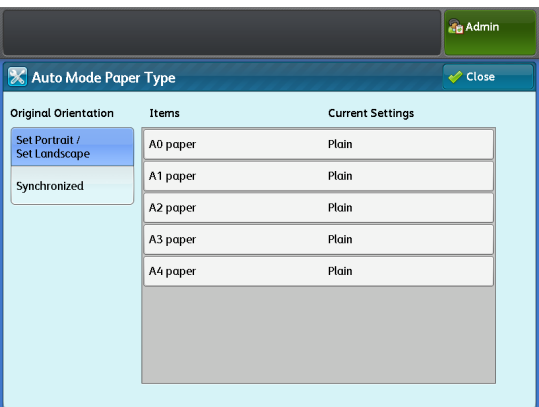


12.4.6 Auto Mode Paper Type

You can use this feature to set the paper type used according to the orientation of the original, when running a copy job in the auto mode.

The factory default is [Plain] for all sizes.

1. Press [Auto Mode Paper Type].
2. Select the orientation of the original.
3. Press the paper size to set.



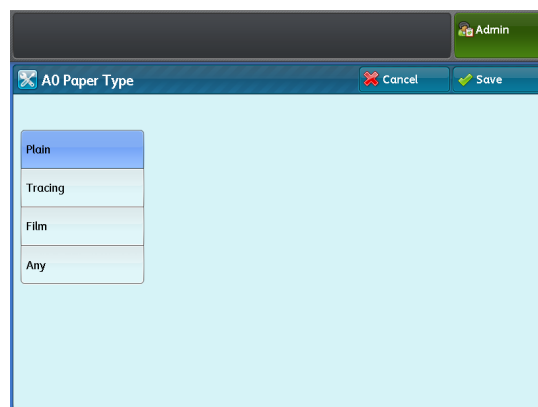
4. Select the paper type from [Plain], [Tracing], [Film], and [Any].



Note

- When an option other than [Any] is selected, a paper run out error occurs if the specified type of paper is not loaded in any tray.

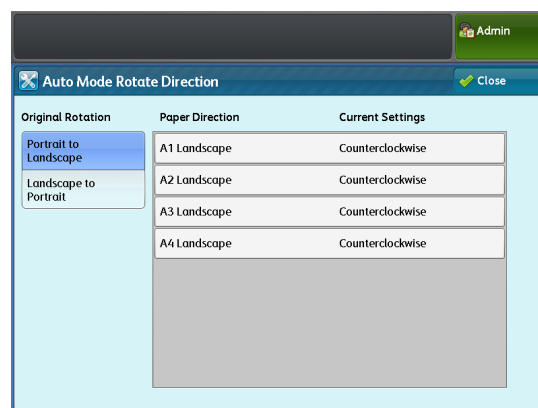
5. Press [Save].



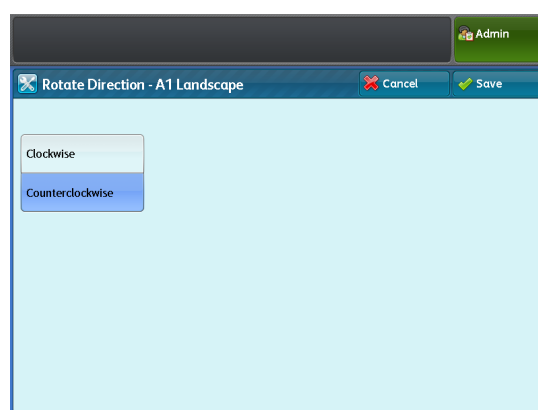
12.4.7 Auto Mode Rotate Direction

You can use this feature to tell the machine the orientation (clockwise or counterclockwise) in which to rotate scanned images, if the original is judged to require 90-degree rotation to fit to paper size. The factory default is [Counterclockwise] for all sizes.

1. Press [Auto Mode Rotate Direction].
2. Select [Portrait to Landscape] or [Landscape to Portrait].
3. Press the paper size to set.



4. Select [Clockwise] or [Counterclockwise].
5. Press [Save].



12.4.8 Stamp Date Format

Specify the date format of the stamp.

1. Press [Stamp Date Format].
2. Set the items as required, and press [Close].

Format

Select [20yy/mm/dd], [mm/dd/20yy], or [dd/mm/20yy]. The default setting is [20yy/mm/dd].

Year

Select [yyyy(4-digit)], [yy(2-digit)], or ['yy(2-digit)]. The factory default is [yyyy(4-digit)].

Month

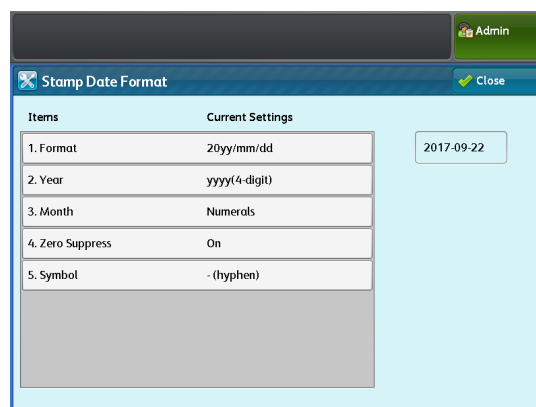
Select [Numerals] or [English]. The factory default is [Numerals].

Zero Suppress

Select [On] or [Off]. The factory default is [On].

Symbol

Select [- (hyphen)], [/ (slash)], [. (Period)], or [, (comma)].
The factory default is [- (hyphen)].



12.4.9 Stamp Location Auto Settings

If you want your copy jobs to be imprinted with stamps, you can specify each paper size the stamp position that is applied when [Location / Orientation] is set to [Auto].

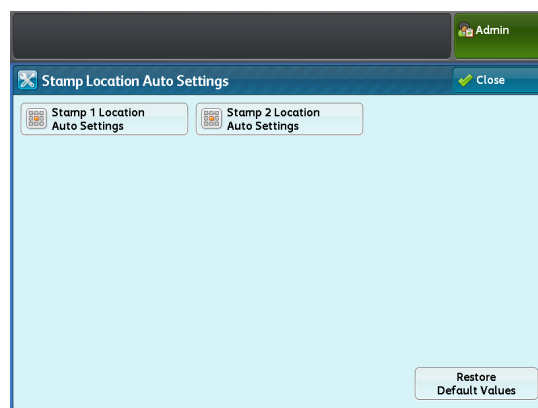
**Note**

- This setting is also applied for the stamp position of print jobs except for [Stamp Rotation].
As for the stamp orientation for print jobs, you can set from CentreWare Internet Services [Properties] > [Service] > [Print] > [Stamp Location Auto Settings] > [Stamp Rotation].

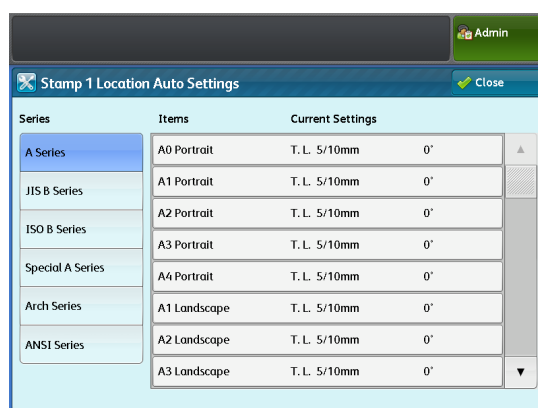
1. Press [Stamp Location Auto Settings].
2. Press [Stamp 1 Location Auto Settings] or [Stamp 2 Location Auto Settings].

**Note**

- Press [Restore Default Values] to reset the set value to the factory default value.



3. Select the paper size series to be set.
4. Select the paper size and orientation.



5. Set the stamp position.

**Note**

- Press [Restore Default Values] to reset the set value to the factory default value.

Set from Top Left

Regarding the upper left corner of the page as the origin point, the stamp position can be specified by entering X and Y values in the range of 0 to 9999mm.

Set from Bottom Left

Regarding the lower left corner of the page as the origin point, the stamp position can be specified by entering X and Y values.

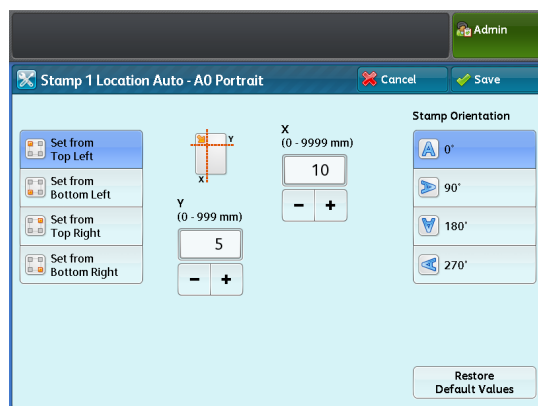
Set from Top Right

Regarding the upper right corner of the page as the origin point, the stamp position can be specified by entering X and Y values.

Set from Bottom Right

Regarding the lower right corner of the page as the origin point, the stamp position can be specified by entering X and Y values.

6. Specify the stamp orientation.

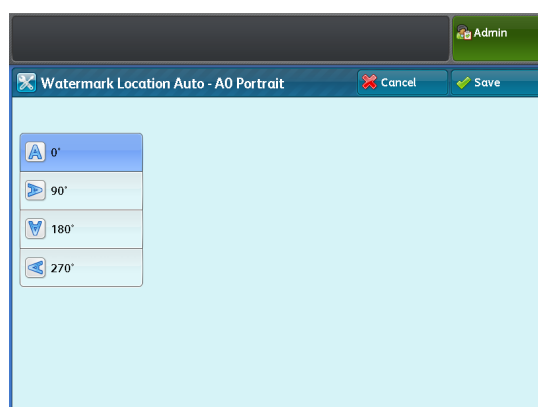
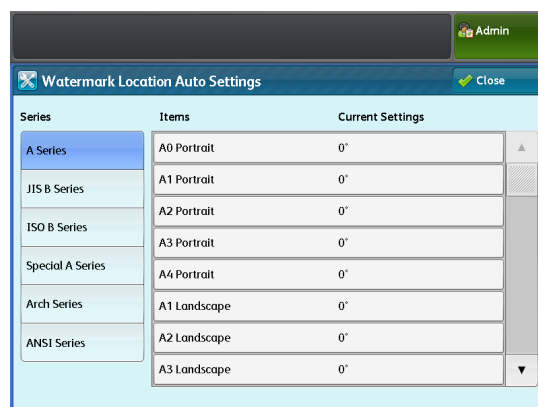


7. Press [Save].

12.4.10 Watermark Location Auto Settings

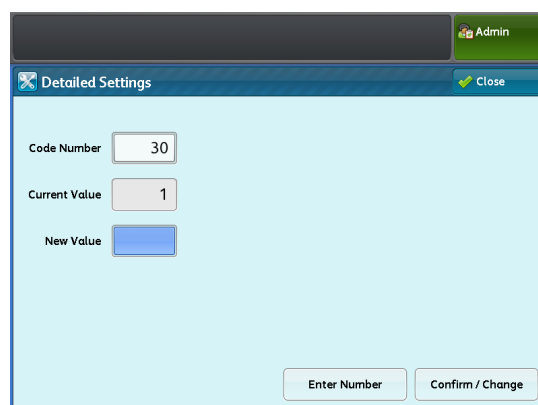
For copy jobs imprinted with watermarks when [Orientation] is set to [Auto], set the orientation of text for each paper size.

1. Press [Watermark Location Auto Settings].
2. Select the paper size series to be set.
3. Select the paper size and orientation.
4. Specify the orientation for the text string to be printed.
5. Press [Save].



12.4.11 Detailed Settings

1. Press [Detailed Settings].
2. Fill in [Item Number] and press [Confirm / Change].
 -  **Refer** • For information on the item numbers, refer to "Item Number: Copy Service Settings"(p.424).
3. Fill in [New Value].
4. Press [Confirm / Change].



Item Number: Copy Service Settings

Item Number	Description	New Value	Factory Default
30	Sets the tray for banner sheets.	• 2 Roll type 1: Roll 1 2: Roll 2 • 4 Roll type 1: Roll 1 2: Roll 2 3: Roll 3 4: Roll 4	1: Roll 1
31	Sets the paper length of a banner sheet.	210-2500 (mm)	210 (mm)
70	Sets the default value for the unevenness level used for [Uneven-Toned Background].	1-80	20
80	Sets the default value for [Scan Start Position] under [Sample Copy].	0-1200 (mm)	0
81	Sets the default value for [Measurement] under [Sample Copy].	50-200 (mm)	50

12.5 Connectivity & Network Setup

With [Connectivity & Network Setup], you can configure specifications relating to the networking aspects of the machine.

Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

- Port Settings p.425
- Protocol Settings p.427
- Remote Authentication / Directory Service p.429
- SSL / TLS Settings p.431
- Detailed Settings p.432



Refer

- For information on the network settings, also refer to "9.2 Setting the IP Address" (p.315).
- CentreWare Internet Services allows you to make more detailed settings. For details, refer to the Help section which can be displayed by clicking [Help] in the upper right of the CentreWare Internet Services screen.

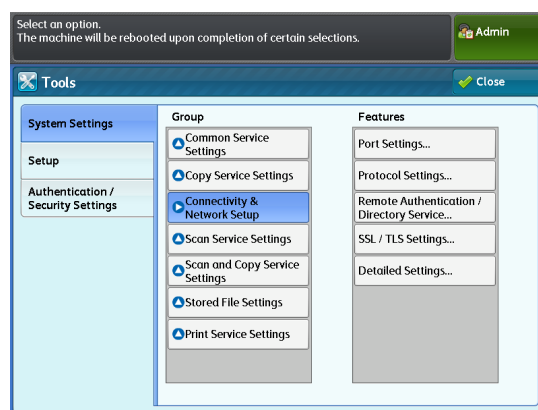
- On the [Tools] screen, press [System Settings] > [Connectivity & Network Setup].



Refer

- For information on how to display the [Tools] screen, refer to "12.1 System Settings Procedure" (p.390).

- Select the item you want to configure or change.



12.5.1 Port Settings

You can use this feature to enable or disable ports. The table below lists the ports that are used for the applications and features.

Application/Feature	Port						
	LPD	SMB	SNMP	FTP	HTTP	SOAP	WebDAV
BT-PlotAssistant	—	—	—	Yes	—	—	—
Stamp Tool	—	—	Yes	Yes	—	—	—
DocuWide Plot driver	Yes	—	Yes	—	—	—	—
PS print driver							
Network Scanner Utility 3	—	—	Yes	—	—	Yes	Yes
Stored File Manager 3							
Document Monitor	—	—	Yes	—	—	—	—
DW-Scan VI (For printing)	Yes	—	—	—	—	—	—
Scan to PC Note: Also applies when saving to PC via Multi Send.	—	Yes	—	—	—	—	—

Application/Feature	Port						
	LPD	SMB	SNMP	FTP	HTTP	SOAP	WebDAV
CentreWare Internet Services	—	—	—	—	Yes	—	—
ApeosWare Management Suite	—	—	Yes	—	—	Yes	—
DocuWorks (When communicating via a folder)	—	—	Yes	—	—	Yes	Yes
MacPPD	Yes	—	—	—	—	—	—

Yes: Port to be used

The factory default is [Enabled] for all ports.

1. Press [Port Settings].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

LPD

Select [Enabled] when using LPR.

SMB

Select [Enabled] when using SMB.

SNMP

Select [Enabled] when using SNMP.

FTP

Select [Enabled] when using FTP.

Internet Services (HTTP)

When using HTTP, specify a port number and select [Enabled].

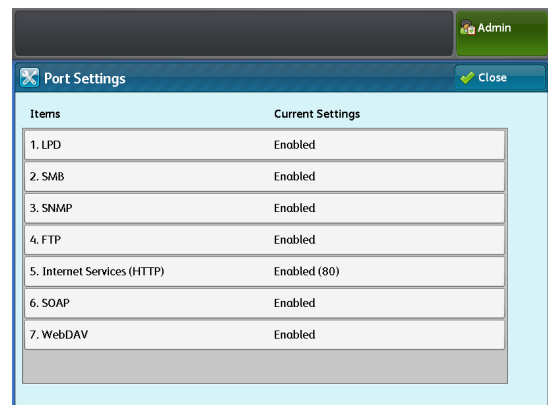
The factory default port number is [80].

SOAP

Select [Enabled] when using SOAP.

WebDAV

Select [Enabled] when using WebDAV.



12.5.2 Protocol Settings

You can use this feature to set the parameters required for communications. The following describes the parameters you can set in [Protocol Settings].

1. Press [Protocol Settings].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

Ethernet Rated Speed

Allows you to set the transmission rate for the Ethernet interface.
The factory default is [Auto].

Auto

Select this to detect the Ethernet transmission rate automatically.

1000BASE - T

Select this to fix the transmission rate to 1000BASE - T.

100 Mbps Full - Duplex

Select this to fix the transmission rate to 100 Mbps Full - Duplex.

100 Mbps Half - Duplex

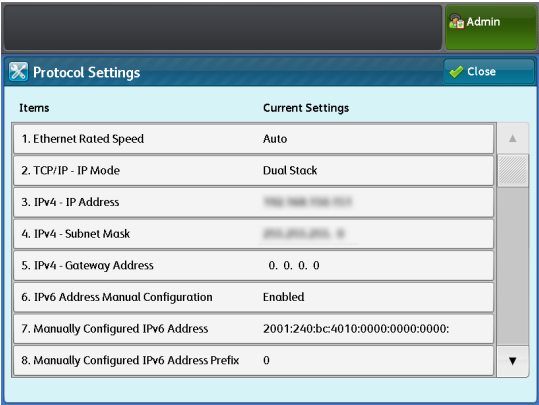
Select this to fix the transmission rate to 100 Mbps Half - Duplex.

10 Mbps Full - Duplex

Select this to fix the transmission rate to 10 Mbps Full - Duplex.

10 Mbps Half - Duplex

Select this to fix the transmission rate to 10 Mbps Half - Duplex.



TCP/IP - IP Mode

Allows you to select the TCP/IP operation mode.
The factory default is [IPv4 Mode].

IPv4 Mode

Select this to fix the internet protocol to be used to IPv4.

IPv6 Mode

Select this to fix the internet protocol to be used to IPv6.

Dual Stack

Select this to use both IPv4 and IPv6 as the internet protocol.

IPv4 - IP Address

Allows you to set the IP address.

Enter the address in the format of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is a value between 0 and 255. Please note that a value of 127 and a value between 224 and 255 cannot be used for the first xxx.
The factory default is [192.168.150.150].

IPv4 - Subnet Mask

Allows you to configure the subnet mask.

Enter the subnet mask in the format of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is a value between 0 and 255.
The factory default is [255.255.255.0].

IPv4 - Gateway Address

Allows you to configure the Gateway address.

Enter the address in the format of xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where xxx is a value between 0 and 255. Please note that a value of 127 and a value between 224 and 255 cannot be used for the first xxx.
The factory default is [0.0.0.0].

IPv6 Address Manual Configuration

Allows you to set the IP address manually.

To enter an IP address and Gateway address manually, select [Enabled].
The factory default is [Disabled].

Manually Configured IPv6 Address

Allows you to set the IP address.

Enter the IP address in the format of xxx:xxx:xxx:xxx:xxx:xxx:xxx:xxx, where xxx is a hexadecimal value.



Note

- You can fill in this field only when [IPv6 Address Manual Configuration] is set to [Enabled].

Manually Configured IPv6 Address Prefix

Allows you to set the IP address prefix in the range of 0 to 128.

The factory default is [64].



Note

- You can fill in this field only when [IPv6 Address Manual Configuration] is set to [Enabled].

Manually Configured IPv6 Gateway

Allows you to configure the Gateway address.

Enter the Gateway address in the format of xxx:xxx:xxx:xxx:xxx:xxx:xxx:xxx, where xxx is a hexadecimal value.



Note

- You can fill in this field only when [IPv6 Address Manual Configuration] is set to [Enabled].

Automatically Configured IPv6 Address

This field displays the Link-local address, IPv6 address, and Gateway address that have been automatically configured.

12.5.3 Remote Authentication / Directory Service

1. Press [Remote Authentication / Directory Service].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

Authentication System Setup

Allows you to set the parameters required for authentication.

Authentication System

Allows you to select the authentication system from [Authentication Agent] and [LDAP].

After you change the authentication system, personal folders used with the previous authentication system are not deleted automatically. If these folders are no longer needed, delete them from the machine. If the same user IDs are also used on the new authentication system, personal folders can be used by the same users.

The factory default is [Authentication Agent].

Server Response Time-Out

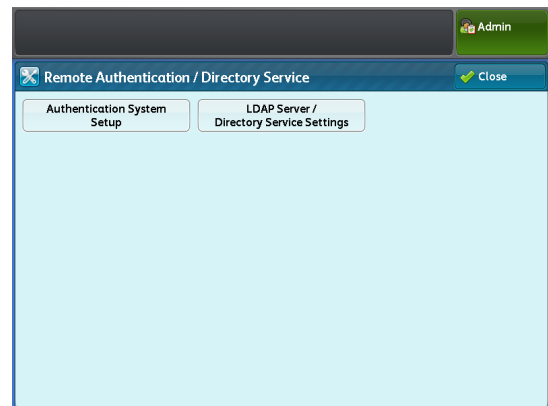
Allows you to set the maximum waiting time for response from the authentication server in the range of 1 to 75 seconds in one second increments.

The factory default is [5] seconds.

Search Time-Out

Allows you to set the maximum waiting time for user search results in the range of 1 to 120 seconds in one second increments.

The factory default is [30] seconds.



LDAP Server / Directory Service

Allows you to configure the LDAP parameters.

Primary Server - Name / Address

Specify the server name or IP address of the primary server.

Primary Server - Port Number

Specify the port number to connect to the primary server in the range of 1 to 65535.

The factory default is [389].

Secondary Server - Name / Address

Specify the server name or IP address of the secondary server.

Secondary Server - Port Number

Specify the port number to connect to the secondary server in the range of 1 to 65535.

The factory default is [389].

Authentication Method

Allows you to select the LDAP authentication method from [Direct Authentication] and [Authentication of User Attributes].

- Direct Authentication

Select this to allow the LDAP server to authenticate a user based on the entered User ID and password.

- Authentication of User Attributes

Select this to allow the LDAP server to search for a user based on the value entered in the User ID field, which should correspond to the attribute specified in [Attribute of entered User Name]. From among values assigned to the found user, the value for the attribute specified in [Attribute of Login User Name] is used as the User ID for jobs processed on the machine and the owner name for folders.

The factory default is [Direct Authentication].

Attribute of entered User Name

When the LDAP authentication method is set to [Authentication of User Attributes], from among attributes registered on the LDAP server as User Attribute information, specify the attribute whose value is used as user name on the control panel to log in to the machine. For example, when you want a user to enter the mail address, set "mail". Up to 32 characters are allowed.

The factory default is [mail].

Attribute of Login User Name

From among attributes registered on the LDAP server as User Attribute information, specify the attribute whose value is used as the User ID for jobs processed on the machine and the owner name for folders. Up to 32 characters are allowed.

The factory default is [sAMAccountName].

Use Added Text String

Allows you to select whether to automatically add information specified in [Text String Added to User Name] to authentication information entered on the control panel.

The factory default is [Disabled].

Text String Added to User Name

Set the string to be added to authentication information. Up to 64 characters are allowed. When [Use Added Text String] is set to [Enabled], the fixed string must be entered here. For example, [Attribute of entered User Name] is set to "mail", and the registered information for a user is "mail@myhost.example.com", the user normally need to enter "ail@myhost.example.com". Instead, setting [Use Added Text String] to [Enabled] and specifying "@myhost.example.com" in [Text String Added to User Name] allows the user to login the machine by simply entering "mail" on the control panel, because the machine automatically add "@myhost.example.com".

Attribute of Smart Card

When smart card is used for LDAP authentication, specify the search attribute used when searching a card ID. Up to 32 characters are allowed.

Network User ID Attribute

When smart card is used for LDAP authentication, specify the user name attribute used when searching a user based on the smart card's card ID. The retrieved user name will be used as the User ID for jobs processed on the machine and the owner name for folders. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters are allowed.

The factory default is [sAMAccountName].

Login Name

Allows you to specify a user name used to access the server. Set this only when the directory service authentication is required. Up to 255 characters can be entered for the user name.

Password

Allows you to specify the login password for the user you have specified in [Login Name]. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters are allowed.

Search Directory Root

Enter a string to be used as search root, using up to 255 characters.

LDAP Referrals

Allows you to specify whether to re-establish connection to another LDAP server if a currently connected LDAP server requests to do so.

The factory default is [Disabled].

LDAP Referral Hop Limit

When using the Referral feature, specify how many times that a user is allowed to hop servers in the range of 1 to 5 times.

The factory default is [5] times.

12.5.4 SSL / TLS Settings

You can use this feature to set the parameters required for SSL/TLS communications. The following describes the parameters you can set in [SSL / TLS Settings].

1. Press [SSL / TLS Settings].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

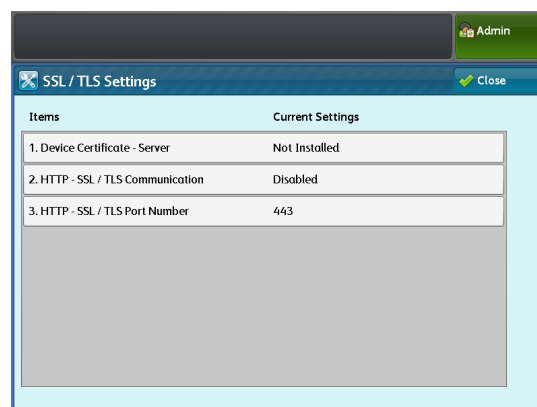
Device Certificate - Server

Allows you to list the recipients of the certificate stored on the machine. You can select a certificate used for SSL/TLS communication.



Note

- The certificate must already be registered using CentreWare Internet Services. For information on how to do this, refer to the Help section of CentreWare Internet Services.



HTTP - SSL / TLS Communication

Allows you to select whether to enable HTTP-SSL/TLS communication. Select [Enabled] or [Disabled]. The factory default is [Disabled].

HTTP - SSL / TLS Port Number

Allows you to enter the port number used for HTTP-SSL/TLS communication.

The factory default is [443].

12.5.5 Detailed Settings

1. Press [Detailed Settings].
2. Fill in [Item Number] and press [Confirm / Change].



Refer

- For information on the item numbers, refer to "Item Number: Connectivity & Network Setup"(p.432).

3. Fill in [New Value].
4. Press [Confirm / Change].

Item Number: Connectivity & Network Setup

Item Number	Description	New Value	Factory Default
0	Sets whether to validate users in Active Directory.	0: Do not validate 1: Validate	0: Do not validate

12.6 Scan Service Settings

With [Scan Service Settings], you can configure specifications relating to the machine's Scan feature.

Refer to the following subsections for more information on each item:

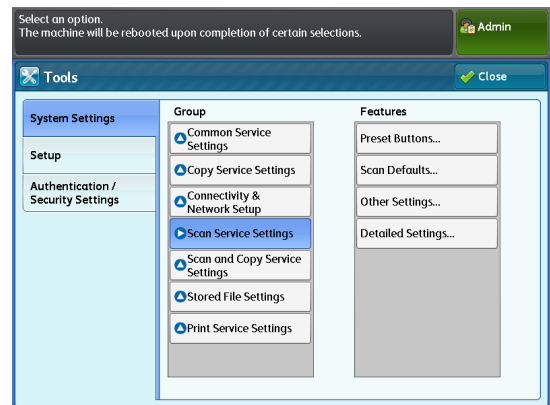
- Preset Buttons.....p.433
- Scan Defaultsp.434
- Other Settings.....p.435
- Detailed Settingsp.436

1. On the [Tools] screen, press [System Settings] > [Scan Service Settings].



- For information on how to display the [Tools] screen, refer to "12.1 System Settings Procedure" (p.390).

2. Select the item you want to configure or change.



12.6.1 Preset Buttons

You can use this feature to change options for Original Type and File Format displayed on the [Scan Job] screen.

1. Press [Preset Buttons].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

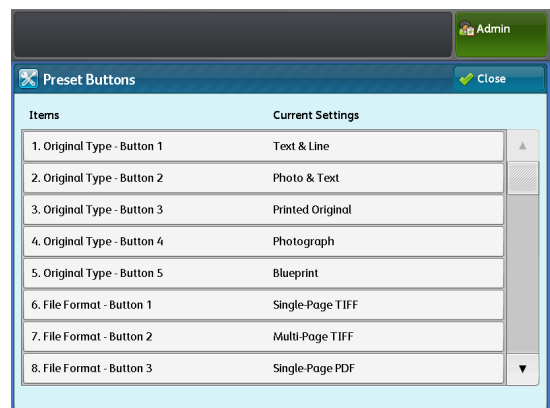
Original Type - Buttons 1 to 5

Allows you to set the original types displayed in the first to fifth buttons in [Original Type] on the [Scan Job] screen.

Select from [Text & Line], [Photo & Text], [Printed Original], [Photograph], [Blueprint], and [Transparent].

The factory defaults are:

- Original Type - Button 1: Text & Line
- Original Type - Button 2: Photo & Text
- Original Type - Button 3: Printed Original
- Original Type - Button 4: Photograph
- Original Type - Button 5: Blueprint



File Format - Buttons 1 to 5

Allows you to set the output file formats displayed in the first to fifth buttons in [File Format] on the [Scan Job] screen.

Select from [Single-Page TIFF], [Multi-Page TIFF], [Single-Page PDF], [Multi-Page PDF], [Single-Page DocuWorks], [Multi-Page DocuWorks], and [JPEG].

The factory defaults are:

- File Format - Button 1: Single-Page TIFF
- File Format - Button 2: Multi-Page TIFF
- File Format - Button 3: Single-Page PDF
- File Format - Button 4: Multi-Page PDF
- File Format - Button 5: Single-Page DocuWorks



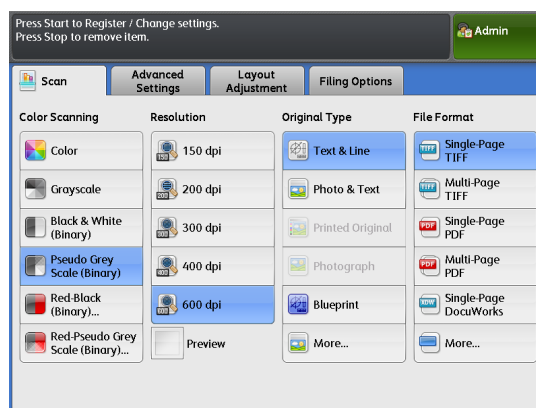
- For the DocuWide 3037, [JPEG] can be selected only when the optional Color Scan Memory Kit is installed.

12.6.2 Scan Defaults

You can use this feature to set the default settings for the Scan feature. The default settings specified here are restored when the power is turned on, when the machine exits the Power Saver mode, when the <Clear All> button is pressed, or when the Auto Clear feature is turned on.

Setting frequently used features and values as the defaults can avoid extra operations required during the use of the machine.

1. Press [Scan Defaults].
2. Press the item you want to configure or change.
3. Set the desired value and press the <Start> button.



Item	Description	Factory Default
Color Scanning Mode	Sets the default value for [Color Scanning] on the [Scan Job] screen.	Halftone
Scan Resolution	Sets the default value for [Resolution] on the [Scan Job] screen.	600 dpi
Preview	Sets the default value for [Preview] on the [Scan Job] screen.	Off (no preview displayed)
Original Type	Sets the default value for [Original Type] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Text & Line
Output File Format	Sets the default value for [File Format] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Single-Page TIFF
Lighten / Darken (DocuWide 6057)	Sets the default value for [Lighten / Darken] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Normal
Sharpness / Contrast (DocuWide 6057)	Sets the default value for [Sharpness / Contrast] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Sharpness: Normal Contrast: Normal

Item	Description	Factory Default
Image Options (DocuWide 3037)	Sets the default value for [Image Options] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Lighten / Darken: Normal Sharpness: Normal Contrast: Normal
Background Suppression	Sets the default value for [Background Suppression] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Auto (0)
Threshold Sort	Sets the default value for [Threshold Sort] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Normal
Adjust Color Density	Sets the default value for [Adjust Color Density] on the [Image Quality] screen.	Adjust Off
Reduce / Enlarge	Sets the default value for [Reduce / Enlarge] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	100.0 %
Original Size	Sets the default value for [Original Size] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	- DocuWide 6057: Auto Detect - DocuWide 3037: Auto Detect (A Series)
Edge Erase	Sets the default value for [Edge Erase] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	Normal
Scan Start Position	Sets the default value for [Scan Start Position] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	0mm
Scan Speed	Sets the default value for [Scan Speed] on the [Layout Adjustment] screen.	Fast
Quality / File Size	Sets the default value for [Quality / File Size] on the [Output Format] screen.	Quality: Normal File Size: Larger +2

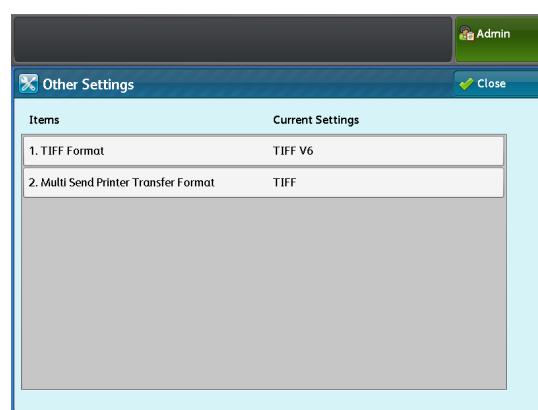
12.6.3 Other Settings

1. Press [Other Settings].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

TIFF Format

Allows you to set the TIFF (JPEG compression) format displayed for [File Format] on the [Scan Job] screen.

You can select [TIFF V6] or [TTN2] according to the scanning software you use. The factory default is [TIFF V6].



Multi Send Printer Transfer Format

Allows you to set the output file format applied when [Output Color] is set to [Color] or [Grayscale] on the [Multi Send Scan] screen and a printer is selected as the send destination.

Select [TIFF] or [JPEG]. The factory default is [TIFF].

12.6.4 Detailed Settings

1. Press [Detailed Settings].
2. Fill in [Item Number] and press [Confirm / Change].



Refer

- For information on the item numbers, refer to "Item Number: Scan Service Settings"(p.436).

3. Fill in [New Value].
4. Press [Confirm / Change].

Item Number: Scan Service Settings

Item Number	Description	New Value	Factory Default
0	Sets whether to add User ID to the name of the files processed with [Scan to PC] and [Multi Send Scan].	0: Do not add User ID 1: Add User ID	0: Do not add User ID
70	Sets the default value for the unevenness level used for [Uneven-Toned Background].	1-80	20

12.7 Scan and Copy Service Settings (DocuWide 6057)

You can configure the Scan and Copy Service settings.

- Scan and Copy Service Defaultsp.437



Note

- This function can be displayed and set only on the DocuWide 6057.

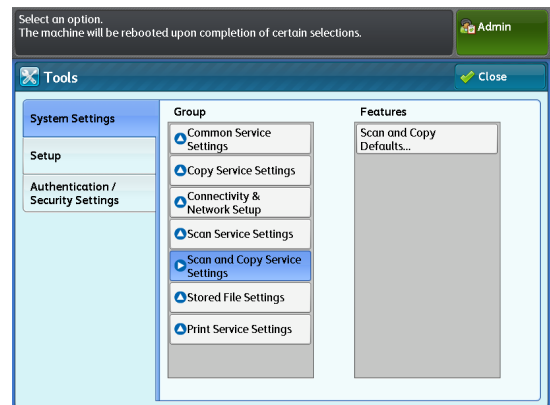
1. On the [Tools] screen, press [System Settings] > [Scan and Copy Service Settings].



Refer

- For information on how to display the [Tools] screen, refer to "12.1 System Settings Procedure" (p.390).

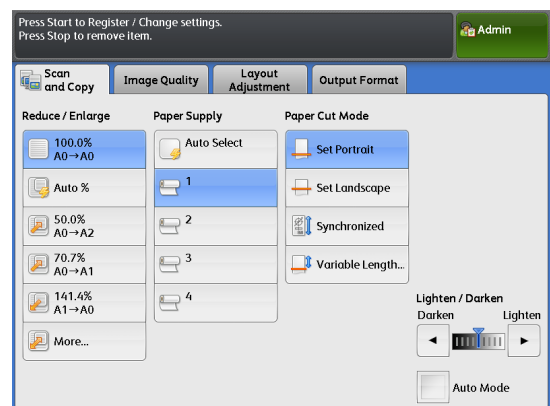
2. Press the item to be set or modified.



12.7.1 Scan and Copy Service Defaults

For information on the default setting of Scan & Copy functions, refer to "12.4.3 Copy Defaults" (p.415).

1. Press [Scan and Copy Defaults].
2. Press the item to be set or modified.
3. Set the setting as necessary, and press the <Start> button on the control panel.



12.8 Stored File Settings

With [Stored File Settings], you can configure specifications relating to the machine's file save features.

Refer to the following subsection:

- Stored File Settingsp.438

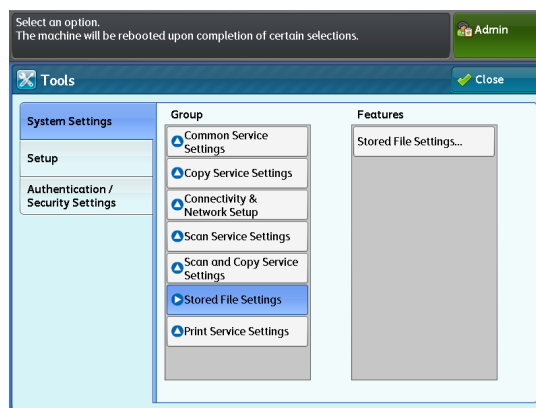
1. On the [Tools] screen, press [System Settings] > [Stored File Settings].



Refer

- For information on how to display the [Tools] screen, refer to "12.1 System Settings Procedure" (p.390).

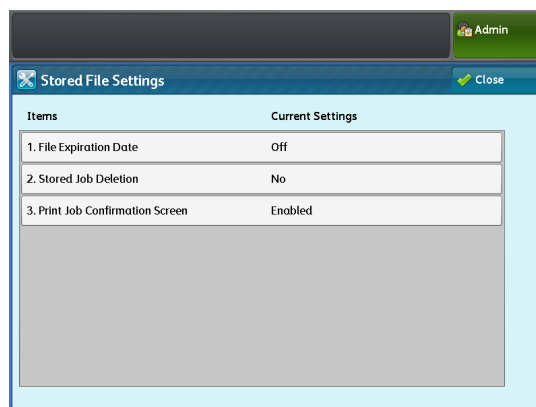
2. Select the item you want to configure or change.



12.8.1 Stored File Settings

You can use this feature to set the time period for storing files and to select whether to automatically delete the jobs stored on the machine.

1. Press [Stored File Settings].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].



File Expiration Date

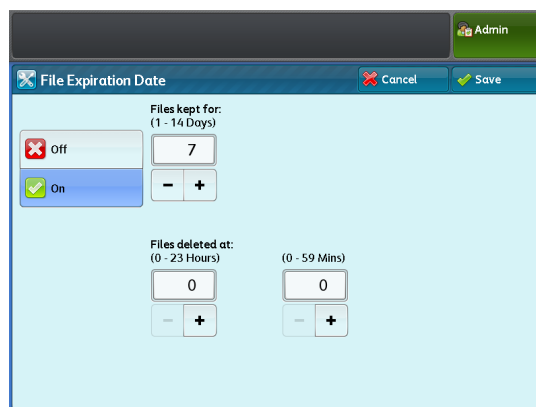
Allows you to set the time period for storing files. To delete stored files automatically, specify the expiration date (number of days elapsed) and deletion time. The settings apply to all stored files.

The factory default is [Off].



Note

- CentreWare Internet Services can also be used to make these settings. For information on how to do this, refer to the Help section of CentreWare Internet Services.



Off

Select this to not specify the expiration date so that stored document are not automatically deleted.

On

Select this to set the time period for storing files. The stored files will be deleted after the time specified in [Files kept for] and [Files deleted at] passed.



Note

- When the machine is being turned off at the specified time, the stored files will not be deleted at the given time. Instead, the files will be deleted the next time the machine is turned on. Also, if the machine is in the Sleep mode at the specified time, the stored files will not be deleted. In this case, the files will be deleted at the specified time on the next day, as long as the machine is not in the Sleep mode.
- To automatically delete files at the time specified here, you need to set [Delete Expired Files] to [Yes]. For more information, refer to "Delete Expired Files"(p.307).
- Files kept for:
Specify the time period for storing files in the range of 1 to 14 days.
- Files deleted at:
Set the time when the expired files will be deleted in the range of 0 to 23 hours and from 00 to 59 minutes.

Stored Job Deletion

Allows you to select whether to delete the expired print jobs stored on the machine.

The factory default is [No].

Yes

Select this to delete the files at the specified time after the retention period has elapsed.



Important

- If the retention period is not specified, the files are not deleted even if [Yes] is selected.

No

Select this to retain the documents after the retention period has elapsed.

Print Job Confirmation Screen

Allows you to select whether to display a screen confirming whether to delete files after printing, when printing a stored job. The factory default is [On].

Off

Select this to automatically delete files after printing.

On

Select this to display a confirmation screen. Then, you can select whether to delete the files stored on the machine after printing.

12.9 Print Service Settings

With [Print Service Settings], you can make settings relating to the machine's print features.

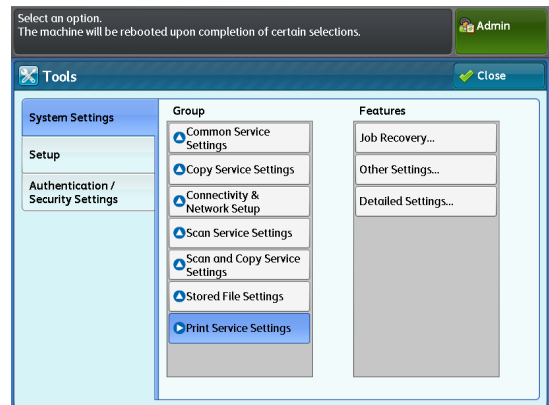
- Job Recovery p.441
- Other Settings p.442
- Detailed Settings p.444

1. On the [Tools] screen, press [System Settings] > [Print Service Settings].



- For information on how to display the [Tools] screen, refer to "12.1 System Settings Procedure" (p.390).

2. Select the item you want to configure or change.



12.9.1 Job Recovery

You can use this feature to select whether to print a job which has not been completed at the time the machine was turned off, the next time the machine is turned on.

The factory default is [Off].

1. Press [Job Recovery].
2. Set the items as necessary.

Off

Select this to cancel all the print jobs that have not yet printed at the time the machine was turned off.

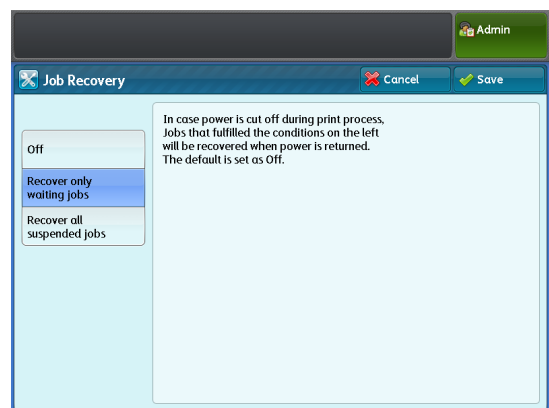
Recover only waiting jobs

Select this to print only jobs that have been spooled at the time the machine was turned off.

Recover all suspended jobs

Select this to print all jobs that have not been output at the time the machine was turned off, once again.

3. Press [Save].



12.9.2 Other Settings

You can use this feature to configure detailed settings for plot processing for individual data format. In normal use, leave the factory default settings as they are.

1. Press [Other Settings].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

VPI - Dotted Line Allocation

Allows you to set the processing method for dotted line allocation.

Select [RASTERIZER] or [PARSER]. The factory default is [RASTERIZER].

VPI - Symbol

Select [Mode 1] or [Mode 2]. The factory default is [Mode 1].

VPI - Font Number

Allows you to set the machine to use the fonts specified in data or to force the machine to use the fonts specified here.

Select from [0] to [41(No)]. The factory default is [0].

VPI - Font Priority

Allows you to set whether to use the font number specified in data.

Select [Jobs] or [Controller]. The factory default is [Jobs].

TIFF - Resizing

Allows you to set the mode of compression and decompression of TIFF data.

Select [PHOTO] or [LINE]. The factory default is [PHOTO].

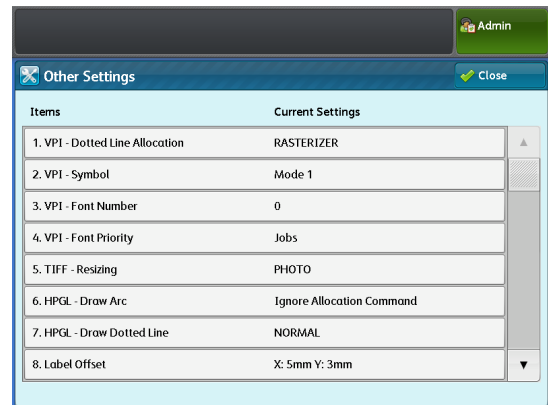
HPGL - Draw Arc

Allows you to set the drawing method for arcs.

Select [Follow Allocation Command] or [Ignore Allocation Command]. The factory default is [Ignore Allocation Command].

HPGL - Draw Dotted Line

Allows you to set the drawing method for dotted lines.



Select [NORMAL] or [EXTEND]. The factory default is [NORMAL].

Label Offset

Allows you to set the drawing position for the label, by the X- and Y-direction distances from the corner of the media. Select from [0] to [100(mm)]. The factory defaults for X and Y are [5] and [3], respectively.

Draw Position of Alignment Mark

Allows you to specify the offset and overlap for the allocation mark drawing position. Select the offset from [0] to [100(mm)], and the overlap from [0] to [400(mm)]. The factory defaults for offset and overlap are [3] and [0], respectively.

Detect Long Edge

Allows you to set the machine to determine the long edge of originals. Select [On] or [Off]. The factory default is [Off].

Detect Long Edge - A0 to A4

Allows you to select the allowance range for the long edge size of the input data for each standard size. In normal use, this is configured as follows: A0 -> A1, A1 -> A2, A2 -> A3, A3 -> A4, A4 -> A4.

Dither Pattern

Allows you to select the combination of dither pattern and density. Select from [Pattern 1 (Light/Normal/Dark)], [Pattern 2 (Light/Normal/Dark)], and [Pattern 3 (Light/Normal/Dark)]. The factory default is [Pattern 1 (Normal)].

Draw Solid Thin Line

Set whether to draw lines that are thinner than the specified line width as black solid lines without dithering. Select [Off] or [On (1-511 pixel)]. The factory default is [Off].

12.9.3 Detailed Settings

1. Press [Detailed Settings].
2. Fill in [Item Number] and press [Confirm / Change].



Refer

- For information on the item numbers, refer to "Item Number: Print Service Settings"(p.444).

3. Fill in [New Value].
4. Press [Confirm / Change].

Item Number: Print Service Settings

Item Number	Description	New Value	Factory Default
1	Sets whether to switch the target paper orientation when the paper level gets low during a job, in order to go on printing. *	0: Do not switch orientation 1: Switch orientation	0: Do not switch orientation
3	Sets whether to display the path to Job Log.	0: Do not display path 1: Display path	1: Display path

* This does not apply to a multiple-page job submitted via the print driver because one job is printed on a single sheet of paper.

12.10 Authentication / Security Settings

With [Authentication / Security Settings], you can configure the machine's security settings.

Refer to these subsections for more information on each setting.

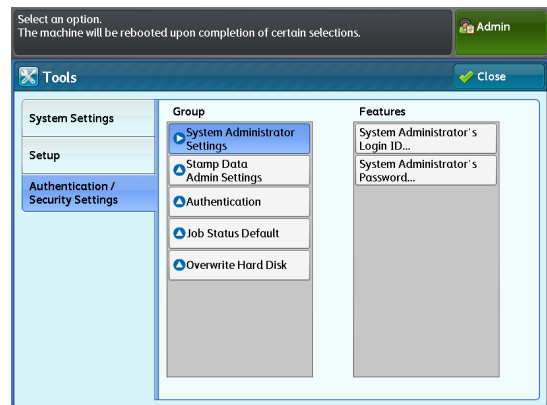
● System Administrator Settings	p.445
● Stamp Data Admin Settings	p.446
● Authentication	p.447
● Job Status Default	p.454
● Overwrite Hard Disk	p.456

1. On the [Tools] screen, press [Authentication / Security Settings].



- For information on how to display the [Tools] screen, refer to "12.1 System Settings Procedure" (p.390).

2. Select the item you want to configure or change.



12.10.1 System Administrator Settings

In [System Administrator Settings], you can set the system administrator's login ID and password.

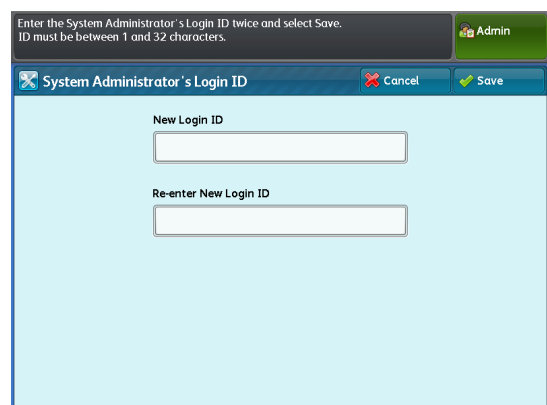
We recommend that you change the default ID and password for the system administrator to prevent unauthorized users from changing the machine settings and to enhance security.

System Administrator's Login ID

Allows you to set the system administrator's User ID. The user ID can be 1 to 32 characters.

The factory default is "11111".

1. Press [System Administrator Settings] > [System Administrator's Login ID].
2. Select [New Login ID].
3. Enter the system administrator's user ID of up to 32 characters, by using the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Save].
4. Select [Re-enter New Login ID], re-enter the same system administrator's ID, and press [Save].
5. Press [Save].
6. Press [Yes] on the confirmation screen.



System Administrator's Password

Allows you to set the system administrator's password.

We recommend that you change the default password to enhance security.

The factory default is "x-admin".

To tell the system administrator to enter the password to log in to the machine as system administrator, set [Password Entry from Control Panel] to [On] in [Authentication] under [Authentication / Security Settings].

After setting the system administrator's User ID, specify the password using 4 to 12 characters.



Note

- The system administrator's password is required when changing the machine settings via CentreWare Internet Services.



Refer

- For details on using the password on the machine's control panel, refer to "Password Entry from Control Panel"(p.452).

1. Press [System Administrator Settings] > [System Administrator's Password].
2. Select [New Password].
3. Enter the system administrator's password of 4 to 12 characters, by using the keyboard displayed on the screen, and press [Save].
4. Select [Re-enter New Password], re-enter the same system administrator's password, and press [Save].
5. Press [Save].
6. Press [Yes] on the confirmation screen.

12.10.2 Stamp Data Admin Settings

The Stamp Data Administrator refers to the user authorized to register stamps to the machine via a computer on the network.

[Stamp Data Admin Settings] allows you to set the ID and password for the Stamp Data Administrator.

To prevent setting changes and to ensure security, it is recommended to change the default ID and password.



Note

- You also can set this feature on CentreWare Internet Services. For information about the setting method, refer to CentreWare Internet Services Help.

Stamp Data Administrator ID

Specifies the User ID of the Stamp Administrator. Enter using 1 to 32 characters.

The factory default is "stamp".

1. Press [Stamp Data Admin Settings] > [Stamp Data Administrator's Login ID].
2. Select [New Login ID].
3. Use the keyboard displayed and enter Stamp Data Administrator's Login ID using up to 32 characters, and press [Save].
4. Select [Re-enter New Login ID], and enter the same Stamp Data Administrator's Login ID, and press [Save].
5. Press [Save].
6. Press [Yes] in the confirmation screen.

Stamp Data Administrator's Password

Set the password for the Stamp Data Administrator.

It is recommended to set the password for enhancing security.

Enter 4 to 12 characters for the Password for the Stamp Data Administrator's Login ID.

The factory default is "stamp".

1. Press [Stamp Data Admin Settings] > [Stamp Data Administrator's Password].
2. Select [New Password].
3. Using the displayed keyboard, enter Stamp Data Administrator's Password within 4 to 12 characters, press [Save].



Note

- If you do not want to set a password, press [Save] without entering anything.

4. Select [Re-enter New Password], and enter the same Stamp Data Administrator's Password, and then press [Save].
5. Press [Save].
6. Press [Yes] in the confirmation screen.

12.10.3 Authentication

You can use [Authentication] to configure the settings relating to the Authentication feature.

Login Type

Allows you to set the authentication method.

- No Login Required
Select this to disable the authentication feature.

- Login to Local Accounts

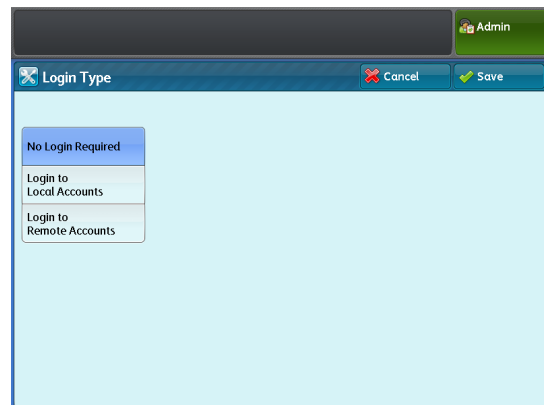
Select this to use user information registered on the machine for authentication.

- Login to Remote Accounts

Select this to use user information registered on the remote authentication server for authentication.

The factory default is [No Login Required].

1. Press [Authentication] > [Login Type].
2. Select from [No Login Required], [Login to Local Accounts], and [Login to Remote Accounts].
3. Press [Save].



Access Control Service Access

Allows you to restrict access to certain features.

The table below shows you how to use the restricted features.

Setting Value	Do not use Smart Card	Use Smart Card (Also use User ID Authentication)	
		When using Smart Card	When using control panel
Locked	Enter your user ID on the control panel.	Touch your smart card to IC Card Reader.	Enter your user ID on the control panel.
Unlocked	Anybody can use the feature	Touch your smart card* to IC Card Reader.	

* Applied to every Smart Card owners, regardless of whether he/she is a Login or Unregistered user.

1. Press [Authentication] > [Access Control Service Access].
2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].

Copy

Select this to set whether to restrict the Copy feature.

Select [Unlocked] or [Locked].

The factory default is [Locked].

Store to Folder

Select this to set whether to restrict the Store to Folder feature.

Select [Unlocked] or [Locked].

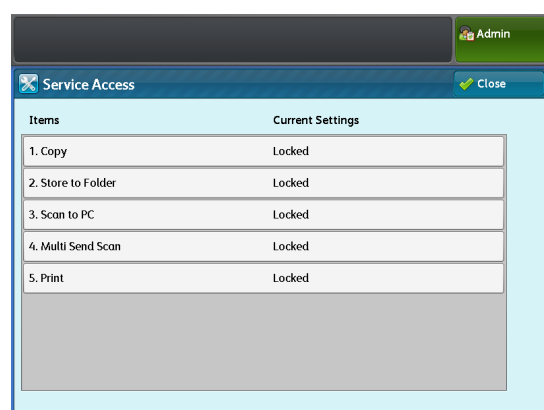
The factory default is [Locked].

Scan to PC

Select this to set whether to restrict the Scan to PC feature.

Select [Unlocked] or [Locked].

The factory default is [Locked].



Multi Send Scan

Select this to set whether to restrict the Multi Send Scan feature.

Select [Unlocked] or [Locked].

The factory default is [Locked].

Print

Select this to set whether to restrict the Print feature.

Select [Unlocked] or [Locked].

The factory default is [Locked].

Create User Account

When the authentication feature is enabled, User IDs and User Names for each of users need to be registered for authentication.

When using local authentication (Login to Local Accounts), up to 999 user accounts can be registered.



Important

- You must select an authentication mode before you can register users, by following the steps in "Login Type"(p.447).



Note

- Printing on a printer or local printer is possible even when [No Access to Copy Service] or [No Access to Print Service] is selected under Feature Access, as long as Multi Send Scan is enabled.

- Press [Authentication] > [Create User Account].
- Select the user number that you want to register.



Note

- Press [▲] to display the previous screen, and press [▼] to display the next screen.
- If you want to display a specific user number at the top, enter that number in [Go to].

- Select and set the desired items.
- After completing the settings, press [Close].

User ID

Enter a User ID to use when logging in to the machine.

Up to 32 characters are allowed.

User Name

Set the user name.

- When setting on the control panel: Up to 32 single-byte characters are allowed.



Refer

- For information on how to enter characters, refer to "1.6 Text Entry" (p.38).

Password

Set a password. We recommend that you set a password to enhance security. Enter the password using 4 to 12 characters.



Note

- The password will be required when the user logs into the machine when [Password Entry from Control Panel] is set to [On].

Feature Access - Copy

Select [Free Access] or [No Access to Copy Service].

- [Free Access]: Select this to not restrict the Copy feature.
- [No Access to Copy Service]: Select this to restrict the user from using the Copy feature.

The factory default is [Free Access].

Feature Access - Scan

Select [Free Access] or [No Access to Scan Service].

- [Free Access]: Select this to not restrict the Scan feature.
- [No Access to Scan Service]: Select this to restrict the user from using the Scan feature.

The factory default is [Free Access].

Feature Access - Print

Select [Free Access] or [No Access to Print Service].

- [Free Access]: Select this to not restrict the Print feature.
- [No Access to Print Service]: Select this to restrict the user from using the Print feature.

The factory default is [Free Access].

Reset Account

Select this to delete the registered User ID and user name. Deleting the account will also delete user information and folders (including files) for this account.

Reset User Accounts

Allows you to delete all the registered accounts or reset access settings for all the registered users at one time.

1. Press [Authentication] > [Reset User Accounts].
2. Select the desired item to delete, and press [Reset].

All User Accounts

Select this to delete all information registered for each user.

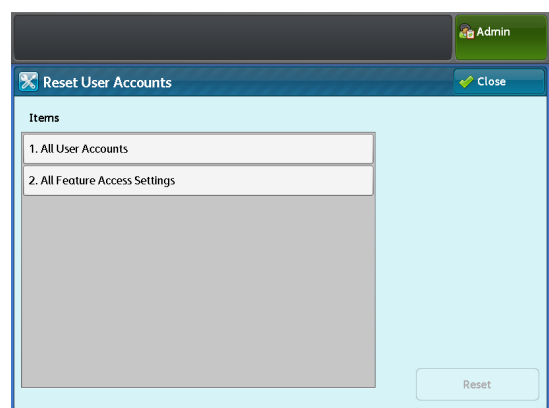


Important

- Selecting this will also delete the folder the user created and the files in the folder. This may take time if the folder contains a large number of files.

All Feature Access Settings

Select this to reset all access restrictions to [Free Access] for each user.



User Details Setup

1. Press [Authentication] > [User Details Setup].



Note

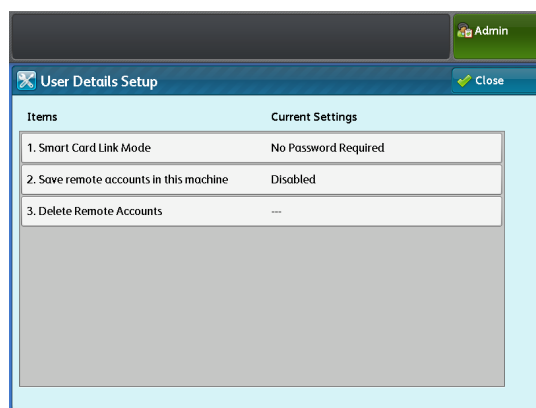
- [User Details Setup] is displayed only when the optional IC Card Reader is connected to the machine.

2. Set each item as necessary, and click [Close].



Note

- When [Login Type] is set to [Login to Remote Accounts], [Save remote accounts in this machine] and [Delete Remote Accounts] are displayed.



Smart Card Link Mode

Select this to set whether to require a password when users log into the machine with a smart card.

The factory default is [Enter Password].

Save remote accounts in this machine

Select this to set whether to enable saving of the user information that was used for remote authentication onto the machine.

The factory default is [Off].



Note

- The machine stores user information only when a user is authenticated by a smart card without entering password. No user information will be stored when the user logs in to the machine using the control panel.

Delete Remote Accounts

Select this to delete remote authentication information stored on the machine.



Note

- Depending on the settings specified for User Details Setup, the items displayed differ as follows.

		Login Type		
		No Login Required	Login to Local Accounts	Login to Remote Accounts
User Details Setup	Smart Card Link Mode	Yes	Yes	(Yes) ^{*1}
	Save remote accounts in this machine	No	No	(Yes) ^{*2}
	Delete Remote Accounts	No	No	(Yes) ^{*2}

Yes: Displayed, (Yes): Displayed on condition, No: Not displayed

*1 When [Save remote accounts in this machine] is [On], [Smart Card Link Mode] is not displayed.

*2 When [Smart Card Link Mode] is [Enter Password], [Save remote accounts in this machine] and [Delete Remote Accounts] are not displayed.

Maximum Login Attempts by System Administrator

This feature allows you to prevent unauthorized users from impersonating the administrator to change the machine configuration. You can specify the maximum number of fails allowed so that access will be denied when the number of consecutive attempts to log in as system administrator exceeds this limit.

This limit can be set to a value between 0 and 10 times.

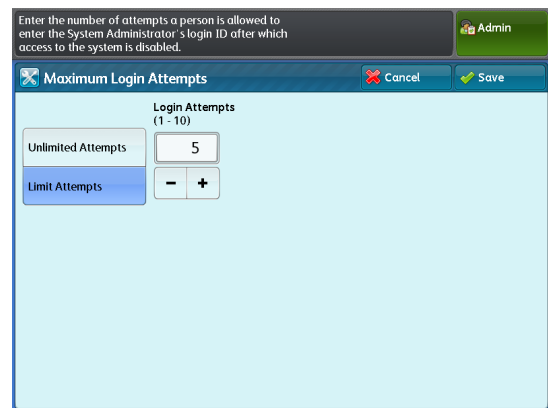
The factory default is [5] times.



Note

- Rebooting the machine will reset the failure count.
- To exit the Access Denied state, reboot the machine.

1. Press [Authentication] > [Maximum Login Attempts].
2. Press [Limit Attempts].
3. Enter the number of the upper limit by using the numeric keypad or by pressing [+] and [-].
4. Press [Save].



Password Entry from Control Panel

When the authentication feature is enabled, you can use this feature to set whether to require a password when users attempt to access the machine features from the control panel. You can also use this feature to set whether to require a password when users attempt to log in to the machine as system administrator, even when the authentication feature is disabled.

We recommend that you set a password to enhance security.

When [On] is selected, the settings for "System Administrator's Password"(p.446), as well as "Password"(p.450) set under [Create User Account] will be enabled.

When [Off] is selected, a password will not be required when users attempt to access the machine's control panel, even when a password is specified for those settings described above.

The factory default is [Off].



Important

- When accessing the machine remotely, for example via CentreWare Internet Services, a password is always required regardless of the setting made here.

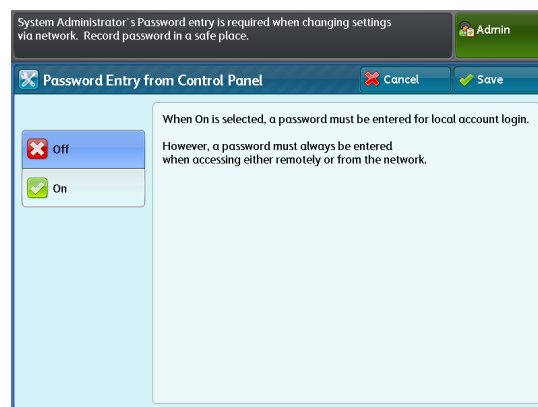


Note

- The system administrator's password is required when changing the machine settings via CentreWare Internet Services.

1. Press [Authentication] > [Password Entry from Control Panel].

2. Select [Off] or [On].
3. Press [Save].



Private Charge Print Settings

Allows you to set how incoming print jobs are handled.



- When Remote Authentication is enabled, if you select [According to Print Auditor], the settings for [Job Login Success] and [Job without User ID] are ignored and therefore all print jobs will be printed.



- If the machine is set not to use Private Print, [Secure Print] is displayed on the [Services Home] screen, instead of [Private Print].

1. Press [Authentication] > [Private Charge Print Settings].
2. Set each of items.
3. Press [Save].

According to Print Auditor

Select this to set how incoming jobs should be handled.

The factory default is [According to Print Auditor].

Save as Private Charge Print Job

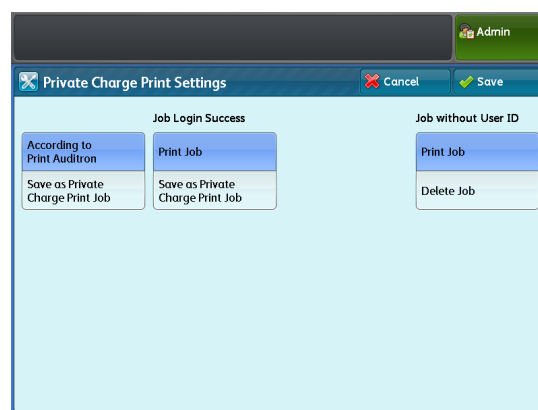
Select this to store incoming jobs as Private Charge Print jobs.

Job Login Success

Select this to set how successfully authenticated jobs should be handled.



- When this option is set to [Save as Private Charge Print Job], the Secure Print setting is ignored even when it is specified in the print driver.
 - To save a print job as a Private Charge Print job, a User ID must be set using up to 32 characters. If the User ID specified in the print driver exceeds the limit of 32 characters, the print job is canceled, and therefore is not saved as a Private Charge Print job.
 - **Print Job**
Select this to print all incoming jobs. Whether the job is saved as a Secure Print job or is normally printed depends on the print settings on the client.
 - **Save as Private Charge Print Job**
Select this to store incoming jobs as Private Charge Print jobs.
- The factory default is [Print Job].



Job without User ID

Select this to set how jobs without an Authentication User ID assigned should be handled.



Note

- CentreWare Internet Services can also be used to make these settings.
For information on how to do this, refer to the Help section of CentreWare Internet Services.

- Print Job**
Select this to print all jobs which do not have an authentication attribute assigned.
- Delete Job**
Select this to delete all jobs which do not have an authentication attribute assigned.
The factory default is [Delete Job].

Detailed Settings

- Press [Authentication] > [Detailed Settings].
- Fill in [Item Number] and press [Confirm / Change].



Refer

- For information on the item numbers, refer to "Item Number: Authentication / Security Settings"(p.454).

- Fill in [New Value].
- Press [Confirm / Change].

Item Number: Authentication / Security Settings

Item Number	Description	Options for New Value	Factory Default
0	Sets how to control print jobs retrieved via LPR/FTP connection by User IDs.	0: No feature applied 1: Cancel 2: Print 3: Save as Private Charge Print Job	0: No feature applied
1	Sets whether to display the ID relating to the job instead of the entered ID whenever displaying User ID.	0: Use the entered ID 1: Use the related ID	1: Use the related ID

12.10.4 Job Status Default

Completed Jobs View

Use this feature to set restrictions about viewing completed jobs.

You can select whether to display or hide job history records and to restrict users from viewing some information.



Note

- CentreWare Internet Services can also be used to make these settings.
For information on how to do this, refer to the Help section of CentreWare Internet Services.

- Press [Job Status Default] > [Completed Jobs View].

2. Set each of items and press [Save].

Allow Job Viewing at All Times

Select this to allow users to view completed jobs at any time.

Require Login to View Jobs

Select this to allow users to view completed jobs only when authentication is enabled.

The factory default is [Require Login].

No Job Viewing

Select this not to allow users to view completed jobs.

The settings applied to [Access To] and [Hide Job Details] depends on the settings for [Completed Jobs View], and information displayed about completed jobs varies depending on each of these settings. The table below lists whether jobs will be displayed, according to the combination of these settings. The factory default for [Hide Job Details] is [No].



Note

- The system administrator is not affected by the Hide Job Details setting.

- When authentication is disabled

Item			Displayed Job			
Completed Jobs View	Access To	Hide Job Details	System Administrator	Unauthenticated User	Login User	
					My my Job	Other than my Job
Allow Job Viewing at All Times Yes	—	No	Display all	Display all	—	—
		Yes		Display a part of information as "*****"		
Require Login to View Jobs	—	—		Hide		
No Job Viewing						

Display all: All job history records and all items are displayed.

Display a part of information as "*****": Job names and output destination information are displayed as "*****".

Hide : No job history records are displayed.

- When authentication is enabled

Item			Displayed Job			
Completed Jobs View	Access To	Hide Job Details	System Administrator	Unauthenticated User	Login User	
					My my Job	Other than my Job
Allow Job Viewing at All Times Yes	—	No	Display all	Display all	Display all	Display all
		Yes		Display a part of information as "*****"	Display all	Display a part of information as "*****"
Require Login to View Jobs	All	No		Hide	Display all	Display all
		Yes		Hide	Display all	Display a part of information as "*****"
	Jobs of authenticated users only	—		Hide	Display all	Hide
No Job Viewing	—	—		Hide	Hide	Hide

Display all: All job history records and all items are displayed.

Display a part of information as "*****": Job names and output destination information are displayed as "*****".

Hide : No job history records are displayed.

12.10.5 Overwrite Hard Disk

You can use this feature to set whether to enable hard disk overwriting.

When copy, scan, or print processing is completed, the data is deleted from the hard disk and the area on which the deleted data was stored is automatically overwritten with blank data. This feature prevents unauthorized retrieval or restoration of the data recorded on the hard disk. It also applies to copied documents and other information stored temporarily by the system.

Number of Overwrites

Allows you to select the number of overwrites either once or three times.

The factory default is [Off].

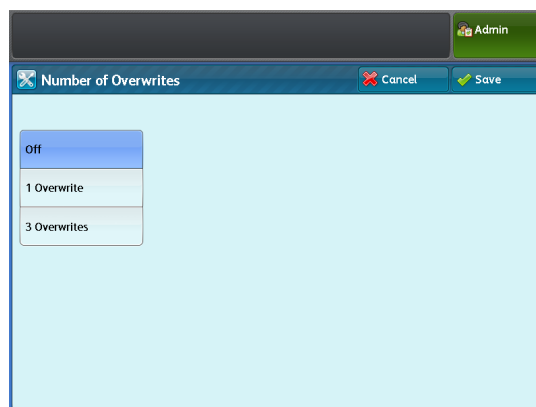


Important

- If the machine is turned off during the overwriting, unfinished files may remain on the hard disk. The overwriting will resume if you turn the machine on again with the unfinished files remaining on the hard disk.
- Overwriting once erases the data, but overwriting three times makes it even more definite that the data cannot be restored. It does, however, take longer.
- During overwriting, normal operations may be slowed down.

1. Press [Overwrite Hard Disk] > [Number of Overwrites].

2. Select the number of overwrites from [Off], [1 Overwrite], and [3 Overwrites].
3. Press [Save].



● Prerequisite for Using the Overwrite Hard Disk Function

The system administrator must follow the instructions below:

- To protect the data deleted from or stored on the hard disk, the following settings are required:
Number of Overwrites: [1 Overwrite] or [3 Overwrites]
- Change the system administrator's factory default password (x-admin).
The new password must be seven characters or more (up to 12 characters long). Be careful not to register a password that can be easily assumed and not to store the registered password on a location that is easily accessible to other persons.



- Be careful not to lost or forget the system administrator's User ID and password. Otherwise, it will not be possible to recover the machine configuration in case of malfunction.

- Set [Password Entry from Control Panel] to [On].
- Set [Maximum Login Attempts by System Administrator] to 5 times.
- Note that the hard disk security will not be warranted if you do not correctly follow the above setting instructions.



Refer

- For information on how to set data encryption, refer to "Data Encryption"(p.409).
- For information on how to set password entry from the control panel, refer to "Password Entry from Control Panel"(p.452).
- For information on how to set the system administrator's User ID, refer to "System Administrator's Login ID"(p.445).

The manager (of the organization that the machine is used for) must follow the instructions below:

- Assign an appropriate person as a system administrator and manage and train him/her properly.
- When turning off the machine, make sure no operation is running. Train the users to turn off the machine after an active operation completes, if any.
- Note that the Overwrite Hard Disk function is used to protect deleted document data from being recovered;
- it does not protect files stored in folders on the hard disk.
- Install an anti-bugging device on the internal network that the machine is located on, and perform the network settings properly to protect the machine from interceptions.
- To block unauthorized access, install a firewall device between the external network and the internal network that the machine is located on.
- Set the password and encryption key according to the following rules:
 - Do not use easily assured character string
 - Use both characters and numerics

Chapter 13 Appendix

This chapter describes the machine specifications, optional components, and notes and restrictions.

13.1	Specifications.....	460
13.2	Optional Components	468
13.3	Notes and Restrictions	470

13.1 Specifications

This section lists the main specifications of the machine. In the interests of product development, product specifications and external appearance are subject to change without prior notice.

Specifications

Item		Description	
		DocuWide 6057	DocuWide 3037
Type		Console Type ^{*1}	
Memory capacity		4 GB	
Hard disk capacity		500 GB or more	
Resolution		1,200 x 1,200 dpi	
Continuous copying/printing speed ^{*2}	A0	5.0 sheets/min	3.2 sheets/min
	A1	Landscape: 9.7 sheets/min, portrait: 7.0 sheets/min	Landscape: 7.0 sheets/min, portrait: 5.0 sheets/min
	A2	Landscape: 13 sheets/min, portrait: 9.7 sheets/min	Landscape: 9.0 sheets/min, portrait: 7.0 sheets/min
	A3	Landscape: 17 sheets/min, portrait: 13 sheets/min	Landscape: 10 sheets/min, portrait: 9.0 sheets/min
	A4 ^{*3}	Landscape: 23 sheets/min, portrait: 17 sheets/min	Landscape: 12 sheets/min, portrait: 10 sheets/min
Paper supplying system/capacity		[2 Roll type (EP/MF)] 1 Roll paper feed x 2 rolls, Bypass feed (single feed) [4 Roll type (EP/MF)] 2 Roll paper feed x 2 rolls, Bypass feed (single feed)	[2 Roll type (MF)] 1 Roll paper feed x 2 rolls, Bypass feed (single feed)
Paper size	Roll paper feed	[Roll paper] A0, A1, A2, A3, JIS B1, JIS B2, JIS B3, ISO B1, ISO B2, ISO B3, Special A0 (880 mm / 860 mm), Special A1 (625 mm / 620 mm), Special A2 (440 mm / 435 mm), Special A3 (310 mm), 36", 34", 30", 24", 22", 18", 17", 15", 12", 11" Width: 279.4 - 914.4 mm Outerside diameter: 175 mm or less	
	Bypass feed	[Cut paper] A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, JIS B1, JIS B2, JIS B3, ISO B1, ISO B2, ISO B3, Special A0 (880 mm / 860 mm), Special A1 (625 mm / 620 mm), Special A2 (440 mm / 435 mm), Special A3 (310 mm), 36", 34", 30", 24", 22", 18", 17", 15", 12", 11", 9", 8.5" Width: 210 - 914.4 mm Length: 210 - 2,000 mm	
Roll paper cutting method		Standard cut, Synchronized cut, Custom cut	
Paper type ^{*4} /Paper weight		Plain: 64 - 110 g/m ² , tracing paper: 90 - 112 g/m ² , film: 75 - 100 um	

Item	Description	
	DocuWide 6057	DocuWide 3037
Image loss ^{*5}	Roll/Cut paper: Top 5 mm, bottom 5 mm, left/right 3 mm (the Roll outside diameter (remaining)100 mm or more) ^{*6}	
Warm-up time	180 seconds or less (at an ambient temperature of 22 °C)	
Power supply	AC220-240 V -10 % - +6 %, 10 A, 50/60 Hz common use	
Maximum power consumption ^{*7}	Maximum: 2.4 kW	
Dimensions	EP Model: Width 1,170 x depth 740 x height 1,395 mm MF Model: Width 1,432 x depth 740 x height 1,353 mm	EP Model: Width 1,170 x depth 730 x height 1,395 mm MF Model: Width 1,432 x depth 730 x height 1,353 mm
Weight ^{*8}	2 Roll type (EP): 215 kg 2 Roll type (MF): 255 kg 4 Roll type (EP): 255 kg 4 Roll type (EP): 295 kg	2 Roll type (MF): 245 kg
Floor space	EP Model: Width 1,170 x depth 740 mm MF Model: Width 1,432 x depth 740 mm	EP Model: Width 1,170 x depth 730 mm MF Model: Width 1,432 x depth 730 mm

*1 A unit integrated with the scanner and the printer.

*2 Not all area of the hard disk capacity described here is available for customers.

*3 Printing speed may reduce when the image quality is adjusted. Productivity may lower depending on the paper type.

*4 Speed when feeding from Tray 3 (upper tray).

*5 Use paper of our recommendation. Depending on usage conditions, printing may not be performed correctly.

*6 When the outside diameter of the roll (remaining) is less than 100 mm, the image loss is 8 mm each at the top and bottom.

*7 0.8 W or less when the power switch is turned off (the power breaker is turned on).

In sleep mode, the following values apply:

Product Name	MF Model	EP Model
DocuWide 6057	3.0 W	2.9 W
DocuWide 3037	2.9 W	2.9 W

*8 Weight without toner and paper.

Copy Feature

Item		Description	
		DocuWide 6057	DocuWide 3037
Original feed system		Original transfer type	
Original size*1		Maximum width: 914.4 mm, minimum width: 176 mm Maximum length: 15,000 mm, minimum length: 210 mm	Maximum width: 914.4 mm, minimum width: 182 mm Maximum length: 15,000 mm, minimum length: 210 mm
Original thickness		Front output: 0.05 - 0.2 mm Rear output: 0.05 - 12.7 mm*2	Front output: 0.05 - 0.2 mm Rear output: 0.05 - 1.0 mm*3
Original type		Text & Line, Photo & Text, Printed Original, Photograph, Blueprint, Transparent, Uneven-Toned Background	
Scan resolution		600 x 600 dpi	
Copy (Media) Size		Width: 210 - 914.4 mm, length: 210 - 15,000 mm (plain) Width: 210 - 914.4 mm, length: 210 - 2,500 mm (tracing paper/film)	
Continuous copy pages*4		99 sheets	
First Copy Time		23 seconds (with A0 size, fed from Upper Roll 1, output to the front) 22 seconds (with A0 size, fed from Upper Roll 1, output to the rear)	25 seconds (with A0 size, fed from Upper Roll 1, output to the front) 24 seconds (with A0 size, fed from Upper Roll 1, output to the rear)
Magnification	Same magnification	1:1±0.4 %	
	Fixed magnification	25 %, 35.3 %, 50 %, 70.7 %, 100 %, 141.4 %, 200 %, 283 %, 400 %	
	Custom magnification	25 - 400 % (in 0.1 % increments)	
Memory capacity*5		4 GB (Maximum: 4 GB)	
Copy/Original input features		Bypass copy, Additional copy*6, Interrupt copy Auto Mode (Original Orientation/ Auto Paper Supply/ Auto Magnification), Manual mode, Reduce / Enlarge, Paper Supply, Paper Cut Mode, Original Type, Lighten / Darken, Sharpness, Contrast, Background Suppression, Threshold Halftones, Adjust Color*6, Original Width, Image Shift, Scan Start Position, Edge Erase, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Speed, Image Rotation, Watermark, Output Destination, Copy Output (Uncollated/Collated/Program Sort*7), Lead/Tail edge margins, Stamp (Black/Gray)*8, Multi-Job*7, Sample Copy*6	

*1 The maximum scan length varies depending on scanning conditions.

*2 Flat hard originals (styrene board, cardboard) with a thickness between 0.2 mm and 12.7 mm can be scanned. However, the original must be supported by hands. Accurate scanning is not guaranteed.

*3 Flat hard originals (styrene board, cardboard) with a thickness between 0.2 mm and 1.0 mm can be loaded. However, the original must be supported by hands. Accurate scanning is not guaranteed.

*4 The machine operation may temporarily stop for stabilizing images.

*5 Even if the memory size is as described, correct image output may not be guaranteed depending on the type and content of output data.

*6 When using additional copy, Adjust Color, Sample Copy with DocuWide 3037, the optional Color Scan Memory Kit is required.

*7 This function is available only on the DocuWide 6057.

*8 This is optional.

Print Feature

Item	Description	
	DocuWide 6057	DocuWide 3037
Print (media) size	Depends on the copy size of the copy function.	
Continuous print pages	99 sheets ^{*1}	
First print time	22 seconds (with A0, 1.28 MB data, fed from the upper roll, output to the front) 21 seconds (with A0, 1.28 MB data, fed from the upper roll, output to the rear)	
Magnification accuracy	100±0.4 % (at an ambient temperature of 22 °C, humidity of 55 %) ^{*2}	
Page description language	Standard	None
	Option	Adobe® PostScript® 3™
Supported protocol	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6, LPR, FTP)	
Supported Operating System ^{*3}	Standard	Windows® 10 (32 bit), Windows® 10 (64 bit) Windows® 8.1 (32 bit), Windows® 8.1 (64 bit) Windows® 7 (32 bit), Windows® 7 (64 bit) Windows Server® 2016 (64 bit), Windows Server® 2012 R2 (64 bit) Windows® Server® 2012 (64 bit), Windows Server® 2008 R2 (64 bit) Windows Server® 2008 (32 bit), Windows Server® 2008 (64 bit)
	Option (Adobe® PostScript® 3™)	Windows® 10 (32 bit), Windows® 10 (64 bit) Windows® 8.1 (32 bit), Windows® 8.1 (64 bit) Windows® 7 (32 bit), Windows® 7 (64 bit) Windows Server® 2016 (64 bit), Windows Server® 2012 R2 (64 bit) Windows® Server® 2012 (64 bit), Windows Server® 2008 R2 (64 bit) Windows Server® 2008 (32 bit), Windows Server® 2008 (64 bit) mac OS 10.12 OS X 10.11 / 10.10 / 10.9 / 10.8
Data format	Standard	HP-GL, HP-GL/2, HP RTL (HP Designjet 1050C compliant) VRF, VCGL, FX-MMR, TIFF, JFIF (JPEG), CALS
	Option	Adobe® PostScript® 3™, PDF, CGM
Interface	Ethernet: 1000BASE-T / 100BASE-TX / 10BASE-T 2 Systems	

*1 When continuously printing long or thick originals, the machine may temporarily stop operation for stabilizing images.

*2 Except for printing with paper larger than A0.

*3 For information on the latest operation systems, visit our website.

Scan Feature

Item		Description	
		DocuWide 6057	DocuWide 3037
Type	Standard	Color scanner	Monochrome scanner
	Option	-	Color scanner ^{*1}
Scan size ^{*2}		Width: 176 - 914.4 mm, length: 210 - 15,000 mm	Width: 182 - 914.4 mm, length: 210 - 15,000 mm
Scan resolution		600 x 600 dpi, 400 x 400 dpi, 300 x 300 dpi, 200 x 200 dpi, 150 x 150 dpi	
Scanning halftone		Full Color, Grayscale, Pseudo Grey Scale (Binary), Black & White (Binary), Red-Pseudo Grey Scale (Binary), Red-Black (Binary)	Full Color ^{*1} , Grayscale ^{*1} , Pseudo Grey Scale (Binary), Black & White (Binary)
Scan mode		Text & Line, Photo & Text, Printed Original, Photograph, Blueprint, Transparent, Uneven-Toned BG	
Original scanning speed	Monochrome/Grayscale	Fast: 152.4 mm/sec Medium: 76.2 mm/sec Super Slow: 25.4 mm/sec	Super Fast: 03.2 mm/sec (resolution 300 dpi or less) Fast: 101.6 mm/sec Slow: 50.8 mm/sec
	Full color	Fast: 152.4 mm/sec (resolution 300 dpi or less) Medium: 50.8 mm/sec Super Slow: 25.4 mm/sec	Medium: 67.6 mm/sec (resolution 300 dpi or less) Super Slow: 33.8 mm/sec
Interface		Ethernet: 1000BASE-T / 100BASE-TX / 10BASE-T	
Store to Folder	Supported protocol	TCP/IP (HTTP)	
	Output format	Black & White (Binary): TIFF, PDF ^{*3} , DocuWorks document, JPEG Grayscale: TIFF, JPEG, BMP Color: TIFF, JPEG, BMP Red & Black: TIFF, PDF ^{*3} , DocuWorks document	Black & White (Binary): TIFF, PDF ^{*3} , DocuWorks document, JPEG Grayscale: TIFF, JPEG, BMP Color: TIFF, JPEG, BMP
	Driver	Network Scanner Utility 3 ^{*4}	
	Supported Operating System ^{*5}	Windows [®] 10 (64 bit) Windows [®] 10 (32 bit) Windows [®] 8.1 (64 bit) Windows [®] 8.1 (32 bit) Windows [®] 7 (64 bit) Windows [®] 7 (32 bit) Windows Server [®] 2016 (64 bit) Windows Server [®] 2012 R2 (64 bit) Windows Server [®] 2012 (64 bit) Windows Server [®] 2008 R2 (64 bit) Windows Server [®] 2008 (64 bit) Windows Server [®] 2008 (32 bit)	

Item		Description	
		DocuWide 6057	DocuWide 3037
Scan to PC	Supported protocol	TCP/IP (SMB)	
	Supported Operating System ^{*5}	Windows [®] 10 (64 bit) Windows [®] 10 (32 bit) Windows [®] 8.1 (64 bit) Windows [®] 8.1 (32 bit) Windows [®] 7 (64 bit) Windows [®] 7 (32 bit) Windows Server [®] 2016 (64 bit) Windows Server [®] 2012 R2 (64 bit) Windows Server [®] 2012 (64 bit) Windows Server [®] 2008 R2 (64 bit) Windows Server [®] 2008 (64 bit) Windows Server [®] 2008 (32 bit)	
	Output Format	Black & White (Binary): TIFF, PDF ^{*3} , DocuWorks document Grayscale: TIFF, PDF ^{*3} , JPEG, DocuWorks document Full Color: TIFF, PDF ^{*3} , JPEG, DocuWorks document Red & Black: TIFF, PDF ^{*3} , JPEG, DocuWorks document	Black & White (Binary): TIFF, PDF ^{*3} , DocuWorks document Grayscale: TIFF, PDF ^{*3} , JPEG, DocuWorks document Full Color: TIFF, PDF ^{*3} , JPEG, DocuWorks document
Printer Transfer	Interface	Ethernet: 1000BASE-T / 100BASE-TX / 10BASE-T	
	Supported protocol	TCP/IP (LPR)	
Direct Scan ^{*6}	Interface	USB 2.0	-

*1 The optional Color Scan Memory Kit is necessary.

*2 Depending on the scanning tone you select, the maximum length changes. The maximum length is also restricted by the application to be linked, output format, compression format, and/or resolution.

*3 PDF version 1.3 is supported. The PDF/A format is not supported.

*4 The file type depends on the application.

*5 For information on the latest supported OS, visit our website.

*6 For direct scanning, the output format or compression format depends on the application to be linked.

Copy Magnification List



- Images can be lost depending on the combination of the original document size and magnification.

● Preset magnification factors for A series

Original	Copy				
	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0
A4	100.0 %	141.4 %	200.0 %	283.0 %	400.0 %
A3	70.7 %	100.0 %	141.4 %	200.0 %	283.0 %
A2	50.0 %	70.7 %	100.0 %	141.4 %	200.0 %
A1	35.3 %	50.0 %	70.7 %	100.0 %	141.4 %
A0	25.0 %	35.3 %	50.0 %	70.7 %	100.0 %

Standard Size



- Pixel indicates the number of dots to be printed with 600 dpi resolution.

Standard Size	Width		Height	
	mm	Pixel	mm	Pixel
A0	841	19,872	1,189	28,088
A1	594	14,032	841	19,872
A2	420	9,928	594	14,032
A3	297	7,016	420	9,928
A4	210	4,968	297	7,016
JIS B1	728	17,200	1,030	24,336
JIS B2	515	12,168	728	17,200
JIS B3	364	8,600	515	12,168
JIS B4	257	6,072	364	8,600
JIS B5 ^{*1}	182	—	257	—
ISO B1	707	16,704	1,000	23,624
ISO B2	500	11,816	707	16,704
ISO B3	353	8,344	500	11,816
ISO B4	250	5,912	353	8,344
ISO B5 ^{*1}	176	—	250	—
ANSI E (34x44")	863.6	20,400	1,117.6	26,400
ANSI D (22x34")	558.8	13,200	863.6	20,400
ANSI C (17x22")	431.8	10,200	558.8	13,200

Standard Size	Width		Height	
	mm	Pixel	mm	Pixel
ANSI B (11x17")	279.4	6,600	431.8	10,200
ANSI A (8.5x11")	215.9	5,104	279.4	6,600
ARCH E (36x48")	914.4	21,600	1,219.2	28,800
ARCH D (24x36")	609.6	14,400	914.4	21,600
ARCH C (18x24")	457.2	10,800	609.6	14,400
ARCH B (12x18")	304.8	7,200	457.2	10,800
ARCH A (9x12")	228.6	5,400	304.8	7,200
Special A0 (880x1240 mm) ^{*2}	880	20,792	1,240	29,296
Special A1 (620x880 mm) ^{*2}	620	14,648	880	20,792
Special A2 (440x620 mm) ^{*2}	440	10,400	620	14,648
Special A3 (310x440 mm) ^{*2}	310	7,328	440	10,400
Special A0 (860x1210 mm) ^{*3}	860	20,320	1,210	28,584
Special A1 (620x871 mm) ^{*3}	620	14,648	871	20,576
Special A2 (435x620 mm) ^{*3}	435	10,280	620	14,648
Special A0 (880x1230 mm) ^{*3}	880	20,792	1,230	29,056
Special A1 (625x880 mm) ^{*3}	625	14,768	880	20,792
Special A2 (440x625 mm) ^{*3}	440	10,400	625	14,768
ARCH 30 (30x42")	762	18,000	1,066.8	25,200
ARCH 21 (21x30")	533.4	12,600	762	18,000
ARCH 15 (15x10.5")	381	9,000	533.4	12,600
ARCH 10.5 (10.5x15")	266.7	6,300	381	9,000

*1 Only available for scanning

*2 Available when the item number [70] in [Detailed Settings] is set to [1]. For more information, refer to "12.3.9 Detailed Settings" (p.410).

*3 Available when the item number [70] in [Detailed Settings] is set to [2]. For more information, refer to "12.3.9 Detailed Settings" (p.410).

13.2 Optional Components

- Optional Components (DocuWide 6057) p.468
- Optional Components (DocuWide 3037) p.468

13.2.1 Optional Components (DocuWide 6057)

The optional products of the DocuWide 6057 are as follows. For purchase, contact your dealer.

Product Name	Description
Document Catch Tray (Rear)	A tray to flatly accommodate originals delivered to the rear of the machine.
Paper Catch Tray (Front)	A tray to accommodate paper delivered to the front of the machine.
Paper Catch Tray (Rear)	A tray to accommodate paper delivered to the rear of the machine.
Paper Roll Shaft	A shaft to replace roll media.
Scanner-PC USB Cable KIT	A USB cable used for connecting the machine and computer when the Scan and Copy or Direct Scan function is used.
Scan Counter KIT	This is a resettable original counter.
Manual Feed Guide	A guide used for setting paper in the manual feed table.
DW6057 Stamp KIT	A kit for using stamps.
DW6057 PS/PDF KIT	A kit for outputting the PDF/PostScript format data.
DW 6057/3037 User Guide	This is a printed user guide.
IC Card Reader for HID Prox IC Card Reader for MIFARE	A device used for authenticating the IC card.
DW-Scan VI Service	An application for importing scan data from a computer connected with the machine via USB.
BT-PlotAssistant	A tool that directly transfers print data from your computer to the machine and outputs it from the machine. It also allows you to specify copy quantities and magnifications, and to confirm the status and settings of the machine.

13.2.2 Optional Components (DocuWide 3037)

The optional products of the DocuWide 3037 are as follows. For purchase, contact your dealer.

Product Name	Description
Color Scan Memory KIT	A kit for expanding the functions of scan and copy.
Document Catch Tray (Rear)	A tray to flatly accommodate originals delivered to the rear of the machine.
Paper Catch Tray (Front)	A tray to accommodate paper delivered to the front of the machine.

Product Name	Description
Paper Catch Tray (Rear)	A tray to accommodate paper delivered to the rear of the machine.
Paper Roll Shaft	A shaft to replace roll media.
Manual Feed Guide	A guide used for setting paper in the manual feed table.
Rear output KIT for DW3037	A kit used for ejecting paper to the rear.
DW3037 Stamp KIT	A kit for using stamps.
DW3037 PS/PDF KIT	A kit for outputting the PDF/PostScript format data.
DW 6057/3037 User Guide	This is a printed user guide.
IC Card Reader for HID Prox IC Card Reader for MIFARE	A device used for authenticating the IC card.
BT-PlotAssistant	A tool that directly transfers print data from your computer to the machine and outputs it from the machine. It also allows you to specify copy quantities and magnifications, and to confirm the status and settings of the machine.

13.2.3 Other Related Software Applications

Product Name	Description
Standard print driver (TIFF driver) (DocuWide Plot Driver)	Allows you to print to the machine from a Windows computer.
PostScript (PS) driver	A driver used for printing to the machine installed with the optional DW6057 PS/PDF KIT or DW3037 PS/PDFKIT.
Network Scanner Utility 3	Allows you to import documents scanned via the machine to your computer using the TWAIN supported application on the computer.
PPD File for Mac OS	Allows you to print to the machine from applications on a Macintosh.



Note

- These software applications can be installed from the provided media (Software/Product Manual).

13.3 Notes and Restrictions

This section describes the notes and restrictions to observe when using the machine.

13.3.1 Notes and Restrictions on the Use of the Machine

Installing and Moving the Machine

- When moving the machine to another location, contact your local Fuji Xerox representative.
- When the machine is operating, protect it from shocks.
- Do not place objects near the ventilation opening of the extractor fan of the machine.

Cautions when Operating the Machine

- Do not turn off the power immediately after switching it on. This may result in damage to the hard disk and memory and malfunctions.
- Do not leave the upper unit open for more than ten minutes. This may result in deterioration of the image quality.

Cautions when Switching Off

- After switching the power on, do not switch it off until the screen comes on.
- If the control panel freezes or an error screen stops responding, switch the power off.
- After switching the power off, before switching it on again, make sure that the <Main Power> indicator on the control panel is unlit.

13.3.2 Notes and Restrictions on the Copy Feature

Restrictions for Paper Selection in Auto Mode

Paper selection in Auto Mode has the following restrictions depending on the orientation of the original.

Paper series	Document orientation	Restriction
A Series restriction	Standard size portrait	No restriction is applied.
	Standard size landscape	Original size: A0 is not selectable. Paper selection: A0 is not selectable.
	Synchronized	Paper selection: A0 is not selectable.

Restrictions on Leftward Image Shift

When you specify leftward image shift, the print image is shifted by the amount shown in the table below. (Unit: mm)

The actual result, however, may vary depending on the status of the printer and/or the condition of the media.

Set Amount	Shift Amount	Set Amount	Shift Amount	Set Amount	Shift Amount
0	0	17	16	34	33
1	0	18	16	35	35
2	0	19	18	36	35
3	2	20	18	37	37
4	2	21	20	38	37
5	4	22	21	39	39
6	4	23	22	40	39
7	6	24	22	41	41
8	6	25	24	42	41
9	8	26	24	43	43
10	8	27	26	44	43
11	10	28	26	45	45
12	10	29	28	46	45
13	12	30	28	47	47
14	12	31	30	48	47
15	14	32	30	49	49
16	14	33	33	50	49

13.3.3 Notes and Restrictions on the Scan Feature

Maximum Scan Length (At Scanning Resolution of 600 dpi)

Output File Format	Color Scanning Mode			Red-Black /Red-Pseudo Grey Scale (Binary) (DocuWide 6057)
	Color ^{*1*2}	Grayscale ^{*1}	Black & White/ Halftone (Pseudo)	
TIFF	2,772 mm	2,772 mm	15,000 mm	3,156 mm
PDF	2,772 mm	2,772 mm	15,000 mm	15,000 mm
PDF Security	2,772 mm	5,077 mm	5,077 mm	5,077 mm
DocuWorks	2,772 mm	2,772 mm	2,774 mm	2,772 mm
JPEG	2,772 mm	2,772 mm	-	-

*1 The maximum scan length for Color and Grayscale is restricted by the maximum allowed number of pixels for the JPEG format. It can vary depending on the selected resolution.

*2 For DocuWide 3037, these are limited to 7,500 mm when Adjust Color Density is selected.

*3 These are limited to 7,500 mm when Adjust Color Density is selected.

Size of the Scan File Created

When the data size of a scan file generated exceeds 2 GB (1 GB for DocuWorks), an error message is displayed on the touch screen of the machine. You can select whether to save data of documents already scanned as a Multi-Page file or to cancel your scanning.

Red-Black TIFF File to be Created (DocuWide 6057)

Even when the output file format is set to a format other than TIFF such as PDF, DocuWorks, JPEG, performing scanning by specifying [Red-Black (Binary)] or [Red-Pseudo Grey Scale (Binary)] internally creates full color TIFF files in the cases below. Due to this, the maximum scan length and the number of pages for multi-page TIFF are restricted.

- when the save destination is Folder
- when the recipients of the Multo-send scan job include [Printer]

● The maximum scan length

Original Width	Resolution	Maximum Length
36"	150 dpi	15,000 mm
	200 dpi	15,000 mm
	300 dpi	12,626 mm
	400 dpi	7,098 mm
	600 dpi	3,156 mm
A0	150 dpi	15,000 mm
	200 dpi	15,000 mm
	300 dpi	13,728 mm
	400 dpi	7,722 mm
	600 dpi	3,432 mm

● The maximum number of pages in multi-page TIFF

Original Size	Resolution				
	150 dpi	200 dpi	300 dpi	400 dpi	600 dpi
A4	740 pages	416 pages	185 pages	104 pages	46 pages
A3	370 pages	208 pages	92 pages	52 pages	23 pages
A2	185 pages	104 pages	46 pages	26 pages	11 pages
A1	92 pages	52 pages	23 pages	12 pages	5 pages
A0	46 pages	26 pages	11 pages	6 pages	2 pages

Size of the DocuWorks Document to be Created

When [Single-Page DocuWorks] or [Multi-Page DocuWorks] is selected in [File Format], the size of the created DocuWorks document varies depending on the size of the original.

Original Size	DocuWorks Document to be Created
One edge is within 2,400 mm	Same as the size of the original
One edge is 2,400 mm or more	One edge is within 2,400 mm ^{*1*2}

- *1 There is no degradation of image quality on DocuWorks documents since they are saved with higher resolution applied. When printing from within DocuWorks Desk/Viewer 7.x or later, you can print on any acceptable size of media by simply selecting [Same as Paper Size] on the print properties screen. For example, you can simply specify the "Page Size" of the original in [Paper Size] to print the document at the same size as the original. When you select (click) a document on DocuWorks Desk, the Page Size of the original document is shown on the lower left of the screen. (Example: "Page Size 420 x 3,000 mm")
- *2 For example, when the original size is 420 x 3,000 mm, the size of the created DocuWorks document is 336 x 2,400 mm.

Notes on Store to Folder

- The maximum storage capacity of the folder is approx. 12 GB for scan data.
- Depending on your application, the import operation from your computer might failed, resulting in deletion of the document data. For details on restrictions that apply to the scan feature, refer to the Notes section on the Network Scanner Utility 3 page, which you can access from the Download link of the Fuji Xerox website.
- For non-standard size documents, their [Size] fields in the list of scan data will be empty on the Network Scanner Driver screen.
- A document in a folder cannot be retrieved from multiple computers at a time.

Notes on Multi Send Scan

● Notes on Logical Printer

Settings for individual logical printers must be performed on CentreWare Internet Services. There is no function to view or check the settings from the machine.



- For information on CentreWare Internet Services, refer to the Help section of CentreWare Internet Services.

● Notes on Print

- With a printer other than the DocuWide series, when you specify a logical printer (ID, name) that does not exist, the print result conforms to the printer's specifications.
- With a printer other than DocuWide series, the number of copies might be affected by both the setting on the Print Settings screen at scanning and the logical printer's setting from the destination printer.

● Notes on Transmission of Scan Data via IPv6 Connection

TCP/IP IP Mode	Destination	Scan to PC/Multi Send Scan		
		Browsing via Network	Saving to Server	Sending to Printer
IPv6 Mode	Same subnet	No	No/Yes ^{*3}	Yes
	Different subnet	No	No/Yes ^{*3}	Yes

TCP/IP IP Mode	Destination	Scan to PC/Multi Send Scan		
		Browsing via Network	Saving to Server	Sending to Printer
Dual Stack	Same subnet	Yes ^{*1}	No/Yes ^{*3}	Yes
	Different subnet	No/Yes ^{*2}	No/Yes ^{*3}	Yes

*1 Operates in an IPv4 environment.

*2 Possible if a domain controller is installed on a network operating in an IPv4 environment.

*3 Yes for Windows 7, Windows 8.1, Windows 10, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, and Windows Server 2016.

13.3.4 Notes and Restriction on the Scan and Copy Function (DocuWide 6057)

Scan and Copy Operations

While print jobs are in progress, the Scan and Copy service is not available.

If there is copy data being processed, the [Scan and Copy] screen cannot be switched to the menu screen. Switch the screen after copy or stamp processing is completed.

The processing time may become longer if you specify reducing for Scan and Copy jobs.

When DW-Scan VI Service is Abnormally Terminated by Incorrect Processing

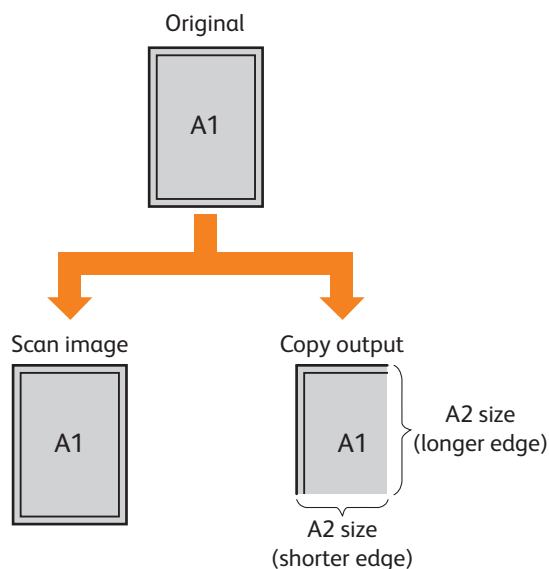
When DW-Scan VI Service connected to the machine is abnormally terminated, the screen cannot be switched to the menu screen by the operation on the control panel. In this case, launch DW-Scan VI Service again or restart the machine. When you try to re-establish the connection from DW-Scan VI Service, the first scanning will fail with error but the second scanning will start normally.

When the Original Size and the Paper Size Are Different

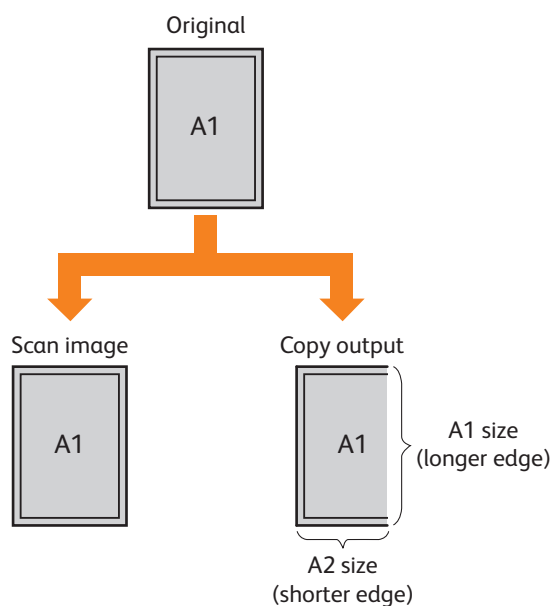
When the size of the original and the paper size are different, the output results between the scanned image and the copied output may not match.

- When the paper size is smaller than the size of the original

When specifying "A2 Roll/Standard-Size Portrait" for A1 standard-size portrait originals and executing Scan and Copy

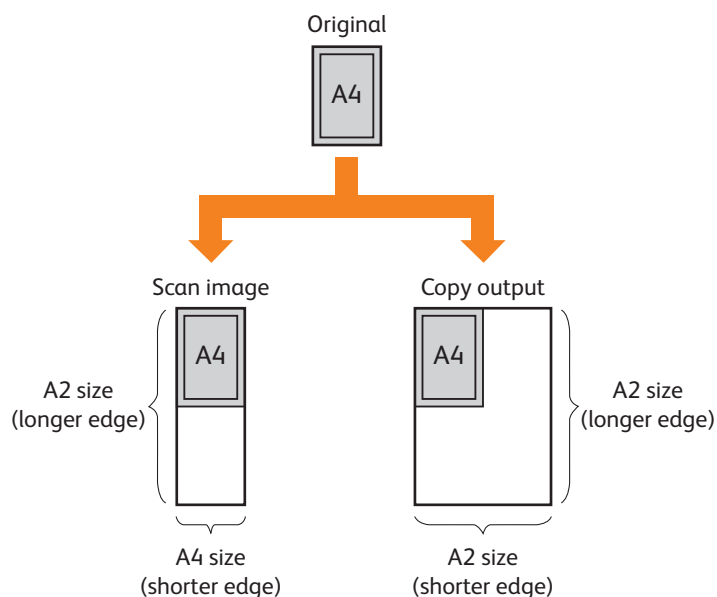


When specifying "A2 Roll/Synchronized" for A1 standard-size portrait originals and executing Scan and Copy

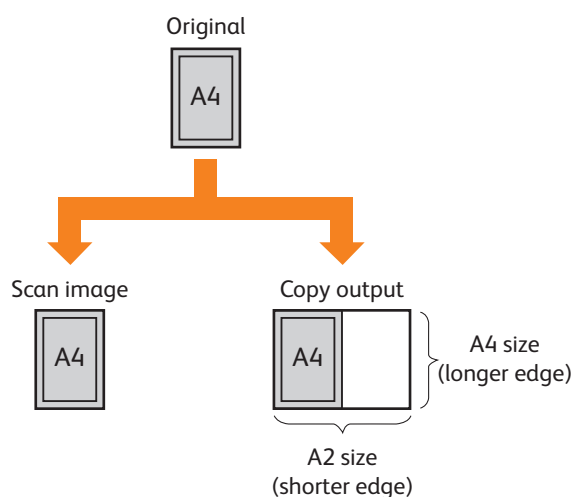


- When the paper size is larger than size of the original

When specifying "A2 Roll/Standard Portrait" for A1 standard-size portrait originals and executing a Scan and Copy job



When specifying "A2 Roll/Synchronized" for A1 standard-size portrait originals and executing Scan and Copy



The Margin for Scan Image

- When you set [Image Shift] to [Up] or [Scan Start Position] to [Down] for your copy job, the margin is added under the scan image.

Scan Image and the Copy Output

- When processing the output by the copy function, the result may appear only in the copy output but in the scanned image.

The following effects do not appear in the scanned image.

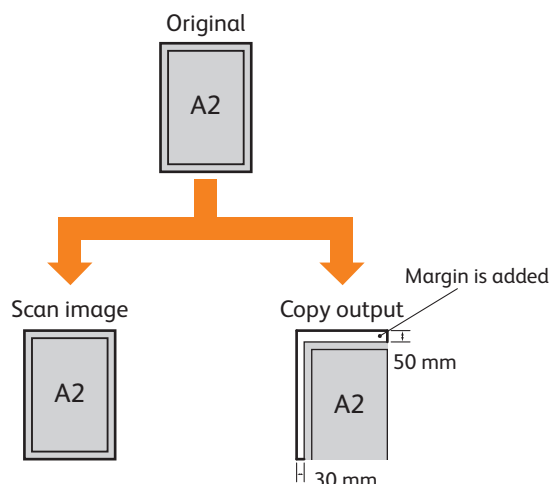
- Image Shift (shift in top and bottom, right and left, center)
- Edge Erase
- Scan Start Position

- Top and bottom margins when the cutting method is Synchronized
- Stamp



Note

- When the copy position is adjusted and the A2 standard-size original is moved downward by 50 mm and rightward by 30 mm



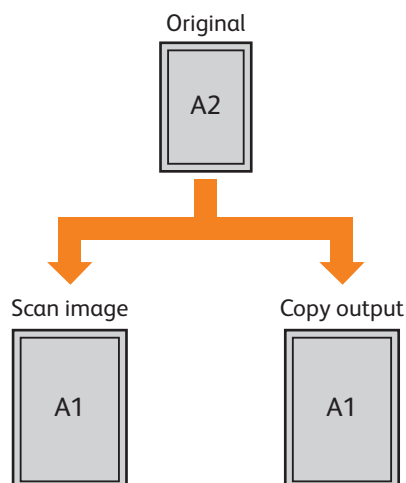
- Settings related to image processing such as image quality and scaling are reflected in both scan image and copy output. The ones that are reflected in both scanned images and copy outputs are as follows.

- Reduce / enlarge, Independent X - Y %
- Mirror Image
- Negative Image
- Background Suppression
- Threshold Halftones
- Original Type



Note

- When enlarging A2 standard-size original by 141 % and output it to A1 Roll



13.3.5 Notes and Restrictions on the Print Feature



Refer

- For notes and restrictions that apply to the print feature, also refer to the Help section of CentreWare Internet Services.

Maximum Print Length

The maximum print length is 30,000 mm when paper type is set to Plain, or 2,500 mm when it is set to Vellum (tracing paper) or Film.

Notes on Printing While Copy or Scan is Running

After copy or scan operation has been completed, printing starts as indicated below.



Note

- On the DocuWide 3037, scanning and printing cannot be executed simultaneously unless the optional Color Scan Memory Kit is installed.

● When no operation is performed for a certain time

Printing starts after the Mode Ensuring Timer duration (fixed to 30 seconds) has elapsed and then the duration for the “Plot Mode Switching Timer” (duration of time before the machine switches to the plot mode), which is set in the System Settings function, has elapsed.

The “Plot Mode Switching Timer” is set by factory default to 30 seconds, thus printing starts after 1 minute (= Mode Ensuring Timer (30 sec) + Plot Mode Switching Timer (30 sec)) has elapsed after the copy/scan operation has been completed.

● When the <Menu> button is pressed during the Mode Ensuring Timer duration (30 seconds)

The Mode Ensuring Timer duration (fixed to 30 seconds) is canceled, thus printing starts after the <Menu> button has been pressed and then the duration for “Plot Mode Switching Timer”, which is set in the System Settings function, has elapsed.

For example, if you press the <Menu> button after 10 seconds after the copy/scan operation is completed, printing starts after 40 seconds (= duration before the <Menu> button is pressed (10 sec) + Plot Mode Switching Timer (30 sec by factory default)) has elapsed.



Refer

- For information on how to set the duration for “Plot Mode Switching Timer”, refer to “12.3.9 Detailed Settings” (p.410).

Notes on Printing Using ArcEPS

Once you use ArcEPS for a print job, ArcEPS occupies the printing process resources for a specific amount of time after printing has been started. During this duration, no print jobs other than those from ArcEPS cannot be performed.

13.3.6 Notes and Restrictions for IPv6 Connection

- In a multi-prefix environment (where multiple IPv6 global addresses are used), data transmission from the machine to a device installed on another network may fail.
- In a multi-prefix environment (where multiple IPv6 global addresses are used), an address that is not assigned to the machine may be used for communication.
- An auto-configured IPv6 address (IPv6 autoconfiguration address, IPv6 DNS server address) may be assigned an address that cannot be used by the obtained IPv6 address for operation.
An address that cannot be used for operation is, for example, a site local address (fec0::) or an address that belongs to the documentation address space (2001:db8::/32).

- The machine may use the DNS information for IPv4 rather than that for IPv6 if the machine is in Dual Stack mode, the DNS information for both IPv4 and IPv6 is configured, the machine is to communicate with a device that is specified using the FQDN, and the machine has just been turned on.
- The machine may display an incorrect machine address.
For example, either the IPv4 or IPv6 address may not be displayed in Dual Stack mode, or a different IPv6 address may be displayed.
- WINS does not support IPv6 communication.
- When IPv6 is enabled and IPv4 is disabled on the machine, you cannot specify a storage location for the Browse function of the Scan to PC (SMB) service.
- In an IPv4 environment, discovery across routers via broadcast can be performed. However, this is not possible in an IPv6 environment. Also, because an IPv6 environment does not support discovery across routers, only multicast in an local link (FF02::1) can respond to multicasting.
- In an IPv6 environment without a DNS server, if a server name is specified as the destination server for Scan to PC, transmission of scan data can fail.

13.3.7 Other Notes and Restrictions

Fluctuation in Lines

- Due to the mechanism, fluctuations may occur in some parts of straight lines in the direction of paper width.

Index

A

Additional feature buttons	35
Adjust Color Density (Scan).....	213, 252
Adjusting individual color density	85, 113, 138, 166
Attaching paper -> Loading paper	
Loading cut sheet via the bypass (manual) feed table 41,	
42	
Loading roll paper.....	39
Audio Tones (Common Service Settings).....	399
Authentication (Authentication / Security Settings).....	447
Authentication/Security Settings.....	445
Auto Mode Paper Type (Copy Service Settings)	419
Auto Mode Rotate Direction (Copy Service Settings).....	420

B

Background Suppression (Copy).....	111, 164
Background Suppression (Scan)	212, 251
Billing Information.....	44
Browser.....	276
Buttons Displayed	30
Bypass Copying	89, 142

C

C (Clear) button.....	30, 32
Calling up a Stored Program	271
Canceling Print Jobs.....	283
Canceling the Copy Job.....	82, 135
CentreWare Internet Services.....	275, 299
before using	275
screen components	277
starting.....	277
Changing Name for a Stored Program	269
Changing the specified color on original	85, 138
Cleaning (DocuWide 3037)	61
Cleaning (DocuWide 6057)	59
Clear All button.....	29
Color Scan Settings (Common Service Settings).....	404
Color scanning	189, 229
Color Scanning (Scan).....	198, 237
Common Service Settings	398
Confidential Print.....	284
Private Charge Print.....	284
Secure Print	284
Connectivity & Network Setup	425

Contrast (Copy).....	110, 163
Contrast (Scan)	212, 251
Control Panel (EP Models)	31
Control Panel (MF Models).....	28
Copy.....	78, 132
Copy - Image Quality	109, 162
Copy (Auto Mode)	101, 154
Copy (Manual Mode).....	104, 157
Copy Defaults.....	415
Copy from Memory	98, 151
Copy Output.....	92, 122, 145, 176
Copy Service Settings.....	414
Copying in the Specified Paper Size (Auto Mode).....	84, 137
Create Folder	306
Custom Button 1	29
Custom Button 2	29
Custom Button 3	29
Cutting Paper.....	39

D

Data Format.....	281
Data indicator	28, 31
Deleting a Stored Program.....	269
Detailed Settings (Common Service Settings)	410
Detailed Settings (Copy Service Settings).....	423
Detailed Settings (Print Service Settings)	444
Detailed Settings (Scan Service Settings)	436
Direct Scan (DocuWide 6057)	301
DocuWide 6057/3037 Models	4
DocuWorks Security.....	192, 231

E

Edge Erase (Copy).....	117, 170
Edge Erase (Scan)	218, 257
Encryption (Scan).....	192, 231
Error indicator	29, 31
Error Message	368

F

Feature buttons	33
File Expiration Date (Stored File Settings).....	438

File Format	202, 241
DocuWorks Security.....	205, 244
PDF Security.....	204, 243
Filing Options	220, 259
Folder	
viewing/deleting documents.....	197, 236
Fusing Unit.....	57

H

Heavy Document KIT	81
--------------------------	----

I

Image Options (Copy)	110, 163
Image Quality (Scan).....	211, 250
Image Quality Problems	354
Image Shift	115, 168
Interrupt (Copy)	100, 153
Interrupt (Scan).....	195, 234
Interrupt button	29
IP address	315

J

Jam	
When a Paper Jam Occurs	372
Jam Problems	352
Job Recovery (Print Service Settings)	441
Job Status button	30

L

Layout Adjustment (Copy)	114, 167
Layout Adjustment (Scan)	215, 254
Lead & Tail Margins.....	124, 176
Lighten / Darken.....	211, 250
Loading/Replacing paper	39
Log In/Out button	29, 32
Low Power mode.....	27
low power mode.....	27

M

Machine Clock / Timers	
Settings (Common Service Settings)	398
Time Zone.....	399
Machine Components.....	22
Machine Information.....	63
Machine Problems.....	351

Machine Status	63
Machine Status button	30, 32
Main Power indicator	29, 31
Maintenance (Common Service Settings).....	405
Media Type	73
Handling and Storing Media.....	75
Media Type	73
Unusable Media	74
Menu Screen (EP Models)	37
Menu Screen (MF Models)	33
Message field (EP Models).....	37
Message Field (MF Models).....	33
Mirror Image	118, 171
Multi Send Address (Group Address).....	312
Multi Send Scan	183, 209, 223, 248

N

Negative Image.....	118, 171
Number of Overwrites	
(Authentication / Security Settings)	456
Numeric keypad.....	30, 32

O

Optional Components	468
Original Size (Scan).....	216, 255
Original Type (Copy)	109, 162
Original Type (Scan).....	200, 239
Original Width.....	87, 114, 140, 167
Originals	72
Other Settings (Common Service Settings)	407
Other Settings (Print Service Settings).....	442
Other Settings (Scan Service Settings)	435
Multi Send Printer Transfer Format	435
TIFF Format.....	435
Output Format (Copy).....	120, 173

P

Paper Cut Mode (Copy)	107, 160
Paper Jam	
Paper Jams at the Bypass (Manual) Feed table	375
Paper Jams at the Roll Paper Tray.....	373
Paper Jams in the Upper Unit	375
When the Original Jams.....	377
Paper Supply (selecting the paper supply source) ..	106, 159
PDF Security.....	192, 231
Port number	276

Port Settings (Connectivity & Network Setup)	425
Power Saver Mode.....	27
Precautions When Handling Originals	72
Preset Buttons (Copy Service Settings).....	415
Preset Buttons (Scan Service Settings)	433
Print Feature.....	280
Print Job.....	280
Preparation.....	281
Print Service Settings.....	441
Printer (Multi Send Address)	310
Printing Using the Print Driver.....	282
Private Charge Print.....	284
Problems	
CentreWare Internet Services	367
Copy	361
Image Quality	354
Jam	352
Machine.....	351
Print	366
Scanning.....	363
Program Sort (DocuWide 6057).....	305
Protocol Settings (Connectivity & Network Setup).....	427
Proxy server	276

Q

Quality / File Size.....	220, 259
--------------------------	----------

R

Reduce / Enlarge	215, 254
Reduce/Enlarge (Copy).....	104, 157
Registering a Stored Program	267
Replacing Consumables.....	45
Resolution (Scan).....	199, 238

S

Sample Copy.....	96, 128, 149, 179
Scan.....	182, 222
Scan and Copy (DocuWide 6057)	262
Scan Defaults (Scan Service Settings).....	434
Scan Sensor Gap Calibration	52
Scan Service Settings	433
Scan Speed (Copy)	118, 171
Scan Speed (Scan).....	219, 258
Scan Start Position (Copy)	116, 169
Scan Start Position (Scan).....	219, 258

Scan to PC.....	183, 207, 223, 246
before using	316
Scanned Data	293
Scanner Environment Settings.....	316
Scanning	
Unable to Import Scanned Data to the Computer	364
Unable to Scan with the Machine	363
Unable to Send Scanned Data over the Network	365
Scanning Multiple Originals as One File.....	193, 232
Screen / Button Settings (Common Service Settings)	401
Custom Buttons 1 to 3	401
Screen After Auto Clear.....	401
Screen Default	401
Screens Displayed	30
Secure Print	284
Server (PC Save Address).....	308
Services Home button.....	30
Services Home screen	30
Sharpness.....	212, 250
Specifications.....	460
Copy Feature.....	462
Copy Magnification List.....	466
Print Feature	463
Scan Feature.....	464
Standard Size	466
SSL / TLS Settings (Connectivity & Network Setup)	431
Start button	29, 32
Stop button	29, 32
Stopping the Scan Job.....	187, 227
Store to Folder	182, 196, 222, 235
before using	316
Stored File Manager 3	296
Stored File Settings.....	438
Supplies	66
Switching the Power Off.....	25
Switching the Power On.....	25
System Administration Mode.....	390, 393
System Administrator Settings	
(Authentication / Security Settings)	445
System Settings.....	390

T

Text Entry	38
Threshold Sort (Copy).....	112, 165
Threshold Sort (Scan)	213, 252
Touch screen	28
Trouble.....	350

Troubleshooting	349
TWAIN-compliant application	293

U

Usable Originals	72
------------------------	----

V

Variable Length Settings (Copy Service Settings)	418
--	-----

W

Waste Toner Bottle	48
When a Paper Jam Occurs	372
When the Original Jams (DocuWide 3037)	378
When the Original Jams (DocuWide 6057)	377

DocuWide 6057/3037 User Guide

Author Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.
Publisher Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd.

Edition 1 December 2017

ME8267E2-1